Recognized as an
American National Standard (ANSI)

IEEE Std 802.3u-1995
(Supplement to ISO/IEC 8802-3: 1993
[ANSI/IEEE Std 802.3, 1993 Edition])

IEEE Standards for Local and Metropolitan Area Networks:

Supplement to Carrier Sense Multiple Access with Collision Detection (CSMA/CD) Access Method and Physical Layer Specifications

Media Access Control (MAC) Parameters, Physical Layer, Medium Attachment Units, and Repeater for 100 Mb/s Operation, Type 100BASE-T (Clauses 21–30)

Sponsor

LAN MAN Standards Committee
of the
IEEE Computer Society

Approved 14 June 1995

IEEE Standards Board

Approved 4 April 1996

American National Standards Institute

2nd Printing, Corrected Edition

Abstract: The ISO/IEC CSMA/CD Media Access Control (MAC) is given an additional set of parameters for 100 Mb/s operation. A repeater and added Physical Layers, known collectively as 100BASE-T, as well as significant additional supporting material for a Media Independent Interface (MII), management, and automatic configuration, are specified. This includes 100BASE-T4, which uses four pairs of Category 3, 4, or 5 generic twisted, balanced cable; 100BASE-TX, which uses two pairs of Category 5 balanced cable or 150 Ω shielded balanced cable; and 100BASE-FX, which uses two multi-mode fibers. Fibre Distributed Data Interface (FDDI) media interface specifications are referenced to provide the 100BASE-TX and 100BASE-FX physical signaling channels, defined under the subcategory 100BASE-X.
Keywords: 100BASE-FX, 100BASE-T, 100BASE-T4, 100BASE-TX, 100BASE-X, Auto-Negotiation, Fast Ethernet, management, Media Independent Interface (MII), repeater

---

The Institute of Electrical and Electronics Engineers, Inc.
345 East 47th Street, New York, NY 10017-2394, USA

ISBN 1-55937-542-6

IEEE Standards documents are developed within the Technical Committees of the IEEE Societies and the Standards Coordinating Committees of the IEEE Standards Board. Members of the committees serve voluntarily and without compensation. They are not necessarily members of the Institute. The standards developed within IEEE represent a consensus of the broad expertise on the subject within the Institute as well as those activities outside of IEEE that have expressed an interest in participating in the development of the standard.

Use of an IEEE Standard is wholly voluntary. The existence of an IEEE Standard does not imply that there are no other ways to produce, test, measure, purchase, market, or provide other goods and services related to the scope of the IEEE Standard. Furthermore, the viewpoint expressed at the time a standard is approved and issued is subject to change brought about through developments in the state of the art and comments received from users of the standard. Every IEEE Standard is subjected to review at least every five years for revision or reaffirmation. When a document is more than five years old and has not been reaffirmed, it is reasonable to conclude that its contents, although still of some value, do not wholly reflect the present state of the art. Users are cautioned to check to determine that they have the latest edition of any IEEE Standard.

Comments for revision of IEEE Standards are welcome from any interested party, regardless of membership affiliation with IEEE. Suggestions for changes in documents should be in the form of a proposed change of text, together with appropriate supporting comments.

Interpretations: Occasionally questions may arise regarding the meaning of portions of standards as they relate to specific applications. When the need for interpretations is brought to the attention of IEEE, the Institute will initiate action to prepare appropriate responses. Since IEEE Standards represent a consensus of all concerned interests, it is important to ensure that any interpretation has also received the concurrence of a balance of interests. For this reason IEEE and the members of its technical committees are not able to provide an instant response to interpretation requests except in those cases where the matter has previously received formal consideration.

Comments on standards and requests for interpretations should be addressed to:

Secretary, IEEE Standards Board
445 Hoes Lane
P.O. Box 1331
Piscataway, NJ 08855-1331
USA

Note: Attention is called to the possibility that implementation of this standard may require use of subject matter covered by patent rights. By publication of this standard, no position is taken with respect to the existence or validity of any patent rights in connection therewith. The IEEE shall not be responsible for identifying all patents for which a license may be required by an IEEE standard or for conducting inquiries into the legal validity or scope of those patents that are brought to its attention.

Corrected Edition, June 1996

The following corrections have been made to this edition:

Page 23: The designation of reference [A5] has been corrected to ANSI/EIA/TIA 526-14-1990. *[Note that further updates to annex A can be found in ISO/IEC 8802-3: 1996.]*

Page 32: In the last line of text on the page, the word “fourth” has been corrected to “sixth.”

Page 174: In figure 24-11, the “BAD SSD” box text has been corrected. “RXD<3.0> ⇐ 1110” now reads “RXD<3:0> ⇐ 1110”.

Page 234: The page, containing subclauses 27.7.4.11 and 27.7.4.12, was inadvertently omitted from the first printing. It is now included.

Page 286: Under list item a), notes 2 and 3 were misnumbered and have been corrected. Also, references in notes 2 and 3 to table 29-2 have been corrected to table 29-3.

Page 301: In table 30-1d, “aAutoNegAdvertisedTechnologyAbilit” has been corrected to “aAutoNegAdvertisedTechnologyAbility”.

Page 312: In subclause 30.4.1.1.2, the reference to 20.2.2.3 for “other” has been corrected to 30.2.5.

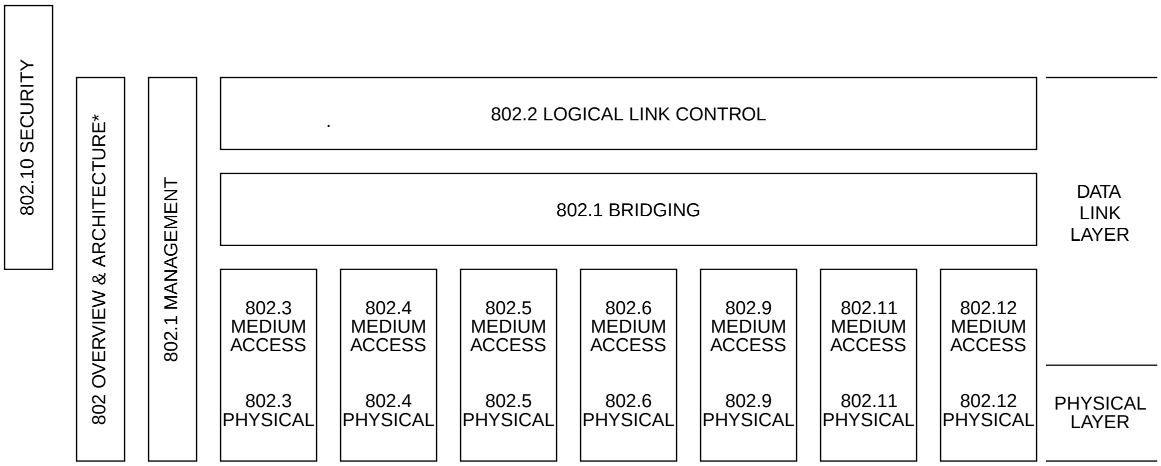
Page 323: In subclause 30.5.1.1.2, the reference to 20.2.2.3 for “other” has been corrected to 30.2.5.

Note that additional corrections are under consideration, and that some reference documents have been updated. These will be included in future maintenance documents.

Introduction

(This introduction is not part of IEEE Std 802.3u-1995.)

This standard is part of a family of standards for local and metropolitan area networks. The relationship between the standard and other members of the family is shown below. (The numbers in the figure refer to IEEE standard numbers.)



* Formerly IEEE Std 802.1A.

This family of standards deals with the Physical and Data Link layers as defined by the International Organization for Standardization (ISO) Open Systems Interconnection Basic Reference Model (ISO 7498 : 1984). The access standards define several types of medium access technologies and associated physical media, each appropriate for particular applications or system objectives. Other types are under investigation.

The standards defining the technologies noted above are as follows:

- IEEE Std 802[1]: Overview and Architecture. This standard provides an overview to the family of IEEE 802 Standards. This document forms part of the 802.1 scope of work.

- ANSI/IEEE Std 802.1B [ISO/IEC 15802-2]: LAN/MAN Management. Defines an Open Systems Interconnection (OSI) management-compatible architecture, and services and protocol elements for use in a LAN/MAN environment for performing remote management.

- ANSI/IEEE Std 802.1D [ISO/IEC 10038]: MAC Bridging. Specifies an architecture and protocol for the interconnection of IEEE 802 LANs below the MAC service boundary.

- ANSI/IEEE Std 802.1E [ISO/IEC 15802-4]: System Load Protocol. Specifies a set of services and protocol for those aspects of management concerned with the loading of systems on IEEE 802 LANs.

[1]The 802 Architecture and Overview standard, originally known as IEEE Std 802.1A, has been renumbered as IEEE Std 802. This has been done to accommodate recognition of the base standard in a family of standards. References to IEEE Std 802.1A should be considered as references to IEEE Std 802.

- ANSI/IEEE Std 802.2 [ISO/IEC 8802-2]: Logical Link Control

- ANSI/IEEE Std 802.3 [ISO/IEC 8802-3]: CSMA/CD Access Method and Physical Layer Specifications

- ANSI/IEEE Std 802.4 [ISO/IEC 8802-4]: Token Bus Access Method and Physical Layer Specifications

- ANSI/IEEE Std 802.5 [ISO/IEC 8802-5]: Token Ring Access Method and Physical Layer Specifications

- ANSI/IEEE Std 802.6 [ISO/IEC 8802-6]: Distributed Queue Dual Bus Access Method and Physical Layer Specifications

- IEEE Std 802.9: Integrated Services (IS) LAN Interface at the Medium Access Control (MAC) and Physical (PHY) Layers

- IEEE Std 802.10: Interoperable LAN/MAN Security, *Currently approved:* Secure Data Exchange (SDE)

- IEEE 802.12: Demand Priority Access Method/Physical Layer Specifications

In addition to the family of standards, the following is a recommended practice for a common Physical Layer technology:

- IEEE Std 802.7: IEEE Recommended Practice for Broadband Local Area Networks

The following additional working groups have authorized standards projects under development:

- IEEE 802.11: Wireless LAN Medium Access Control (MAC) Sublayer and Physical Layer Specifications

- IEEE 802.14: Standard Protocol for Cable-TV Based Broadband Communication Network

The reader of this standard is urged to become familiar with the complete family of standards.

Conformance test methodology

An additional standards series, identified by the number 1802, has been established to identify the conformance test methodology documents for the 802 family of standards. Thus the conformance test documents for 802.3 are numbered 1802.3, the conformance test documents for 802.5 will be 1802.5, and so on. Similarly, ISO will use 18802 to number conformance test standards for 8802 standards.

IEEE Std 802.3u-1995

At the time this standard (IEEE Std 802.3u-1995) was published, the IEEE 802.3 standard consisted of the following published documents:

— ISO/IEC 8802-3: 1993 [ANSI/IEEE Std 802.3, 1993 Edition]
— IEEE Std 802.3j-1993, Fiber Optic Active and Passive Star-Based Segments, Type 10BASE-F (Clauses 15–18)
— IEEE Std 802.3k-1992, Layer Management for 10 Mb/s Baseband Repeaters (Clause 19)
— IEEE Std 802.3l-1992, Type 10BASE-T Protocol Implementation Conformance Statement (PICS) Proforma (Subclause 14.10)
— IEEE Std 802.3p-1993 *and* IEEE Std 802.3q-1993, Guidelines for the Development of Managed Objects (GDMO) (ISO/IEC 10165-4) Format for Layer-Managed Objects (Clause 5) *and* Layer Management for 10 Mb/s Baseband Medium Attachment Units (MAUs) (Clause 20)
— IEEE Std 1802.3d-1993, Type 10BASE-T Medium Attachment Unit (MAU) (Conformance Test Methodology (Clause 6)

At the time this standard was published, there was revision and supplementary material that had been approved and scheduled for publication. Also, a new edition of ISO/IEC 8802-3 was in preparation to consolidate a significant amount of the above material. Information on the current state of this and other IEEE 802 standards may be obtained from

Secretary, IEEE Standards Board
445 Hoes Lane
P.O. Box 1331
Piscataway, NJ 08855-1331
USA

IEEE 802 committee working documents are available from

IEEE Document Distribution Service
AlphaGraphics #35 Attn: P. Thrush
10201 N. 35th Avenue
Phoenix, AZ 85051
USA

Patent information

The IEEE Standards Board calls attention to the fact that it is claimed that portions of IEEE Std 802.3u-1995 are the subject of patents owned by a number of companies. The IEEE takes no position with respect to patent validity. Each of these companies has assured IEEE that it is willing to grant a license on these patents on reasonable and nondiscriminatory terms to anyone wishing to obtain such a license. The undertakings of these companies in this respect are on file with the IEEE Standards Department, and the license details may be obtained by contacting the Standards Department.

Participants

When the IEEE 802.3 Working Group approved IEEE Std 802.3u-1995, it had the following membership:

Geoffrey O. Thompson, *Chair*
Peter Tarrant, *Type 100BASE-T Task Force Chair, Phase 1*
Howard Frazier, *Type 100BASE-T Task Force Chair, Phase 2*
Paul Sherer, *Editor-in-Chief, Phase 1*
Howard Johnson, *Editor-in-Chief, Phase 2*
Colin Mick, *Comment Editor*

Martin Adams
Don Aelmore
Paul Ahrens
Vish Akella
Abe Ali
Nitish Amin
Mike Armstrong
Denis Beaudoin
Larry Birenbaum*
Mark Bohrer
Paul Booth*
Samuel Bourche
David Bourque
Sidney Bouzaglo
Richard Bowers
Richard Brand
Charles E. Brill
Bill Bunch†
Peter Campbell
Kiwon Chang
Samuel Chang
Howard Charney
Hon Wah Chin
Jacques Christ
Ronald J. Cooper
Ron Crane
Ian Crayford*
Robert Curtis
Bernard Daines
Sean Dingman
Thuyen Dinh
Dan Dove
James Doyle
Peter Ecclesine
Dean Edwards
George Eisler
Nick Esser
Jim Everitt
David Fischer
Alan Flatman
Christian G. Folting
Atsuhisa Fukuoka
Wolfgang Heidasch
Walter Hurwitz†
Ernie Jensen
Clarence Joh
Anthony Jordan
Dieter Junkers
Omer Kal
Ron Kao
Yongbum Kim
Srinivas Kola
Josef Kozilek
George Kubovcik
Hans Lackner
Erik Lander
David Law*
Chun-Tsung Lee
Jack Lee
Vincent Lefebvre
Richard Lewis
Sam Liang
Chan-De Lin
Chang-Chi Liu
Terry Lockyer
Ken Lu
Andy J. Luque
Brian MacLeod
Kenneth MacLeod
Joseph Mazor
Mike McConnell
John McCool
Tim McShane
Mart L. Molle
Shimon Muller
Samba Murthy
Larry Nicholson
Paul Nikolich
Ahmad Nouri
J. Michael O'Connor
Lloyd Oliver
Pat Overs
Sandeep Patel
John Payne
Tony Peatfield
William Quackenbush
Thomas J. Quigley
Mohammad Rajabzadeh
Shlomo Rakib
Brian Ramelson
Peter Rautenberg
Dennis Rehm
Victor Renteria
Sean Riley
Gary Robinson
Khosrow Sadeghi
David Schwartz
Stephen Sedio
Rich Seifert
Koichiro Seto
Chen-Chung Shih
Som Sikdar
Charan J. Singh*
Paramjeet (P. J.) Singh
Dinah Sloan
Tom Slykhouse
Michael Smith
Dror Sofer
Gregory Somer
Walter Sotelo
Peter Staub
Ron Sulyma
Daniel Sze
Martin Takessian
Wen-Tsung Tang
Tim Teckman
Douglas Thomson
Nader Vijeh
Moshe Voloshin
Ikuo Wakayama
Chang Jung Wang
Yun-Che Wang
Ken Ward
Bob Watson
David Wong
Paul Woodruff*
Nariman Yousefi
Jamie Zartman

* served as sub-task force chair or clause editor
† served as clause editor but was not a working group member at the time of ballot

The following persons were on the balloting committee:

Don Aelmore
Bernhard Albert
Alan Albrecht
Abe Ali
Hasan S. Alkhatib
Corey Anderson
Kit Athul
William E. Ayen
Kendall F. Barney
Larry Birenbaum
Simon Black
Kwame Boakye
Kathleen L. Briggs
Peter K. Campbell
James T. Carlo
Alan J. Chwick
Alistair Coles
Ian Crayford
Robert S. Crowder
Joe Curcio
Ibibia K. Dabipi
Robert Donnan
Daniel Dove
Edward A. Dunlop
John E. Emrich
Alvin W. Eng
Philip H. Enslow, Jr.
Changxin Fan
John W. Fendrich
David Fifield
Michael Fischer
Christian G. Folting
Howard M. Frazier
Harvey A. Freeman
Robert J. Gagliano
D. G. Gan
Harry Gold
Patrick Gonia
Andrew Gruskay
Jacob J. Hsu
Howard Johnson
Gary C. Kessler
Mladen Kezunovic
Yongbum Kim
Mikio Kiyono
Kenneth C. Kung
David Law
Lanse M. Leach
Sam Liang
Randolph S. Little
Donald C. Loughry
Robert D. Love
William C. Lynch
Peter Martini
William C. McDonald
Tim J. McShane
Bennett Meyer
Colin K. Mick
Ann Miller
Bruce D. Miller
Richard H. Miller
David S. Millman
Warren Monroe
John E. Montague
Kinji Mori
David J. Morris
James R. Moulton
Wayne D. Moyers
Shimon Muller
Paul Nikolich
Ellis S. Nolley
Robert O'Hara
Donal O'Mahony
Young Oh
Joerg Ottensmeyer
Roger Pandanda
Lalit Mohan Patnaik
Lucy W. Person
Thomas L. Phinney
Kirk Preiss
Alberto Profumo
Vikram Punj
Andris Putnins
Brian Ramelson
Fernando Ramos
Eugene J. Reilly
Everett O. Rigsbee
Gary S. Robinson
Philip T. Robinson
James W. Romlein
Floyd E. Ross
S. I. Samoylenko
Frederick E. Sauer
Frederick Scholl
David Schwartz
Mick Seaman
John Selep
Koichiro Seto
Donald A. Sheppard
Leo Sintonen
William R. Smith
Harry P. Solomon
Robert K. Southard
Efstathios D. Sykas
Steven R. Taylor
Patricia Thaler
Geoffrey O. Thompson
Kaichi Tsuno
Mark-Rene Uchida
Barry M. Vornbrock
Yun-Che Wang
Alan J. Weissberger
Frank J. Weisser
Raymond P. Wenig
Earl J. Whitaker
Jerry A. Wyatt
Oren Yuen

When the IEEE Standards Board approved this standard on June 14, 1995, it had the following membership:

E. G. “Al” Kiener, *Chair* **Donald C. Loughry,** *Vice Chair*
Andrew G. Salem, *Secretary*

Gilles A. Baril
Clyde R. Camp
Joseph A. Cannatelli
Stephen L. Diamond
Harold E. Epstein
Donald C. Fleckenstein
Jay Forster*
Donald N. Heirman
Richard J. Holleman
Jim Isaak
Ben C. Johnson
Sonny Kasturi
Lorraine C. Kevra
Ivor N. Knight
Joseph L. Koepfinger*
D. N. “Jim” Logothetis
L. Bruce McClung
Marco W. Migliaro
Mary Lou Padgett
John W. Pope
Arthur K. Reilly
Gary S. Robinson
Ingo Rusch
Chee Kiow Tan
Leonard L. Tripp

*Member Emeritus

Also included are the following nonvoting IEEE Standards Board liaisons:

Satish K. Aggarwal
Richard B. Engelman
Robert E. Hebner
Chester C. Taylor

Kristin M. Dittmann
IEEE Standards Project Editor

Contents

CLAUSE PAGE

CLAUSE PAGE

CLAUSE PAGE

ANNEXES

ANNEXES PAGE

IEEE Standards for Local and Metropolitan Area Networks:

Supplement to Carrier Sense Multiple Access with Collision Detection (CSMA/CD) Access Method and Physical Layer Specifications

Revisions to ISO/IEC 8802-3 : 1993 [ANSI/IEEE Std 802.3, 1993 Edition]

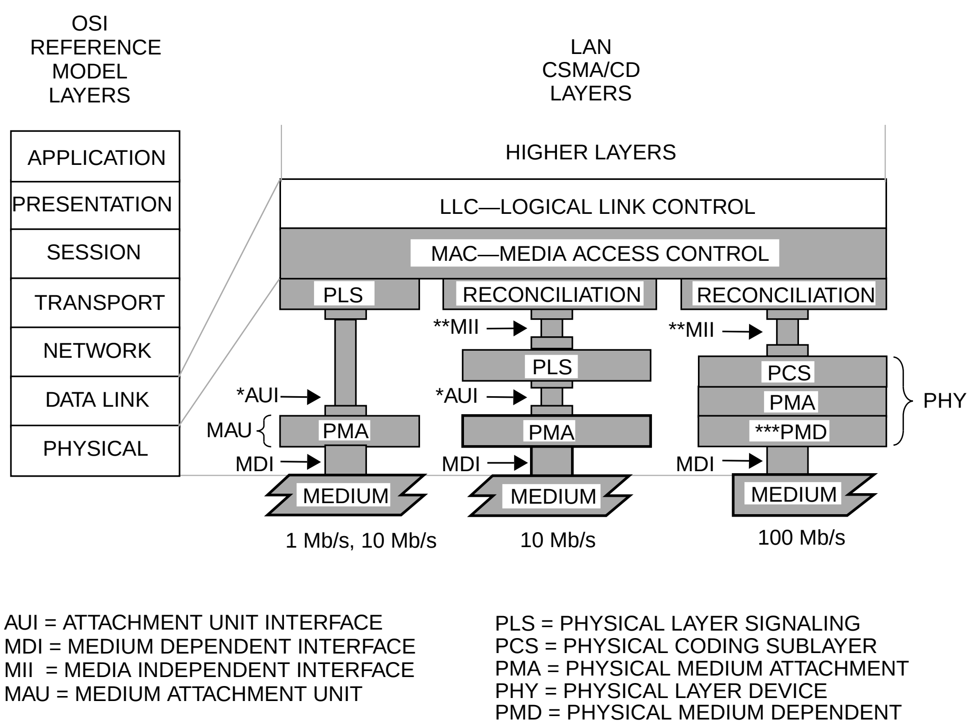
EDITORIAL NOTES

1—The following changes to ISO/IEC 8802-3 : 1993 [ANSI/IEEE Std 802.3, 1993 Edition] (and supplements 802.3j-1993, 802.3k-1992, 802.3l-1992, and 802.3p&q-1993) affect clauses 1, 2, 4, 5, 14, 19, 20, Annex A, and Annex D. These changes must also be applied to the 1995 edition of ISO/IEC 8802-3, which will incorporate all the supplements.

2—The text as shown includes editorial changes that accommodate recent changes to the IEEE style.

3—Editing instructions are shown in ***bold italic*** type. Where modifications are made to paragraphs of existing text, deletions are shown in ~~strikethrough type~~ and additions are underscored. Editorial notes will not be carried over into future editions.

Replace figure 1-1 with the following:



NOTE—The three types of layers below the MAC sublayer are mutually independent.
* AUI is optional for 10 Mb/s systems and is not specified for 1 Mb/s and 100 Mb/s systems.
** MII is optional for 10 Mb/s DTEs and for 100 Mb/s systems and is not specified for 1 Mb/s systems.
*** PMD is specified for 100BASE-X only; 100BASE-T4 does not use this layer.
For an exposed AUI residing below an MII, see 22.5.

Figure 1-1—LAN standard relationship to the ISO Opens Systems Interconnection (OSI) reference model

Change 1.1.1 to read as follows:

The Carrier Sense Multiple Access with Collision Detection (CSMA/CD) media access method is the means by which two or more stations share a common transmission medium. To transmit, a station waits (defers) for a quiet period on the medium (that is, no other station is transmitting) and then sends the intended message in bit-serial form. If, after initiating a transmission, the message collides with that of another station, then each transmitting station intentionally ~~sends a few additional bytes~~ transmits for an additional predefined period to ensure propagation of the collision throughout the system. The station remains silent for a random amount of time (backoff) before attempting to transmit again. Each aspect of this access method process is specified in detail in subsequent sections of this standard.

This is a comprehensive standard for Local Area Networks employing CSMA/CD as the access method. This standard is intended to encompass several media types and techniques for signal rates of from 1 Mb/s to ~~20 Mb/s~~ 100 Mb/s. This edition of the standard provides the necessary specifications for ~~10 Mb/s baseband and broadband systems, a 1 Mb/s baseband system, and a Repeater Unit.~~ three families of systems: a 1 Mb/s baseband system, 10 Mb/s baseband and broadband systems, and a 100 Mb/s baseband system.

Change 1.1.2.2 to read as follows:

~~Two~~ Three important compatibility interfaces are defined within what is architecturally the Physical Layer.

a) *Medium Dependent Interfaces (MDI).* To communicate in a compatible manner, all stations shall adhere rigidly to the exact specification of physical media signals defined in ~~Section~~ clause 8 (and beyond) in this standard, and to the procedures that define correct behavior of a station. The medium-independent aspects of the LLC sublayer and the MAC sublayer should not be taken as detracting from this point; communication by way of the ISO/IEC 8802-3 [ANSI/IEEE Std 802.3] Local Area Network requires complete compatibility at the Physical Medium interface (that is, the ~~coaxial~~ physical cable interface).
b) *Attachment Unit Interface (AUI).* It is anticipated that most DTEs will be located some distance from their connection to the ~~coaxial~~ physical cable. A small amount of circuitry will exist in the Medium Attachment Unit (MAU) directly adjacent to the ~~coaxial~~ physical cable, while the majority of the hardware and all of the software will be placed within the DTE. The AUI is defined as a second compatibility interface. While conformance with this interface is not strictly necessary to ensure communication, it is highly recommended, since it allows maximum flexibility in intermixing MAUs and DTEs. The AUI may be optional or not specified for some implementations of this standard that are expected to be connected directly to the medium and so do not use a separate MAU or its interconnecting AUI cable. The PLS and PMA are then part of a single unit, and no explicit AUI implementation is required.
c) *Media Independent Interface (MII).* It is anticipated that some DTEs will be connected to a remote PHY, and/or to different medium dependent PHYs. The MII is defined as a third compatibility interface. While conformance with implementation of this interface is not strictly necessary to ensure communication, it is highly recommended, since it allows maximum flexibility in intermixing PHYs and DTEs. The MII is optional.

1.3 References

Replace 1.3 with the following:

The following standards contain provisions which, through references in this text, constitute provisions of this International Standard. At the time of publication, the editions indicated were valid. All standards are subject to revision, and parties to agreements based on this International Standard are encouraged to investigate the possibility of applying the most recent editions of the standards listed below. Members of IEC and ISO maintain registers of currently valid International Standards.

EDITORIAL NOTE—In the following references, changes are not indicated by strikethroughs and underscores.

ANSI X3.237-199X, Rev 2.1 (1 January 1995), FDDI Low-Cost Fibre Physical Layer—Medium Dependent (LCF-PMD) (ISO/IEC CD 9314-9).[1]

ANSI X3.263: 199X, Revision 2.2 (1 March 1995), FDDI Twisted Pair—Physical Medium Dependent (TP-PMD) (ISO/IEC CD 9314-10).[2]

CISPR 22: 1985, Limits and Methods of Measurement of Radio Interference Characteristics of Information Technology Equipment.[3]

IEC 60, High-voltage test techniques.[4]

IEC 68, Basic environmental testing procedures.

IEC 96-1: 1986, Radio-frequency cables, Part 1: General requirements and measurement methods, and Amendment 2: 1993.

IEC 169-8: 1978 and -16: 1982, Radio-frequency connectors, Part 8: Radio-frequency coaxial connectors with inner diameter of outer conductor 6.5 mm (0.256 in) with bayonet lock—Characteristic impedence 50 ohms (Type BNC) and Part 16: Radio-frequency coaxial connectors with inner diameter of outer conductor 7 mm (0.276 in) with screw coupling—Characteristic impedence 50 ohms (75 ohms) (Type N).

IEC 380: 1985, Safety of electrically energized office machines.[5]

IEC 435: 1983, Safety of data processing equipment.[6]

IEC 603-7: 1990, Connectors for frequencies below 3 MHz for use with printed boards, Part 7: Detail specification for connectors, 8-way, including fixed and free connectors with common mating features.

IEC 793-1: 1992, Optical fibres, Part 1: Generic specification.

IEC 793-2: 1989, Optical fibres, Part 2: Product specifications.[7]

IEC 794-1: 1993, Optical fibre cables, Part 1: Generic specification.

IEC 794-2: 1989, Optical fibre cables, Part 2: Product specifications.

IEC 807-2: 1992, Rectangular connectors for frequencies below 3 MHz, Part 2: Detail specification for a range of connectors with assessed quality, with trapezoidal shaped metal shells and round contacts—Fixed solder contact types.

[1]Presently at stage of committee draft.

[2]Presently at stage of committee draft.

[3]CISPR documents are available from the International Electrotechnical Commission, 3 rue de Varembé, Case Postale 131, CH 1211, Genève 20, Switzerland/Suisse. CISPR documents are also available in the United States from the Sales Department, American National Standards Institute, 11 West 42nd Street, 13th Floor, New York, NY 10036, USA.

[4]IEC publications are available from International Electrotechnical Commission. IEC publications are also available in the United States from the American National Standards Institute.

[5]IEC 380: 1985 was withdrawn in 1991. It has been replaced by IEC 950: 1991.

[6]IEC 435: 1983 was withdrawn in 1991. It has been replaced by IEC 950: 1991.

[7]Subclause 9.9 is to be read with the understanding that the following changes to IEC 793-2: 1989 have been requested: a) Correction of the numerical aperture tolerance in table III to ±0.015; and b) Addition of another bandwidth category of 150 MHz referred to 1 km, for the type A1b fibre in table III.

IEC 825-1: 1993, Safety of laser products, Part 1: Equipment classification, requirements and user's guide.

IEC 874-1: 1993, Connectors for optical fibres and cables, Part 1: Generic specification.

IEC 874-2: 1993, Connectors for optical fibres and cables, Part 2: Sectional specification for fibre optic connector—Type F-SMA.

IEC 950: 1991, Safety of information technology equipment, including electrical business equipment.[8]

IEC 1076-3-101: 1995 [48B Secretariat 276], Detail specification for a range of shielded connectors with trapezoidal shaped shells and nonremovable rectangular contacts on a 1.27×2.54 millimeter centerline.[9]

IEEE Std 802-1990, IEEE Standards for Local and Metropolitan Area Networks: Overview and Architecture (ANSI).[10]

IEEE Std 802.1F-1993, IEEE Standards for Local and Metropolitan Area Networks: Common Definitions and Procedures for IEEE 802 Management Information (ANSI).

ISO 2382-9: 1984, Data processing—Vocabulary—Part 9: Data communications.[11]

ISO 7498: 1984, Information processing systems—Open Systems Interconnection—Basic Reference Model.

ISO/IEC 8824: 1990, Information technology—Open Systems Interconnection—Specification of Abstract Syntax Notation One (ASN.1).

ISO/IEC 8825: 1990, Information technology—Open Systems Interconnection—Specification of Basic Encoding Rules for Abstract Syntax Notation One (ASN.1).

ISO 9314-1: 1989, Information processing systems—Fibre Distributed Data Interface (FDDI)—Part 1: Token Ring Physical Layer Protocol (PHY).

ISO 9314-2: 1989, Information processing systems—Fibre Distributed Data Interface (FDDI)—Part 2: Token Ring Media Access Control (MAC).

ISO 9314-3: 1990, Information processing systems—Fibre Distributed Data Interface (FDDI)—Part 3: Physical Layer Medium Dependent (PMD).

ISO/IEC 10040: 1992, Information technology—Open Systems Interconnection—Systems management overview.

ISO/IEC 10164-1: 1993, Information technology—Open Systems Interconnection—Systems management—Object Management Function.

ISO/IEC 10165-1: 1993, Information technology—Open Systems Interconnection—Management information services—Structure of management information—Management Information Model.

---

[8]IEC 950: 1991 replaces IEC 380: 1985 and 435: 1983.

[9]Presently this is a committee draft.

[10]IEEE publications are available from the Institute of Electrical and Electronics Engineers, Service Center, 445 Hoes Lane, P.O. Box 1331, Piscataway, NJ 08855-1331, USA.

[11]ISO and ISO/IEC publications are available from the International Organization for Standardization, Case Postale 56, 1 rue de Varembé, CH-1211, Genève 20, Switzerland/Suisse. They are also available in the United States from the American National Standards Institute.

ISO/IEC 10165-2: 1992, Information technology—Open Systems Interconnection—Management information services—Structure of management information—Definition of management information.

ISO/IEC 10165-4: 1992, Information technology—Open Systems Interconnection—Management information services—Structure of management information—Part 4: Guidelines for the definition of managed objects.

ISO/IEC 7498-4: 1989, Information processing systems—Open Systems Interconnection—Basic Reference Model—Part 4: Management framework.

ISO/IEC 8877: 1992, Information technology—Telecommunications and information exchange between systems—Interface connector and contact assignments for ISDN Basic Access Interface located at reference points S and T.

ISO/IEC 9646-1: 1994, Information technology—Open Systems Interconnection—Conformance testing methodology and framework—Part 1: General concepts.

ISO/IEC 9646-2: 1994, Information technology—Open Systems Interconnection—Conformance testing methodology and framework—Part 2: Abstract Test Suite specification.

ISO/IEC 10165-4: 1992, Information technology—Open Systems Interconnection—Structure of management information—Part 4: Guidelines for the definition of managed objects.

ISO/IEC 11801: 1995, Information technology—Generic cabling for customer premises.

NOTE—Local and national standards such as those supported by ANSI, EIA, IEEE, MIL, NPFA, and UL are not a formal part of the ISO/IEC 8802-3 standard except where no international standard equivalent exists. Reference to such local or national standards may be useful resource material and are located in annex A.

1.4 Definitions

EDITORIAL NOTE—The definitions subclauses within several clauses of ISO/IEC 8802-3 are consolidated in this revised clause. In the following definitions, changes are not indicated by strikethroughs and underscores. See the end of this subclause for further editing instructions.

Replace 1.4 with the following text:

1.4.1 100BASE-FX: IEEE 802.3 Physical Layer specification for a 100 Mb/s CSMA/CD LAN over two optical fibers. (See IEEE 802.3 clauses 24 and 26.)

1.4.2 100BASE-T: IEEE 802.3 Physical Layer specification for a 100 Mb/s CSMA/CD LAN. (See IEEE 802.3 clauses 22 and 28.)

1.4.3 100BASE-T4: IEEE 802.3 Physical Layer specification for a 100 Mb/s CSMA/CD LAN over four pairs of Category 3, 4, and 5 unshielded twisted-pair (UTP) wire. (See IEEE 802.3 clause 23.)

1.4.4 100BASE-TX: IEEE 802.3 Physical Layer specification for a 100 Mb/s CSMA/CD LAN over two pairs of Category 5 UTP or shielded twisted-pair (STP) wire. (See IEEE 802.3 clauses 24 and 25.)

1.4.5 100BASE-X: IEEE 802.3 Physical Layer specification for a 100 Mb/s CSMA/CD LAN that uses the PMD sublayer and MDI of the ISO 9314 group of standards developed by ASC X3T12 (FDDI). (See IEEE 802.3 clause 24.)

1.4.6 10BASE2: IEEE 802.3 Physical Layer specification for a 10 Mb/s CSMA/CD LAN over RG 58 coaxial cable. (See IEEE 802.3 clause 10.)

1.4.7 10BASE5: IEEE 802.3 Physical Layer specification for a 10 Mb/s CSMA/CD LAN over coaxial cable (i.e., thicknet). (See IEEE 802.3 clause 8.)

1.4.8 10BASE-F: IEEE 802.3 Physical Layer specification for a 10 Mb/s CSMA/CD LAN over fiber optic cable. (See IEEE 802.3 clause 15.)

1.4.9 10BASE-FB port: A port on a repeater that contains an internal 10BASE-FB Medium Attachment Unit (MAU) that can connect to a similar port on another repeater. (See IEEE 802.3 clause 9, figure 15-1(b) and 17.3.)

1.4.10 10BASE-FB segment: A fiber optic link segment providing a point-to-point connection between two 10BASE-FB ports on repeaters. (See link segment IEEE 802.3 figure 15-1(b) and figure 15-2.)

1.4.11 10BASE-FL segment: A fiber optic link segment providing point-to-point connection between two 10BASE-FL MAUs. (See link segment IEEE 802.3 figure 15.1 (c) and figure 15-2.)

1.4.12 10BASE-FP segment: A fiber optic mixing segment, including one 10BASE-FP Star and all of the attached fiber pairs. (See IEEE 802.3 figure 15-1(a), figure 15-2, and mixing segment.)

1.4.13 10BASE-FP Star: A passive device that is used to couple fiber pairs together to form a 10BASE-FP segment. Optical signals received at any input port of the 10BASE-FP Star are distributed to all of its output ports (including the output port of the optical interface from which it was received). A 10BASE-FP Star is typically comprised of a passive-star coupler, fiber optic connectors, and a suitable mechanical housing. (See IEEE 802.3, 16.5.)

1.4.14 10BASE-T: IEEE 802.3 Physical Layer specification for a 10 Mb/s CSMA/CD LAN over two pairs of twisted-pair telephone wire. (See IEEE 802.3 clause 14.)

1.4.15 10BROAD36: IEEE 802.3 Physical Layer specification for 10 Mb/s CSMA/CD LAN over single broadband cable. (See IEEE 802.3 clause 11.)

1.4.16 1BASE5: IEEE 802.3 Physical Layer specification for 1 Mb/s CSMA/CD LAN over two pairs of twisted-pair telephone wire. (See IEEE 802.3 clause 12.)

1.4.17 ability: A mode that a device can advertise using Auto-Negotiation. For modes that represent a type of data service, a device shall be able to operate that data service before it may advertise this ability. A device may support multiple abilities. (See IEEE 802.3, 28.2.1.2.2.)

1.4.18 Acknowledge Bit: A bit used by IEEE 802.3 Auto-Negotiation to indicate that a station has successfully received multiple identical copies of the Link Code Word. This bit is only set after an identical Link Code Word has been received three times in succession. (See IEEE 802.3, 28.2.1.2.4.)

1.4.19 advertised ability: An operational mode that is advertised using Auto-Negotiation. (See IEEE 802.3, 28.2.1.2.2.)

1.4.20 agent code: A term used to refer to network management entity software residing in a node that can be used to remotely configure the host system based on commands received from the network control host, collect information documenting the operation of the host, and communicate with the network control host. (See IEEE 802.3 clause 30.)

1.4.21 agent: A term used to refer to the managed nodes in a network. Managed nodes are those nodes that contain a network management entity (NME), which can be used to configure the node and/or collect data describing operation of that node. The agent is controlled by a network control host or manager that contains both an NME and network management application (NMA) software to control the operations of agents.

Agents include systems that support user applications as well as nodes that provide communications services such as front-end processors, bridges, and routers. (See IEEE 802.3 clause 30.)

1.4.22 agile device: A device that supports automatic switching between multiple Physical Layer technologies. (See IEEE 802.3 clause 28.)

1.4.23 Attachment Unit Interface (AUI): In 10 Mb/s CSMA/CD, the interface between the MAU and the data terminal equipment (DTE) within a data station. Note that the AUI carries encoded signals and provides for duplex data transmission. (See IEEE 802.3 clauses 7 and 8.)

1.4.24 Auto-Negotiation: The algorithm that allows two devices at either end of a link segment to negotiate common data service functions. (See IEEE 802.3 clause 28.)

1.4.25 balanced cable: A cable consisting of one or more metallic symmetrical cable elements (twisted pairs or quads). (From ISO/IEC 11801: 1995.)

1.4.26 Base Link Code Word: The first 16-bit message exchanged during IEEE 802.3 Auto-Negotiation. (See IEEE 802.3, 28.2.1.2.)

1.4.27 Base Page: *See:* **Base Link Code Word**.

1.4.28 baseband coaxial system: A system whereby information is directly encoded and impressed upon the transmission medium. At any point on the medium only one information signal at a time can be present without disruption.

1.4.29 baud: A unit of signaling speed, expressed as the number of times per second the signal can change the electrical state of the transmission line or other medium. *Note*—Depending on the encoding strategies, a signal event may represent a single bit, more, or less that one bit. *Contrast with:* **bit rate**; **bits per second**. (From IEEE Std 610.7-1995 [A16].[12])

1.4.30 Binary Phase Shift Keying (Binary PSK or BPSK): A form of modulation in which binary data are transmitted by changing the carrier phase by 180 degrees. (See IEEE 802.3 clause 11.)

1.4.31 bit cell: The time interval used for the transmission of a single data (CD0 or CD1) or control (CVH or CVL) symbol.

1.4.32 bit rate (BR): The total number of bits per second transferred to or from the Medium Access Control (MAC). For example, 100BASE-T has a bit rate of one hundred million bits per second (10^8 b/s).

1.4.33 bit time (BT): The duration of one bit as transferred to and from the MAC. The bit time is the reciprocal of the bit rate. For example, for 100BASE-T the bit rate is 10^{-8} s or 10 ns.

1.4.34 BR/2: One half of the BR in Hertz.

1.4.35 branch cable: In 10BROAD36, the AUI cable interconnecting the DTE and MAU system components.

1.4.36 bridge: A layer 2 interconnection device that does not form part of a CSMA/CD collision domain but rather, appears as a MAC to the collision domain. (See also IEEE Std 610.7-1995 [A16].)

[12]Numbers in brackets correspond to those of the additional reference material in annex A.

1.4.37 Broadband LAN: A local area network in which information is transmitted on modulated carriers, allowing coexistence of multiple simultaneous services on a single physical medium by frequency division multiplexing. (See IEEE 802.3 clause 11.)

1.4.38 bundle: A group of signals that have a common set of characteristics and differ only in their information content.

1.4.39 carrier sense: In a local area network, an ongoing activity of a data station to detect whether another station is transmitting. *Note*—The carrier sense signal indicates that one or more DTEs are currently transmitting.

1.4.40 Category 3 balanced cable: Balanced 100 Ω and 120 Ω cables and associated connecting hardware whose transmission characteristics are specified up to 16 MHz (i.e., performance meets the requirements of a Class C link in accordance with ISO/IEC 11801: 1995). Commonly used by IEEE 802.3 10BASE-T installations. In addition to the requirements outlined in ISO/IEC 11801: 1995, IEEE 802.3 clause 23 specifies additional requirements for these cables when used with 100BASE-T4.

1.4.41 Category 4 balanced cable: Balanced 100 Ω and 120 Ω cables and associated connecting hardware whose transmission characteristics are specified up to 20 MHz in accordance with ISO/IEC 11801: 1995. In addition to the requirements outlined in ISO/IEC 11801: 1995, IEEE 802.3 clause 23 specifies additional requirements for these cables when used with 100BASE-T4.

1.4.42 Category 5 balanced cable: Balanced 100 Ω and 120 Ω UTP cables and associated connecting hardware whose transmission characteristics are specified up to 100 MHz (i.e., performance meets the requirements of a Class D link as per ISO/IEC 11801: 1995). In addition to the requirements outlined in ISO/IEC 11801: 1995, IEEE 802.3 clauses 23 and 25 specify additional requirements for these cables when used with 100BASE-T.

1.4.43 CATV-Type broadband medium: A broadband system comprising coaxial cables, taps, splitters, amplifiers, and connectors the same as those used in Community Antenna Television (CATV) or cable television installations. (See IEEE 802.3 clause 11.)

1.4.44 center wavelength: The average of two optical wavelengths at which the spectral radiant intensity is 50% of the maximum value. (See IEEE 802.3 clause 11.)

1.4.45 channel: A band of frequencies dedicated to a certain service transmitted on the broadband medium. (See IEEE 802.3 clause 11.)

1.4.46 circuit: The physical medium on which signals are carried across the AUI for 10BASE-T or MII (for 100BASE-T). For 10BASE-T, the data and control circuits consist of an A circuit and a B circuit forming a balanced transmission system so that the signal carrier on the B circuit is the inverse of the signal carried on the A circuit.

1.4.47 Class I repeater: A type of 100BASE-T repeater set with internal delay such that only one repeater set may exist between any two DTEs within a single collision domain when two maximum length copper cable segments are used. (See IEEE 802.3 clause 27.)

1.4.48 Class II repeater: A type of IEEE 802.3 100BASE-T repeater set with internal delay such that only two or fewer such repeater sets may exist between any two DTEs within a single collision domain when two maximum length copper cable segments are used. (See IEEE 802.3 clause 27.)

1.4.49 Clocked Data One (CD1): A Manchester-encoded data 1. A CD1 is encoded as a LO for the first half of the bit-cell and a HI for the second half of the bit-cell. (See IEEE 802.3 clause 12.)

1.4.50 Clocked Data Zero (CD0): A Manchester-encoded data 0. A CDO is encoded as a HI for the first half of the bit-cell and a LO for the second half of the bit-cell. (See IEEE 802.3 clause 12.)

1.4.51 Clocked Violation HI (CVH): A symbol that deliberately violates Manchester-encoding rules, used as a part of the Collision Presence signal. A CVH is encoded as a transition from LO to HI at the beginning of the bit cell, HI for the entire bit cell, and a transition from HI to LO at the end of the bit cell. (See IEEE 802.3 clause 12.)

1.4.52 Clocked Violation LO (CVL): A symbol that deliberately violates Manchester-encoding rules, used as a part of the Collision Presence signal. A CVL is encoded as a transition from HI to LO at the beginning of the bit cell, LO for the entire bit cell, and a transition from LO to HI at the end of the bit cell. (See IEEE 802.3 clause 12.)

1.4.53 coaxial cable interface: The electrical and mechanical interface to the shared coaxial cable medium either contained within or connected to the MAU. Also known as the Medium Dependent Interface (MDI).

1.4.54 coaxial cable section: A single length of coaxial cable, terminated at each end with a male BNC connector. Cable sections are joined to other cable sections via BNC plug/receptacle barrel or Type T adapters.

1.4.55 coaxial cable segment: A length of coaxial cable made up from one or more coaxial cable sections and coaxial connectors, and terminated at each end in its characteristic impedance.

1.4.56 coaxial cable: A two-conductor (center conductor, shield system), concentric, constant impedance transmission line used as the trunk medium in the baseband system.

1.4.57 Code Rule Violation (CRV): An analog waveform that is not the result of the valid Manchester-encoded output of a single optical transmitter. The collision of two or more 10BASE-FB optical transmissions will cause multiple CRVs. The preamble encoding of a single 10BASE-FP optical transmission contains a single CRV. (See IEEE 802.3, 16.3.1.1.)

1.4.58 code-bit: In 100BASE-X, the unit of data passed across the PMA service interface, and the smallest signaling element used for transmission on the medium. A group of five code-bits constitutes a code-group in the 100BASE-X PCS. (See IEEE 802.3 clause 24.)

1.4.59 code-group: For IEEE 802.3, a set of encoded symbols representing encoded data or control information. For 100BASE-T4, a set of six ternary symbols that, when representing data, conveys an octet. (See IEEE 802.3 clause 23.) For 100BASE-TX and 100BASE-FX, a set of five code-bits that, when representing data, conveys a nibble. (See IEEE 802.3 clause 24.)

1.4.60 collision domain: A single CSMA/CD network. If two or more MAC sublayers are within the same collision domain and both transmit at the same time, a collision will occur. MAC sublayers separated by a repeater are in the same collision domain. MAC sublayers separated by a bridge are within different collision domains.

1.4.61 collision presence: A signal generated within the Physical Layer by an end station or hub to indicate that multiple stations are contending for access to the transmission medium. (See IEEE 802.3 clauses 8 and 12.)

1.4.62 collision: A condition that results from concurrent transmissions from multiple DTE sources within a single collision domain.

1.4.63 common-mode voltage: The instantaneous algebraic average of two signals applied to a balanced circuit, with both signals referenced to a common reference. Also called *longitudinal voltage* in the telephone industry.

1.4.64 compatibility interfaces: The MDI cable, the AUI branch cable, and the MII; the three points at which hardware compatibility is defined to allow connection of independently designed and manufactured components to a baseband transmission medium. (See IEEE 802.3 clause 8.)

1.4.65 continuous wave (CW): A carrier that is not modulated or switched.

1.4.66 Control Signal One (CS1): An encoded control signal used on the Control In and Control Out circuits. A CS1 is encoded as a signal at half the bit rate (BR/2). (See IEEE 802.3 clause 12.)

1.4.67 Control Signal Zero (CS0): An encoded control signal used on the Control In and Control Out circuits. A CS0 is encoded as a signal at the bit rate (BR). (See IEEE 802.3 clause 12.)

1.4.68 cross connect: A group of connection points, often wall- or rack-mounted in a wiring closet, used to mechanically terminate and interconnect twisted-pair building wiring.

1.4.69 data frame: Consists of the Destination Address, Source Address, Length Field, logical link control (LLC) Data, PAD, and Frame Check Sequence.

1.4.70 Data Terminal Equipment (DTE): Any source or destination of data connected to the LAN.

1.4.71 dBmV: Decibels referenced to 1.0 mV measured at the same impedence. Used to define signal levels in CATV-type broadband systems. (See IEEE 802.3 clause 11.)

1.4.72 dedicated service: A CSMA/CD network in which the collision domain consists of two and only two DTEs so that the total network bandwidth is dedicated to supporting the flow of information between them.

1.4.73 differential-mode voltage: The instantaneous algebraic difference between the potential of two signals applied to the two sides of a balanced circuit. Also called *metallic voltage* in the telephone industry.

1.4.74 drop cable: In 10BROAD36, the small diameter flexible coaxial cable of the broadband medium that connects to a MAU. (*See:* **trunk cable**.)

1.4.75 eight-pin modular: An eight-wire connector. (From ISO/IEC 8877: 1992.)

1.4.76 End-of-Stream Delimiter (ESD): A code-group pattern used to terminate a normal data transmission. For 100BASE-T4, the ESD is indicated by the transmission of five predefined ternary code-groups named eop1-5. (See IEEE 802.3 clause 23.) For 100BASE-X, the ESD is indicated by the transmission of the code-group /T/R. (See IEEE 802.3 clause 24.)

1.4.77 Extinction Ratio: The ratio of the low optical power level to the high optical power level on an optical segment. (See IEEE 802.3 clause 15.)

1.4.78 Fast Link Pulse (FLP) Burst: A group of no more than 33 and not less than 17 10BASE-T compatible link integrity test pulses. Each FLP Burst encodes 16 bits of data using an alternating clock and data pulse sequence. (See figure 14-12, IEEE 802.3 clause 14 and figure 28-4, IEEE 802.3 clause 28.)

1.4.79 Fibre Distributed Data Interface (FDDI): A 100 Mb/s, fiber optic-based, token-ring LAN standard (ANSI X3T12, formerly X3.237-199X.

1.4.80 fiber optic cable: A cable containing one or more optical fibers as specified in IEEE 802.3, 15.3.1.

1.4.81 Fiber Optic Inter-Repeater Link (FOIRL): A Fiber Optic Inter-Repeater Link segment and its two attached MAUs. (See IEEE 802.3 clause 15.)

1.4.82 Fiber Optic Inter-Repeater Link Segment (FOIRL Segment): A fiber optic link segment providing a point-to-point connection between two FOIRL MAUs or between one FOIRL MAU and one 10BASE-FL MAU. *See:* **link segment**.

1.4.83 Fiber Optic Medium Attachment Unit (FOMAU): A MAU for fiber applications. (See IEEE 802.3 clause 9.)

1.4.84 Fiber Optic Medium-Dependent Interface (FOMDI): For 10BASE-F, the mechanical and optical interface between the optical fiber cable link segment and the FOMAU. (See IEEE 802.3 clause 9.)

1.4.85 Fiber Optic Physical Medium Attachment (FOPMA): For 10BASE-F, the portion of the FOMAU that contains the functional circuitry. (See IEEE 802.3 clause 9.)

1.4.86 fiber pair: Optical fibers interconnected to provide two continuous light paths terminated at each end in an optical connector. Any intermediate optical connections must have insertion and return loss characteristics that meet or exceed IEEE 802.3, 15.3.2.1 and 15.3.2.2, respectively. (See IEEE 802.3, 15.3.1.)

1.4.87 FOIRL BER: For 10BASE-F, the mean bit error rate of the FOIRL. (See IEEE 802.3 clause 9.)

1.4.88 FLP Burst Sequence: The sequence of FLP Bursts transmitted by the Local Station. This term is intended to differentiate the spacing between FLP Bursts from the individual pulse spacings within an FLP Burst. (See IEEE 802.3 clause 28.)

1.4.89 FOIRL collision: For 10BASE-F, the simultaneous transmission and reception of data in a FOMAU. (See IEEE 802.3 clause 9.)

1.4.90 FOIRL Compatibility Interface: For 10BASE-F, the FOMDI and AUI (optional); the two points at which hardware compatibility is defined to allow connection of independently designed and manufactured components to the baseband optical fiber cable link segment. (See IEEE 802.3 clause 9.)

1.4.91 FOMAU's Receive Optical Fiber: For 10BASE-F, the optical fiber from which the local FOMAU receives signals. (See IEEE 802.3 clause 9.)

1.4.92 FOMAU's Transmit Optical Fiber: For 10BASE-F, the optical fiber into which the local FOMAU transmits signals. (See IEEE 802.3 clause 9.)

1.4.93 full duplex: A type of networking that supports duplex transmission as defined in IEEE Std 610.7-1995 [A16]. Although some types of full-duplex networking are popularly referred to as Ethernet because they use the IEEE 802.3 defined frame, full duplex does not employ CSMA/CD and is not covered by this standard.

1.4.94 group: A repeater port or a collection of repeater ports that can be related to the logical arrangement of ports within a repeater.

1.4.95 group delay: In 10BROAD36, the rate of change of total phase shift, with respect to frequency, through a component or system. Group delay variation is the maximum difference in delay as a function of frequency over a band of frequencies. (See IEEE 802.3 clause 11.)

1.4.96 headend: In 10BROAD36, the location in a broadband system that serves as the root for the branching tree comprising the physical medium; the point to which all inbound signals converge and the point from which all outbound signals emanate. (See IEEE 802.3 clause 11.)

1.4.97 header hub (HH): The highest-level hub in a hierarchy of hubs. The HH broadcasts signals transmitted to it by lower level hubs or DTEs such that they can be received by all DTEs that may be connected to it either directly or through intermediate hubs. (See IEEE 802.3, 12.2.1 for details.)

1.4.98 hub: A device used to provide connectivity between DTEs. Hubs perform the basic functions of restoring signal amplitude and timing, collision detection, and notification and signal broadcast to lower level hubs and DTEs. (See IEEE 802.3 clause 12.)

1.4.99 idle (IDL): A signal condition where no transition occurs on the transmission line, that is used to define the end of a frame and ceases to exist after the next LO or HI transition on the AUI or MII circuits. An IDL always begins with a HI signal level. A driver is required to send the IDL signal for at least 2 bit times and a receiver is required to detect IDL within 1.6 bit times. (See IEEE 802.3, 7.3 and 12.3.2.4.4 for additional details.)

1.4.100 in-band signaling: The transmission of a signal using a frequency that is within the bandwidth of the information channel. *Contrast with:* **out-of-band signaling**. *Syn:* **in-channel signaling**. (From IEEE Std 610.7-1995 [A16].)

1.4.101 Inter-Repeater Link (IRL): A mechanism for connecting two and only two repeater sets.

1.4.102 Inter-Packet Gap (IPG): A delay or time gap between CSMA/CD packets intended to provide interframe recovery time for other CSMA/CD sublayers and for the Physical Medium. (See IEEE 802.3, 4.2.3.2.1 and 4.2.3.2.2.) For example, for 10BASE-T, the IPG is 9.6 μs (96 bit times); for 100BASE-T, the IPG is 0.96 μs (96 bit times.)

1.4.103 intermediate hub (IH): A hub that occupies any level below the header hub in a hierarchy of hubs. (See IEEE 802.3, 12.2.1 for details.)

1.4.104 Jabber function: A mechanism for controlling abnormally long transmissions (i.e., jabber.)

1.4.105 jabber: A condition wherein a station transmits for a period of time longer than the maximum permissible packet length, usually due to a fault condition.

1.4.106 link: The transmission path between any two interfaces of generic cabling. (From ISO/IEC 11801: 1995.)

1.4.107 Link Code Word: The 16 bits of data encoded into a Fast Link Pulse Burst. (See IEEE 802.3 clause 28.)

1.4.108 link partner: The device at the opposite end of a link segment from the local station. The link partner device may be either a DTE or a repeater. (See IEEE 802.3 clause 28.)

1.4.109 link pulse: Communication mechanism used in 10BASE-T and 100BASE-T networks to indicate link status and (in Auto-Negotiation-equipped devices) to communicate information about abilities and negotiate communication methods. 10BASE-T uses Normal Link Pulses (NLPs), which indicate link status only. 10BASE-T and 100BASE-T nodes equipped with Auto-Negotiation exchange information using a Fast Link Pulse (FLP) mechanism that is compatible with NLP. (See IEEE 802.3 clauses 14 and 28.)

1.4.110 link segment: The point-to-point full-duplex medium connection between two and only two MDIs.

1.4.111 Link Segment Delay Value (LSDV): A number associated with a given segment that represents the delay on that segment used to assess path delays for 100 Mb/s CSMA/CD networks. LSDV is similar to SDV; however, LSDV values do not include the delays associated with attached end stations and/or repeaters. (See IEEE 802.3, 29.3.)

1.4.112 local ability: *See:* **ability**.

1.4.113 local device: The local device that may attempt to Auto-Negotiate with a link partner. The local device may be either a DTE or repeater. (See IEEE 802.3 clause 28.)

1.4.114 Media Access Control (MAC): The data link sublayer that is responsible for transferring data to and from the Physical Layer.

1.4.115 Media Independent Interface (MII): A transparent signal interface at the bottom of the Reconciliation sublayer. (See IEEE 802.3 clause 22.)

1.4.116 Medium Attachment Unit (MAU): A device containing an AUI, PMA, and MDI that is used to connect a repeater or DTE to a transmission medium.

1.4.117 Medium Dependent Interface (MDI): The mechanical and electrical interface between the transmission medium and the MAU (10BASE-T) or PHY (100BASE-T).

1.4.118 Message Code (MC): The predefined 12-bit code contained in an Auto-Negotiation Message Page. (See IEEE 802.3 clause 28.)

1.4.119 Message Page (MP): An Auto-Negotiation Next Page encoding that contains a predefined 12-bit message code. (See IEEE 802.3 clause 28.)

1.4.120 Management Information Base (MIB): A repository of information to describe the operation of a specific network device.

1.4.121 mixing segment: A medium that may be connected to more than two MDIs.

1.4.122 network control host: A network management central control center that is used to configure agents, communicate with agents, and display information collected from agents.

1.4.123 Next Page Algorithm (NPA): The algorithm that governs Next Page communication. (See IEEE 802.3 clause 28.)

1.4.124 Next Page Bit: A bit in the Auto-Negotiation base Link Code Word or Next Page encoding(s) that indicates that further Link Code Word transfer is required. (See IEEE 802.3 clause 28.)

1.4.125 Next Page: General class of pages optionally transmitted by Auto-Negotiation-able devices following the base Link Code Word negotiation. (See IEEE 802.3 clause 28.)

1.4.126 nibble: A group of four data bits. The unit of data exchange on the MII. (See IEEE 802.3 clause 22.)

1.4.127 NLP Receive Link Integrity Test Function: Auto-Negotiation's Link Integrity Test function that allows backward compatibility with the 10BASE-T Link Integrity Test function of IEEE 802.3 figure 14-6. (See IEEE 802.3 clause 28.)

1.4.128 NLP sequence: A Normal Link Pulse sequence, defined in IEEE 802.3, 14.2.1.1 as TP_IDL.

1.4.129 Normal Link Pulse (NLP): An out-of-band communications mechanism used in 10BASE-T to indicate link status. (See IEEE 802.3 figure 14-12.)

1.4.130 NRZI-bit: A code-bit transferred in NRZI format. The unit of data passed across the PMD service interface in 100BASE-X.

1.4.131 NRZI: Non-Return-to-Zero, Invert on Ones. An encoding technique used in FDDI (ISO 9314-1: 1989, ISO 9314-2: 1989, ISO 9314-3: 1989) where a polarity transition represents a logical ONE. The absence of a polarity transition denotes a logical ZERO.

1.4.132 octet: A byte composed of eight bits. (From IEEE Std 610.7-1995 [A16].)

1.4.133 Optical Fiber Cable Interface: *See:* **FOMDI**.

1.4.134 Optical Fiber Cable Link Segment: A length of optical fiber cable that contains two optical fibers and is comprised of one or more optical fiber cable sections and their means of interconnection, with each optical fiber terminated at each end in the optical connector plug. (See IEEE 802.3, 9.9.5.1 and 9.9.5.2.)

1.4.135 optical fiber: A filament-shaped optical waveguide made of dielectric materials.

1.4.136 Optical Idle Signal: The signal transmitted by the FOMAU into its transmit optical fiber during the idle state of the DO circuit. (See IEEE 802.3 clause 9.)

1.4.137 Optical Interface: The optical input and output connection interface to a 10BASE-FP Star. (See IEEE 802.3 clause 15.)

1.4.138 out-of-band signaling: The transmission of a signal using a frequency that is within the pass band of the transmission facility but outside a frequency range normally used for data transmission. *Contrast with:* **in-band signaling**. (From IEEE Std. 610.7-1995 [A16].)

1.4.139 packet: Consists of a data frame as defined previously, preceded by the Preamble and the Start Frame Delimiter, encoded, as appropriate, for the PHY type.

1.4.140 page: In Auto-Negotiation, the encoding for a Link Code Word. Auto-Negotiation can support an arbitrary number of Link Code Word encodings. The base page has a constant encoding as defined in 28.2.1.2. Additional pages may have a predefined encoding *(see:* **Message Page**) or may be custom encoded *(see:* **Unformatted Page**).

1.4.141 parallel detection: In Auto-Negotiation, the ability to detect 100BASE-TX and 100BASE-T4 technology specific link signaling while also detecting the NLP sequence or FLP Burst sequence. (See IEEE 802.3 clause 28.)

1.4.142 Passive-Star Coupler: A component of a 10BASE-FP fiber optic mixing segment that divides optical power received at any of N input ports among all N output ports. The division of optical power is approximately uniform. (See IEEE 802.3 clause 15.)

1.4.143 patch cord: Flexible cable unit or element with connectors(s) used to establish connections on a patch panel. (From ISO/IEC 11801: 1995.)

1.4.144 patch panel: A cross-connect designed to accommodate the use of patch cords. It facilitates administration for moves and changes. (From ISO/IEC 11801: 1995.)

1.4.145 Path Delay Value (PDV): The sum of all Segment Delay Values for all segments along a given path. (See IEEE 802.3 clauses 13 and 29.)

1.4.146 Path Variability Value (PVV): The sum of all Segment Variability Values for all the segments along a given path. (See IEEE 802.3 clause 13.)

1.4.147 path: The sequence of segments and repeaters providing the connectivity between two DTEs in a single collision domain. In CSMA/CD networks there is one and only one path between any two DTEs.

1.4.148 Physical Coding Sublayer (PCS): A sublayer used in 100BASE-T to couple the MII and the PMA. The PCS contains the functions to encode data bits into code-groups that can be transmitted over the physical medium. Two PCS structures are defined for 100BASE-T—one for 100BASE-X and one for 100BASE-T4. (See IEEE 802.3 clauses 23 and 24.)

1.4.149 Physical Layer entity (PHY): The portion of the Physical Layer between the MDI and MII consisting of the PCS, PMA, and, if present, PMD sublayers. The PHY contains the functions that transmit, receive, and manage the encoded signals that are impressed on and recovered from the physical medium. (See IEEE 802.3 clauses 23–26.)

1.4.150 Physical Medium Attachment (PMA) sublayer: That portion of the Physical Layer that contains the functions for transmission, collision detection, reception, and (in the case of 100BASE-T4) clock recovery and skew alignment. (See IEEE 802.3 clauses 23 and 24.)

1.4.151 Physical Medium Dependent (PMD) sublayer: In 100BASE-X, that portion of the Physical Layer responsible for interfacing to the transmission medium. The PMD is located just above the MDI. (See IEEE 802.3 clause 24.)

1.4.152 Physical Signaling Sublayer (PLS): In 10BASE-T, that portion of the Physical Layer contained within the DTE that provides the logical and functional coupling between the MAU and the Data Link Layer.

1.4.153 port: A segment or IRL interface of a repeater unit.

1.4.154 postamble: In 10BROAD36, the bit pattern appended after the last bit of the Frame Check Sequence by the MAU. The Broadband End-of-Frame Delimiter (BEOFD). (See IEEE 802.3 clause 11.)

1.4.155 Priority Resolution Table: The look-up table used by Auto-Negotiation to select the network connection type where more than one common network ability exists (100BASE-TX, 100BASE-T4, 10BASE-T, etc.) The priority resolution table defines the relative hierarchy of connection types from the highest common denominator to the lowest common denominator. (See IEEE 802.3 clause 28.)

1.4.156 quad: *See:* **star quad**.

1.4.157 Reconciliation Sublayer (RS): A 100BASE-T mapping function that reconciles the signals at the MII to the MAC-PLS service definitions. (See IEEE 802.3 clause 22.)

1.4.158 remote fault: The generic ability of a link partner to signal its status even in the event that it may not have an operational receive link. (See IEEE 802.3 clause 28.)

1.4.159 renegotiation: Restart of the Auto-Negotiation algorithm caused by management or user interaction. (See IEEE 802.3 clause 28.)

1.4.160 repeater port: *See:* **port**.

1.4.161 repeater set: A repeater unit plus its associated Physical Layer interfaces (MAUs or PHYs) and, if present, AU or MI Interfaces (i.e., AUIs, MIIs).

1.4.162 repeater unit: The portion of a repeater that is inboard of its PMA/PLS or PMA/PCS interfaces.

1.4.163 repeater: A device used to extend the length, topology or interconnectivity of the physical medium beyond that imposed by a single segment, up to the maximum allowable end-to-end trunk transmission line length. Repeaters perform the basic actions of restoring signal amplitude, waveform, and timing applied to the normal data and collision signals. For wired star topologies, repeaters provide a data distribution function. In 100BASE-T, a device that allows the interconnection of 100BASE-T Physical Layer network segments using similar or dissimilar PHY implementations (e.g., 100BASE-X to 100BASE-X, 100BASE-X to 100BASE-T4, etc.). (See IEEE 802.3 clauses 9 and 27.)

1.4.164 Return Loss: In 10BROAD36, the ratio in decibels of the power reflected from a port to the power incident to the port. An indicator of impedance matching in a broadband system. (See IEEE 802.3 clause 11.)

1.4.165 router: A layer 3 interconnection device that appears as a MAC to a CSMA/CD collision domain. (See IEEE Std 610.7-1995 [A16].)

1.4.166 Seed: In 10BROAD36, the 23 bits residing in the scrambler shift register prior to the transmission of a packet. (See IEEE 802.3 clause 11.)

1.4.167 Segment Delay Value (SDV): A number associated with a given segment that represents the delay on that segment including repeaters and end stations, if present, used to assess path delays for 10 Mb/s CSMA/CD networks. (See IEEE 802.3, 13.4.)

1.4.168 Segment Variability Value (SVV): A number associated with a given segment that represents the delay variability on that segment (including a repeater) for 10 Mb/s CSMA/CD networks. The SVVs for different segment types are specified in IEEE 802.3 table 13-3. (See IEEE 802.3, 13.4.)

1.4.169 segment: The medium connection, including connectors, between MDIs in a CSMA/CD LAN.

1.4.170 Selector field: A five-bit field in the Base Link Code Word encoding that is used to encode up to 32 types of messages that define basic abilities. For example, selector field 00001 indicates that the base technology is IEEE 802.3. (See IEEE 802.3 clause 28.)

1.4.171 shared service: A CSMA/CD network in which the collision domain consists of more than two DTEs so that the total network bandwidth is shared among them.

1.4.172 shielded twisted-pair (STP) cable: An electrically conducting cable, comprising one or more elements, each of which is individually shielded. There may be an overall shield, in which case the cable is referred to as shielded twisted pair cable with an overall shield. (From ISO/IEC 11801: 1995.) Specifically for IEEE 802.3 100BASE-TX, 150 Ω balanced inside cable with performance characteristics specified to 100 MHz (i.e., performance to Class D link standards as per ISO/IEC 11801: 1995). In addition to the requirements specified in ISO/IEC 11801: 1995, IEEE 802.3 clauses 23 and 25 provide additional performance requirements for 100BASE-T operation over STP.

1.4.173 Simplex Fiber Optic Link Segment: A single fiber path between two MAUs or PHYs, including the terminating connectors, consisting of one or more fibers joined serially with appropriate connection devices, for example, patch cables and wall plates. (See IEEE 802.3 clause 15.)

1.4.174 simplex link segment: A path between two MDIs, including the terminating connectors, consisting of one or more segments of twisted pair cable joined serially with appropriate connection devices, for example, patch cords and wall plates. (See IEEE 802.3 figure 14-2.)

1.4.175 skew between pairs: The difference in arrival times of two initially coincident signals propagated over two different pairs, as measured at the receiving end of the cable. Total skew includes contributions from transmitter circuits as well as the cable.

1.4.176 special link (SL): A transmission system that replaces the normal medium. (See IEEE 802.3, 12.8.)

1.4.177 Spectral Width, Full-Width Half Maximum (FWHM): The absolute difference between the wavelengths at which the spectral radiant intensity is 50% of the maximum. (See IEEE 802.3 clause 15.)

1.4.178 spectrum mask: A graphic representation of the required power distribution as a function of frequency for a modulated transmission.

1.4.179 star quad: A cable element that comprises four insulated connectors twisted together. Two diametrically facing conductors form a transmission pair. *Note*—Cables containing star quads can be used interchangeably with cables consisting of pairs, provided the electrical characteristics meet the same specifications. (From ISO/IEC 11801: 1995.)

1.4.180 Start-of-Stream Delimiter (SSD): A pattern of defined code words used to delineate the boundary of a data transmission sequence on the Physical Layer stream. The SSD is unique in that it may be recognized independent of previously defined code-group boundaries and it defines subsequent code-group boundaries for the stream it delimits. For 100BASE-T4, SSD is a pattern of three predefined sosb code-groups (one per wire pair) indicating the positions of the first data code-group on each wire pair. For 100BASE-X, SSD consists of the code-group sequence /J/K/.

1.4.181 stream: The Physical Layer encapsulation of a MAC frame. Depending on the particular PHY, the MAC frame may be modified or have information appended or prepended to it to facilitate transfer through the PMA. Any conversion from a MAC frame to a PHY stream and back to a MAC frame is transparent to the MAC. (See IEEE 802.3 clauses 23 and 24.)

1.4.182 symbol: The smallest unit of data transmission on the medium. Symbols are unique to the coding system employed. 100BASE-T4 uses ternary symbols; 10BASE-T and 100BASE-X use binary symbols or code bits.

1.4.183 symbol rate (SR): The total number of symbols per second transferred to or from the Media Dependent Interface (MDI) on a single wire pair. For 100BASE-T4, the symbol rate is 25 megabaud; for 100BASE-X, the symbol rate is 125 megabaud.

1.4.184 symbol time (ST): The duration of one symbol as transferred to and from the MDI via a single wire pair. The symbol time is the reciprocal of the symbol rate.

1.4.185 Technology Ability Field: An eight-bit field in the Auto-Negotiation base page that is used to indicate the abilities of a local station, such as support for 10BASE-T, 100BASE-TX, 100BASE-T4, as well as full-duplex capabilities.

1.4.186 ternary symbol: In 100BASE-T4, a ternary data element. A ternary symbol can have one of three values: –1, 0, or +1. (See IEEE 802.3 clause 23.)

1.4.187 translation: In a single-cable 10BROAD36 system, the process by which incoming transmissions at one frequency are converted into another frequency for outgoing transmission. The translation takes place at the headend. (See IEEE 802.3 clause 11.)

1.4.188 truncation loss: In a modulated data waveform, the power difference before and after implementation filtering necessary to constrain its spectrum to a specified frequency band.

1.4.189 trunk cable: The main (often large diameter) cable of a coaxial cable system. (*See:* **drop cable**.)

1.4.190 twisted-pair cable binder group: A group of twisted pairs within a cable that are bound together. Large telephone cables have multiple binder groups with high interbinder group near-end crosstalk loss.

1.4.191 twisted-pair cable: A bundle of multiple twisted pairs within a single protective sheath. (From ISO/IEC 11801: 1995.)

1.4.192 twisted-pair link: A twisted-pair cable plus connecting hardware. (From ISO/IEC 11801: 1995.)

1.4.193 twisted-pair link segment: In 100BASE-T, a twisted-pair link for connecting two PHYs.

1.4.194 twisted pair: A cable element that consists of two insulated conductors twisted together in a regular fashion to form a balanced transmission line. (From ISO/IEC 11801: 1995.)

1.4.195 Unformatted Page (UP): A Next Page encoding that contains an unformatted 12-bit message field. Use of this field is defined through Message Codes and information contained in the UP. (See IEEE 802.3, 28.2.1.2.)

1.4.196 unshielded twisted-pair cable (UTP): An electrically conducting cable, comprising one or more pairs, none of which is shielded. There may be an overall shield, in which case the cable is referred to as unshielded twisted pair with overall shield. (From ISO/IEC 11801: 1995.)

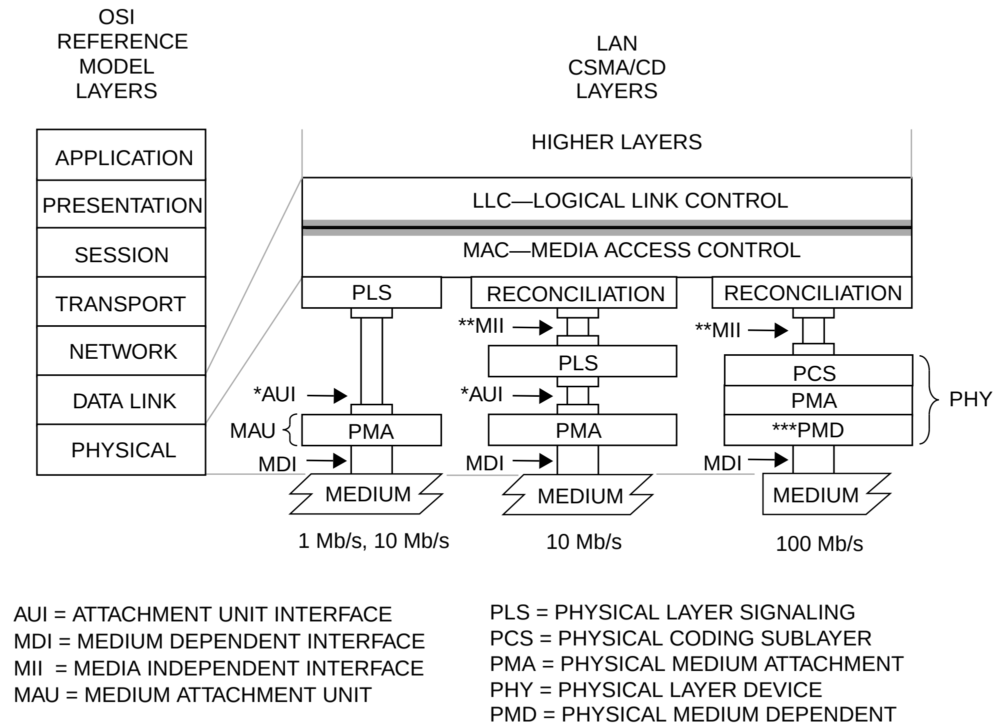
1.4.197 weight of 6T code group: The algebraic sum of the logical ternary symbol values listed in the 100BASE-T4 8B6T code table. (See IEEE 802.3 clause 23.)

Remove the definitions from 7.1.1, 8.1.2, 9.2, 10.1.2, 11.1.2, 12.1.3, 13.2, 14.1.2, 15.1.2, and 19.1.3 and insert the following text under each of these subclauses:

See 1.4.

2. MAC service specification

Replace figure 2-1 with the following:



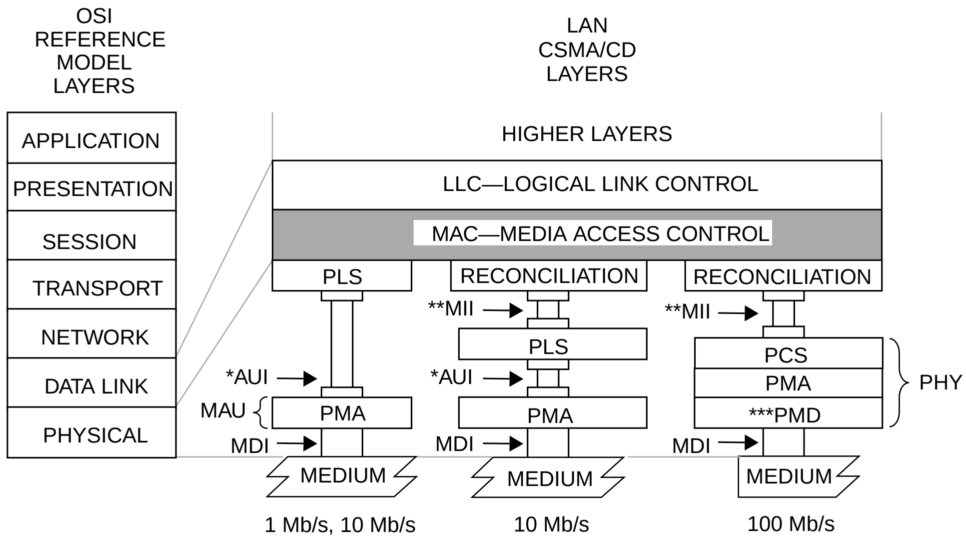
NOTE—The three types of layers below the MAC sublayer are mutually independent.

* AUI is optional for 10 Mb/s systems and is not specified for 1 Mb/s and 100 Mb/s systems.
** MII is optional for 10 Mb/s DTEs and for 100 Mb/s systems and is not specified for 1 Mb/s systems.
*** PMD is specified for 100BASE-X only; 100BASE-T4 does not use this layer.
For an exposed AUI residing below an MII, see 22.5.

Figure 2-1—Service specification relation to the LAN model

4. Media Access Control

Replace figure 4-1 with the following:



AUI = ATTACHMENT UNIT INTERFACE
MDI = MEDIUM DEPENDENT INTERFACE
MII = MEDIA INDEPENDENT INTERFACE
MAU = MEDIUM ATTACHMENT UNIT

PLS = PHYSICAL LAYER SIGNALING
PCS = PHYSICAL CODING SUBLAYER
PMA = PHYSICAL MEDIUM ATTACHMENT
PHY = PHYSICAL LAYER DEVICE
PMD = PHYSICAL MEDIUM DEPENDENT

NOTE—The three types of layers below the MAC sublayer are mutually independent.

* AUI is optional for 10 Mb/s systems and is not specified for 1 Mb/s and 100 Mb/s systems.
** MII is optional for 10 Mb/s DTEs and for 100 Mb/s systems and is not specified for 1 Mb/s systems.
*** PMD is specified for 100BASE-X only; 100BASE-T4 does not use this layer.
For an exposed AUI residing below an MII, see 22.5.

Figure 4-1—MAC sublayer partitioning, relationship to the ISO Open Systems Interconnection (OSI) reference model

Add to 4.4.2 the following subclause:

4.4.2.3 Parameterized values

The following parameter values shall be used for 100 Mb/s implementations:

Parameters	Values
slotTime	512 bit times
interFrameGap	0.96 µs
attemptLimit	16
backoffLimit	10
jamSize	32 bits
maxFrameSize	1518 octets
minFrameSize	512 bits (64 octets)
addressSize	48 bits

WARNING—Any deviation from the above specified values may affect proper operation of the network.

5. Layer management

Insert before 5.1:

Clause 5 is deprecated by clause 30.

14. Twisted-pair Medium Attachment Unit (MAU) and baseband medium, Type 10BASE-T

EDITORIAL NOTE—The following changes add references to Auto-Negotiation and specifications for Auto-Negotiation to the appropriate places in clause 14 of ISO/IEC 8802-3: 1993 [ANSI/IEEE Std 802.3-1993 Edition] and IEEE Std 802.3l-1992. (These changes will also identically affect the 1995 edition of ISO/IEC 8802-3.) The changes do not alter the specifications for existing systems.

In 14.2, renumber the list items (1) through (7) as a) through g) and add the following paragraph as the eighth functional capability:

h) Auto-Negotiation. Optionally provides the capability for a device at one end of a link segment to advertise its abilities to the device at the other end (its link partner), to detect information defining the abilities of the link partner, and to determine if the two devices are compatable.

Add to 14.2.1 the following sentence to the end of the paragraph:

The MAU may optionally provide the Auto-Negotiation algorithm. When provided, the Auto-Negotiation algorithm shall be implemented in accordance with clause 28.

Add to 14.2.1.1 the following paragraph after the fourth paragraph:

For a MAU that implements the Auto-Negotiation algorithm defined in clause 28, clause 28 shall define the allowable transmitted link pulse sequence.

Add to 14.2.1.7 the following sentence at the end of the fourth paragraph:

For a MAU that implements the Auto-Negotiation algorithm defined in clause 28, the MAU shall enter the LINK TEST FAIL RESET state at power-on as specified in clause 28. For a MAU that does not implement the Auto-Negotiation algorithm defined in clause 28, it is highly recommended that it also power-on in the LINK TEST FAIL RESET state, although implementations may power-on in the LINK TEST PASS state. For a MAU that implements the Auto-Negotiation function defined in clause 28, the Auto-Negotiation Technology Dependent Interface shall be supported. Supporting the Technology Dependent Interface requires that in the Link Integrity Test function state diagram ’link_status=OK’ is added to the LINK TEST PASS state and ’link_status=FAIL’ is added to the LINK TEST FAIL RESET state. Note these ISO message variables follow the conventions of clause 21.

Add to 14.3.1.2.1 the following paragraph after the sixth paragraph:

For a MAU that implements the Auto-Negotiation algorithm defined in clause 28, the FLP Burst Sequence will consist of multiple link test pulses. All link test pulses in the FLP Burst sequence shall meet the template requirements of figure 14-12 when measured across each of the test loads defined in figure 14-11; both with the load connected directly to the TD circuit and with the load connected through the twisted-pair model as defined in figures 14-7 and 14-8.

Add to 14.10.4.5.1 the following entry as the eighth parameter:

	Parameter	Section	Req	Imp	Value/Comment
8	Auto-Negotiation		C		Function provided by MAUs implementing the Auto-Negotiation algorithm, as defined in clause 28

Add this new subclause after 14.10.4.7:

14.10.4.8 PICS proforma tables for Auto-Negotiation-able MAUs

The following are conditional on whether the Auto-Negotiation algorithm is provided (clause 28).

	Parameter	Section	Req	Imp	Value/Comment
1	TP_IDL	14.2.1.1	C		Defined in clause 28.2.1
2	Link Integrity Test Function State Diagram power-on default	14.2.1.7	C		Power-on in Link Test Fail Reset state
3	Link Test Fail state exit conditions	14.2.1.7	C		autoneg_wait_timer expired and either RD = active or consecutive link test pulses = 3 min., 10 max
4	Technology Dependent Interface support	14.2.1.7	C		In the Link Integrity Test state diagram function ’link_status=OK’ is added to the LINK TEST PASS state and ’link_status=FAIL’ is added to the LINK TEST FAIL RESET state
5	Link test pulse waveform for FLP Burst with and without twisted-pair model	14.3.1.2.1	C		Within figure 14-10 template for, all pulses in FLP Burst, overshoot ≤ +50 mV after excursion below –50 mV

19. Layer management for 10 Mb/s baseband repeaters

EDITORIAL NOTE—This clause can be found in IEEE Std 802.3k-1992.

Insert the following phrase in front of 19.1:

Clause 19 is deprecated by clause 30.

20. Layer management for 10 Mb/s baseband Medium Attachment Units (MAUs)

EDITORIAL NOTE—This clause can be found in IEEE Stds 802.3p&q-1993.

Insert the following phrase in front of 20.1:

Clause 20 is deprecated by clause 30.

Annex A

(informative)[13]

Additional reference material

EDITORIAL NOTES

1—This clause was changed from Annex to Annex A by IEEE Std 802.3j-1993.

2—In the following references, changes are not indicated by strikethroughs and underscores.

3—The reference numbers in this annex do not correspond to those of ISO/IEC 8802-3: 1993 or the 1995 edition of ISO/IEC 8802-3.

Replace annex A with the following:

[A1] ANSI/EIA 364A: 1987, Standard Test Procedures for Low-Frequency (Below 3 MHz) Electrical Connector Test Procedure.

[A2] ANSI/EIA 455-34: 1985, Fiber Optics—Interconnection Device Insertion Loss Test.

[A3] ANSI/EIA/TIA 455-59-1989, Measurement of Fiber Point Defects Using an Optical Time Domain Reflectometer (ODTR).

[A4] ANSI/EIA/TIA 455-180-1990, FOTP-180, Measurement of the Optical Transfer Coefficients of a Passive Branching Device (Coupler).

[A5] ANSI/EIA/TIA 526-14-1990, Optical Power Loss Measurements of Installed Multimode Fiber Cable Plant.

[A6] ANSI/EIA/TIA 568-1991, Commercial Building Telecommunications Wiring Standard.

[A7] ANSI/IEEE Std 770X3.97-1983, IEEE Standard Pascal Computer Programming Language.[14]

[A8] ANSI/NFPA 70-1993, National Electrical Code.

[A9] ANSI/UL 94-1990, Tests for Flammability of Plastic Materials for Parts in Devices and Appliances.

[A10] ANSI/UL 114-1982, Safety Standard for Office Appliances and Business Equipment.[15]

[13]This annex is informative for the International Standard but normative for IEEE Std 802.3.

[14]ANSI/IEEE Std 770X3.97-1983 has been withdrawn; however, copies can be obtained from Global Engineering, 15 Inverness Way East, Englewood, CO 80112-5704, USA, tel. (303) 792-2181.

[15]ANSI/UL 114-1982 was withdrawn and replaced by ANSI/UL 1950-1994.

[A11] ANSI/UL 478-1979, Safety Standard for Electronic Data-Processing Units and Systems.[16]

[A12] ANSI/UL 1950-1994, Safety Standard for Information Technology Equipment Including Electrical Business Equipment.

[A13] ECMA-97 (1985), Local Area Networks Safety Requirements.

[A14] EIA CB8-1981, Components Bulletin (Cat 4) List of Approved Agencies, US and Other Countries, Impacting Electronic Components and Equipment.

[A15] FCC Docket 20780-1980 (Part 15), Technical Standards for Computing Equipment. Amendment of Part 15 to redefine and clarify the rules governing restricted radiation devices and low-power communication devices. Reconsidered First Report and Order, April 1980.

[A16] IEEE Std 610.7-1995, IEEE Standard Glossary of Computer Networking Terminology.

[A17] IEEE Std 802.9a-1995, IEEE Standards for Local and Metropolitan Area Networks: Integrated Services (IS) LAN: IEEE 802.9 Isochronous Services with Carrier Sense Multiple Access with Collision Detection (CSMA/CD) Media Access Control (MAC) Service.[17]

[A18] IEEE P1394/D8.0v3, Draft Standard for a High-Performance Serial Bus (July 7, 1995).

[A19] MIL-C-17F-1983, General Specification for Cables, Radio Frequency, Flexible and Semirigid.

[A20] MIL-C-24308B-1983, General Specifications for Connector, Electric, Rectangular, Miniature Polarized Shell, Rack and Panel.

[A21] AMP, Inc., Departmental Publication 5525, Design Guide to Coaxial Taps. Harrisburg, PA 17105, USA.

[A22] AMP, Inc., Instruction Sheet 6814, Active Tap Installation. Harrisburg, PA 17105, USA.

[A23] Brinch Hansen, P. *The Architecture of Concurrent Programs*. Englewood Cliffs, NJ: Prentice Hall, 1977.

[A24] Digital Equipment Corporation, Intel, Xerox, The Ethernet, Version 2.0, November 1982.

[A25] Hammond, J. L., Brown, J. E., and Liu, S. S. Development of a Transmission Error Model and Error Control Model. Technical Report RADC-TR-75-138. Rome: Air Development Center (1975).

[A26] Shoch, J. F., Dalal, Y. K., Redell, D. D., and Crane, R. C., “The Evolution of Ethernet,” *Computer Magazine*, August 1982.

[A27] UL Subject No 758: UL VW-1, Description of Appliance Wiring Material.

[16]ANSI/UL 478-1979 was withdrawn and replaced by ANSI/UL 1950-1994.

[17]As this standard goes to press, IEEE Std 802.9a-1995 is approved but not yet published. The approved draft standard is, however, available from the IEEE. Anticipated publication date is early 1996. Contact the IEEE Standards Department at 1 (908) 562-3800 for status information.

Annex D

(normative)

GDMO specifications for CSMA/CD managed objects

EDITORIAL NOTE—This annex can be found in IEEE Stds 802.3p&q-1993.

Insert the following note at three places immediately following the headings D1, D2, and D3:

NOTE—The arcs (that is, object identifier values) defined in annex 30A deprecate the arcs previously defined in D1 (Layer Management), D2 (Repeater Management), and D3 (MAU Management). See IEEE Std 802.1F-1993, annex C4.

IEEE Standards for Local and Metropolitan Area Networks:

Supplement to Carrier Sense Multiple Access with Collision Detection (CSMA/CD) Access Method and Physical Layer Specifications

Media Access Control (MAC) Parameters, Physical Layer, Medium Attachment Units, and Repeater for 100 Mb/s Operation, Type 100BASE-T (Clauses 21–30)

21. Introduction to 100 Mb/s baseband networks, type 100BASE-T

21.1 Overview

100BASE-T couples the ISO/IEC 8802-3 CSMA/CD MAC with a family of 100 Mb/s Physical Layers. While the MAC can be readily scaled to higher performance levels, new Physical Layer standards are required for 100 Mb/s operation.

The relationships between 100BASE-T, the existing ISO/IEC 8802-3 (CSMA/CD MAC), and the ISO Open System Interconnection (OSI) reference model is shown in figure 21-1.

100BASE-T uses the existing ISO/IEC 8802-3 MAC layer interface, connected through a Media-Independent Interface layer to a Physical Layer entity (PHY) sublayer such as 100BASE-T4, 100BASE-TX, or 100BASE-FX.

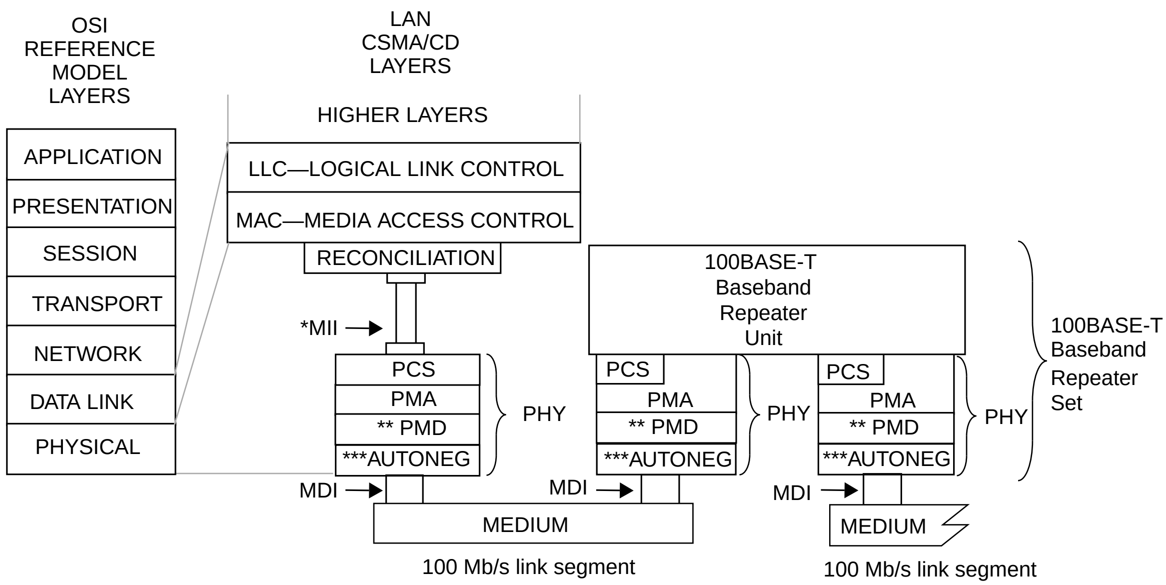
100BASE-T extends the ISO/IEC 8802-3 MAC to 100 Mb/s. The bit rate is faster, bit times are shorter, packet transmission times are reduced, and cable delay budgets are smaller—all in proportion to the change in bandwidth. This means that the ratio of packet duration to network propagation delay for 100BASE-T is the same as for 10BASE-T.

21.1.1 Reconciliation Sublayer (RS) and Media Independent Interface (MII)

The Media Independent Interface (clause 22) provides an interconnection between the Media Access Control (MAC) sublayer and Physical Layer entities (PHY) and between PHY Layer and Station Management (STA) entities. This MII is capable of supporting both 10 Mb/s and 100 Mb/s data rates through four bit wide (nibble wide) transmit and receive paths. The Reconciliation sublayer provides a mapping between the signals provided at the MII and the MAC/PLS service definition.

21.1.2 Physical Layer signaling systems

This standard specifies a family of Physical Layer implementations. 100BASE-T4 (clause 23) uses four pairs of ISO/IEC 11801: 1995 Category 3, 4, or 5 balanced cable. 100BASE-TX (clauses 24 and 25) uses two pairs of Category 5 balanced cable or 150 Ω shielded balanced cable as defined by ISO/IEC 11801: 1995. 100BASE-FX (clauses 24 and 26) uses two multi-mode fibers. FDDI (ISO 9314 and ANSI X3T12) Physical Layers are used to provide 100BASE-TX and 100BASE-FX physical signaling channels, which are defined in 100BASE-X (clause 24).



MDI = MEDIUM DEPENDENT INTERFACE
MII = MEDIA INDEPENDENT INTERFACE

PCS = PHYSICAL CODING SUBLAYER
PMA = PHYSICAL MEDIUM ATTACHMENT
PHY = PHYSICAL LAYER DEVICE
PMD = PHYSICAL MEDIUM DEPENDENT

* MII is optional for 10 Mb/s DTEs and for 100 Mb/s systems and is not specified for 1 Mb/s systems.
** PMD is specified for 100BASE-X only; 100BASE-T4 does not use this layer.
Use of MII between PCS and Baseband Repeater Unit is optional.
*** AUTONEG is optional.

Figure 21-1—Architectural positioning of 100BASE-T

21.1.3 Repeater

Repeater sets (clause 27) are an integral part of any 100BASE-T network with more than two DTEs in a collision domain. They extend the physical system topology by coupling two or more segments. Multiple repeaters are permitted within a single collision domain to provide the maximum path length.

21.1.4 Auto-Negotiation

Auto-Negotiation (clause 28) provides a linked device with the capability to detect the abilities (modes of operation) supported by the device at the other end of the link, determine common abilities, and configure for joint operation. Auto-Negotiation is performed out-of-band using a pulse code sequence that is compatible with the 10BASE-T link integrity test sequence.

21.1.5 Management

Managed objects, attributes, and actions are defined for all 100BASE-T components (clause 30). This clause consolidates all IEEE 802.3 management specifications so that 10 Mb/s, 100 Mb/s or 10/100 Mb/s agents can be managed by existing 10 Mb/s-only network management stations with little or no modification to the agent code.

21.2 Abbreviations

This document contains the following abbreviations:

8802-3	ISO/IEC 8802-3 (IEEE Std 802.3)
8802-5	ISO/IEC 8802-5 (IEEE Std 802.5)
ASIC	application-specific integrated circuit
ASN.1	abstract syntax notation one as defined in ISO/IEC 8824: 1990
AUI	attachment unit interface
BPSK	binary phase shift keying
BR	bit rate
BT	bit time
CAT3	Category 3 balanced cable
CAT4	Category 4 balanced cable
CAT5	Category 5 balanced cable
CD0	clocked data zero
CD1	clocked data one
CMIP	common management information protocol as defined in ISO/IEC 9596-1: 1991
CMIS	common management information service as defined in ISO/IEC 9595: 1991
CMOS	complimentary metal oxide semiconductor
CRC	cyclic redundancy check
CVH	clocked violation high
CVL	clocked violation low
CRV	code rule violation
CS0	control signal zero
CS1	control signal one
CW	continuous wave
DTE	data terminal equipment
ELFEXT	equal-level far-end crosstalk
ESD	end of stream delimiter
FCS	frame check sequence
FDDI	fibre distributed data interface
FEXT	far-end crosstalk
FIFO	first in, first out
FLP	fast link pulse
FOIRL	fiber optic inter-repeater link
FOMAU	fiber optic medium attachment unit
FOMDI	fiber optic medium dependent interface
FOPMA	fiber optic physical medium attachment
HH	header hub
IH	intermediate hub
IPG	inter-packet gap
IRL	inter-repeater link
LAN	local area network
LLC	logical link control
LSDV	link segment delay value
MAC	medium access control
MAU	medium attachment unit
MC	message code
MDELFEXT	multiple-disturber equal-level far-end crosstalk
MDFEXT	multiple-disturber far-end crosstalk
MDI	medium dependent interface
MDNEXT	multiple-disturber near-end crosstalk
MIB	management information base

MII	media independent interface
MP	message page
NEXT	near-end crosstalk
NLP	normal link pulse
NPA	next page algorithm
NRZI	non return to zero and invert on ones
PCS	physical coding sublayer
PDV	path delay value
PHY	Physical Layer entity sublayer
PICS	protocol implementation conformance statement
PLS	physical signaling sublayer
PMA	physical medium attachment
PMD	physical medium dependent
PMI	physical medium independent
PVV	path variability value
RS	reconciliation sublayer
SSD	start-of-stream delimiter
SDV	segment delay value
SFD	start-of-frame delimiter
SR	symbol rate
ST	symbol time
STA	station management entity
STP	shielded twisted pair (copper)
SVV	segment variability value
UCT	unconditional transition
UP	unformatted page
UTP	unshielded twisted pair

21.3 References

References are shown beginning on pages 2 and 23 of this document (as updates to 1.3 and annex A).

21.4 Definitions

Definitions are shown beginning on page 5 of this document (as an update to 1.4).

21.5 State diagrams

State machine diagrams take precedence over text.

The conventions of 1.2 are adopted, with the following extensions.

21.5.1 Actions inside state blocks

The actions inside a state block execute instantaneously. Actions inside state blocks are atomic (i.e., uninterruptible).

After performing all the actions listed in a state block one time, the state block then continuously evaluates its exit conditions until one is satisfied, at which point control passes through a transition arrow to the next block. While the state awaits fulfillment of one of its exit conditions, the actions inside do not implicitly repeat.

The characters • and [bracket] are *not* used to denote any special meaning.

Valid state actions may include .indicate and .request messages.

No actions are taken outside of any state block.

21.5.2 State diagram variables

Once set, variables retain their values as long as succeeding blocks contain no references to them.

Setting the parameter of a formal interface message assures that, on the next transmission of that message, the last parameter value set will be transmitted.

Testing the parameter of a formal interface messages tests the value of that message parameter that was received on the last transmission of said message. Message parameters may be assigned default values that persist until the first reception of the relevant message.

21.5.3 State transitions

The following terms are valid transition qualifiers:

a) Boolean expressions
b) An event such as the expiration of a timer: timer_done
c) An event such as the reception of a message: PMA_UNITDATA.indicate
d) An unconditional transition: UCT
e) A branch taken when other exit conditions are not satisfied: ELSE

Any open arrow (an arrow with no source block) represents a global transition. Global transitions are evaluated continuously whenever any state is evaluating its exit conditions. When a global transition becomes true, it supersedes all other transitions, including UCT, returning control to the block pointed to by the open arrow.

21.5.4 Operators

The state machine operators are shown in table 21-1.

Table 21-1—State machine operators

Character	Meaning
*	Boolean AND
+	Boolean OR
^	Boolean XOR
!	Boolean NOT
<	Less than
≤	Less than or equal to
=	Equals (a test of equality)
≠	Not equals
≥	Greater than or equal to
>	Greater than
( )	Indicates precedence
⇐	Assignment operator
∈	Indicates membership
∉	Indicates nonmembership
ELSE	No other state condition is satisfied

21.6 Protocol Implementation Conformance Statement (PICS) proforma

21.6.1 Introduction

The supplier of a protocol implementation that is claimed to conform to any part of the IEEE 802.3u 100BASE-T clauses 21 through 30 shall complete a Protocol Implementation Conformance Statement (PICS) proforma.

A completed PICS proforma is the PICS for the implementation in question. The PICS is a statement of which capabilities and options of the protocol have been implemented. A PICS is included at the end of each clause as appropriate. The PICS can be used for a variety of purposes by various parties, including the following:

a) As a checklist by the protocol implementor, to reduce the risk of failure to conform to the standard through oversight;
b) As a detailed indication of the capabilities of the implementation, stated relative to the common basis for understanding provided by the standard PICS proforma, by the supplier and acquirer, or potential acquirer, of the implementation;
c) As a basis for initially checking the possibility of interworking with another implementation by the user, or potential user, of the implementation (note that, while interworking can never be guaranteed, failure to interwork can often be predicted from incompatible PICS);
d) As the basis for selecting appropriate tests against which to assess the claim for conformance of the implementation, by a protocol tester.

21.6.2 Abbreviations and special symbols

The following symbols are used in the PICS proforma:

M	mandatory field/function
O	optional field/function
O.<n>	optional field/function, but at least one of the group of options labeled by the same numeral <n> is required
O/<n>	optional field/function, but one and only one of the group of options labeled by the same numeral <n> is required
X	prohibited field/function
<item>:	simple-predicate condition, dependent on the support marked for <item>
<item1>*<item2>:	AND-predicate condition, the requirement must be met if both optional items are implemented

21.6.3 Instructions for completing the PICS proforma

The first part of the PICS proforma, Implementation Identification and Protocol Summary, is to be completed as indicated with the information necessary to identify fully both the supplier and the implementation.

The main part of the PICS proforma is a fixed-format questionnaire divided into subclauses, each containing a group of items. Answers to the questionnaire items are to be provided in the right-most column, either by simply marking an answer to indicate a restricted choice (usually Yes, No, or Not Applicable), or by entering a value or a set or range of values. (Note that there are some items where two or more choices from a set of possible answers can apply; all relevant choices are to be marked.)

Each item is identified by an item reference in the first column; the second column contains the question to be answered; the third column contains the reference or references to the material that specifies the item in the main body of the standard; the sixth column contains values and/or comments pertaining to the question to be answered. The remaining columns record the status of the items—whether the support is mandatory, optional or conditional—and provide the space for the answers.

The supplier may also provide, or be required to provide, further information, categorized as either Additional Information or Exception Information. When present, each kind of further information is to be provided in a further subclause of items labeled A<i> or X<i>, respectively, for cross-referencing purposes, where <i> is any unambiguous identification for the item (e.g., simply a numeral); there are no other restrictions on its format or presentation.

A completed PICS proforma, including any Additional Information and Exception Information, is the Protocol Implementation Conformance Statement for the implementation in question.

Note that where an implementation is capable of being configured in more than one way, according to the items listed under Major Capabilities/Options, a single PICS may be able to describe all such configurations. However, the supplier has the choice of providing more than one PICS, each covering some subset of the implementation's configuration capabilities, if that would make presentation of the information easier and clearer.

21.6.4 Additional information

Items of Additional Information allow a supplier to provide further information intended to assist the interpretation of the PICS. It is not intended or expected that a large quantity will be supplied, and the PICS can be considered complete without any such information. Examples might be an outline of the ways in which a (single) implementation can be set up to operate in a variety of environments and configurations; or a brief rationale, based perhaps upon specific application needs, for the exclusion of features that, although optional, are nonetheless commonly present in implementations.

References to items of Additional Information may be entered next to any answer in the questionnaire, and may be included in items of Exception Information.

21.6.5 Exceptional information

It may occasionally happen that a supplier will wish to answer an item with mandatory or prohibited status (after any conditions have been applied) in a way that conflicts with the indicated requirement. No preprinted answer will be found in the Support column for this; instead, the supplier is required to write into the Support column an X<i> reference to an item of Exception Information, and to provide the appropriate rationale in the Exception item itself.

An implementation for which an Exception item is required in this way does not conform to this standard.

Note that a possible reason for the situation described above is that a defect in the standard has been reported, a correction for which is expected to change the requirement not met by the implementation.

21.6.6 Conditional items

The PICS proforma contains a number of conditional items. These are items for which both the applicability of the item itself, and its status if it does apply—mandatory, optional, or prohibited—are dependent upon whether or not certain other items are supported.

Individual conditional items are indicated by a conditional symbol of the form "<item>:<s>" in the Status column, where "<item>" is an item reference that appears in the first column of the table for some other item, and "<s>" is a status symbol, M (Mandatory), O (Optional), or X (Not Applicable).

If the item referred to by the conditional symbol is marked as supported, then 1) the conditional item is applicable, 2) its status is given by “<s>”, and 3) the support column is to be completed in the usual way. Otherwise, the conditional item is not relevant and the Not Applicable (N/A) answer is to be marked.

Each item whose reference is used in a conditional symbol is indicated by an asterisk in the Item column.

21.7 Relation of 100BASE-T to other standards

Suitable entries for table G1 of ISO/IEC 11801: 1995, annex G, would be as follows:

a) Within the section Balanced Cable Link Class C (specified up to 16 MHz):
CSMA/CD 100BASE-T4 ISO/IEC 8802-3/DAD 1995 4
b) Within the section Optical Link:
CSMA/CD 100BASE-FX ISO/IEC 8802-3/DAD 1995 2
c) Within the section Balanced Cable Link Class D (Defined up to 100 MHz):
CSMA/CD 100BASE-TX ISO/IEC 8802-3/DAD 1995 2

NOTE—To support 100BASE-T4 applications, class C links shall have a NEXT value of at least 3 dB in excess of the values specified in 6.2.4.

Suitable entries for table G2 of ISO/IEC 11801: 1995, annex G, would be as follows:

	Balanced cabling per clauses 5, 7, and 8							**Performance based cabling per clause 6**											
								Class A			**Class B**			**Class C**			**Class D**		
	Cat 3 100 Ω	**Cat 4 100 Ω**	**Cat 5 100 Ω**	**Cat 3 120 Ω**	**Cat 4 120 Ω**	**Cat 5 120 Ω**	**150 Ω**	**100 Ω**	**120 Ω**	**150 Ω**	**100 Ω**	**120 Ω**	**150 Ω**	**100 Ω**	**120 Ω**	**150 Ω**	**100 Ω**	**120 Ω**	**150 Ω**
8802-3: 100BASE-T4	I*	I*	I*		I	I								I			I*	I	
8802-3: 100BASE-TX			I*				I*										I*		I*

* 8802-3 imposes additional requirements on propagation delay.

A suitable entry for table G3 of ISO/IEC 11801: 1995, annex G, would be as follows:

	Fibre per 5, 7, and 8			Optical link per clause 8								
				Horizontal			Building backbone			Campus backbone		
	62.5/125 µm MMF	50/125 µm MMF	10/125 µm MMF	62.5/125 µm MMF	50/125 µm MMF	10/125 µm MMF	62.5/125 µm MMF	50/125 µm MMF	10/125 µm MMF	62.5/125 µm MMF	50/125 µm MMF	10/125 µm MMF
8802-3: 100BASE-FX	N	I		N	I		N	I		N	I	

21.8 MAC delay constraints (exposed MII)

100BASE-T makes the following assumptions about MAC performance. These assumptions apply to any MAC with an exposed MII used with a 100BASE-T PHY.

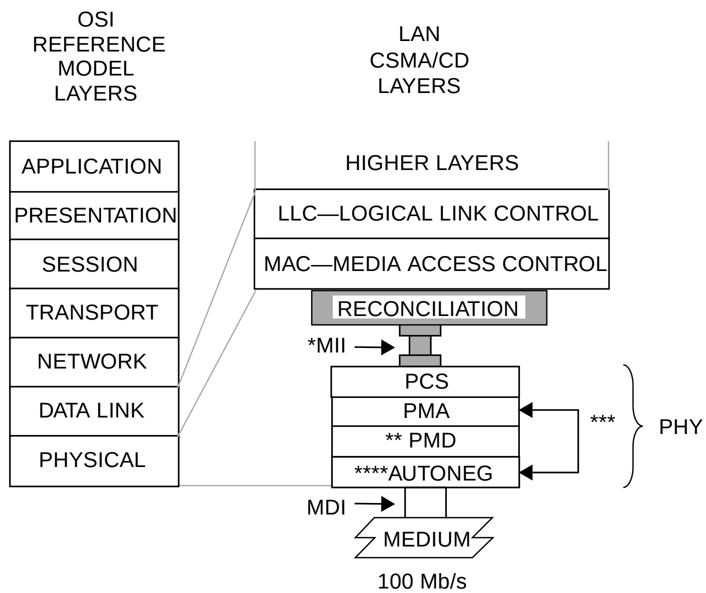
Table 21-2—MAC delay assumptions (exposed MII)

Sublayer measurement points	Event	Min (bits)	Max (bits)	Input timing reference	Output timing reference
MAC ⇔ MII	MAC transmit start to TX_EN sampled		4		TX_CLK rising
	CRS assert to MAC detect	0	8		
	CRS de-assert to MAC detect	0	8		
	CRS assert to TX_EN sampled (worst case nondeferred transmit)		16		TX_CLK rising
	COL assert to MAC detect	0	8		
	COL de-assert to MAC detect	0	8		
	COL assert to TXD = Jam sampled (worst-case collision response)		16		TX_CLK rising; first nibble of jam

22. Reconciliation Sublayer (RS) and Media Independent Interface (MII)

22.1 Overview

This clause defines the logical, electrical, and mechanical characteristics for the Reconciliation Sublayer (RS) and Media Independent Interface (MII) between CSMA/CD media access controllers and various PHYs. Figure 22-1 shows the relationship of the Reconciliation sublayer and MII to the ISO (IEEE) OSI reference model.



MDI = MEDIUM DEPENDENT INTERFACE
MII = MEDIUM INDEPENDENT INTERFACE

PCS = PHYSICAL CODING SUBLAYER
PMA = PHYSICAL MEDIUM ATTACHMENT
PHY = PHYSICAL LAYER ENTITY
PMD = PHYSICAL MEDIUM DEPENDENT

* MII is optional for 10 Mb/s DTEs and for 100 Mb/s systems and is not specified for 1 Mb/s systems.
** PMD is specified for 100BASE-TX and -FX only; 100BASE-T4 does not use this layer.
*** AUTONEG communicates with the PMA sublayer through the PMA service interface messages PMA_LINK.request and PMA_LINK.indicate.
**** AUTONEG is optional.

Figure 22-1—MII location in the protocol stack

The purpose of this interface is to provide a simple, inexpensive, and easy-to-implement interconnection between Media Access Control (MAC) sublayer and PHYs, and between PHYs and Station Management (STA) entities.

This interface has the following characteristics:

a) It is capable of supporting both 10 Mb/s and 100 Mb/s data rates.
b) Data and delimiters are synchronous to clock references.
c) It provides independent four bit wide transmit and receive data paths.
d) It uses TTL signal levels, compatible with common digital CMOS ASIC processes.
e) It provides a simple management interface.
f) It is capable of driving a limited length of shielded cable.

22.1.1 Summary of major concepts

a) Each direction of data transfer is serviced with seven (making a total of 14) signals: Data (a four-bit bundle), Delimiter, Error, and Clock.
b) Two media status signals are provided. One indicates the presence of carrier, and the other indicates the occurrence of a collision.
c) A management interface comprised of two signals provides access to management parameters and services.
d) The Reconciliation sublayer maps the signal set provided at the MII to the PLS service definition specified in clause 6.

22.1.2 Application

This clause applies to the interface between MAC sublayer and PHYs, and between PHYs and Station Management entities. The implementation of the interface may assume any of the following three forms:

a) A chip-to-chip (integrated circuit to integrated circuit) interface implemented with traces on a printed circuit board.
b) A motherboard to daughterboard interface between two or more printed circuit boards.
c) An interface between two printed circuit assemblies that are attached with a length of cable and an appropriate connector.

Figure 22-2 provides an example of the third application environment listed above. All MII conformance tests are performed at the mating surfaces of the MII connector, identified by the line A-A.

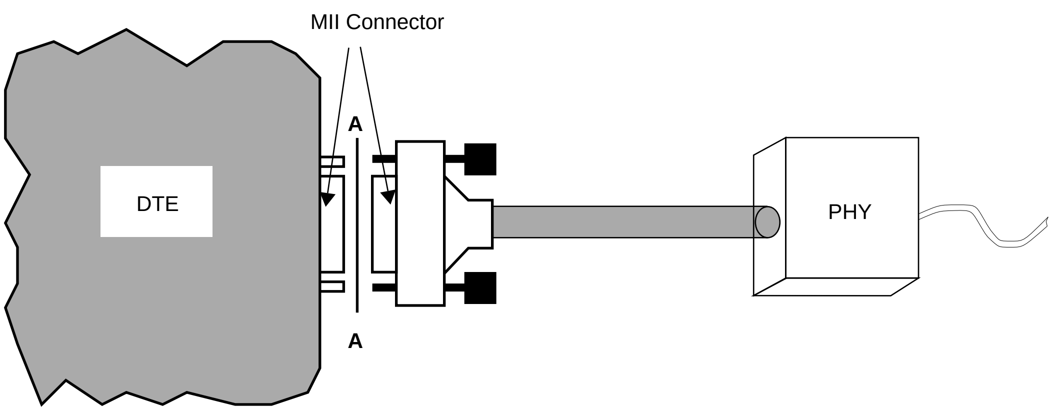


Figure 22-2—Example application showing location of conformance test

This interface is used to provide media independence for various forms of unshielded twisted-pair wiring, shielded twisted-pair wiring, fiber optic cabling, and potentially other media, so that identical media access controllers may be used with any of these media.

To allow for the possibility that multiple PHYs may be controlled by a single Station Management entity, the MII management interface has provisions to accommodate up to 32 PHYs, with the restriction that a maximum of one PHY may be attached to a management interface via the mechanical interface defined in 22.6.

22.1.3 Rates of operation

The MII can support two specific data rates, 10 Mb/s and 100 Mb/s. The functionality is identical at both data rates, as are the signal timing relationships. The only difference between 10 Mb/s and 100 Mb/s operation is the nominal clock frequency.

PHYs that provide an MII are not required to support both data rates, and may support either one or both. PHYs must report the rates they are capable of operating at via the management interface, as described in 22.2.4.

22.1.4 Allocation of functions

The allocation of functions at the MII is such that it readily lends itself to implementation in both PHYs and MAC sublayer entities. The division of functions balances the need for media independence with the need for a simple and cost-effective interface.

While the Attachment Unit Interface (AUI) was defined to exist between the Physical Signaling (PLS) and Physical Media Attachment (PMA) sublayers for 10 Mb/s DTEs, the MII maximizes media independence by cleanly separating the Data Link and Physical Layers of the ISO (IEEE) seven-layer reference model. This allocation also recognizes that implementations can benefit from a close coupling of the PLS or PCS sublayer and the PMA sublayer.

22.2 Functional specifications

The MII is designed to make the differences among the various media absolutely transparent to the MAC sublayer. The selection of logical control signals and the functional procedures are all designed to this end. Additionally, the MII is designed to be easily implemented at minimal cost using conventional design techniques and manufacturing processes.

22.2.1 Mapping of MII signals to PLS service primitives and Station Management

The Reconciliation sublayer maps the signals provided at the MII to the PLS service primitives defined in clause 6. The PLS service primitives provided by the Reconciliation sublayer behave in exactly the same manner as defined in clause 6. The MII signals are defined in detail in 22.2.2 below.

Figure 22-3 depicts a schematic view of the Reconciliation sublayer inputs and outputs, and demonstrates that the MII management interface is controlled by the Station Management entity (STA).

22.2.1.1 Mapping of PLS_DATA.request

22.2.1.1.1 Function

Map the primitive PLS_DATA.request to the MII signals TXD<3:0>, TX_EN and TX_CLK.

22.2.1.1.2 Semantics of the service primitive

PLS_DATA.request (OUTPUT_UNIT)

The OUTPUT_UNIT parameter can take one of three values: ONE, ZERO, or DATA_COMPLETE. It represents a single data bit. The values ONE and ZERO are conveyed by the signals TXD<3>, TXD<2>, TXD<1> and TXD<0>, each of which conveys one bit of data while TX_EN is asserted. The value DATA_COMPLETE is conveyed by the de-assertion of TX_EN. Synchronization between the Reconciliation sublayer and the PHY is achieved by way of the TX_CLK signal.

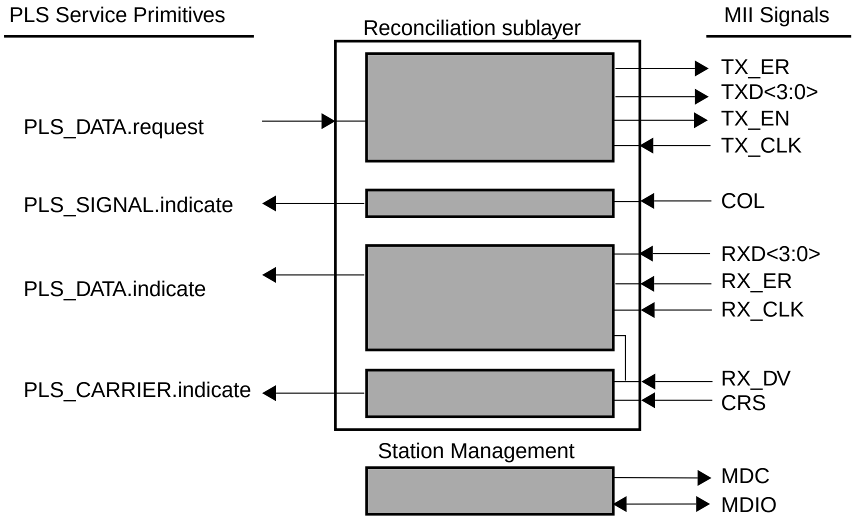


Figure 22-3—Reconciliation Sublayer (RS) inputs and outputs and STA connections to MII

22.2.1.1.3 When generated

The TX_CLK signal is generated by the PHY. The TXD<3:0> and TX_EN signals are generated by the Reconciliation sublayer after every group of four PLS_DATA.request transactions from the MAC sublayer to request the transmission of four data bits on the physical medium or to stop transmission.

22.2.1.2 Mapping of PLS_DATA.indicate

22.2.1.2.1 Function

Map the primitive PLS_DATA.indicate to the MII signals RXD<3:0>, RX_DV, RX_ER, and RX_CLK.

22.2.1.2.2 Semantics of the service primitive

PLS_DATA.indicate (INPUT_UNIT)

The INPUT_UNIT parameter can take one of two values: ONE or ZERO. It represents a single data bit. The values ONE and ZERO are derived from the signals RXD<3>, RXD<2>, RXD<1>, and RXD<0>, each of which represents one bit of data while RX_DV is asserted.

The value of the data transferred to the MAC is controlled by the RX_ER signal, see 22.2.1.5, Response to RX_ER indication from MII.

Synchronization between the PHY and the Reconciliation sublayer is achieved by way of the RX_CLK signal.

22.2.1.2.3 When generated

This primitive is generated to all MAC sublayer entities in the network after a PLS_DATA.request is issued. Each nibble of data transferred on RXD<3:0> will result in the generation of four PLS_DATA.indicate transactions.

22.2.1.3 Mapping of PLS_CARRIER.indicate

22.2.1.3.1 Function

Map the primitive PLS_CARRIER.indicate to the MII signals CRS and RX_DV.

22.2.1.3.2 Semantics of the service primitive

PLS_CARRIER.indicate (CARRIER_STATUS)

The CARRIER_STATUS parameter can take one of two values: CARRIER_ON or CARRIER_OFF. The values CARRIER_ON and CARRIER_OFF are derived from the MII signals CRS and RX_DV.

22.2.1.3.3 When generated

The PLS_CARRIER.indicate service primitive is generated by the Reconciliation sublayer whenever the CARRIER_STATUS parameter changes from CARRIER_ON to CARRIER_OFF or vice versa.

While the RX_DV signal is de-asserted, any transition of the CRS signal from de-asserted to asserted must cause a transition of CARRIER_STATUS from the CARRIER_OFF to the CARRIER_ON value, and any transition of the CRS signal from asserted to de-asserted must cause a transition of CARRIER_STATUS from the CARRIER_ON to the CARRIER_OFF value. At any time after CRS and RX_DV are both asserted, de-assertion of RX_DV must cause CARRIER_STATUS to transition to the CARRIER_OFF value. This transition of CARRIER_STATUS from the CARRIER_ON to the CARRIER_OFF value must be recognized by the MAC sublayer, even if the CRS signal is still asserted at the time.

NOTE—The behavior of the CRS signal is specified within this clause so that it can be mapped directly (with the appropriate implementation-specific synchronization) to the carrierSense variable in the MAC process Deference, which is described in 4.2.8. The behavior of the RX_DV signal is specified within this clause so that it can be mapped directly to the carrierSense variable in the MAC process BitReceiver, which is described in 4.2.9, provided that the MAC process BitReceiver is implemented to receive a nibble of data on each cycle through the inner loop.

22.2.1.4 Mapping of PLS_SIGNAL.indicate

22.2.1.4.1 Function

Map the primitive PLS_SIGNAL.indicate to the MII signal COL.

22.2.1.4.2 Semantics of the service primitive

PLS_SIGNAL.indicate (SIGNAL_STATUS)

The SIGNAL_STATUS parameter can take one of two values: SIGNAL_ERROR or NO_SIGNAL_ERROR. SIGNAL_STATUS assumes the value SIGNAL_ERROR when the MII signal COL is asserted, and assumes the value NO_SIGNAL_ERROR when COL is de-asserted.

22.2.1.4.3 When generated

The PLS_SIGNAL.indicate service primitive is generated whenever SIGNAL_STATUS makes a transition from SIGNAL_ERROR to NO_SIGNAL_ERROR or vice versa.

22.2.1.5 Response to RX_ER indication from MII

If, during frame reception, both RX_DV and RX_ER are asserted, the Reconciliation sublayer shall ensure that the MAC will detect a FrameCheckError in that frame.

This requirement may be met by incorporating a function in the Reconciliation sublayer that produces a result that is guaranteed to be not equal to the CRC result, as specified by the algorithm in 3.2.8, of the sequence of nibbles comprising the received frame as delivered to the MAC sublayer. The Reconciliation sublayer must then ensure that the result of this function is delivered to the MAC sublayer at the end of the received frame in place of the last nibble(s) received from the MII.

Other techniques may be employed to respond to RX_ER, provided that the result is that the MAC sublayer behaves as though a FrameCheckError occurred in the received frame.

22.2.1.6 Conditions for generation of TX_ER

If, during the process of transmitting a frame, it is necessary to request that the PHY deliberately corrupt the contents of the frame in such a manner that a receiver will detect the corruption with the highest degree of probability, then the signal TX_ER may be generated.

For example, a repeater that detects an RX_ER during frame reception on an input port may propagate that error indication to its output ports by asserting TX_ER during the process of transmitting that frame.

Since there is no mechanism in the definition of the MAC sublayer by which the transmit data stream can be deliberately corrupted, the Reconciliation sublayer is not required to generate TX_ER.

22.2.2 MII signal functional specifications

22.2.2.1 TX_CLK (transmit clock)

TX_CLK (Transmit Clock) is a continuous clock that provides the timing reference for the transfer of the TX_EN, TXD, and TX_ER signals from the Reconciliation sublayer to the PHY. TX_CLK is sourced by the PHY.

The TX_CLK frequency shall be 25% of the nominal transmit data rate ± 100 ppm. For example, a PHY operating at 100 Mb/s must provide a TX_CLK frequency of 25 MHz, and a PHY operating at 10 Mb/s must provide a TX_CLK frequency of 2.5 MHz. The duty cycle of the TX_CLK signal shall be between 35% and 65% inclusive.

NOTE—See additional information in 22.2.4.1.5.

22.2.2.2 RX_CLK (receive clock)

RX_CLK is a continuous clock that provides the timing reference for the transfer of the RX_DV, RXD, and RX_ER signals from the PHY to the Reconciliation sublayer. RX_CLK is sourced by the PHY. The PHY may recover the RX_CLK reference from the received data or it may derive the RX_CLK reference from a nominal clock (e.g., the TX_CLK reference).

The minimum high and low times of RX_CLK shall be 35% of the nominal period under all conditions.

While RX_DV is asserted, RX_CLK shall be synchronous with recovered data, shall have a frequency equal to 25% of the data rate of the received signal, and shall have a duty cycle of between 35% and 65% inclusive.

When the signal received from the medium is continuous and the PHY can recover the RX_CLK reference and supply the RX_CLK on a continuous basis, there is no need to transition between the recovered clock reference and a nominal clock reference on a frame-by-frame basis. If loss of received signal from the medium causes a PHY to lose the recovered RX_CLK reference, the PHY shall source the RX_CLK from a nominal clock reference.

Transitions from nominal clock to recovered clock or from recovered clock to nominal clock shall be made only while RX_DV is de-asserted. During the interval between the assertion of CRS and the assertion of RX_DV at the beginning of a frame, the PHY may extend a cycle of RX_CLK by holding it in either the high or low condition until the PHY has successfully locked onto the recovered clock. Following the de-assertion of RX_DV at the end of a frame, the PHY may extend a cycle of RX_CLK by holding it in either the high or low condition for an interval that shall not exceed twice the nominal clock period.

NOTE—This standard neither requires nor assumes a guaranteed phase relationship between the RX_CLK and TX_CLK signals. See additional information in 22.2.4.1.5.

22.2.2.3 TX_EN (transmit enable)

TX_EN indicates that the Reconciliation sublayer is presenting nibbles on the MII for transmission. It shall be asserted by the Reconciliation sublayer synchronously with the first nibble of the preamble and shall remain asserted while all nibbles to be transmitted are presented to the MII. TX_EN shall be negated prior to the first TX_CLK following the final nibble of a frame. TX_EN is driven by the Reconciliation sublayer and shall transition synchronously with respect to the TX_CLK.

Figure 22-4 depicts TX_EN behavior during a frame transmission with no collisions.

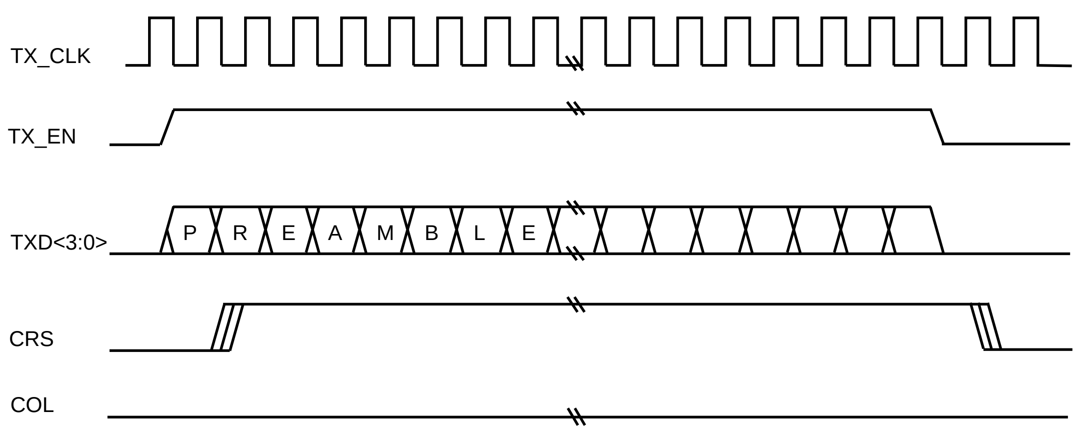


Figure 22-4—Transmission with no collision

22.2.2.4 TXD (transmit data)

TXD is a bundle of 4 data signals (TXD<3:0>) that are driven by the Reconciliation sublayer. TXD<3:0> shall transition synchronously with respect to the TX_CLK. For each TX_CLK period in which TX_EN is asserted, TXD<3:0> are accepted for transmission by the PHY. TXD<0 >is the least significant bit. While TX_EN is de-asserted, TXD<3:0> shall have no effect upon the PHY.

Figure 22-4 depicts TXD<3:0> behavior during the transmission of a frame.

Table 22-1 summarizes the permissible encodings of TXD<3:0>, TX_EN, and TX_ER.

22.2.2.5 TX_ER (transmit coding error)

TX_ER shall transition synchronously with respect to the TX_CLK. When TX_ER is asserted for one or more TX_CLK periods while TX_EN is also asserted, the PHY shall emit one or more symbols that are not

Table 22-1—Permissible encodings of TXD<3:0>, TX_EN, and TX_ER

TX_EN	TX_ER	TXD<3:0>	Indication
0	0	0000 through 1111	Normal inter-frame
0	1	0000 through 1111	Reserved
1	0	0000 through 1111	Normal data transmission
1	1	0000 through 1111	Transmit error propagation

part of the valid data or delimiter set somewhere in the frame being transmitted. The relative position of the error within the frame need not be preserved.

Assertion of the TX_ER signal shall not affect the transmission of data when a PHY is operating at 10 Mb/s, or when TX_EN is de-asserted.

Figure 22-5 shows the behavior of TX_ER during the transmission of a frame propagating an error.

Table 22-1 summarizes the permissible encodings of TXD<3:0>, TX_EN, and TX_ER.

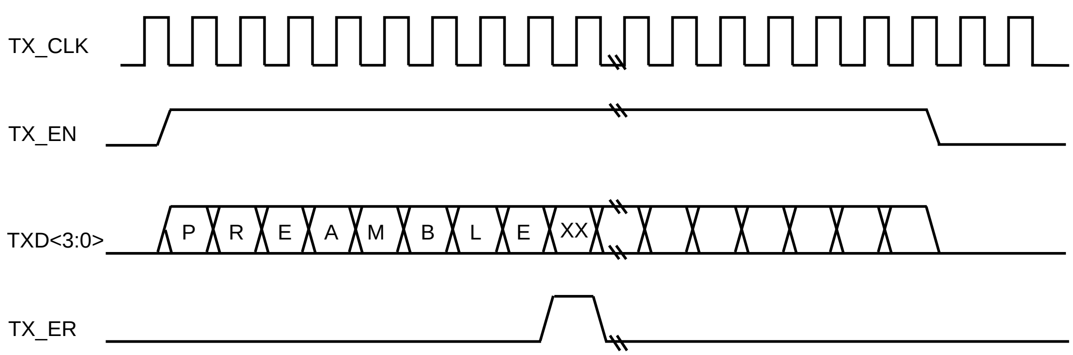


Figure 22-5—Propagating an error

The TX_ER signal shall be implemented at the MII of a PHY, may be implemented at the MII of a repeater that provides an MII port, and may be implemented in MAC sublayer devices. If a Reconciliation sublayer or a repeater with an MII port does not actively drive the TX_ER signal, it shall ensure that the TX_ER signal is pulled down to an inactive state at all times.

22.2.2.6 RX_DV (Receive Data Valid)

RX_DV (Receive Data Valid) is driven by the PHY to indicate that the PHY is presenting recovered and decoded nibbles on the RXD<3:0> bundle and that the data on RXD<3:0> is synchronous to RX_CLK. RX_DV shall transition synchronously with respect to the RX_CLK. RX_DV shall remain asserted continuously from the first recovered nibble of the frame through the final recovered nibble and shall be negated prior to the first RX_CLK that follows the final nibble. In order for a received frame to be correctly interpreted by the Reconciliation sublayer and the MAC sublayer, RX_DV must encompass the frame, starting no later than the Start Frame Delimiter (SFD) and excluding any End-of-Frame delimiter.

Figure 22-6 shows the behavior of RX_DV during frame reception.

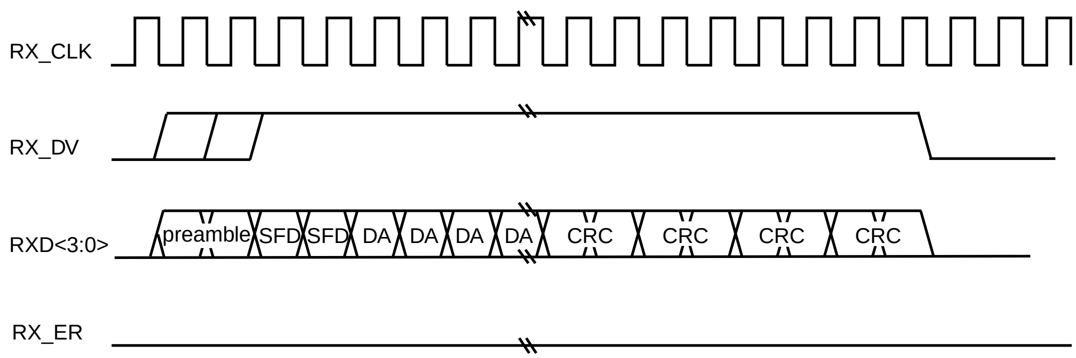


Figure 22-6—Reception with no errors

22.2.2.7 RXD (receive data)

RXD is a bundle of four data signals (RXD<3:0>) that transition synchronously with respect to the RX_CLK. RXD<3:0> are driven by the PHY. For each RX_CLK period in which RX_DV is asserted, RXD<3:0> transfer four bits of recovered data from the PHY to the Reconciliation sublayer. RXD<0> is the least significant bit. While RX_DV is de-asserted, RXD<3:0> shall have no effect on the Reconciliation sublayer.

While RX_DV is de-asserted, the PHY may provide a False Carrier indication by asserting the RX_ER signal while driving the value <1110> onto RXD<3:0>. See 24.2.4.4.2 for a description of the conditions under which a PHY will provide a False Carrier indication.

In order for a frame to be correctly interpreted by the MAC sublayer, a completely formed SFD must be passed across the MII. A PHY is not required to loop data transmitted on TXD<3:0> back to RXD<3:0> unless the loopback mode of operation is selected as defined in 22.2.4.1.2.

Figure 22-6 shows the behavior of RXD<3:0> during frame reception.

Table 22-2 summarizes the permissible encoding of RXD<3:0>, RX_ER, and RX_DV, along with the specific indication provided by each code.

Table 22-2—Permissible encoding of RXD<3:0>, RX_ER, and RX_DV

RX_DV	RX_ER	RXD<3:0>	Indication
0	0	0000 through 1111	Normal inter-frame
0	1	0000	Normal inter-frame
0	1	0001 through 1101	Reserved
0	1	1110	False Carrier indication
0	1	1111	Reserved
1	0	0000 through 1111	Normal data reception
1	1	0000 through 1111	Data reception with errors

22.2.2.8 RX_ER (receive error)

RX_ER (Receive Error) is driven by the PHY. RX_ER shall be asserted for one or more RX_CLK periods to indicate to the Reconciliation sublayer that an error (e.g., a coding error, or any error that the PHY is capable of detecting, and that may otherwise be undetectable at the MAC sublayer) was detected somewhere in the frame presently being transferred from the PHY to the Reconciliation sublayer. RX_ER shall transition synchronously with respect to RX_CLK. While RX_DV is de-asserted, RX_ER shall have no effect on the Reconciliation sublayer.

While RX_DV is de-asserted, the PHY may provide a False Carrier indication by asserting the RX_ER signal for at least one cycle of the RX_CLK while driving the appropriate value onto RXD<3:0>, as defined in 22.2.2.7. See 24.2.4.4.2 for a description of the conditions under which a PHY will provide a False Carrier indication.

The effect of RX_ER on the Reconciliation sublayer is defined in 22.2.1.5, Response to RX_ER indication from MII.

Figure 22-7 shows the behavior of RX_ER during the reception of a frame with errors.

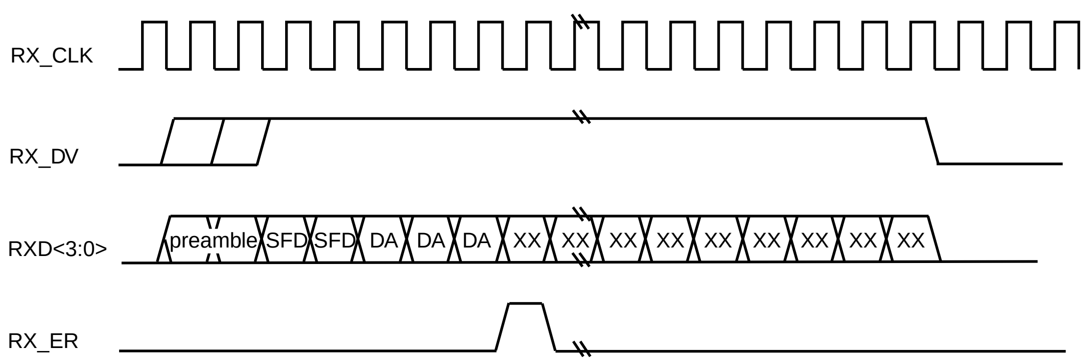


Figure 22-7—Reception with errors

Figure 22-8 shows the behavior of RX_ER, RX_DV and RXD<3:0> during a False Carrier indication.

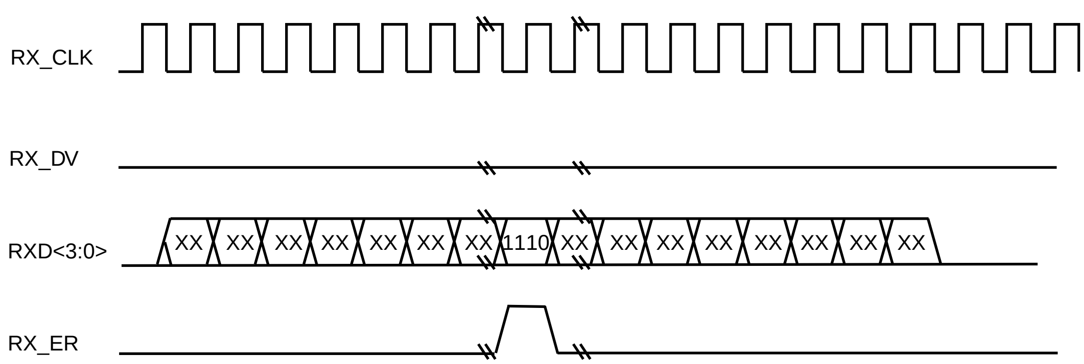


Figure 22-8—False Carrier indication

22.2.2.9 CRS (carrier sense)

CRS shall be asserted by the PHY when either the transmit or receive medium is nonidle. CRS shall be de-asserted by the PHY when both the transmit and receive media are idle. The PHY shall ensure that CRS remains asserted throughout the duration of a collision condition.

CRS is not required to transition synchronously with respect to either the TX_CLK or the RX_CLK.

The behavior of the CRS signal is unspecified when the duplex mode bit 0.8 in the control register is set to a logic one, as described in 22.2.4.1.8, or when the Auto-Negotiation process selects a full duplex mode of operation.

Figure 22-4 shows the behavior of CRS during a frame transmission without a collision, while Figure 22-9 shows the behavior of CRS during a frame transmission with a collision.

22.2.2.10 COL (collision detected)

COL shall be asserted by the PHY upon detection of a collision on the medium, and shall remain asserted while the collision condition persists.

COL shall be asserted by a PHY that is operating at 10 Mb/s in response to a *signal_quality_error* message from the PMA.

COL is not required to transition synchronously with respect to either the TX_CLK or the RX_CLK.

The behavior of the COL signal is unspecified when the duplex mode bit 0.8 in the control register is set to a logic one, as described in 22.2.4.1.8, or when the Auto-Negotiation process selects a full-duplex mode of operation.

Figure 22-9 shows the behavior of COL during a frame transmission with a collision.

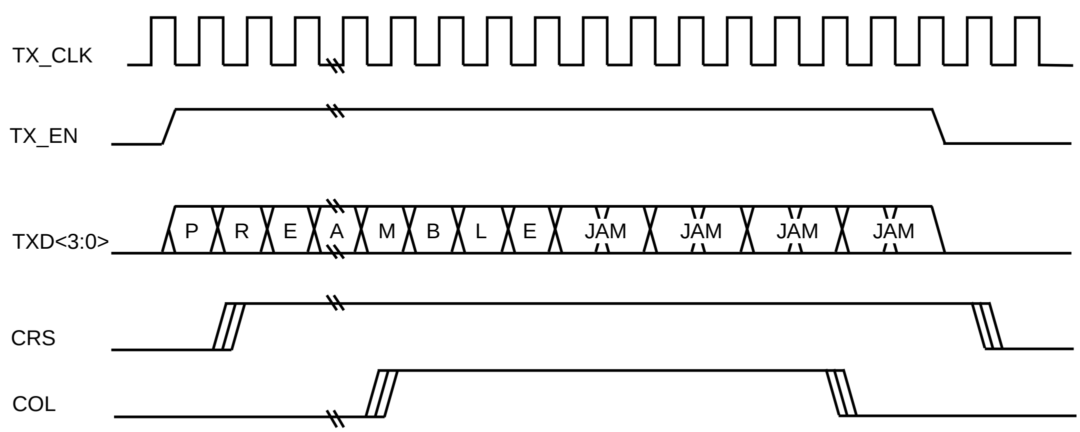


Figure 22-9—Transmission with collision

NOTE—The circuit assembly that contains the Reconciliation sublayer may incorporate a weak pull-up on the COL signal as a means of detecting an open circuit condition on the COL signal at the MII. The limit on the value of this pull-up is defined in 22.4.4.2.

22.2.2.11 MDC (management data clock)

MDC is sourced by the Station Management entity to the PHY as the timing reference for transfer of information on the MDIO signal. MDC is an aperiodic signal that has no maximum high or low times. The minimum high and low times for MDC shall be 160 ns each, and the minimum period for MDC shall be 400 ns, regardless of the nominal period of TX_CLK and RX_CLK.

22.2.2.12 MDIO (management data input/output)

MDIO is a bidirectional signal between the PHY and the STA. It is used to transfer control information and status between the PHY and the STA. Control information is driven by the STA synchronously with respect to MDC and is sampled synchronously by the PHY. Status information is driven by the PHY synchronously with respect to MDC and is sampled synchronously by the STA.

MDIO shall be driven through three-state circuits that enable either the STA or the PHY to drive the signal. A PHY that is attached to the MII via the mechanical interface specified in 22.6 shall provide a resistive pull-up to maintain the signal in a high state. The STA shall incorporate a resistive pull-down on the MDIO signal and thus may use the quiescent state of MDIO to determine if a PHY is connected to the MII via the mechanical interface defined in 22.6. The limits on the values of these pull-ups and pull-downs are defined in 22.4.4.2.

22.2.3 Frame structure

Data frames transmitted through the MII shall have the frame format shown in figure 22-10.

<inter-frame><preamble><sfd><data><efd>

Figure 22-10—MII frame format

For the MII, transmission and reception of each octet of data shall be done a nibble at a time with the order of nibble transmission and reception as shown in figure 22-11.

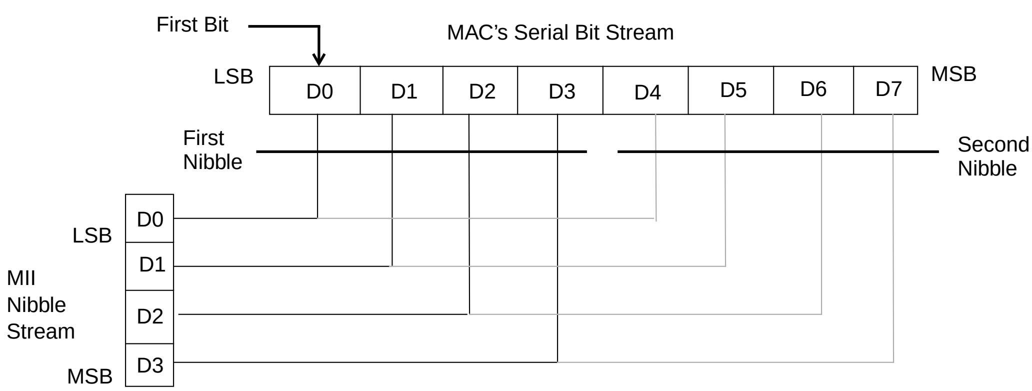


Figure 22-11—Octet/nibble transmit and receive order

The bits of each octet are transmitted and received as two nibbles, bits 0 through 3 of the octet corresponding to bits 0 through 3 of the first nibble transmitted or received, and bits 4 through 7 of the octet corresponding to bits 0 through 3 of the second nibble transmitted or received.

22.2.3.1 Inter-frame

The inter-frame period provides an observation window for an unspecified amount of time during which no data activity occurs on the MII. The absence of data activity is indicated by the de-assertion of the RX_DV signal on the receive path, and the de-assertion of the TX_EN signal on the transmit path. The MAC interFrameSpacing parameter defined in clause 4 is measured from the de-assertion of the CRS signal to the assertion of the CRS signal.

22.2.3.2 Preamble and start of frame delimiter

22.2.3.2.1 Transmit case

The preamble <preamble> begins a frame transmission. The bit value of the preamble field at the MII is unchanged from that specified in 7.2.3.2 and shall consist of 7 octets with the following bit values:

10101010 10101010 10101010 10101010 10101010 10101010 10101010

In the preceding example, the preamble is displayed using the bit order it would have if transmitted serially. This means that for each octet the leftmost l value represents the LSB of the octet, and the rightmost 0 value the octet MSB.

The SFD (Start Frame Delimiter) <sfd> indicates the start of a frame and follows the preamble. The bit value of the SFD at the MII is unchanged from that specified in 7.2.3.3 and is the bit sequence:

10101011

The preamble and SFD shall be transmitted through the MII as nibbles starting from the assertion of TX_EN as shown in table 22-3.

Table 22-3—Transmitted preamble and SFD

Signal	Bit values of nibbles transmitted through MII																		
TXD0	X	1[a]	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1[b]	1	D0[c]	D4[d]
TXD1	X	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	D1	D5
TXD2	X	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	D2	D6
TXD3	X	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	D3	D7
TX_EN	0	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1

[a]1st preamble nibble transmitted.
[b]1st SFD nibble transmitted.
[c]1st data nibble transmitted.
[d]D0 through D7 are the first eight bits of the data field from the Protocol Data Unit (PDU).

22.2.3.2.2 Receive case

The conditions for assertion of RX_DV are defined in 22.2.2.6.

The alignment of the received SFD and data at the MII shall be as shown in table 22-4 and table 22-5. Table 22-4 depicts the case where no preamble nibbles are conveyed across the MII, and table 22-5 depicts the case where the entire preamble is conveyed across the MII.

Table 22-4—Start of receive with no preamble preceding SFD

Signal	Bit values of nibbles received through MII									
RXD0	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	1[a]	1	D0[b]	D4[c]
RXD1	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	0	0	D1	D5
RXD2	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	1	1	D2	D6
RXD3	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	0	1	D3	D7
RX_DV	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	1	1	1

[a]1st SFD nibble received.
[b]1st data nibble received.
[c]D0 through D7 are the first eight bits of the data field from the PDU.

Table 22-5—Start of receive with entire preamble preceding SFD

Signal	Bit values of nibbles received through MII																	
RXD0	X	1[a]	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1[b]	1	D0[c]	D4[d]
RXD1	X	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	D1	D5
RXD2	X	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	D2	D6
RXD3	X	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	D3	D7
RX_DV	0	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1

[a]1st preamble nibble received.
[b]1st SFD nibble received.
[c]1st data nibble received.
[d]D0 through D7 are the first eight bits of the data field from the PDU.

22.2.3.3 Data

The data in a well formed frame shall consist of N octets of data transmitted as 2N nibbles. For each octet of data the transmit order of each nibble is as specified in figure 22-11. Data in a collision fragment may consist of an odd number of nibbles.

22.2.3.4 End-of-Frame delimiter (EFD)

De-assertion of the TX_EN signal constitutes an End-of-Frame delimiter for data conveyed on TXD<3:0>, and de-assertion of RX_DV constitutes an End-of-Frame delimiter for data conveyed on RXD<3:0>.

22.2.3.5 Handling of excess nibbles

An excess nibble condition occurs when an odd number of nibbles is conveyed across the MII beginning with the SFD and including all nibbles conveyed until the End-of-Frame delimiter. Reception of a frame containing a non-integer number of octets shall be indicated by the PHY as an excess nibble condition.

Transmission of an excess nibble may be handled by the PHY in an implementation-specific manner. No assumption should be made with regard to truncation, octet padding, or exact nibble transmission by the PHY.

22.2.4 Management functions

The management interface specified here provides a simple, two-wire, serial interface to connect a management entity and a managed PHY for the purposes of controlling the PHY and gathering status from the PHY. This interface is referred to as the MII Management Interface.

The management interface consists of a pair of signals that physically transport the management information across the MII, a frame format and a protocol specification for exchanging management frames, and a register set that can be read and written using these frames. The register definition specifies a basic register set with an extension mechanism.

The basic register set consists of two registers referred to as the Control Register (register 0) and the Status Register (register 1). The status and control functions defined here are considered basic and fundamental to 100 Mb/s PHYs. All PHYs that provide an MII shall incorporate the basic register set. Registers 2 through 7 are part of the extended register set.

The full set of management registers is listed in table 22-6.

Table 22-6—MII management register set

Register address	Register name	Basic/Extended
0	Control	B
1	Status	B
2,3	PHY Identifier	E
4	Auto-Negotiation Advertisement	E
5	Auto-Negotiation Link Partner Ability	E
6	Auto-Negotiation Expansion	E
7	Auto-Negotiation Next Page Transmit	E
8 through 15	Reserved	E
16 through 31	Vendor Specific	E

22.2.4.1 Control register (register 0)

The assignment of bits in the Control Register is shown in table 22-7 below. The default value for each bit of the Control Register should be chosen so that the initial state of the PHY upon power up or reset is a normal operational state without management intervention.

Table 22-7—Control register bit definitions

Bit(s)	Name	Description	R/W[a]
0.15	Reset	1 = PHY reset 0 = normal operation	R/W SC
0.14	Loopback	1 = enable loopback mode 0 = disable loopback mode	R/W
0.13	Speed Selection	1 = 100 Mb/s 0 = 10 Mb/s	R/W
0.12	Auto-Negotiation Enable	1 = Enable Auto-Negotiation Process 0 = Disable Auto-Negotiation Process	R/W
0.11	Power Down	1 = power down 0 = normal operation[b]	R/W
0.10	Isolate	1 = electrically Isolate PHY from MII 0 = normal operation[b]	R/W
0.9	Restart Auto-Negotiation	1 = Restart Auto-Negotiation Process 0 = normal operation	R/W SC
0.8	Duplex Mode	1 = Full Duplex[c] 0 = Half Duplex	R/W
0.7	Collision Test	1 = enable COL signal test 0 = disable COL signal test	R/W
0.6:0	Reserved	Write as 0, ignore on Read	R/W

[a]R/W = Read/Write, SC = Self-Clearing.
[b]For normal operation, both 0.10 and 0.11 must be cleared to zero, see 22.2.4.1.5.
[c]Specifications for full-duplex mode operation are planned for future work.

22.2.4.1.1 Reset

Resetting a PHY is accomplished by setting bit 0.15 to a logic one. This action shall set the status and control registers to their default states. As a consequence this action may change the internal state of the PHY and the state of the physical link associated with the PHY. This bit is self-clearing, and a PHY shall return a value of one in bit 0.15 until the reset process is completed. A PHY is not required to accept a write transaction to the control register until the reset process is completed, and writes to bits of the control register other than 0.15 may have no effect until the reset process is completed. The reset process shall be completed within 0.5 s from the setting of bit 0.15.

The default value of bit 0.15 is zero.

NOTE—This operation may interrupt data communication.

22.2.4.1.2 Loopback

The PHY shall be placed in a loopback mode of operation when bit 0.14 is set to a logic one. When bit 0.14 is set, the PHY receive circuitry shall be isolated from the network medium, and the assertion of TX_EN at the MII shall not result in the transmission of data on the network medium. When bit 0.14 is set, the PHY shall accept data from the MII transmit data path and return it to the MII receive data path in response to the assertion of TX_EN. When bit 0.14 is set, the delay from the assertion of TX_EN to the assertion of RX_DV shall be less than 512 BT. When bit 0.14 is set, the COL signal shall remain de-asserted at all times, unless bit 0.7 is set, in which case the COL signal shall behave as described in 22.2.4.1.9. Clearing bit 0.14 to zero allows normal operation.

The default value of bit 0.14 is zero.

NOTE—The signal path through the PHY that is exercised in the loopback mode of operation is implementation specific, but it is recommended that the signal path encompass as much of the PHY circuitry as is practical. The intention of providing this loopback mode of operation is to permit a diagnostic or self-test function to perform the transmission and reception of a PDU, thus testing the transmit and receive data paths. Other loopback signal paths through a PHY may be enabled via the extended register set, in an implementation-specific fashion.

22.2.4.1.3 Speed selection

Link speed can be selected via either the Auto-Negotiation process, or manual speed selection. Manual speed selection is allowed when Auto-Negotiation is disabled by clearing bit 0.12 to zero. When Auto-Negotiation is disabled, setting bit 0.13 to a logic one configures the PHY for 100 Mb/s operation, and clearing bit 0.13 to a logic zero configures the PHY for 10 Mb/s operation. When Auto-Negotiation is enabled, bit 0.13 can be read or written, but the state of bit 0.13 has no effect on the link configuration, and it is not necessary for bit 0.13 to reflect the operating speed of the link when it is read. If a PHY reports via bits 1.15:11 that it is able to operate at only one speed, the value of bit 0.13 shall correspond to the speed at which the PHY can operate, and any attempt to change the setting of the bit shall be ignored.

The default value of bit 0.13 is one, unless the PHY reports via bits 1.15:11 that it is able to operate only at 10 Mb/s, in which case the default value of bit 0.13 is zero.

22.2.4.1.4 Auto-Negotiation enable

The Auto-Negotiation process shall be enabled by setting bit 0.12 to a logic one. If bit 0.12 is set to a logic one, then bits 0.13 and 0.8 shall have no effect on the link configuration, and the Auto-Negotiation process will determine the link configuration. If bit 0.12 is cleared to a logic zero, then bits 0.13 and 0.8 will determine the link configuration, regardless of the prior state of the link configuration and the Auto-Negotiation process.

If a PHY reports via bit 1.3 that it lacks the ability to perform Auto-Negotiation, the PHY shall return a value of zero in bit 0.12. If a PHY reports via bit 1.3 that it lacks the ability to perform Auto-Negotiation, bit 0.12 should always be written as zero, and any attempt to write a one to bit 0.12 shall be ignored.

The default value of bit 0.12 is one, unless the PHY reports via bit 1.3 that it lacks the ability to perform Auto-Negotiation, in which case the default value of bit 0.12 is zero.

22.2.4.1.5 Power down

The PHY may be placed in a low-power consumption state by setting bit 0.11 to a logic one. Clearing bit 0.11 to zero allows normal operation. The specific behavior of a PHY in the power-down state is implementation specific. While in the power-down state, the PHY shall respond to management transactions. During the transition to the power-down state and while in the power-down state, the PHY shall not generate spurious signals on the MII.

A PHY is not required to meet the RX_CLK and TX_CLK signal functional requirements when either bit 0.11 or bit 0.10 is set to a logic one. A PHY shall meet the RX_CLK and TX_CLK signal functional requirements defined in 22.2.2 within 0.5 s after both bit 0.11 and 0.10 are cleared to zero.

The default value of bit 0.11 is zero.

22.2.4.1.6 Isolate

The PHY may be forced to electrically isolate its data paths from the MII by setting bit 0.10 to a logic one. Clearing bit 0.10 allows normal operation. When the PHY is isolated from the MII it shall not respond to the TXD<3:0>, TX_EN, and TX_ER inputs, and it shall present a high impedance on its TX_CLK, RX_CLK, RX_DV, RX_ER, RXD<3:0>, COL, and CRS outputs. When the PHY is isolated from the MII it shall respond to management transactions.

A PHY that is connected to the MII via the mechanical interface defined in 22.6 shall have a default value of one for bit 0.10 so as to avoid the possibility of having multiple MII output drivers actively driving the same signal path simultaneously.

NOTE—This clause neither requires nor assumes any specific behavior at the MDI resulting from setting bit 0.10 to a logic one.

22.2.4.1.7 Restart Auto-Negotiation

If a PHY reports via bit 1.3 that it lacks the ability to perform Auto-Negotiation, or if Auto-Negotiation is disabled, the PHY shall return a value of zero in bit 0.9. If a PHY reports via bit 1.3 that it lacks the ability to perform Auto-Negotiation, or if Auto-Negotiation is disabled, bit 0.9 should always be written as zero, and any attempt to write a one to bit 0.9 shall be ignored.

Otherwise, the Auto-Negotiation process shall be restarted by setting bit 0.9 to a logic one. This bit is self-clearing, and a PHY shall return a value of one in bit 0.9 until the Auto-Negotiation process has been initiated. The Auto-Negotiation process shall not be affected by writing a zero to bit 0.9.

The default value of bit 0.9 is zero.

22.2.4.1.8 Duplex mode

The duplex mode can be selected via either the Auto-Negotiation process, or manual duplex selection. Manual duplex selection is allowed when Auto-Negotiation is disabled by clearing bit 0.12 to zero. When Auto-Negotiation is disabled, setting bit 0.8 to a logic one configures the PHY for full-duplex operation, and clearing bit 0.8 to a logic zero configures the PHY for half-duplex operation. When Auto-Negotiation is enabled, bit 0.8 can be read or written, but the state of bit 0.8 has no effect on the link configuration. If a PHY reports via bits 1.15:11 that it is able to operate in only one duplex mode, the value of bit 0.8 shall correspond to the mode in which the PHY can operate, and any attempt to change the setting of bit 0.8 shall be ignored.

When a PHY is placed in the loopback mode of operation via bit 0.14, the behavior of the PHY shall not be affected by the state of bit 0.8.

The default value of bit 0.8 is zero, unless a PHY reports via bits 1.15:11 that it is able to operate only in full-duplex mode, in which case the default value of bit 0.8 is one.

22.2.4.1.9 Collision test

The COL signal at the MII may be tested by setting bit 0.7 to a logic one. When bit 0.7 is set to one, the PHY shall assert the COL signal within 512 BT in response to the assertion of TX_EN. While bit 0.7 is set to one, the PHY shall de-assert the COL signal within 4 BT in response to the de-assertion of TX_EN. Clearing bit 0.7 to zero allows normal operation.

The default value of bit 0.7 is zero.

NOTE—It is recommended that the Collision Test function be used only in conjunction with the loopback mode of operation defined in 22.2.4.1.2.

22.2.4.1.10 Reserved bits

Bits 0.6:0 are reserved for future standardization. They shall be written as zero and shall be ignored when read; however, a PHY shall return the value zero in these bits.

22.2.4.2 Status register (register 1)

The assignment of bits in the Status register is shown in table 22-8 below. All of the bits in the Status register are read only, a write to the Status register shall have no effect.

Table 22-8—Status register bit definitions

Bit(s)	Name	Description	R/W[a]
1.15	100BASE-T4	1 = PHY able to perform 100BASE-T4 0 = PHY not able to perform 100BASE-T4	RO
1.14	100BASE-X Full Duplex[b]	1 = PHY able to perform full-duplex 100BASE-X 0 = PHY not able to perform full-duplex 100BASE-X	RO
1.13	100BASE-X Half Duplex	1 = PHY able to perform half-duplex 100BASE-X 0 = PHY not able to perform half-duplex 100BASE-X	RO
1.12	10 Mb/s Full Duplex[b]	1 = PHY able to operate at 10 Mb/s in full-duplex mode 0 = PHY not able to operate at 10 Mb/s in full-duplex mode	RO
1.11	10 Mb/s Half Duplex	1 = PHY able to operate at 10 Mb/s in half-duplex mode 0 = PHY not able to operate at 10 Mb/s in half-duplex mode	RO
1.10:7	Reserved	ignore when read	RO
1.6	MF Preamble Suppression	1 = PHY will accept management frames with preamble suppressed. 0 = PHY will not accept management frames with preamble suppressed.	RO
1.5	Auto-Negotiation Complete	1 = Auto-Negotiation process completed 0 = Auto-Negotiation process not completed	RO
1.4	Remote Fault	1 = remote fault condition detected 0 = no remote fault condition detected	RO/ LH
1.3	Auto-Negotiation Ability	1 = PHY is able to perform Auto-Negotiation 0 = PHY is not able to perform Auto-Negotiation	RO
1.2	Link Status	1 = link is up 0 = link is down	RO/ LL
1.1	Jabber Detect	1 = jabber condition detected 0 = no jabber condition detected	RO/ LH
1.0	Extended Capability	1 = extended register capabilities 0 = basic register set capabilities only	RO

[a]RO = Read Only, LL = Latching Low, LH = Latching High
[b]Specifications for full-duplex mode operation are planned for future work.

22.2.4.2.1 100BASE-T4 ability

When read as a logic one, bit 1.15 indicates that the PHY has the ability to perform link transmission and reception using the 100BASE-T4 signaling specification. When read as a logic zero, bit 1.15 indicates that the PHY lacks the ability to perform link transmission and reception using the 100BASE-T4 signaling specification.

22.2.4.2.2 100BASE-X full-duplex ability

When read as a logic one, bit 1.14 indicates that the PHY has the ability to perform full-duplex link transmission and reception using the 100BASE-X signaling specification. When read as a logic zero, bit 1.14 indicates that the PHY lacks the ability to perform full-duplex link transmission and reception using the 100BASE-X signaling specification.

NOTE—Specifications for full-duplex mode operation are planned for future work.

22.2.4.2.3 100BASE-X half-duplex ability

When read as a logic one, bit 1.13 indicates that the PHY has the ability to perform half-duplex link transmission and reception using the 100BASE-X signaling specification. When read as a logic zero, bit 1.13 indicates that the PHY lacks the ability to perform half-duplex link transmission and reception using the 100BASE-X signaling specification.

22.2.4.2.4 10 Mb/s full-duplex ability

When read as a logic one, bit 1.12 indicates that the PHY has the ability to perform full duplex link transmission and reception while operating at 10 Mb/s. When read as a logic zero, bit 1.12 indicates that the PHY lacks the ability to perform full duplex link transmission and reception while operating at 10 Mb/s.

NOTE—Specifications for full-duplex mode operation are planned for future work.

22.2.4.2.5 10 Mb/s half-duplex ability

When read as a logic one, bit 1.11 indicates that the PHY has the ability to perform half-duplex link transmission and reception while operating at 10 Mb/s. When read as a logic zero, bit 1.11 indicates that the PHY lacks the ability to perform half-duplex link transmission and reception while operating at 10 Mb/s.

22.2.4.2.6 Reserved bits

Bits 1.10:7 are reserved for future standardization and shall be ignored when read; however, a PHY shall return the value zero in these bits. Bits 1.10:8 are specifically reserved for future PHY capabilities that will be reflected in the Auto-Negotiation base link code word Technology Ability field, as defined in 28.2.1.2.

22.2.4.2.7 MF preamble suppression ability

When read as a logic one, bit 1.6 indicates that the PHY is able to accept management frames regardless of whether they are or are not preceded by the preamble pattern described in 22.2.4.4.2. When read as a logic zero, bit 1.6 indicates that the PHY is not able to accept management frames unless they are preceded by the preamble pattern described in 22.2.4.4.2.

22.2.4.2.8 Auto-Negotiation complete

When read as a logic one, bit 1.5 indicates that the Auto-Negotiation process has been completed, and that the contents of registers 4, 5, 6, and 7 are valid. When read as a logic zero, bit 1.5 indicates that the Auto-Negotiation process has not been completed, and that the contents of registers 4, 5, 6, and 7 are meaningless.

A PHY shall return a value of zero in bit 1.5 if Auto-Negotiation is disabled by clearing bit 0.12. A PHY shall also return a value of zero in bit 1.5 if it lacks the ability to perform Auto-Negotiation.

22.2.4.2.9 Remote fault

When read as a logic one, bit 1.4 indicates that a remote fault condition has been detected. The type of fault as well as the criteria and method of fault detection is PHY specific. The Remote Fault bit shall be implemented with a latching function, such that the occurrence of a remote fault will cause the Remote Fault bit to become set and remain set until it is cleared. The Remote Fault bit shall be cleared each time register 1 is read via the management interface, and shall also be cleared by a PHY reset.

If a PHY has no provision for remote fault detection, it shall maintain bit 1.4 in a cleared state. Further information regarding the remote fault indication can be found in 28.2.1.2, and in 24.3.2.1.

22.2.4.2.10 Auto-Negotiation ability

When read as a logic one, bit 1.3 indicates that the PHY has the ability to perform Auto-Negotiation. When read as a logic zero, bit 1.3 indicates that the PHY lacks the ability to perform Auto-Negotiation.

22.2.4.2.11 Link Status

When read as a logic one, bit 1.2 indicates that the PHY has determined that a valid link has been established. When read as a logic zero, bit 1.2 indicates that the link is not valid. The criteria for determining link validity is PHY specific. The Link Status bit shall be implemented with a latching function, such that the occurrence of a link failure condition will cause the Link Status bit to become cleared and remain cleared until it is read via the management interface. This status indication is intended to support the management attribute defined in 30.5.1.1.4, aMediaAvailable.

22.2.4.2.12 Jabber detect

When read as a logic one, bit 1.1 indicates that a jabber condition has been detected. This status indication is intended to support the management attribute defined in 30.5.1.1.6, aJabber, and the MAU notification defined in 30.5.1.3.1, nJabber. The criteria for the detection of a jabber condition is PHY specific. The Jabber Detect bit shall be implemented with a latching function, such that the occurrence of a jabber condition will cause the Jabber Detect bit to become set and remain set until it is cleared. The Jabber Detect bit shall be cleared each time register 1 is read via the management interface, and shall also be cleared by a PHY reset.

PHYs specified for 100 Mb/s operation (100BASE-X and 100BASE-T4) do not incorporate a Jabber Detect function, as this function is defined to be performed in the repeater unit in 100 Mb/s systems. Therefore, 100BASE-X and 100BASE-T4 PHYs shall always return a value of zero in bit 1.1.

22.2.4.2.13 Extended capability

When read as a logic one, bit 1.0 indicates that the PHY provides an extended set of capabilities which may be accessed through the extended register set. When read as a logic zero, bit 1.0 indicates that the PHY provides only the basic register set.

22.2.4.3 Extended capability registers

In addition to the basic register set defined in 22.2.4.1 and 22.2.4.2, PHYs may provide an extended set of capabilities that may be accessed and controlled via the MII management interface. Six registers have been defined within the extended address space for the purpose of providing a PHY-specific identifier to layer management, and to provide control and monitoring for the Auto-Negotiation process.

If an attempt is made to perform a read transaction to a register in the extended register set, and the PHY being read does not implement the addressed register, the PHY shall not drive the MDIO line in response to the read transaction. If an attempt is made to perform a write transaction to a register in the extended register set, and the PHY being written does not implement the addressed register, the write transaction shall be ignored by the PHY.

22.2.4.3.1 PHY Identifier (registers 2 and 3)

Registers 2 and 3 provide a 32-bit value, which shall constitute a unique identifier for a particular type of PHY. A PHY may return a value of zero in each of the 32 bits of the PHY Identifier.

Bit 2.15 shall be the MSB of the PHY Identifier, and bit 3.0 shall be the LSB of the PHY Identifier.

The PHY Identifier shall be composed of the third through 24th bits of the Organizationally Unique Identifier (OUI) assigned to the PHY manufacturer by the IEEE,[18] plus a six-bit manufacturer's model number, plus a four-bit manufacturer's revision number. The PHY Identifier is intended to provide sufficient information to support the oResourceTypeID object as required in 30.1.2.

The third bit of the OUI is assigned to bit 2.15, the fourth bit of the OUI is assigned to bit 2.14, and so on. Bit 2.0 contains the eighteenth bit of the OUI. Bit 3.15 contains the nineteenth bit of the OUI, and bit 3.10 contains the twenty-fourth bit of the OUI. Bit 3.9 contains the MSB of the manufacturer's model number. Bit 3.4 contains the LSB of the manufacturer's model number. Bit 3.3 contains the MSB of the manufacturer's revision number, and bit 3.0 contains the LSB of the manufacturer's revision number.

Figure 22-12 depicts the mapping of this information to the bits of Registers 2 and 3. Additional detail describing the format of OUIs can be found in IEEE Std 802-1990.

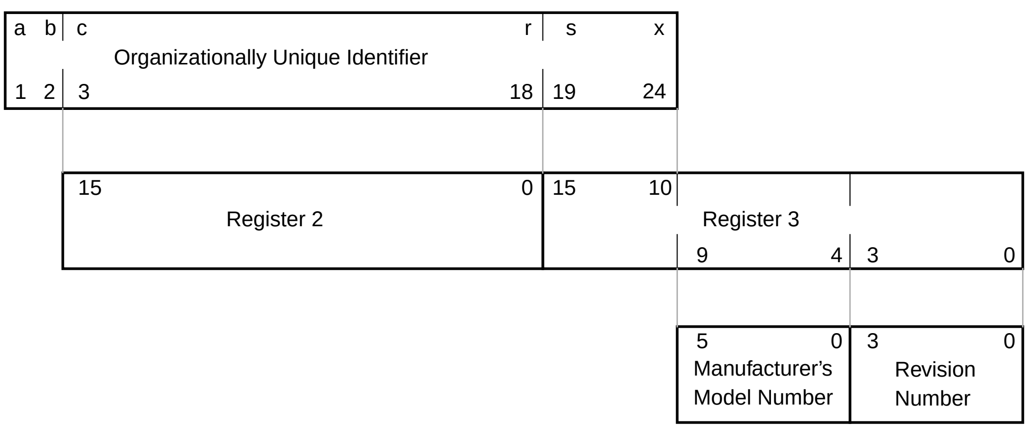


Figure 22-12—Format of PHY Identifier

22.2.4.3.2 Auto-Negotiation advertisement (register 4)

Register 4 provides 16 bits that are used by the Auto-Negotiation process. See 28.2.4.1.

[18]Interested applicants should contact the IEEE Standards Department, Institute of Electrical and Electronics Engineers, 445 Hoes Lane, P.O. Box 1331, Piscataway, NJ 08855-1331, USA.

22.2.4.3.3 Auto-Negotiation link partner ability (register 5)

Register 5 provides 16 bits that are used by the Auto-Negotiation process. See 28.2.4.1.

22.2.4.3.4 Auto-Negotiation expansion (register 6)

Register 6 provides 16 bits that are used by the Auto-Negotiation process. See 28.2.4.1.

22.2.4.3.5 Auto-Negotiation next page (register 7)

Register 7 provides 16 bits that are used by the Auto-Negotiation process. See 28.2.4.1.

22.2.4.3.6 PHY specific registers

A particular PHY may provide additional registers beyond those defined above. Register addresses 16 through 31 (decimal) may be used to provide vendor-specific functions or abilities. Register addresses 8 through 15 (decimal) are reserved for assignment within future editions of this standard.

22.2.4.4 Management frame structure

Frames transmitted on the MII Management Interface shall have the frame structure shown in table 22-9. The order of bit transmission shall be from left to right.

Table 22-9—Management frame format

	Management frame fields							
	PRE	ST	OP	PHYAD	REGAD	TA	DATA	IDLE
READ	1...1	01	10	AAAAA	RRRRR	Z0	DDDDDDDDDDDDDDDD	Z
WRITE	1...1	01	01	AAAAA	RRRRR	10	DDDDDDDDDDDDDDDD	Z

22.2.4.4.1 IDLE (IDLE condition)

The IDLE condition on MDIO is a high-impedance state. All three state drivers shall be disabled and the PHY's pull-up resistor will pull the MDIO line to a logic one.

22.2.4.4.2 PRE (preamble)

At the beginning of each transaction, the station management entity shall send a sequence of 32 contiguous logic one bits on MDIO with 32 corresponding cycles on MDC to provide the PHY with a pattern that it can use to establish synchronization. A PHY shall observe a sequence of 32 contiguous one bits on MDIO with 32 corresponding cycles on MDC before it responds to any transaction.

If the STA determines that every PHY that is connected to the MDIO signal is able to accept management frames that are not preceded by the preamble pattern, then the STA may suppress the generation of the preamble pattern, and may initiate management frames with the ST (Start of Frame) pattern.

22.2.4.4.3 ST (start of frame)

The start of frame is indicated by a <01> pattern. This pattern assures transitions from the default logic one line state to zero and back to one.

22.2.4.4.4 OP (operation code)

The operation code for a read transaction is <10>, while the operation code for a write transaction is <01>.

22.2.4.4.5 PHYAD (PHY Address)

The PHY Address is five bits, allowing 32 unique PHY addresses. The first PHY address bit transmitted and received is the MSB of the address. A PHY that is connected to the station management entity via the mechanical interface defined in 22.6 shall always respond to transactions addressed to PHY Address zero <00000>. A station management entity that is attached to multiple PHYs must have a priori knowledge of the appropriate PHY Address for each PHY.

22.2.4.4.6 REGAD (Register Address)

The Register Address is five bits, allowing 32 individual registers to be addressed within each PHY. The first Register Address bit transmitted and received is the MSB of the address. The register accessed at Register Address zero <00000> shall be the control register defined in 22.2.4.1, and the register accessed at Register Address one <00001> shall be the status register defined in 22.2.4.2.

22.2.4.4.7 TA (turnaround)

The turnaround time is a 2 bit time spacing between the Register Address field and the Data field of a management frame to avoid contention during a read transaction. For a read transaction, both the STA and the PHY shall remain in a high-impedance state for the first bit time of the turnaround. The PHY shall drive a zero bit during the second bit time of the turnaround of a read transaction. During a write transaction, the STA shall drive a one bit for the first bit time of the turnaround and a zero bit for the second bit time of the turnaround. Figure 22-13 shows the behavior of the MDIO signal during the turnaround field of a read transaction.

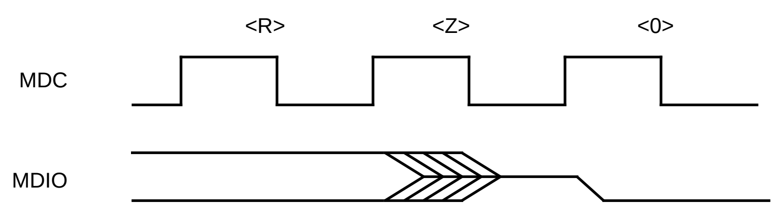


Figure 22-13—Behavior of MDIO during TA field of a read transaction

22.2.4.4.8 DATA (data)

The data field is 16 bits. The first data bit transmitted and received shall be bit 15 of the register being addressed.

22.3 Signal timing characteristics

All signal timing characteristics shall be measured using the techniques specified in annex 22C. The signal threshold potentials $V_{ih(min)}$ and $V_{il(max)}$ are defined in 22.4.4.1.

The HIGH time of an MII signal is defined as the length of time that the potential of the signal is greater than or equal to $V_{ih(min)}$. The LOW time of an MII signal is defined as the length of time that the potential of the signal is less than or equal to $V_{il(max)}$.

The setup time of an MII signal relative to an MII clock edge is defined as the length of time between when the signal exits and remains out of the switching region and when the clock enters the switching region. The hold time of an MII signal relative to an MII clock edge is defined as the length of time between when the clock exits the switching region and when the signal enters the switching region.

The propagation delay from an MII clock edge to a valid MII signal is defined as the length of time between when the clock exits the switching region and when the signal exits and remains out of the switching region.

22.3.1 Signals that are synchronous to TX_CLK

Figure 22-14 shows the timing relationship for the signals associated with the transmit data path at the MII connector. The clock to output delay shall be a minimum of 0 ns and a maximum of 25 ns.

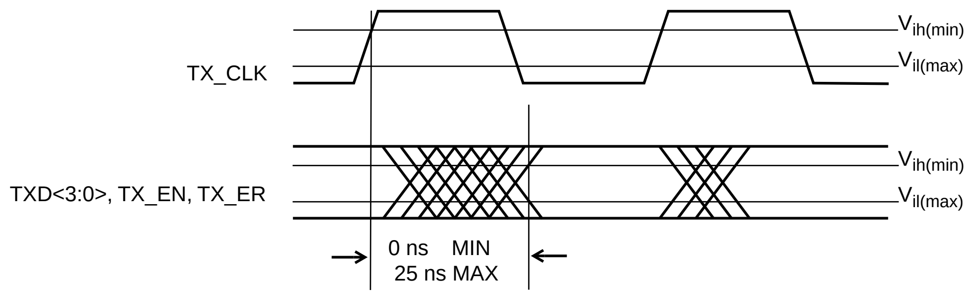


Figure 22-14—Transmit signal timing relationships at the MII

22.3.1.1 TX_EN

TX_EN is transitioned by the Reconciliation sublayer synchronously with respect to the TX_CLK rising edge with the timing as shown in figure 22-14.

22.3.1.2 TXD<3:0>

TXD<3:0> is transitioned by the Reconciliation sublayer synchronously with respect to the TX_CLK rising edge with the timing as depicted in figure 22-14.

22.3.1.3 TX_ER

TX_ER is transitioned synchronously with respect to the rising edge of TX_CLK as shown in figure 22-14.

22.3.2 Signals that are synchronous to RX_CLK

Figure 22-15 shows the timing relationship for the signals associated with the receive data path at the MII connector. The timing is referenced to the rising edge of the RX_CLK. The input setup time shall be a minimum of 10 ns and the input hold time shall be a minimum of 10 ns.

22.3.2.1 RX_DV

RX_DV is sampled by the Reconciliation sublayer synchronously with respect to the rising edge of RX_CLK with the timing shown in figure 22-15.

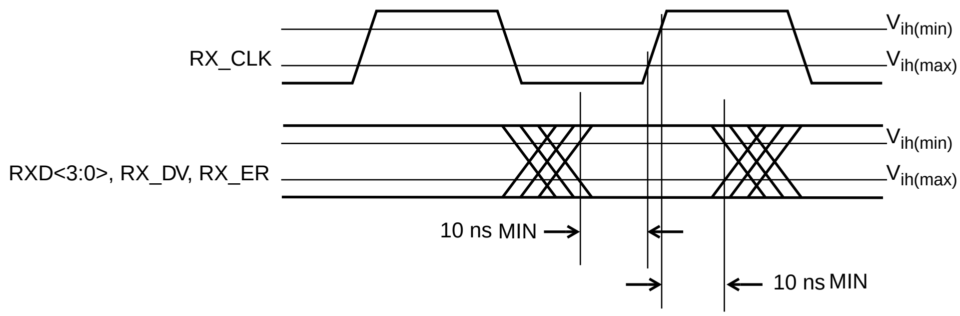


Figure 22-15—Receive signal timing relationships at the MII

22.3.2.2 RXD<3:0>

RXD<3:0> is sampled by the Reconciliation sublayer synchronously with respect to the rising edge of RX_CLK as shown in figure 22-15. The RXD<3:0> timing requirements must be met at all rising edges of RX_CLK.

22.3.2.3 RX_ER

RX_ER is sampled by the Reconciliation sublayer synchronously with respect to the rising edge of RX_CLK as shown in figure 22-15. The RX_ER timing requirements must be met at all rising edges of RX_CLK.

22.3.3 Signals that have no required clock relationship

22.3.3.1 CRS

CRS is driven by the PHY. Transitions on CRS have no required relationship to either of the clock signals provided at the MII.

22.3.3.2 COL

COL is driven by the PHY. Transitions on COL have no required relationship to either of the clock signals provided at the MII.

22.3.4 MDIO timing relationship to MDC

MDIO (Management Data Input/Output) is a bidirectional signal that can be sourced by the Station Management Entity (STA) or the PHY. When the STA sources the MDIO signal, the STA shall provide a minimum of 10 ns of setup time and a minimum of 10 ns of hold time referenced to the rising edge of MDC, as shown in figure 22-16, measured at the MII connector.

When the MDIO signal is sourced by the PHY, it is sampled by the STA synchronously with respect to the rising edge of MDC. The clock to output delay from the PHY, as measured at the MII connector, shall be a minimum of 0 ns, and a maximum of 300 ns, as shown in figure 22-17.

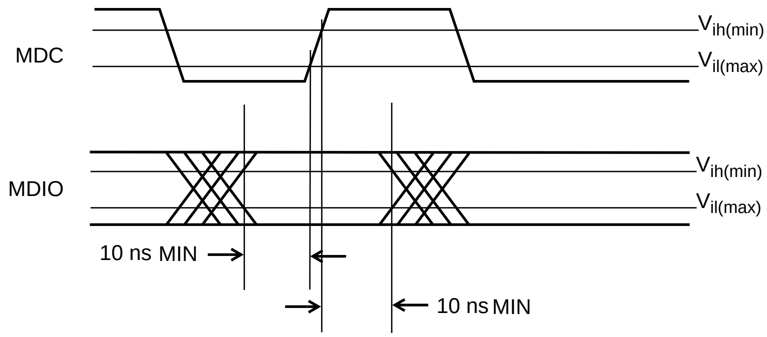


Figure 22-16—MDIO sourced by STA

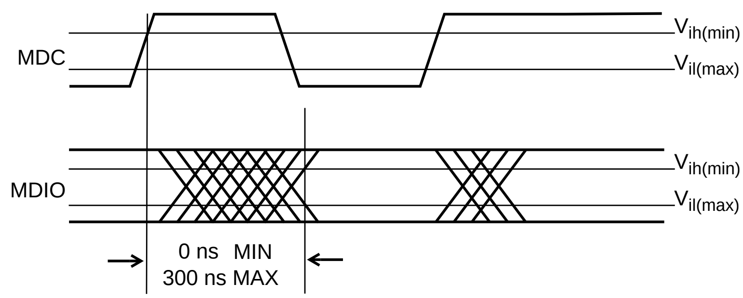


Figure 22-17—MDIO sourced by PHY

22.4 Electrical characteristics

The electrical characteristics of the MII are specified such that the three application environments described in 22.1 are accommodated. The electrical specifications are optimized for the integrated circuit to integrated circuit application environment, but integrated circuit drivers and receivers that are implemented in compliance with the specification will also support the mother board to daughter board and short cable application environments, provided those environments are constrained to the limits specified in this clause.

NOTE—The specifications for the driver and receiver characteristics can be met with TTL compatible input and output buffers implemented in a digital CMOS ASIC process.

22.4.1 Signal levels

The MII uses TTL signal levels, which are compatible with devices operating at a nominal supply voltage of either 5.0 or 3.3 V.

NOTE—Care should be taken to ensure that all MII receivers can tolerate dc input potentials from 0.00 V to 5.50 V, referenced to the COMMON signal, and transient input potentials as high as 7.3 V, or as low as –1.8 V, referenced to the COMMON signal, which can occur when MII signals change state. The transient duration will not exceed 15 ns. The dc source impedance will be no less than $R_{oh(min)}$. The transient source impedance will be no less than $(68 \times 0.85 =)\ 57.8\ \Omega$.

22.4.2 Signal paths

MII signals can be divided into two groups: signals that go between the STA and the PHY, and signals that go between the Reconciliation sublayer and the PHY.

Signals between the STA and the PHY may connect to one or more PHYs. When a signal goes between the STA and a single PHY, the signal's path is a point-to-point transmission path. When a signal goes between the STA and multiple PHYs, the signal's transmission path has drivers and receivers attached in any order along the length of the path and is not considered a point-to-point transmission path.

Signals between the Reconciliation sublayer and the PHY may also connect to one or more PHYs. However, the transmission path of each of these signals shall be either a point-to-point transmission path or a sequence of point-to-point transmission paths connected in series.

All connections to a point-to-point transmission path are at the path ends. The simplest point-to-point transmission path has a driver at one end and a receiver at the other. Point-to-point transmission paths can also have more than one driver and more than one receiver if the drivers and receivers are lumped at the ends of the path, and if the maximum propagation delay between the drivers and receivers at a given end of the path is a very small fraction of the 10%–90% rise/fall time for signals driven onto the path.

The MII shall use unbalanced signal transmission paths. The characteristic impedance Z_o of transmission paths is not specified for electrically short paths where transmission line reflections can be safely ignored.

The characteristic impedance Z_o of electrically long transmission paths or path segments shall be 68 Ω ± 15%.

The output impedance of the driver shall be used to control transmission line reflections on all electrically long point-to-point signal paths.

NOTE—In the context of this clause, a transmission path whose round-trip propagation delay is less than half of the 10%–90% rise/fall time of signals driven onto the path is considered an electrically short transmission path.

22.4.3 Driver characteristics

The driver characteristics defined in this clause apply to all MII signal drivers. The driver characteristics are specified in terms of both their ac and dc characteristics.

NOTE—Rail-to-rail drivers that comply with the driver output V-I diagrams in annex 22B will meet the following ac and dc characteristics.

22.4.3.1 DC characteristics

The high (one) logic level output potential V_{oh} shall be no less than 2.40 V at an output current I_{oh} of –4.0 mA. The low (zero) logic level output potential V_{ol} shall not be greater than 0.40 V at an output current I_{ol} of 4.0 mA.

22.4.3.2 AC characteristics

Drivers must also meet certain ac specifications in order to ensure adequate signal quality for electrically long point-to-point transmission paths. The ac specifications shall guarantee the following performance requirements.

The initial incident potential change arriving at the receiving end of a point-to-point MII signal path plus its reflection from the receiving end of the path must switch the receiver input potential monotonically from a valid high (one) level to $V_{il} \le V_{il(max)}$ – 200 mV, or from a valid low (zero) level to $V_{ih} \ge V_{ih(min)}$ + 200 mV.

Subsequent incident potential changes arriving at the receiving end of a point-to-point MII signal path plus their reflections from the receiving end of the path must not cause the receiver input potential to reenter the range $V_{il(max)}$ – 200 mV < V_i < $V_{ih(min)}$ + 200 mV except when switching from one valid logic level to the other. Such subsequent incident potential changes result from a mismatch between the characteristic impedance of the signal path and the driver output impedance.

22.4.4 Receiver characteristics

The receiver characteristics are specified in terms of the threshold levels for the logical high (one) and logical low (zero) states. In addition, receivers must meet the input current and capacitance limits.

22.4.4.1 Voltage thresholds

An input potential V_i of 2.00 V or greater shall be interpreted by the receiver as a logical high (one). Thus, $V_{ih(min)}$ = 2.00 V. An input potential V_i of 0.80 V or less shall be interpreted by the receiver as a logical low (zero). Thus, $V_{il(max)}$ = 0.80 V. The switching region is defined as signal potentials greater than $V_{il(max)}$ and less than $V_{ih(min)}$. When the input signal potential is in the switching region, the receiver output is undefined.

22.4.4.2 Input current

The input current requirements shall be measured at the MII connector and shall be referenced to the +5 V supply and COMMON pins of the connector. The input current requirements shall be met across the full range of supply voltage specified in 22.5.1.

The bidirectional signal MDIO has two sets of input current requirements. The MDIO drivers must be disabled when the input current measurement is made.

The input current characteristics for all MII signals shall fall within the limits specified in table 22-10.

Table 22-10—Input current limits

Symbol	Parameter	Condition	Signal(s)	Min (μA)	Max (μA)
I_{ih}	Input High Current	V_i=5.25 V	All except COL, MDC, MDIO[a]	—	200
			COL[b]	—	20
			MDC[c]	—	20
			MDIO[d]	—	3000
			MDIO[e]	—	20
I_{il}	Input Low Current	V_i=0.00 V	All except COL, MDC, MDIO[a]	–20	—
			COL[b]	–200	—
			MDC[c]	–20	—
			MDIO[d]	–180	—
			MDIO[e]	–3800	—
I_{iq}	Input Quiescent Current	V_i=2.4 V	MDIO[d]	—	1450
			MDIO[e]	–1450	—

[a]Measured at input of Reconciliation sublayer for CRS, RXD<3:0>, RX_CLK, RX_DV, RX_ER, and TX_CLK. Measured at inputs of PHY for TXD<3:0>, TX_EN, and TX_ER.
[b]Measured at input of Reconciliation sublayer.
[c]Measured at input of PHY.
[d]Measured at input of STA.
[e]Measured at input of PHY, which can be attached via the mechanical interface specified in 22.6.

NOTE—These limits for dc input current allow the use of weak resistive pull-ups or pull-downs on the input of each MII signal. They allow the use of weak resistive pull-downs on the signals other than COL, MDC, and MDIO. They allow the use of a weak resistive pull-up on the signal COL. They allow the use of a resistive pull-down of 2 kΩ ± 5% on the MDIO signal in the STA. They require a resistive pull-up of 1.5 kΩ ± 5% on the MDIO signal in a PHY that is attached to the MII via the mechanical interface specified in 22.6. The limits on MDC and MDIO allow the signals to be "bused" to several PHYs that are contained on the same printed circuit assembly, with a single PHY attached via the MII connector.

22.4.4.3 Input capacitance

For all signals other than MDIO, the receiver input capacitance C_i shall not exceed 8 pF.

For the MDIO signal, the transceiver input capacitance shall not exceed 10 pF.

22.4.5 Cable characteristics

The MII cable consists of a bundle of individual twisted pairs of conductors with an overall shield covering this bundle. Each twisted pair shall be composed of a conductor for an individual signal and a return path dedicated to that signal.

NOTE—It is recommended that the signals RX_CLK and TX_CLK be connected to pairs that are located in the center of the cable bundle.

22.4.5.1 Conductor size

The specifications for dc resistance in 22.4.5.6 and characteristic impedance in 22.4.5.2 assume a conductor size of 0.32 mm (28 AWG).

22.4.5.2 Characteristic impedance

The single-ended characteristic impedance of each twisted pair shall be 68 Ω ± 10%. The characteristic impedance measurement shall be performed with the return conductor connected to the cable's overall shield at both ends of the cable.

22.4.5.3 Delay

The propagation delay for each twisted pair, measured from the MII connector to the PHY, shall not exceed 2.5 ns. The measurement shall be made with the return conductor of the pair connected to the cable's overall shield at both ends of the cable. The propagation delay shall be measured at a frequency of 25 MHz.

22.4.5.4 Delay variation

The variation in the propagation delay of the twisted pairs in a given cable bundle, measured from the MII connector to the PHY, shall not exceed 0.1 ns. The measurement shall be made with the return conductor of the pair connected to the cable's overall shield at both ends of the cable.

22.4.5.5 Shielding

The overall shield must provide sufficient shielding to meet the requirements of protection against electromagnetic interference.

The overall shield shall be terminated to the connector shell as defined in 22.6.2. A double shield, consisting of both braid and foil shielding, is strongly recommended.

22.4.5.6 DC resistance

The dc resistance of each conductor in the cable, including the contact resistance of the connector, shall not exceed 150 mΩ measured from the MII connector to the remote PHY.

22.4.6 Hot insertion and removal

The insertion or removal of a PHY from the MII with power applied (hot insertion or removal) shall not damage the devices on either side of the MII. In order to prevent contention between multiple output buffers driving the PHY output signals, a PHY that is attached to the MII via the mechanical interface defined in 22.6 shall ensure that its output buffers present a high impedance to the MII during the insertion process, and shall ensure that this condition persists until the output buffers are enabled via the Isolate control bit in the management interface basic register.

NOTE—The act of inserting or removing a PHY from an operational system may cause the loss of one or more packets or management frames that may be in transit across the MII or MDI.

22.5 Power supply

When the mechanical interface defined in 22.6 is used to interconnect printed circuit subassemblies, the Reconciliation sublayer shall provide a regulated power supply for use by the PHY.

The power supply shall use the following MII lines:

+5 V: The plus voltage output to the PHY.

COMMON: The return to the power supply.

22.5.1 Supply voltage

The regulated supply voltage to the PHY shall be 5 Vdc ± 5% at the MII connector with respect to the COMMON circuit at the MII over the range of load current from 0 to 750 mA. The method of over/under voltage protection is not specified; however, under no conditions of operation shall the source apply a voltage to the +5 V circuit of less than 0 V or greater than +5.25 Vdc.

Implementations that provide a conversion from the MII to the Attachment Unit Interface (AUI) to support connection to 10 Mb/s Medium Attachment Units (MAUs) will require a supplemental power source in order to meet the AUI power supply requirements specified in 7.5.2.5.

22.5.2 Load current

The sum of the currents carried on the +5 V lines shall not exceed 750 mA, measured at the MII connector. The surge current drawn by the PHY shall not exceed 5 A peak for a period of 10 ms. The PHY shall be capable of powering up from 750 mA current limited sources.

22.5.3 Short-circuit protection

Adequate provisions shall be made to ensure protection of the power supply from overload conditions, including a short circuit between the +5 V lines and the COMMON lines.

22.6 Mechanical characteristics

When the MII is used to interconnect two printed circuit assemblies via a short length of cable, the cable shall be connected to the circuit assembly that implements the Reconciliation sublayer by means of the mechanical interface defined in this clause.

22.6.1 Definition of mechanical interface

A 40-pole connector having the mechanical mateability dimensions as specified in IEC 1076-3-101: 1995 shall be used for the MII connector. The circuit assembly that contains the MAC sublayer and Reconciliation sublayer shall have a female connector with screw locks, and the mating cable shall have a male connector with jack screws.

No requirements are imposed on the mechanical interface used to connect the MII cable to the PHY circuit assembly when the MII cable is permanently attached to the PHY circuit assembly, as shown in figure 22-2. If the cable is not permanently attached to the PHY circuit assembly, then a male connector with jack screws shall be used for the MII connector at the PHY circuit assembly.

NOTE—All MII conformance tests are performed at the mating surfaces of the MII connector at the Reconciliation sublayer end of the cable. If a PHY circuit assembly does not have a permanently attached cable, the vendor must ensure that all of the requirements of this clause are also met when a cable that meets the requirements of 22.4.5 is used to attach the PHY circuit assembly to the circuit assembly that contains the Reconciliation sublayer.

22.6.2 Shielding effectiveness and transfer impedance

The shells of these connectors shall be plated with conductive material to ensure the integrity of the current path from the cable shield to the chassis. The transfer impedance of this path shall not exceed the values listed in table 22-11, after a minimum of 500 cycles of mating and unmating. The shield transfer impedance values listed in the table are measured in accordance with the procedure defined in annex L of IEEE P1394 [A18].

Table 22-11—Transfer impedance performance requirements

Frequency	Value
30 MHz	–26 dBΩ
159 MHz	–13 dBΩ
500 MHz	–5 dBΩ

All additions to provide for female shell to male shell conductivity shall be on the shell of the connector with male contacts. There should be multiple contact points around the sides of this shell to provide for shield continuity.

22.6.3 Connector pin numbering

Figure 22-18 depicts the MII connector pin numbering, as seen looking into the contacts of a female connector from the mating side.

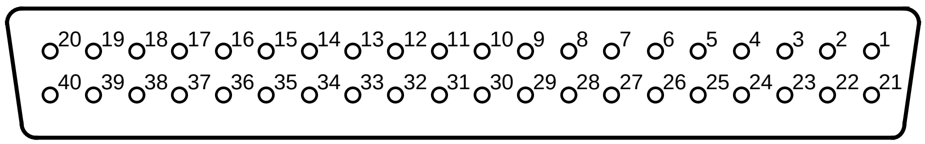


Figure 22-18—MII connector pin numbering

22.6.4 Clearance dimensions

The circuit assembly that contains the MAC sublayer and Reconciliation sublayer shall provide sufficient clearance around the MII connector to allow the attachment of cables that use die cast metal backshells and overmold assemblies. This requirement may be met by providing the clearance dimensions shown in figure 22-19.

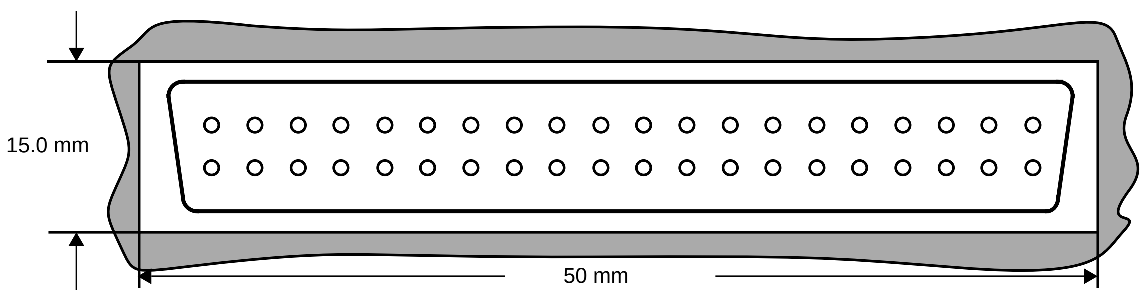


Figure 22-19—MII connector clearance dimensions

22.6.5 Contact assignments

Table 22-12 shows the assignment of circuits to connector contacts.

Table 22-12—MII connector contact assignments

Contact	Signal name	Contact	Signal name
1	+5 V	21	+5 V
2	MDIO	22	COMMON
3	MDC	23	COMMON
4	RXD<3>	24	COMMON
5	RXD<2>	25	COMMON
6	RXD<1>	26	COMMON
7	RXD<0>	27	COMMON
8	RX_DV	28	COMMON
9	RX_CLK	29	COMMON
10	RX_ER	30	COMMON
11	TX_ER	31	COMMON
12	TX_CLK	32	COMMON
13	TX_EN	33	COMMON
14	TXD<0>	34	COMMON
15	TXD<1>	35	COMMON
16	TXD<2>	36	COMMON
17	TXD<3>	37	COMMON
18	COL	38	COMMON
19	CRS	39	COMMON
20	+5 V	40	+5 V

22.7 Protocol Implementation Conformance Statement (PICS) proforma for clause 22, Reconciliation Sublayer (RS) and Media Independent Interface (MII)[19]

22.7.1 Introduction

The supplier of a protocol implementation that is claimed to conform to IEEE Std 802.3u-1995, Reconciliation Sublayer (RS) and Media Independent Interface (MII), shall complete the following Protocol Implementation Conformance Statement (PICS) proforma.

A detailed description of the symbols used in the PICS proforma, along with instructions for completing the PICS proforma, can be found in clause 21.

22.7.2 Identification

22.7.2.1 Implementation identification

Supplier	
Contact point for enquiries about the PICS	
Implementation Name(s) and Version(s)	
Other information necessary for full identification—e.g., name(s) and version(s) for machines and/or operating systems; System Names(s)	
NOTES 1—Only the first three items are required for all implementations; other information may be completed as appropriate in meeting the requirements for the identification. 2—The terms Name and Version should be interpreted appropriately to correspond with a supplier's terminology (e.g., Type, Series, Model).	

22.7.2.2 Protocol summary

Identification of protocol standard	IEEE Std 802.3u-1995, Reconciliation Sublayer (RS) and Media Independent Interface (MII)
Identification of amendments and corrigenda to this PICS proforma that have been completed as part of this PICS	
Have any Exception items been required? No [ ] Yes [ ] (See clause 21; the answer Yes means that the implementation does not conform to the standard.)	
Date of Statement	

[19]*Copyright release for PICS proformas:* Users of this standard may freely reproduce the PICS proforma in this annex so that it can be used for its intended purpose and may further publish the completed PICS.

22.7.3 PICS proforma tables for reconciliation sublayer and media independent interface

22.7.3.1 Mapping of PLS service primitives

Item	Feature	Subclause	Status	Support	Value/Comment
PL1	Response to RX_ER	22.2.1.5	M		Must produce FrameCheckEr-ror at MAC

22.7.3.2 MII signal functional specifications

Item	Feature	Subclause	Status	Support	Value/Comment
SF1	TX_CLK frequency	22.2.2.1	M		25% of transmitted data rate (25 MHz or 2.5 MHz)
SF2	TX_CLK duty cycle	22.2.2.1	M		35% to 65%
SF3	RX_CLK min high/low time	22.2.2.2	M		35% of nominal period
SF4	RX_CLK synchronous to re-covered data	22.2.2.2	M		
SF5	RX_CLK frequency	22.2.2.2	M		25% of received data rate (25 MHz or 2.5 MHz)
SF6	RX_CLK duty cycle	22.2.2.2	M		35% to 65%
SF7	RX_CLK source due to loss of signal	22.2.2.2	M		Nominal clock reference (e.g., TX_CLK reference)
SF8	RX_CLK transitions only while RX_DV de-asserted	22.2.2.2	M		
SF9	RX_CLK max high/low time following de-assertion of RX_DV	22.2.2.2	M		max 2 times the nominal period
SF10	TX_EN assertion	22.2.2.3	M		On first nibble of preamble
SF11	TX_EN remains asserted	22.2.2.3	M		Stay asserted while all nibbles are transmitted over MII
SF12	TX_EN transitions	22.2.2.3	M		Synchronous with TX_CLK
SF13	TX_EN negation	22.2.2.3	M		Before first TX_CLK after final nibble of frame
SF14	TXD<3:0> transitions	22.2.2.4	M		Synchronous with TX_CLK
SF15	TXD<3:0> effect on PHY while TX_EN is de-asserted	22.2.2.4	M		No effect
SF16	TX_ER transitions	22.2.2.5	M		Synchronous with TX_CLK
SF17	TX_ER effect on PHY while TX_EN is asserted	22.2.2.5	M		Cause PHY to emit invalid symbol
SF18	TX_ER effect on PHY while operating at 10 Mb/s, or when TX_EN is de-asserted	22.2.2.5	M		No effect on PHY

Item	Feature	Subclause	Status	Support	Value/Comment
SF19	TX_ER implementation	22.2.2.5	M		At MII of a PHY
SF20	TX_ER pulled down if not actively driven	22.2.2.5	M		At MII of a repeater or MAC/RS only
SF21	RX_DV transitions	22.2.2.6	M		Synchronous with RX_CLK
SF22	RX_DV assertion	22.2.2.6	M		From first recovered nibble to final nibble of a frame per figure 22-6
SF23	RX_DV negation	22.2.2.6	M		Before the first RX_CLK follows the final nibble per figure 22-6
SF24	RXD<3:0> effect on Reconciliation sublayer while RX_DV is de-asserted	22.2.2.7	M		No effect
SF25	RX_ER assertion	22.2.2.8	M		By PHY to indicate error
SF26	RX_ER transitions	22.2.2.8	M		Synchronous with RX_CLK
SF27	RX_ER effect on Reconciliation sublayer while RX_DV is de-asserted	22.2.2.8	M		No effect
SF28	CRS assertion	22.2.2.9	M		By PHY when either transmit or receive is NON-IDLE
SF29	CRS de-assertion	22.2.2.9	M		By PHY when both transmit and receive are IDLE
SF30	CRS assertion during collision	22.2.2.9	M		Remain asserted throughout
SF31	COL assertion	22.2.2.10	M		By PHY upon detection of collision on medium
SF32	COL remains asserted while collision persists	22.2.2.10	M		
SF33	COL response to SQE	22.2.2.10	M		Assertion by PHY
SF34	MDC min high/low time	22.2.2.11	M		160 ns
SF35	MDC min period	22.2.2.11	M		400 ns
SF36	MDIO uses three-state drivers	22.2.2.12	M		
SF37	PHY pullup on MDIO	22.2.2.12	M		1.5 kΩ ± 5% (to +5 V)
SF38	STA pulldown on MDIO	22.2.2.12	M		2 kΩ ± 5% (to 0 V)

22.7.3.3 Frame structure

Item	Feature	Subclause	Status	Support	Value/Comment
FS1	Format of transmitted frames	22.2.3	M		Per figure 22-10
FS2	Nibble transmission order	22.2.3	M		Per figure 22-11
FS3	Preamble 7 octets long	22.2.3.2.1	M		10101010 10101010 10101010 10101010 10101010 10101010 10101010
FS4	Preamble and SFD transmission	22.2.3.2.1	M		Per table 22-3
FS5	Preamble and SFD reception	22.2.3.2.2	M		Per table 22-4, table 22-5
FS6	N octets transmitted as 2N nibbles	22.2.3.3	M		Per figure 22-11
FS7	Indication of excess nibbles	22.2.3.5	M		Frame contains non-integer number of octets is received

22.7.3.4 Management functions

Item	Feature	Subclause	Status	Support	Value/Comment
MF1	Incorporate of basic register set	22.2.4	M		Two 16-bit registers as Control register (register 0) and Status register (register 1)
MF2	Action on reset	22.2.4.1.1	M		Reset the entire PHY including Control and Status to default value and 0.15 ≤ 1
MF3	Return 1 until reset completed	22.2.4.1.1	M		Yes (when reset is done, 0.15 is self clearing)
MF4	Reset completes within 0.5 s	22.2.4.1.1	M		
MF5	Loopback mode	22.2.4.1.2	M		Whenever 0.14 is 1
MF6	Receive circuitry isolated from network in loopback mode	22.2.4.1.2	M		
MF7	Effect of assertion of TX_EN in loopback mode	22.2.4.1.2	M		No transmission
MF8	Propagation of data in loopback mode	22.2.4.1.2	M		PHY accepts transmit data and return it as receive data
MF9	Delay from TX_EN to RX_DV in loopback mode	22.2.4.1.2	M		Less than 512 BT
MF10	Behavior of COL in loopback mode	22.2.4.1.2	M		De-asserted (for 0.7 = 0)
MF11	Behavior of COL in loopback mode	22.2.4.1.2	M		If 0.7 = 1, see MF33 and MF34

Item	Feature	Subclause	Status	Support	Value/Comment
MF12	Value of speed selection bit for single speed PHY	22.2.4.1.3	M		Set to match the correct PHY speed
MF13	Single speed PHY ignores writes to speed selection bit	22.2.4.1.3	M		
MF14	Auto-Negotiation enable	22.2.4.1.4	M		By setting 0.12 = 1
MF15	Duplex mode, speed selection have no effect when Auto-Negotiation is enabled	22.2.4.1.4	M		If 0.12=1, bits 0.13 and 0.8 have no effect on link configuration
MF16	PHY without Auto-Negotiation returns value of zero	22.2.4.1.4	M		Yes (if 1.3=0, then 0.12=0)
MF17	PHY without Auto-Negotiation ignores writes to enable bit	22.2.4.1.4	M		Yes (if 1.3=0, 0.12 always = 0 and cannot be changed)
MF18	Response to management transactions in power down	22.2.4.1.5	M		Remains active
MF19	Spurious signals in power down	22.2.4.1.5	M		None (not allowed)
MF20	TX_CLK and RX_CLK stabilize within 0.5 s	22.2.4.1.5	M		Yes (after both bits 0.11 and 0.10 are cleared to zero)
MF21	PHY Response to input signals while isolated	22.2.4.1.6	M		NONE
MF22	High impedance on PHY output signals while isolated	22.2.4.1.6	M		Yes (TX_CLK, RX_CLK, RX_DV, RX_ER, RXD<3:0>, COL, and CRS)
MF23	Response to management transactions while isolated	22.2.4.1.6	M		Remains active
MF24	Default value of isolate	22.2.4.1.6	M		0.10 =1
MF25	PHY without Auto-Negotiation returns value of zero	22.2.4.1.7	M		0.9 = 0 if 1.3 = 0 or 0.12 = 0
MF26	PHY without Auto-Negotiation ignores writes to restart bit	22.2.4.1.7	M		0.9 = 0, cannot be changed if 1.3 = 0 or 0.12 = 0
MF27	Restart Auto-Negotiation	22.2.4.1.7	M		When 0.9 = 1 if 0.12 = 1 and 1.3 = 1
MF28	Return 1 until Auto-Negotiation initiated	22.2.4.1.7	M		0.9 is self clearing to 0
MF29	Auto-Negotiation not effected by clearing bit	22.2.4.1.7	M		
MF30	Value of duplex mode bit for PHYs with one duplex mode	22.2.4.1.8	M		Set 0.8 to match the correct PHY duplex mode
MF31	PHY with one duplex mode ignores writes to duplex bit	22.2.4.1.8	M		Yes (0.8 remains unchanged)
MF32	Loopback not affected by duplex mode	22.2.4.1.8	M		Yes (0.8 has no effect on PHY when 0.14 = 1)
MF33	Assertion of COL in collision test mode	22.2.4.1.9	M		Within 512 BT after TX_EN is asserted

Item	Feature	Subclause	Status	Support	Value/Comment
MF34	De-assertion of COL in collision test mode	22.2.4.1.9	M		Within 4 BT after TX_EN is de-asserted
MF35	Reserved bits written as zero	22.2.4.1.10	M		
MF36	Reserved bits ignored when read	22.2.4.1.10	M		
MF37	PHY returns 0 in reserved bits	22.2.4.1.10	M		
MF38	Effect of write on status register	22.2.4.2	M		No effect
MF39	Reserved bits ignored when read	22.2.4.2.6	M		
MF40	PHY returns 0 in reserved bits	22.2.4.2.6	M		
MF41	PHY returns 0 if Auto-Negotiation disabled	22.2.4.2.8	M		Yes (1.5 = 0 when 0.12 = 0)
MF42	PHY returns 0 if it lacks ability to perform Auto-Negotiation	22.2.4.2.8	M		Yes (1.5 = 0 when 1.3 = 0)
MF43	Remote fault has latching function	22.2.4.2.9	M		Yes (once set will remain set until cleared)
MF44	Remote fault cleared on read	22.2.4.2.9	M		Yes
MF45	Remote fault cleared on reset	22.2.4.2.9	M		Yes (when 0.15 = 1)
MF46	PHY without remote fault returns value of zero	22.2.4.2.9	M		Yes (1.4 always 0)
MF47	Link status has latching function	22.2.4.2.11	M		Yes (once cleared by link failure will remain cleared until read by MII)
MF48	Jabber detect has latching function	22.2.4.2.12	M		Yes (once set will remain set until cleared)
MF49	Jabber detect cleared on read	22.2.4.2.12	M		
MF50	Jabber detect cleared on reset	22.2.4.2.12	M		
MF51	100BASE-T4 and 100BASE-X PHYs return 0 for jabber detect	22.2.4.2.12	M		Yes (1.1 always = 0 for 100BASE-T4 and 100BASE-TX)
MF52	MDIO not driven if register read is unimplemented	22.2.4.3	M		Yes (MDIO remain high impedance)
MF53	Write has no effect if register written is unimplemented	22.2.4.3	M		
MF54	Registers 2 and 3 constitute unique identifier for PHY type	22.2.4.3.1	M		
MF55	MSB of PHY identifier is 2.15	22.2.4.3.1	M		
MF56	LSB of PHY identifier is 3.0	22.2.4.3.1	M		
MF57	Composition of PHY identifier	22.2.4.3.1	M		22-bit OUI, 6-bit model, 4-bit version per figure 22-12
MF58	Format of management frames	22.2.4.4	M		Per table 22-9

Item	Feature	Subclause	Status	Support	Value/Comment
MF59	Idle condition on MDIO	22.2.4.4.1	M		High impedance state
MF60	MDIO preamble sent by STA	22.2.4.4.2	M		32 contiguous logic one bits
MF61	MDIO preamble observed by PHY	22.2.4.4.2	M		32 contiguous logic one bits
MF62	Assignment of PHYAD 0	22.2.4.4.5	M		Address of PHY attached via Mechanical Interface
MF63	Assignment of REGAD 0	22.2.4.4.6	M		MII control register address
MF64	Assignment of REGAD 1	22.2.4.4.6	M		MII status register address
MF65	High impedance during first bit time of turnaround in read transaction	22.2.4.4.7	M		
MF66	PHY drives zero during second bit time of turnaround in read transaction	22.2.4.4.7	M		
MF67	STA drives MDIO during turn-around in write transaction	22.2.4.4.7	M		
MF68	First data bit transmitted	22.2.4.4.8	M		Bit 15 of the register being ad-dressed

22.7.3.5 Signal timing characteristics

Item	Feature	Subclause	Status	Support	Value/Comment
ST1	Timing characteristics measured in accordance with annex 22C	22.3	M		
ST2	Transmit signal clock to output delay	22.3.1	M		Min = 0 ns; Max = 25 ns per figure 22-14
ST3	Receive signal setup time	22.3.2	M		Min = 10 ns per figure 22-15
ST4	Receive signal hold time	22.3.2	M		Min = 10 ns per figure 22-15
ST5	MDIO setup and hold time	22.3.4	M		Setup min = 10 ns; Hold min = 10 ns per figure 22-16
ST6	MDIO clock to output delay	22.3.4	M		Min = 0 ns; Max = 300 ns per figure 22-17

22.7.3.6 Electrical characteristics

Item	Feature	Subclause	Status	Support	Value/Comment
EC1	Signal paths are either point to point, or a sequence of point-to-point transmission paths	22.4.2	M		
EC2	MII uses unbalanced signal transmission paths	22.4.2	M		
EC3	Characteristic impedance of electrically long paths	22.4.2	M		68 Ω ± 15%
EC4	Output impedance of driver used to control reflections	22.4.2	M		On all electrically long point to point signal paths
EC5	V_{oh}	22.4.3.1	M		≥ 2.4 V (I_{oh} = –4 mA)
EC6	V_{ol}	22.4.3.1	M		≤ 0.4 V (I_{ol} = 4 mA)
EC7	Performance requirements to be guaranteed by ac specifications	22.4.3.2	M		Min switching potential change (including its reflection) ≥ 1.8 V
EC8	$V_{ih(min)}$	22.4.4.1	M		2 V
EC9	$V_{il(max)}$	22.4.4.1	M		0.8 V
EC10	Input current measurement point	22.4.4.2	M		At MII connector
EC11	Input current reference potentials	22.4.4.2	M		Reference to MII connector +5 V and COMMON pins
EC12	Input current reference potential range	22.4.4.2	M		0 V to 5.25 V
EC13	Input current limits	22.4.4.2	M		Per table 22-10

Item	Feature	Subclause	Status	Support	Value/Comment
EC14	Input capacitance for signals other than MDIO	22.4.4.3	M		≤ 8 pF
EC15	Input capacitance for MDIO	22.4.4.3	M		≤ 10 pF
EC16	Twisted-pair composition	22.4.5	M		Conductor for each signal with dedicated return path
EC17	Single-ended characteristic impedance	22.4.5.2	M		68 Ω ± 10%
EC18	Characteristic impedance measurement method	22.4.5.2	M		With return conductor connected to cable shield
EC19	Twisted-pair propagation delay	22.4.5.3	M		≤ 2.5 ns
EC20	Twisted-pair propagation delay measurement method	22.4.5.3	M		With return conductor connected to cable shield
EC21	Twisted-pair propagation delay measurement frequency	22.4.5.3	M		25 MHz
EC22	Twisted-pair propagation delay variation	22.4.5.4	M		≤ 0.1 ns
EC23	Twisted-pair propagation delay variation measurement method	22.4.5.4	M		With return conductor connected to cable shield
EC24	Cable shield termination	22.4.5.5	M		To the connector shell
EC25	Cable conductor DC resistance	22.4.5.6	M		≤ 150 mΩ
EC26	Effect of hot insertion/removal	22.4.6	M		Causes no damage
EC27	State of PHY output buffers during hot insertion	22.4.6	M		High impedance
EC28	State of PHY output buffers after hot insertion	22.4.6	M		High impedance until enabled via Isolate bit

22.7.3.7 Power supply

Item	Feature	Subclause	Status	Support	Value/Comment
PS1	Regulated power supply provided	22.5	M		To PHY by Reconciliation sublayer
PS2	Power supply lines	22.5	M		+5 V and COMMON (return of +5 V)
PS3	Regulated supply voltage limits	22.5.1	M		5 Vdc ± 5%
PS4	Over/under voltage limits	22.5.1	M		Over limit = 5.25 Vdc Under limit = 0 V
PS5	Load current limit	22.5.2	M		750 mA
PS6	Surge current limit	22.5.2	M		≤ 5 A peak for 10 ms
PS7	PHY can power up from current limited source	22.5.2	M		From 750 mA current limited source
PS8	Short-circuit protection	22.5.3	M		When +5 V and COMMON are shorted

22.7.3.8 Mechanical characteristics

Item	Feature	Subclause	Status	Support	Value/Comment
*MC1	Use of Mechanical Interface	22.6	O		Optional
MC2	Connector reference standard	22.6.1	MC1:M		IEC 1076-3-101: 1995
MC3	Use of female connector	22.6.1	MC1:M		At MAC/RS side
MC4	Use of male connector	22.6.1	MC1:M		At PHY mating cable side
MC5	Connector shell plating	22.6.2	MC1:M		Use conductive material
MC6	Shield transfer impedance	22.6.2	MC1:M		After 500 cycles of mating/ unmating, per table 22-11
MC7	Additions to provide for female shell to male shell conductivity	22.6.2	MC1:M		On shell of conductor with male contacts
MC8	Clearance dimensions	22.6.4	MC1:M		15 mm × 50 mm, per figure 22-19

23. Physical Coding Sublayer (PCS), Physical Medium Attachment (PMA) sublayer and baseband medium, type 100BASE-T4

23.1 Overview

The 100BASE-T4 PCS, PMA, and baseband medium specifications are aimed at users who want 100 Mb/s performance, but would like to retain the benefits of using voice-grade twisted-pair cable. 100BASE-T4 signaling requires four pairs of Category 3 or better cable, installed according to ISO/IEC 11801: 1995, as specified in 23.6. This type of cable, and the connectors used with it, are simple to install and reconfigure. 100BASE-T4 does not transmit a continuous signal between packets, which makes it useful in battery powered applications. The 100BASE-T4 PHY is one of the 100BASE-T family of high-speed CSMA/CD network specifications.

23.1.1 Scope

This clause defines the type 100BASE-T4 Physical Coding Sublayer (PCS), type 100BASE-T4 Physical Medium Attachment (PMA) sublayer, and type 100BASE-T4 Medium Dependent Interface (MDI). Together, the PCS and PMA layers comprise a 100BASE-T4 Physical Layer (PHY). Provided in this document are full functional, electrical, and mechanical specifications for the type 100BASE-T4 PCS, PMA, and MDI. This clause also specifies the baseband medium used with 100BASE-T4.

23.1.2 Objectives

The following are the objectives of 100BASE-T4:

a) To support the CSMA/CD MAC.
b) To support the 100BASE-T MII, Repeater, and optional Auto-Negotiation.
c) To provide 100 Mb/s data rate at the MII.
d) To provide for operating over unshielded twisted pairs of Category 3, 4, or 5 cable, installed as horizontal runs in accordance with ISO/IEC 11801: 1995, as specified in 23.6, at distances up to 100 m (328 ft).
e) To allow for a nominal network extent of 200 m, including:
   1) Unshielded twisted-pair links of 100 m.
   2) Two-repeater networks of approximately a 200 m span.
f) To provide a communication channel with a mean ternary symbol error rate, at the PMA service interface, of less than one part in 10^8.

23.1.3 Relation of 100BASE-T4 to other standards

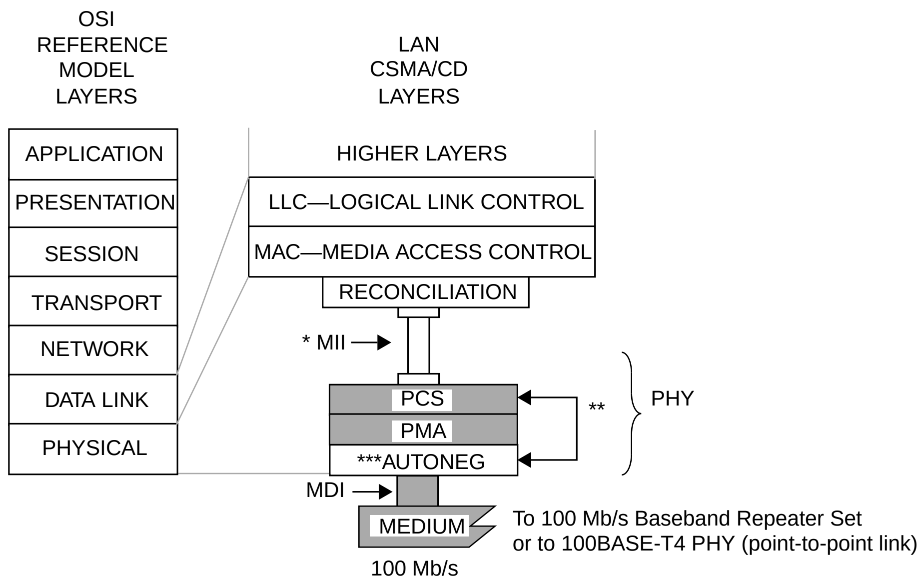
Relations between the 100BASE-T4 PHY and the ISO Open Systems Interconnection (OSI) reference model and the IEEE 802.3 CSMA/CD LAN model are shown in figure 23-1. The PHY Layers shown in figure 23-1 connect one clause 4 Media Access Control (MAC) layer to a clause 27 repeater. This clause also discusses other variations of the basic configuration shown in figure 23-1. This whole clause builds on clauses 1 through 4 of this standard.

23.1.4 Summary

The following paragraphs summarize the PCS and PMA clauses of this document.

23.1.4.1 Summary of Physical Coding Sublayer (PCS) specification

The 100BASE-T4 PCS couples a Media Independent Interface (MII), as described in clause 22, to a Physical Medium Attachment sublayer (PMA).



MDI = MEDIUM DEPENDENT INTERFACE
MII = MEDIA INDEPENDENT INTERFACE

PCS = PHYSICAL CODING SUBLAYER
PMA = PHYSICAL MEDIUM ATTACHMENT
PHY = PHYSICAL LAYER DEVICE

* MII is optional.
** AUTONEG communicates with the PMA sublayer through the PMA service interface messages PMA_LINK.request and PMA_LINK.indicate.
*** AUTONEG is optional.

Figure 23-1—Type 100BASE-T4 PHY relationship to the ISO Open Systems Interconnection (OSI) reference model and the IEEE 802.3 CSMA/CD LAN model

The PCS Transmit function accepts data nibbles from the MII. The PCS Transmit function encodes these nibbles using an 8B6T coding scheme (to be described) and passes the resulting ternary symbols to the PMA. In the reverse direction, the PMA conveys received ternary symbols to the PCS Receive function. The PCS Receive function decodes them into octets, and then passes the octets one nibble at a time up to the MII. The PCS also contains a PCS Carrier Sense function, a PCS Error Sense function, a PCS Collision Presence function, and a management interface.

Figure 23-2 shows the division of responsibilities between the PCS, PMA, and MDI layers.

Physical level communication between PHY entities takes place over four twisted pairs. This specification permits the use of Category 3, 4, or 5 unshielded twisted pairs, installed according to ISO/IEC 11801: 1995, as specified in 23.6. Figure 23-3 shows how the PHY manages the four twisted pairs at its disposal.

The 100BASE-T4 transmission algorithm always leaves one pair open for detecting carrier from the far end (see figure 23-3). Leaving one pair open for carrier detection in each direction greatly simplifies media access control. All collision detection functions are accomplished using only the unidirectional pairs TX_D1 and RX_D2, in a manner similar to 10BASE-T. This collision detection strategy leaves three pairs in each direction free for data transmission, which uses an 8B6T block code, schematically represented in figure 23-4.

8B6T coding, as used with 100BASE-T4 signaling, maps data octets into ternary symbols. Each octet is mapped to a pattern of 6 ternary symbols, called a 6T code group. The 6T code groups are fanned out to three independent serial channels. The effective data rate carried on each pair is one third of 100 Mb/s,

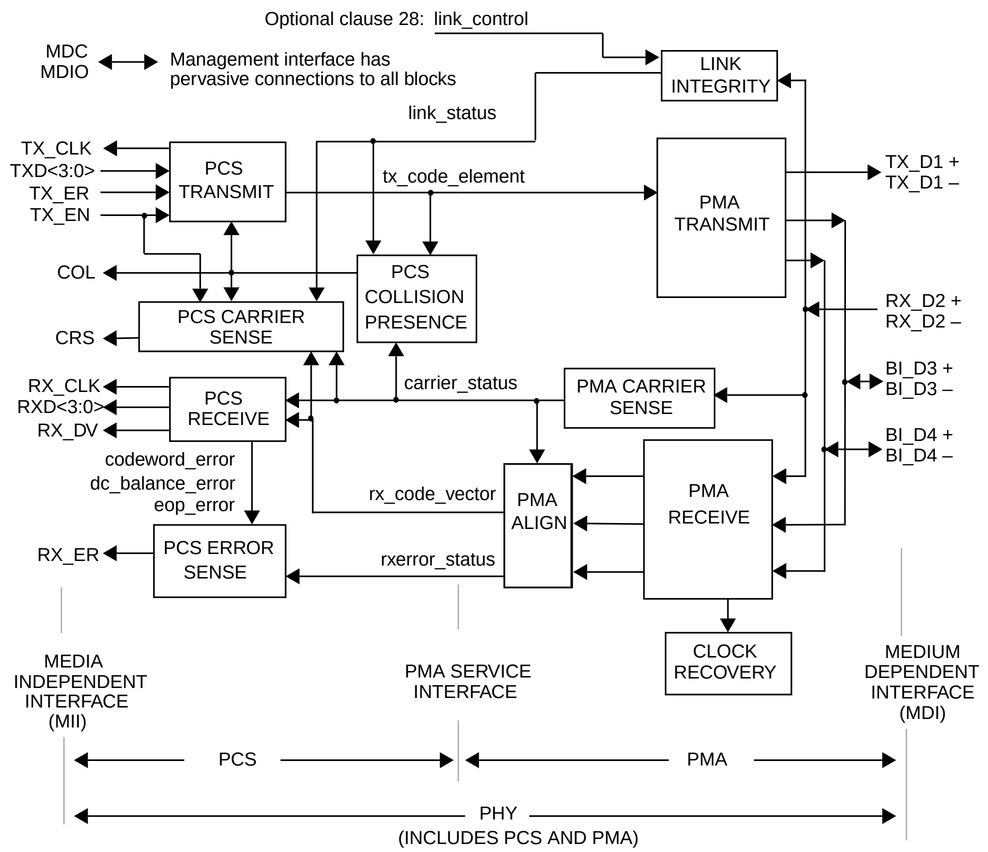


Figure 23-2—Division of responsibilities between 100BASE-T4 PCS and PMA

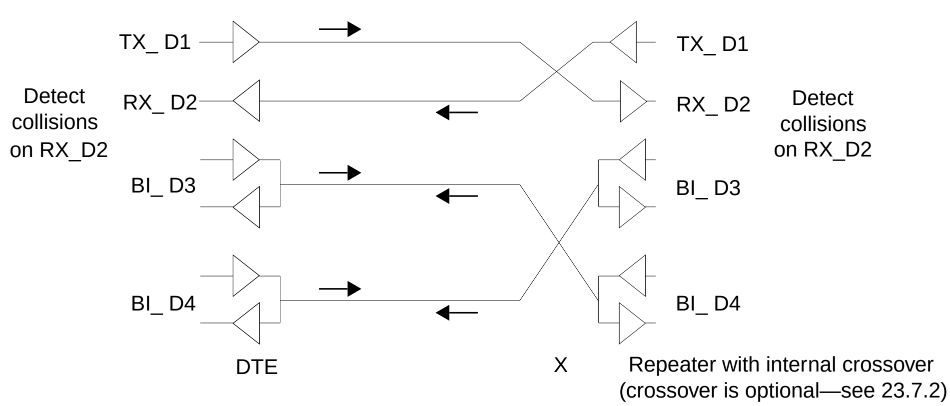


Figure 23-3—Use of wire pairs

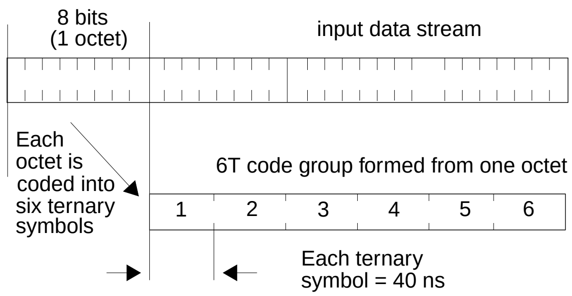


Figure 23-4—8B6T coding

which is 33.333... Mb/s. The ternary symbol transmission rate on each pair is 6/8 times 33.33 Mb/s, or precisely 25.000 MHz.

Refer to annex 23A for a complete listing of 8B6T code words.

The PCS functions and state diagrams are specified in 23.2. The PCS electrical interface to the MII conforms to the interface requirements of clause 21. The PCS interface to the PMA is an abstract message-passing interface specified in 23.3.

23.1.4.2 Summary of physical medium attachment (PMA) specification

The PMA couples messages from the PMA service interface onto the twisted-pair physical medium. The PMA provides communications, at 100 Mb/s, over four pairs of twisted-pair wiring up to 100 m in length.

The PMA Transmit function, shown in figure 23-2, comprises three independent ternary data transmitters. Upon receipt of a PMA_UNITDATA.request message, the PMA synthesizes one ternary symbol on each of the three output channels (TX_D1, BI_D3, and BI_D4). Each output driver has a *ternary* output, meaning that the output waveform can assume any of three values, corresponding to the transmission of ternary symbols CS0, CS1 or CS-1 (see 23.4.3.1) on each of the twisted pairs.

The PMA Receive function comprises three independent ternary data receivers. The receivers are responsible for acquiring clock, decoding the Start of Stream Delimiter (SSD) on each channel, and providing data to the PCS in the synchronous fashion defined by the PMA_UNITDATA.indicate message. The PMA also contains functions for PMA Carrier Sense and Link Integrity.

PMA functions and state diagrams appear in 23.4. PMA electrical specifications appear in 23.5.

23.1.5 Application of 100BASE-T4

23.1.5.1 Compatibility considerations

All implementations of the twisted-pair link shall be compatible at the MDI. The PCS, PMA, and the medium are defined to provide compatibility among devices designed by different manufacturers. Designers are free to implement circuitry within the PCS and PMA (in an application-dependent manner) provided the MDI (and MII, when implemented) specifications are met.

23.1.5.2 Incorporating the 100BASE-T4 PHY into a DTE

The PCS is required when used with a DTE. The PCS provides functions necessary to the overall system operation (such as 8B6T coding) and cannot be omitted. Refer to figure 23-1.

When the PHY is incorporated within the physical bounds of a DTE, conformance to the MII interface is optional, provided that the observable behavior of the resulting system is identical to a system with a full MII implementation. For example, an integrated PHY may incorporate an interface between PCS and MAC that is logically equivalent to the MII, but does not have the full output current drive capability called for in the MII specification.

23.1.5.3 Use of 100BASE-T4 PHY for point-to-point communication

The 100BASE-T4 PHY, in conjunction with the MAC specified in clauses 1-4 (including parameterized values in 4.4.2.3 to support 100 Mb/s operation), may be used at both ends of a link for point-to-point applications between two DTEs. Such a configuration does not require a repeater. In this case each PHY may connect through an MII to its respective DTE. Optionally, either PHY (or both PHYs) may be incorporated into the DTEs without an exposed MII.

23.1.5.4 Support for Auto-Negotiation

The PMA service interface contains primitives used by the Auto-Negotiation algorithm (clause 28) to automatically select operating modes when connected to a like device.

23.2 PCS functional specifications

The 100BASE-T4 PCS couples a Media Independent Interface (MII), as described in clause 22, to a 100BASE-T4 Physical Medium Attachment sublayer (PMA).

At its interface with the MII, the PCS communicates via the electrical signals defined in clause 22.

The interface between PCS and the next lower level (PMA) is an abstract message-passing interface described in 23.3. The physical realization of this interface is left to the implementor, provided the requirements of this standard, where applicable, are met.

23.2.1 PCS functions

The PCS comprises one PCS Reset function and five simultaneous and asynchronous operating functions. The PCS operating functions are PCS Transmit, PCS Receive, PCS Error Sense, PCS Carrier Sense, and PCS Collision Presence. All operating functions start immediately after the successful completion of the PCS Reset function.

The PCS reference diagram, figure 23-5, shows how the five operating functions relate to the messages of the PCS-PMA interface. Connections from the management interface (signals MDC and MDIO) to other layers are pervasive, and are not shown in figure 23-5. The management functions are specified in clause 30. See also figure 23-6, which defines the structure of frames passed from PCS to PMA. See also figure 23-7, which presents a reference model helpful for understanding the definitions of PCS Transmit function state variables ohr1-4 and tsr.

23.2.1.1 PCS Reset function

The PCS Reset function shall be executed any time either of two conditions occur. These two conditions are “power on” and the receipt of a reset request from the management entity. The PCS Reset function initializes all PCS functions. The PCS Reset function sets pcs_reset ≤ ON for the duration of its reset function. All state diagrams take the open-ended pcs_reset branch upon execution of the PCS Reset function. The reference diagrams do not explicitly show the PCS Reset function.

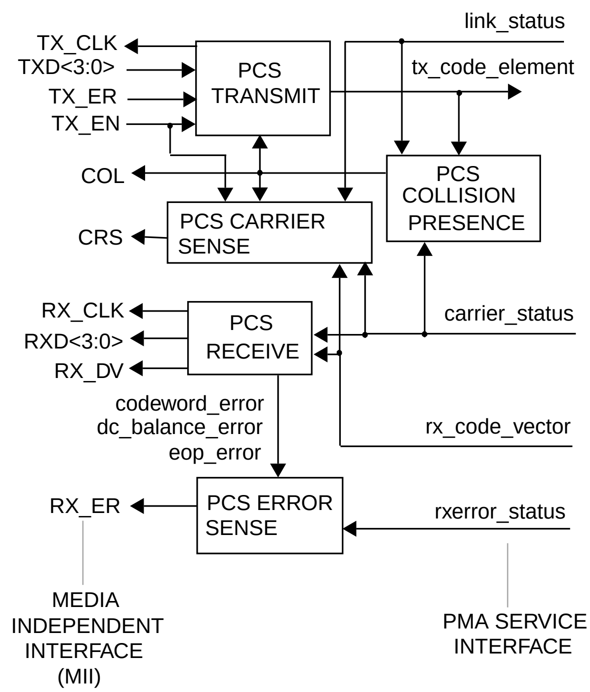


Figure 23-5—PCS reference diagram

23.2.1.2 PCS Transmit function

The PCS Transmit function shall conform to the PCS Transmit state diagram in figure 23-8.

The PCS Transmit function receives nibbles from the TXD signals of the MII, assembles pairs of nibbles to form octets, converts the octets into 6T code groups according to the 8B6T code table, and passes the resulting ternary data to the PMA using the PMA_UNITDATA.request message. The state diagram of figure 23-8 depicts the PCS Transmit function operation. Definitions of state variables tsr, ohr, sosa, sosb, eop1-5, and tx_extend used in that diagram, as well as in the following text, appear in 23.2.4.1. The physical structure represented in figure 23-7 is not required; it merely serves to explain the meaning of the state diagram variables ohr and tsr in figure 23-8. Implementors are free to construct any logical devices having functionality identical to that described by this functional description and the PCS Transmit state diagram, figure 23-8.

PCS Transmit makes use of the tsr and ohr shift registers to manage nibble assembly and ternary symbol transmission. Nibbles from the MII go into tsr, which PCS Transmit reads as octets. PCS Transmit then encodes those octets and writes 6T code groups to the ohr registers. The PMA_UNITDATA.request message passes ternary symbols from the ohr registers to the PMA. In each state diagram block, the ohr loading operations are conducted first, then tx_code_vector is loaded and the state diagram waits 40 ns.

The first 5 octets assembled by the PCS Transmit function are encoded into the sosa code word and the next 3 octets assembled are encoded into the sosb code word. This guarantees that every packet begins with a valid preamble pattern. This is accomplished by the definition of tsr. In addition, the PCS Transmit state diagram also specifies that at the start of a packet all three output holding registers ohr1, ohr3 and ohr4 will be loaded with the same value (sosa). This produces the ternary symbols labeled P3 and P4 in figure 23-6.

At the conclusion of the MAC frame, the PCS Transmit function appends eop1-5. This is accomplished by defining a variable tx_extend to stretch the TX_EN signal, and defining tsr during this time to be a sequence of constants that decodes to the proper eop code groups.

The encoding operation shall use the 8B6T code table listed in annex 23A, and the dc balance encoding rules listed below. Encoding is performed separately for each transmit pair.

23.2.1.2.1 DC balance encoding rules

The encoding operation maintains dc balance on each transmit pair by keeping track of the cumulative weight of all 6T code groups (see *weight of 6T code group*, annex 21A) transmitted on that pair. For each pair, it initiates the cumulative weight to 0 when the PCS Transmit function is in the AWAITING DATA TO TRANSMIT state. All 6T code groups in the code table have weight 0 or 1. The dc balance algorithm conditionally negates transmitted 6T code groups, so that the code weights transmitted on the line include 0, +1, and –1. This dc balance algorithm ensures that the cumulative weight on each pair at the conclusion of each 6T code group is always either 0 or 1, so only one bit per pair is needed to store the cumulative weight. As used below, the phrase “invert the cumulative weight bit” means “if the cumulative weight bit is zero then set it to one, otherwise set it to zero.”

After encoding any octet, except the constants sosa, sosb, eop1-5 or bad_code, update the cumulative weight bit for the affected pair according to rules a) through c):

a) If the 6T code group weight is 0, do not change the cumulative weight.
b) If the 6T code group weight is 1, and the cumulative weight bit is 0, set the cumulative weight bit to 1.
c) If the 6T code group weight is 1, and the cumulative weight bit is also 1, set the cumulative weight bit to 0, and then algebraically negate all the ternary symbol values in the 6T code group.

After encoding any of the constants sosa, sosb, or bad_code, update the cumulative weight bit for the affected pair according to rule d):

d) Do not change the cumulative weight. Never negate sosa, sosb or bad_code.

After encoding any of the constants eop1-5, update the cumulative weight bit for the affected pair according to rules e) and f):

e) If the cumulative weight is 0, do not change the cumulative weight; algebraically negate all the ternary symbol values in eop1-5.
f) If the cumulative weight is 1, do not change the cumulative weight.

NOTE—The inversion rules for eop1-5 are opposite rule b). That makes eop1-5 look very unlike normal data, increasing the number of errors required to synthesize a false end-of-packet marker.

23.2.1.3 PCS Receive function

The PCS Receive function shall conform to the PCS Receive state diagram in figure 23-9.

The PCS Receive function accepts ternary symbols from the PMA, communicated via the PMA_UNITDATA.indicate message, converts them using 8B6T coding into a nibble-wide format and passes them up to the MII. This function also generates RX_DV. The state diagram of figure 23-9 depicts the PCS Receive function. Definitions of state variables ih2, ih3, and ih4 used in that diagram, as well as in the following text, appear in 23.2.4.1.

The last 6 values of the rx_code_vector are available to the decoder. PCS Receive makes use of these stored rx_code_vector values as well as the ih2-4 registers to manage the assembly of ternary symbols into 6T code groups, and the conversion of decoded data octets into nibbles. The last 6 ternary symbols for pair BI_D3 (as extracted from the last 6 values of rx_code_vector) are referred to in the state diagram as BI_D3[0:5]. Other pairs are referenced accordingly.

The PCS Receive state diagram starts the first time the PCS receives a PMA_UNITDATA.indicate message with rx_code_vector=DATA (as opposed to IDLE or PREAMBLE). The contents of this first PMA_UNITDATA.indicate (DATA) message are specified in 23.4.1.6.

After the sixth PMA_UNITDATA.indicate (DATA) message (state DECODE CHANNEL 3), there is enough information to decode the first data octet. The decoded data is transmitted across the MII in two parts, a least significant nibble followed by a most significant nibble (see clause 22).

During state COLLECT 4TH TERNARY SYMBOL the PCS Receive function raises RX_DV and begins shifting out the nibbles of the 802.3 MAC SFD, least significant nibble first (SFD:LO). The most significant nibble of the 802.3 MAC SFD, called SFD:HI, is sent across the MII during the next state, COLLECT 5TH TERNARY SYMBOL.

Once eop is signaled by the decode operation, the state diagram de-asserts RX_DV, preventing the end-of-packet bits from reaching the MII. At any time that RX_DV is de-asserted, RXD<3:0> shall be all zeroes.

The decode operation shall use the 8B6T code table listed in annex 23A, and the error-detecting rules listed in 23.2.1.3.1. Decoding and maintenance of the cumulative weight bit is performed separately for each receive pair.

23.2.1.3.1 Error-detecting rules

The decoding operation checks the dc balance on each receive pair by keeping track of the cumulative weight of all 6T code group received on that pair. For each pair, initialize the cumulative weight to 0 when the PCS Receive function is in the AWAITING INPUT state. As in the encoding operation, only one bit per pair is needed to store the cumulative weight.

Before decoding each octet, check the weight of the incoming code group and then apply rules a) through h) in sequence:

a) If the received code group is eop1 (or its negation), set eop=ON. Then check the other pairs for conformance to the end-of-packet rules as follows: Check the last four ternary symbols of the next pair, and the last two ternary symbols from the third pair for exact conformance with the end-of-packet pattern specified by PCS Transmit, including the cumulative weight negation rules. If the received data does not conform, set the internal variable eop_error=ON. Skip the other rules.
b) If the received code group weight is greater than 1 or less than –1, set the internal variable dc_balance_error=ON. Decode to all zeros. Do not change the cumulative weight.
c) If the received code group weight is zero, use the code table to decode. Do not change the cumulative weight.
d) If the received code group weight is +1, and the cumulative weight bit is 0, use the code table to decode. Invert the cumulative weight bit.
e) If the received code group weight is –1, and the cumulative weight bit is 1, algebraically negate each ternary symbol in the code group and then use the code table to decode. Invert the cumulative weight bit.
f) If the received code group weight is +1 and the cumulative weight bit is 1, set the internal variable dc_balance_error=ON. Decode to all zeros. Do not change the cumulative weight.
g) If the received code group weight is –1 and the cumulative weight bit is 0, set the internal variable dc_balance_error=ON. Decode to all zeros. Do not change the cumulative weight.
h) If the (possibly negated) code group is not found in the code table, set codeword_error =ON. Decode to all zeros. Do not change the cumulative weight.

The variables dc_balance_error, eop_error and codeword_error shall remain OFF at all times other than those specified in the above error-detecting rules.

The codeword_error=ON indication for a (possibly negated) code group not found in the code table shall set RX_ER during the transfer of both affected data nibbles across the MII.

The dc_balance_error=ON indication for a code group shall set RX_ER during the transfer of both affected data nibbles across the MII.

The eop_error=ON indication shall set RX_ER during the transfer of the last decoded data nibble of the previous octet across the MII. That is at least one RX_CLK period earlier than the requirement for codeword_error and dc_balance_error.

These timing requirements imply consideration of implementation delays not specified in the PCS Receive state diagram.

RX_DV is asserted coincident with the transmission across the MII of valid packet data, including the clause 4 MAC SFD, but not including the 100BASE-T4 end-of-packet delimiters eop1-5. When a packet is truncated due to early de-assertion of carrier_status, an RX_ER indication shall be generated and RX_DV shall be de-asserted, halting receive processing. The PCS Receive Function may use any of the existing signals codeword_error, dc_balance_error, or eop_error to accomplish this function.

23.2.1.4 PCS Error Sense function

The PCS Error Sense function performs the task of sending RX_ER to the MII whenever rxerror_status=ERROR is received from the PMA sublayer or when any of the PCS decoding error conditions occur. The PCS Error Sense function shall conform to the PCS Error Sense state diagram in figure 23-10.

Upon detection of any error, the error sense process shall report RX_ER to the MII before the last nibble of the clause 4 MAC frame has been passed across the MII. Errors attributable to a particular octet are reported to the MII coincident with the octet in which they occurred.

The timing of rxerror_status shall cause RX_ER to appear on the MII no later than the last nibble of the first data octet in the frame.

23.2.1.5 PCS Carrier Sense function

The PCS Carrier Sense function shall perform the function of controlling the MII signal CRS according to the rules presented in this clause.

While link_status = OK, CRS is asserted whenever rx_crs=ON or TX_EN=1, with timing as specified in 23.11.2, and table 23-6.

23.2.1.6 PCS Collision Presence function

A PCS collision is defined as the simultaneous occurrence of tx_code_vector≠IDLE and the assertion of carrier_status=ON while link_status=OK. While a PCS collision is detected, the MII signal COL shall be asserted, with timing as specified in 23.11.2 and table 23-6.

At other times COL shall remain de-asserted.

23.2.2 PCS interfaces

23.2.2.1 PCS–MII interface signals

The following signals are formally defined in 22.2.2. Jabber detection as specified in 22.2.4.2.12 is not required by this standard.

Table 23-1—MII interface signals

Signal name	Meaning
TX_CLK	Transmit Clock
TXD<3:0>	Transmit Data
TX_ER	Forces transmission of illegal code
TX_EN	Frames Transmit Data
COL	Collision Indication
CRS	Non-Idle Medium Indication
RX_CLK	Receive Clock
RXD<3:0>	Receive Data
RX_DV	Frames Receive SFD and DATA
RX_ER	Receive Error Indication
MDC	Management Data Clock
MDIO	Management Data

23.2.2.2 PCS–Management entity signals

The management interface has pervasive connections to all functions. Operation of the management control lines MDC and MDIO, and requirements for managed objects inside the PCS and PMA, are specified in clauses 22 and 30, respectively.

The loopback mode of operation shall be implemented in accordance with 22.2.4.1.2. The loopback mode of operation loops back transmit data to receive data, thus providing a way to check for the presence of a PHY.

No spurious signals shall be emitted onto the MDI when the PHY is held in power-down mode as defined in 22.2.4.1.5 (even if TX_EN is ON) or when released from power-down mode, or when external power is first applied to the PHY.

23.2.3 Frame structure

Frames passed from the PCS sublayer to the PMA sublayer shall have the structure shown in figure 23-6. This figure shows how ternary symbols on the various pairs are synchronized as they are passed by the PMA_UNITDATA.indicate and PMA_UNITDATA.request messages. Time proceeds from left to right in the figure.

In the frame structure example, the last 6T code group, DATA N, happens to appear on transmit pair BI_D3. It could have appeared on any of the three transmit pairs, with the five words eop1 through eop5 appended afterward as the next five octets in sequence. The end of packet as recognized by the PCS is defined as the end of the last ternary symbol of eop1. At this point a receiver has gathered enough information to locate the last word in the packet and check the dc balance on each pair.

If the PMA service interface is exposed, data carried between PCS and PMA by the PMA_UNITDATA.indicate and PMA_UNITDATA.request messages shall have a clock in each direction. Details of the clock

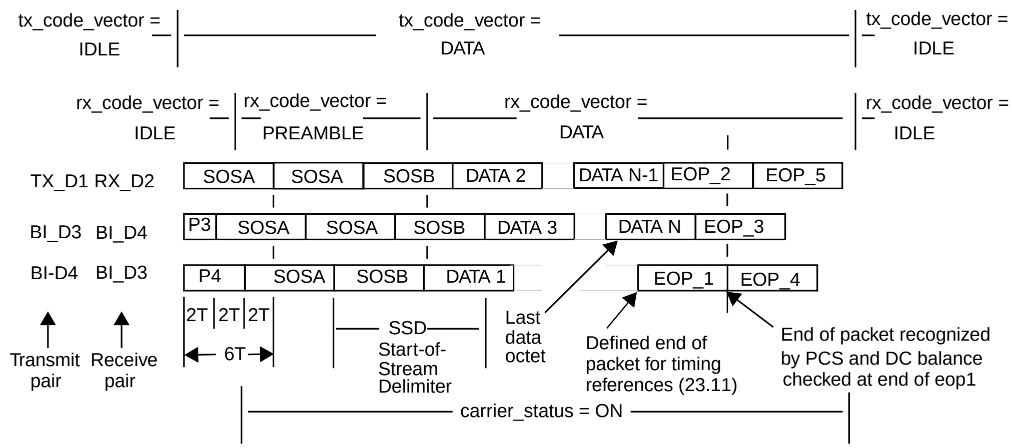


Figure 23-6—PCS sublayer to PMA sublayer frame structure

implementation are left to the implementor. The choice of binary encoding for each ternary symbol is left to the implementor.

The following frame elements appear in figure 23-6 (ternary symbols are transmitted leftmost first):

SOSA	The succession of six ternary symbols: `[ 1 -1 1 -1 1 -1]`, which is the result of encoding the constant sosa.
SOSB	The succession of six ternary symbols: `[ 1 -1 1 -1 -1 1]`, which is the result of encoding the constant sosb.
P3	The succession of two ternary symbols: `[ 1 -1]`.
P4	The succession of four ternary symbols: `[ 1 -1 1 -1]`.
DATA	A 6T code group that is the result of encoding a data octet in a packet that is not part of the clause 4 MAC preamble or SFD.
EOP1-5	A 6T code group that is the result of encoding one of the end-of-packet patterns eop1-5.

23.2.4 PCS state diagrams

The notation used in the state diagrams follows the conventions of 21.5. Transitions shown without source states are evaluated continuously and take immediate precedence over all other conditions.

23.2.4.1 PCS state diagram constants

Register tsr may take on any of the nine constant values listed below (sosa through eop5, bad_code, and zero_code). These values are used to describe the functional operation of the coding process.

NOTE—Implementors are under no obligation to implement these constants in any particular way. For example, some implementors may choose to implement these codes as special flag bits attached to MII TXD nibble registers. Other implementors may choose to implement insertion of these codes on the downstream side of the coder function, using precoded 6T sequences.

All 6T code words are sent leftmost ternary symbol first.

sosa	A constant that encodes to:	[1 -1 1 -1 1 -1].
sosb	A constant that encodes to:	[1 -1 1 -1 -1 1].
eop1	A constant that encodes to:	[1 1 1 1 1 1].
eop2	A constant that encodes to:	[1 1 1 1 -1 -1].
eop3	A constant that encodes to:	[1 1 -1 -1 0 0].
eop4	A constant that encodes to:	[-1 -1 -1 -1 -1 -1].
eop5	A constant that encodes to:	[-1 -1 0 0 0 0].
bad_code	A constant that encodes to:	[-1 -1 -1 1 1 1].
zero_code	A constant that encodes to:	[0 0 0 0 0 0].

23.2.4.2 PCS state diagram variables

codeword_error

Indicates reception of invalid 6T code group.

Values: ON and OFF

Set by: PCS Receive; error-detecting rules

dc_balance_error

Indicates reception of dc coding violation.

Values: ON and OFF

Set by: PCS Receive; error-detecting rules

eop

Indicates reception of eop1.

A state variable set by the decoding operation. Reset to OFF when in PCS Receive state AWAITING INPUT. When the decoder detects eop1 on any pair, it sets this flag ON. The timing of eop shall be adjusted such that the last nibble of the last decoded data octet in a packet is the last nibble sent across the MII by the PMA Receive state diagram with RX_DV set ON.

Values: ON and OFF

Set by: PCS Receive; error-detecting rules

eop_error

Indicates reception of data with improper end-of-packet coding.

Values: ON and OFF

Set by: PCS Receive; error-detecting rules ih2, ih4, and ih3 (input holding registers)

A set of holding registers used for the purpose of holding decoded data octets in preparation for sending across the MII one nibble at a time. One register is provided for each of the three receive pairs RX_D2, BI_D4, and BI_D3, respectively.

Value: octet

Set by: PCS Receive

Each time the PCS Receive function decodes a 6T code group, it loads the result (an octet) into one of the ih2-4 registers. These three registers are loaded in round-robin fashion, one register being loaded every two ternary symbol times.

The PCS Receive state diagram reads nibbles as needed from the ih2-4 registers and stuffs them into RXD.

ohr1, ohr3, and ohr4 (output holding registers)

(See figure 23-7.) A set of shift registers used for the purpose of transferring coded 6T ternary symbol groups one ternary symbol at a time into the PMA. One register is provided for each of the three transmit pairs TX_D1, BI_D3, and BI_D4, respectively.

Value: 6T code group. Each of the six cells holds one ternary symbol (i.e., –1, 0, or 1).

Set by: PCS Transmit

Each time the PCS Transmit function encodes a data octet, it loads the result (a 6T code group) into one of the ohr registers. Three registers are loaded in round-robin fashion, one register being loaded every two ternary symbol times. The PCS shall transmit octets on the three transmit pairs in round-robin fashion, in the order TX_D1, BI_D3, and BI_D4, starting with TX_D1.

The PMA_UNITDATA.request (DATA) message picks the least significant (rightmost) ternary symbol from each ohr register and sends it to the PMA, as shown below. (Note that 6T code words in annex 23A are listed with lsb on the left, not the right.)

tx_code_vector[TX_D1] = the LSB of ohr1, also called ohr1[0]

tx_code_vector[BI_D3] = the LSB of ohr3, also called ohr3[0]

tx_code_vector[BI_D4] = the LSB of ohr4, also called ohr4[0]

After each PMA_UNITDATA.request message, all three ohr registers shift right by one ternary symbol, shifting in zero from the left. The PCS Transmit function loads a new 6T code group into each ohr immediately after the last ternary symbol of the previous group is shifted out.

At the beginning of a preamble, the PCS Transmit function loads the same value (sosa) into all three output holding registers, which causes alternating transitions to immediately appear on all three output pairs. The result on pairs BI_D3 and BI_D4 is depicted by code words P3 and P4 in figure 23-6.

pcs_reset

Causes reset of all PCS functions when ON.

Values: ON and OFF

Set by: PCS Reset

rx_crs

A latched asynchronous variable. Timing for the MII signal CRS is derived from rx_crs.

Values: ON and OFF

Set ON when: carrier_status changes to ON

Set OFF when either of two events occurs:
carrier_status changes to OFF, or
detection of eop1, properly framed, on any of the lines RX_D2, BI_D4, or BI_D3

Additionally, if, 20 ternary symbol times after rx_crs falls, carrier_status remains set to ON then set rx_crs=ON.

NOTE—A special circuit for the detection of eop1 and subsequent de-assertion of rx_crs, faster than the full 8B6T decoding circuits, is generally required to meet the timing requirements for CRS listed in clause 23.11.

tsr (transmit shift register)

(See figure 23-7.) A shift register defined for the purpose of assembling nibbles from the MII TXD into octets.

Values: The variable tsr always contains both the current nibble of TXD and the previous nibble of TXD. Valid values for tsr therefore include all octets. Register tsr may also take on any of the nine constant values listed in 23.2.4.1.

Nibble order: When encoding the tsr octet, the previous TXD nibble is considered the least significant nibble.

Set by: PCS Transmit

During the first 16 TX_CLK cycles after TX_EN is asserted, tsr shall assume the following values in sequence regardless of TXD: sosa, sosa, sosa, sosa, sosa, sosa, sosa, sosa, sosa, sosa, sosb, sosb, sosb, sosb, sosb, sosb. This action substitutes the 100BASE-T4 preamble for the clause 4 MAC preamble. The PCS Transmit state diagram samples the tsr only every other clock, which reduces the number of sosa and sosb constants actually coded to 5 and 3, respectively.

During the first 10 TX_CLK cycles after TX_EN is de-asserted, tsr shall assume the following values in sequence, regardless of TXD: eop1, eop1, eop2, eop2, eop3, eop3, eop4, eop4, eop5, eop5. This action appends the 100BASE-T4 end-of-packet delimiter to each pair. The PCS Transmit state diagram samples the tsr only every other clock, which reduces the number of eop1-5 constants actually coded to 1 each.

Except for the first 16 TX_CLK cycles after TX_EN is asserted, any time TX_ER and TX_EN are asserted, tsr shall assume the value bad_code with such timing as to cause both nibbles of the affected octet to be encoded as bad_code. If TX_ER is asserted at any time during the first 16 TX_CLK cycles after TX_EN is asserted, tsr shall during the 17th and 18th clock cycles assume the value bad_code.

If TX_EN is de-asserted on an odd nibble boundary, the PCS shall extend TX_EN by one TX_CLK cycle, and behave as if TX_ER were asserted during that additional cycle.

Except for the first 10 TX_CLK cycles after TX_EN is de-asserted, any time TX_EN is not asserted, tsr shall assume the value zero_code.

tx_extend

A latched, asynchronous state variable used to extend the TX_EN signal long enough to ensure complete transmission of all nonzero ternary symbols in eop1-5.

Values: ON and OFF

Set ON upon: rising edge of TX_EN

Set OFF upon either of two conditions:
a) In the event of a collision (COL is asserted at any time during transmission) set tx_extend=OFF when TX_EN de-asserts.
b) In the event of no collision (COL remains de-asserted throughout transmission) set tx_extend=OFF upon completion of transmission of last ternary symbol in eop4.

NOTES

1—The 6T code group eop5 has four zeroes at the end. The 6T code group eop4 contains the last nonzero ternary symbol to be transmitted.

2—The effect of a collision, if present, is to truncate the frame at the original boundary determined by TX_EN. Noncolliding frames are extended, while colliding frames are not.

23.2.4.3 PCS state diagram timer

tw1_timer

A continuous free-running timer.

Values: The condition tw1_timer_done goes true when the timer expires.

Restart when: Immediately after expiration (restarting the timer resets condition tw1_timer_done).

Duration: 40 ns nominal.

TX_CLK shall be generated synchronous to tw1_timer (see tolerance required for TX_CLK in 23.5.1.2.10).

On every occurrence of tw1_timer_done, the state diagram advances by one block. The message PMA_UNITDATA.request is issued concurrent with tw1_timer_done.

23.2.4.4 PCS state diagram functions

encode()

The encode operation of 23.2.1.2.

Argument: octet

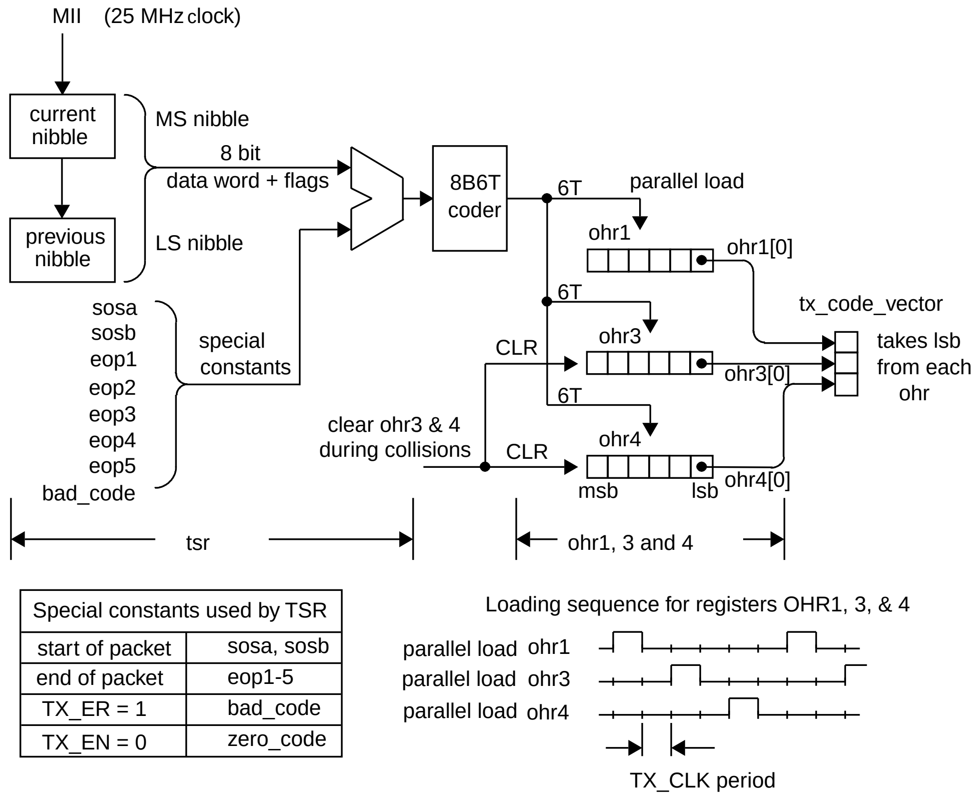
Returns: 6T code group

decode()

The decode operation of 23.2.1.3.

Argument: 6T code group

Returns: octet



Special constants used by TSR	
start of packet	sosa, sosb
end of packet	eop1-5
TX_ER = 1	bad_code
TX_EN = 0	zero_code

Figure 23-7—PCS Transmit reference diagram

23.2.4.5 PCS state diagrams

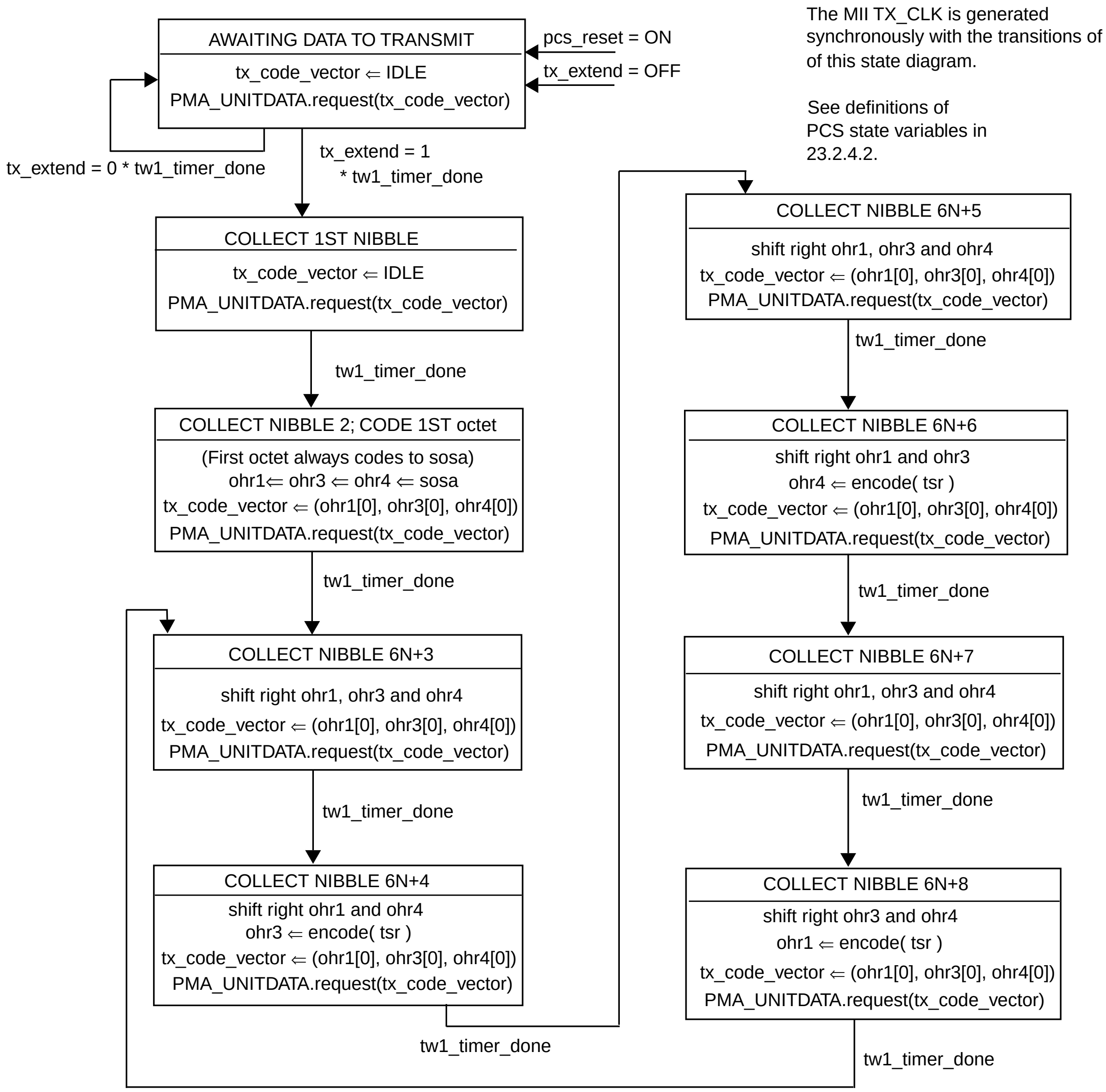


Figure 23-8—PCS Transmit state diagram

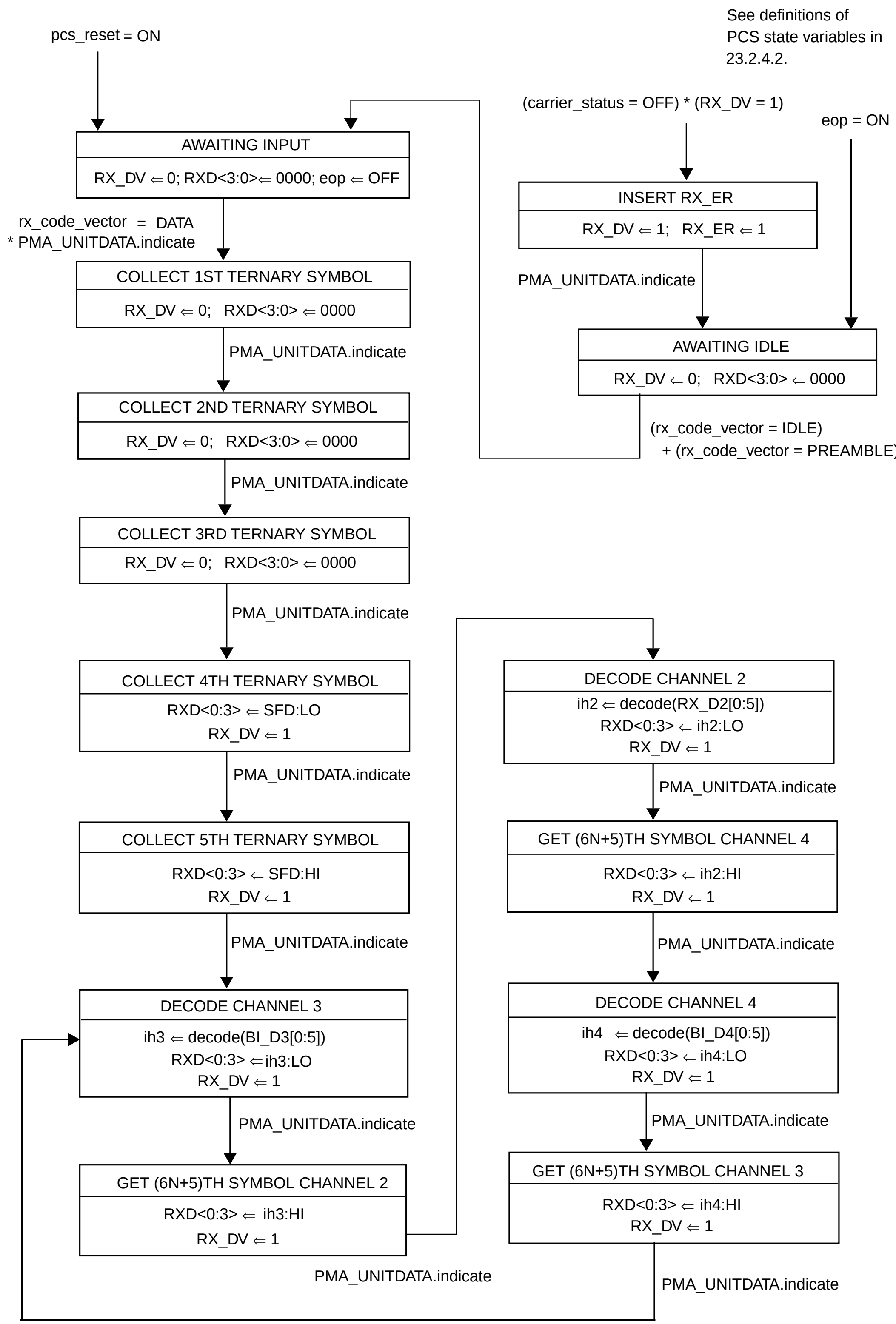


Figure 23-9—PCS Receive state diagram

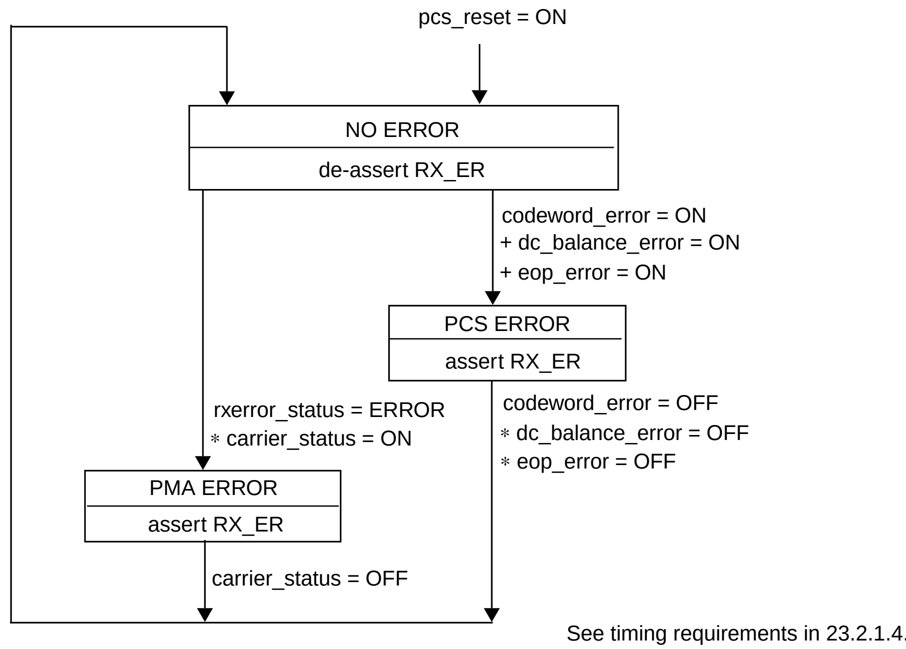


Figure 23-10—PCS Error Sense state diagram

23.2.5 PCS electrical specifications

The interface between PCS and PMA is an abstract message-passing interface, having no specified electrical properties.

Electrical characteristics of the signals passing between the PCS and MII may be found in clause 22.

23.3 PMA service interface

This clause specifies the services provided by the PMA to either the PCS or a Repeater client. These services are described in an abstract manner and do not imply any particular implementation.

The PMA Service Interface supports the exchange of code vectors between the PMA and its client (either the PCS or a Repeater). The PMA also generates status indications for use by the client.

The following primitives are defined:

PMA_TYPE.indicate
PMA_UNITDATA.request
PMA_UNITDATA.indicate
PMA_CARRIER.indicate
PMA_LINK.indicate
PMA_LINK.request
PMA_RXERROR.indicate

23.3.1 PMA_TYPE.indicate

This primitive is generated by the PMA to indicate the nature of the PMA instantiation. The purpose of this primitive is to allow clients to support connections to the various types of 100BASE-T PMA entities in a generalized manner.

23.3.1.1 Semantics of the service primitive

PMA_TYPE.indicate (pma_type)

The pma_type parameter for use with the 100BASE-T4 PMA is T4.

23.3.1.2 When generated

The PMA shall continuously generate this primitive to indicate the value of pma_type.

23.3.1.3 Effect of receipt

The client uses the value of pma_type to define the semantics of the PMA_UNITDATA.request and PMA_UNITDATA.indicate primitives.

23.3.2 PMA_UNITDATA.request

This primitive defines the transfer of data (in the form of tx_code_vector parameters) from the PCS or repeater to the PMA.

23.3.2.1 Semantics of the service primitive

PMA_UNITDATA.request (tx_code_vector)

When transmitting data using 100BASE-T4 signaling, the PMA_UNITDATA.request conveys to the PMA simultaneously the logical output value for each of the three transmit pairs TX_D1, BI_D3, and BI_D4. The value of tx_code_vector during data transmission is therefore a three-element vector, with one element corresponding to each output pair. Each of the three elements of the tx_code_vector may take on one of three logical values: 1, 0, or –1, corresponding to the three ternary possibilities +, 0, and - listed for each ternary symbol in the 8B6T code table (see annex 23A).

Between packets, the 100BASE-T4 PMA layer sends the 100BASE-T4 idle signal, TP_IDL_100. The PCS informs the PMA layer that it is between packets, thus enabling the PMA idle signal, by setting the tx_code_vector parameter to IDLE.

For pma_type 100BASE-T4, the tx_code_vector parameter can take on either of two forms:

IDLE — A single value indicating to the PMA that there is no data to convey. The PMA generates link integrity pulses during the time that tx_code_vector = IDLE.

DATA — A vector of three ternary symbols, one for each of the three transmit pairs TX_D1, BI_D3, and BI_D4. The ternary symbol for each pair may take on one of three values, 1, 0, or –1.

The ternary symbols comprising tx_code_vector, when they are conveyed using the DATA format, are called, according to the pair on which each will be transmitted, tx_code_vector[BI_D4], tx_code_vector[TX_D1], and tx_code_vector[BI_D3].

23.3.2.2 When generated

The PCS or Repeater client generates PMA_UNITDATA.request synchronous with every MII TX_CLK.

For the purposes of state diagram descriptions, it may be assumed that at the time PMA_UNITDATA.request is generated, the MII signals TX_EN, and TX_ER, and TXD instantly become valid and that they retain their values until the next PMA_UNITDATA.request.

In the state diagrams, PMA_UNITDATA.request is assumed to occur at the conclusion of each tw1 wait function.

23.3.2.3 Effect of receipt

Upon receipt of this primitive, the PMA transmits the indicated ternary symbols on the MDI.

23.3.3 PMA_UNITDATA.indicate

This primitive defines the transfer of data (in the form of rx_code_vector parameters) from the PMA to the PCS or repeater during the time that link_status=OK.

23.3.3.1 Semantics of the service primitive

PMA_UNITDATA.indicate (rx_code_vector)

When receiving data using 100BASE-T4 signaling, the PMA_UNITDATA.indicate conveys to the PCS simultaneously the logical input value for each of the three receive pairs RX_D2, BI_D4, and BI_D3. The value of rx_code_vector during data reception is therefore a three-element vector, with one element corresponding to each input pair. Each of the three elements of the rx_code_vector may take on one of three logical values: 1, 0, or –1, corresponding to the three ternary possibilities +, 0, and - listed for each ternary symbol in the 8B6T code table (see annex 23A).

Between packets, the rx_code_vector is set by the PMA to the value IDLE.

From the time the PMA asserts carrier_status=ON until the PMA recognizes the SSD pattern (not all of the pattern need be received in order for the PMA to recognize the pattern), the PMA sets rx_code_vector to the value PREAMBLE.

For pma_type 100BASE-T4, the rx_code_vector parameter can take on any of three forms:

IDLE	A single value indicating that the PMA has no data to convey.
PREAMBLE	A single value indicating that the PMA has detected carrier, but has not received a valid SSD.
DATA	A vector of three ternary symbols, one for each of the three receive pairs RX_D2, BI_D3, and BI_D4. The ternary symbol for each pair may take on one of three values, 1, 0, or –1.

The ternary symbols comprising rx_code_vector, when they are conveyed using the DATA format, are called, according to the pair upon which each symbol was received, rx_code_vector[BI_D3], rx_code_vector[RX_D2], and rx_code_vector[BI_D4].

23.3.3.2 When generated

The PMA shall generate PMA_UNITDATA.indicate (DATA) messages synchronous with data received at the MDI.

23.3.3.3 Effect of receipt

The effect of receipt of this primitive is unspecified.

23.3.4 PMA_CARRIER.indicate

This primitive is generated by the PMA to indicate the status of the signal being received from the MDI. The purpose of this primitive is to give the PCS or repeater client the earliest reliable indication of activity on the underlying medium.

23.3.4.1 Semantics of the service primitive

PMA_CARRIER.indicate (carrier_status)

The carrier_status parameter can take on one of two values: OFF or ON, indicating whether the incoming signal should be interpreted as being between packets (OFF) or as a packet in progress (ON).

23.3.4.2 When generated

The PMA shall generate this primitive to indicate the value of carrier_status.

23.3.4.3 Effect of receipt

The effect of receipt of this primitive is unspecified.

23.3.5 PMA_LINK.indicate

This primitive is generated by the PMA to indicate the status of the underlying medium. The purpose of this primitive is to give the PCS or repeater client or Auto-Negotiation algorithm a means of determining the validity of received code elements.

23.3.5.1 Semantics of the service primitive

PMA_LINK.indicate (link_status)

The link_status parameter can take on one of three values: FAIL, READY, or OK:

FAIL	The link integrity function does not detect a valid 100BASE-T4 link.
READY	The link integrity function detects a valid 100BASE-T4 link, but has not been enabled by Auto-Negotiation.
OK	The 100BASE-T4 link integrity function detects a valid 100BASE-T4 link, and has been enabled by Auto-Negotiation.

23.3.5.2 When generated

The PMA shall generate this primitive to indicate the value of link_status.

23.3.5.3 Effect of receipt

The effect of receipt of this primitive is unspecified.

23.3.6 PMA_LINK.request

This primitive is generated by the Auto-Negotiation algorithm. The purpose of this primitive is to allow the Auto-Negotiation algorithm to enable and disable operation of the PHY.

23.3.6.1 Semantics of the service primitive

PMA_LINK.request (link_control)

The link_control parameter can take on one of three values: SCAN_FOR_CARRIER, DISABLE, or ENABLE.

SCAN_FOR_CARRIER	Used by the Auto-Negotiation algorithm prior to receiving any fast link pulses. During this mode the PHY reports link_status=READY if it recognizes 100BASE-T4 carrier from the far end, but no other actions are enabled.
DISABLE	Used by the Auto-Negotiation algorithm to disable PHY processing in the event fast link pulses are detected. This gives the Auto-Negotiation algorithm a chance to determine how to configure the link.
ENABLE	Used by Auto-Negotiation to turn control over to the PHY for data processing functions. This is the default mode if Auto-Negotiation is not present.

23.3.6.2 Default value of parameter link_control

Upon power-on, reset, or release from power-down, the link_control parameter shall revert to ENABLE. If the optional Auto-Negotiation algorithm is not implemented, no PMA_LINK.request message will arrive and the PHY will operate indefinitely with link_control=ENABLE.

23.3.6.3 When generated

The Auto-Negotiation algorithm generates this primitive to indicate to the PHY how to behave.

Upon power-on, reset, or release from power down, the Auto-Negotiation algorithm, if present, issues the message PMA_LINK.request (SCAN_FOR_CARRIER).

23.3.6.4 Effect of receipt

Whenever link_control=SCAN_FOR_CARRIER, the PHY shall enable the Link Integrity state diagram, but block passage into the state LINK_PASS, while holding rcv=DISABLE, and xmit=DISABLE. While link_control=SCAN_FOR_CARRIER, the PHY shall report link_status=READY if it recognizes 100BASE-T4 link integrity pulses coming from the far end, otherwise it reports link_status=FAIL.

Whenever link_control=DISABLE, the PHY shall report link_status=FAIL and hold the Link Integrity state diagram in the RESET state, while holding rcv=disable and xmit=DISABLE.

While link_control=ENABLE, the PHY shall allow the Link Integrity function to determine if the link is available and, if so, set rcv=ENABLE and xmit=ENABLE.

23.3.7 PMA_RXERROR.indicate

The primitive is generated in the PMA by the PMA Align function to indicate the status of the signal being received from the MDI. The purpose of this primitive is to give the PCS or repeater client an indication of a PMA detectable receive error.

23.3.7.1 Semantics of the service primitive

PMA_RXERROR.indicate (rxerror_status)

The rxerror_status parameter can take on one of two values: ERROR or NO_ERROR, indicating whether the incoming signal contains a detectable error (ERROR) or not (NO_ERROR).

23.3.7.2 When generated

The PMA shall generate this primitive to indicate whether or not each incoming packet contains a PMA detectable error (23.2.1.4).

23.3.7.3 Effect of receipt

The effect of receipt of this primitive is unspecified.

23.4 PMA functional specifications

The PMA couples messages from a PMA service interface (23.3) to the 100BASE-T4 baseband medium (23.6).

The interface between PCS and the baseband medium is the Medium Dependent Interface (MDI), specified in 23.7.

23.4.1 PMA functions

The PMA sublayer comprises one PMA Reset function and six simultaneous and asynchronous operating functions. The PMA operating functions are PMA Transmit, PMA Receive, PMA Carrier Sense, Link Integrity, PMA Align, and Clock Recovery. All operating functions are started immediately after the successful completion of the PMA Reset function. When the PMA is used in conjunction with a PCS, the RESET function may be shared between layers.

The PMA reference diagram, figure 23-11, shows how the operating functions relate to the messages of the PMA Service interface and the signals of the MDI. Connections from the management interface, comprising the signals MDC and MDIO, to other layers are pervasive, and are not shown in figure 23-11. The Management Interface and its functions are specified in clause 22.

23.4.1.1 PMA Reset function

The PMA Reset function shall be executed any time either of two conditions occur. These two conditions are power-on and the receipt of a reset request from the management entity. The PMA Reset function initializes all PMA functions. The PMA Reset function sets pma_reset <= ON for the duration of its reset function. All state diagrams take the open-ended pma_reset branch upon execution of the PMA Reset function. The reference diagrams do not explicitly show the PMA Reset function.

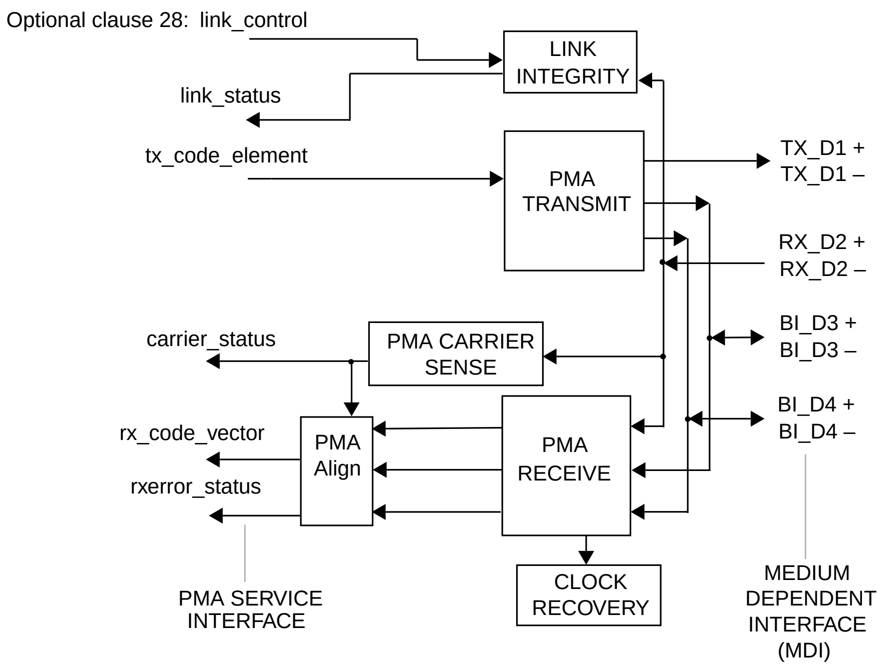


Figure 23-11—PMA reference diagram

23.4.1.2 PMA Transmit function

Except as provided for in the next paragraph, whenever (tx_code_vector=DATA)×(pma_carrier=OFF), the PMA shall transmit onto the MDI ternary symbols on pairs TX_D1, BI_D3, and BI_D4 equal to tx_code_vector[TX_D1], tx_code_vector[BI_D3], and tx_code_vector[BI_D4], respectively.

Whenever (tx_code_vector=DATA)×(pma_carrier=ON), the PMA shall transmit onto the MDI ternary symbols on pairs TX_D1, BI_D3, and BI_D4 equal to tx_code_vector[TX_D1], CS0, and CS0, respectively, and continue doing so until tx_code_vector=IDLE.

NOTE—This shuts off the transmitters on channels BI_D3 and BI_D4, and keeps them off, in the event of a collision. Shutting off the transmitters prevents overload and saturation of the transmitters, and also reduces the amount of near-end crosstalk present while monitoring for the end of carrier.

Whenever tx_code_vector=IDLE, an idle signal shall be transmitted on pair TX_D1 and silence on pairs BI_D3 and BI_D4. The idle signal consists of periods of silence (times where the differential output voltage remains at 0 mV ± 50 mV) broken by the transmission of link integrity test pulses.

The 100BASE-T4 idle signal is similar to the 10BASE-T idle signal, but with 100BASE-T4 ternary signal levels and a faster repetition rate. The 100BASE-T4 idle signal is called TP_IDL_100. The TP_IDL_100 signal shall be a repeating sequence formed from one 1.2 ms ± 0.6 ms period of silence (the time where the differential voltage remains at 0 mV ± 50 mV) and one link test pulse. Each link test pulse shall be a succession of two ternary symbols having logical values of –1 and 1 transmitted on pair TX_D1 using CS-1 and CS1 as defined in 23.4.3.1. Following a packet, the TP_IDL_100 shall start with a period of silence.

Transmission of TP_IDL_100 may be terminated at any time with respect to the link test pulse. It shall be terminated such that ternary symbols of the subsequent packet are not corrupted, and are not delayed any more than is specified in 23.11.

For any link test pulse occurring within 20 ternary symbol times of the beginning of a preamble, the zero crossing jitter (as defined in 23.5.1.2.5) of the link test pulse when measured along with the zero crossings of the preamble shall be less than 4 ns p-p.

NOTE—The above condition allows clock recovery implementations that optionally begin fast-lock sequences on part of a link integrity pulse to properly acquire lock on a subsequent preamble sequence.

Regardless of other considerations, when the transmitter is disabled (xmit=DISABLE), the PMA Transmit function shall transmit the TP_IDL_100 signal.

23.4.1.3 PMA Receive function

PMA Receive contains the circuits necessary to convert physically encoded ternary symbols from the physical MDI receive pairs (RX_D2, BI_D3 and BI_D4) into a logical format suitable for the PMA Align function. Each receive pair has its own dedicated PMA Receive circuitry.

The PHY shall receive the signals on the receive pairs (RX_D2, BI_D3, and BI_D4) and translate them into one of the PMA_UNITDATA.indicate parameters IDLE, PREAMBLE, or DATA with a ternary symbol error rate of less than one part in 10^8.

If both pma_carrier=ON and tx_code_vector=DATA, the value of rx_code_vector is unspecified until pma_carrier=OFF.

23.4.1.4 PMA Carrier Sense function

The PMA Carrier Sense function shall set pma_carrier=ON upon reception of the following pattern on pair RX_D2 at the receiving MDI, as measured using a 100BASE-T4 transmit test filter (23.5.1.2.3):

> Any signal greater than 467 mV, followed by any signal less than –225 mV, followed by any signal greater than 467 mV, all three events occurring within 2 ternary symbol times.

The operation of carrier sense is undefined for signal amplitudes greater than 4.5 V.

See 23.5.1.3.2 for a list of signals defined *not* to set pma_carrier=ON.

After asserting pma_carrier=ON, PMA Carrier Sense shall set pma_carrier=OFF upon receiving either of these conditions:

a) Seven consecutive ternary symbols of value CS0 on pair RX_D2.
b) (tx_code_vector=DATA) has not been true at any time since pma_carrier was asserted, *and* the 6T code group eop1 has been received, properly framed, on any of the lines RX_D2, BI_D4, or BI_D3, *and* enough time has passed to assure passage of all ternary symbols of eop4 across the PMA service interface.

NOTE—Designers may wish to take advantage of the fact that the minimum received packet fragment will include at least 24 ternary symbols of data on pair RX_D2. Therefore, once carrier is activated, it is not necessary to begin searching for seven consecutive zeroes until after the 24th ternary symbol has been received. During the time that the first 24 ternary symbols are being received, the near-end crosstalk from pairs BI_D3 and BI_D4, which are switched off during collisions, decays substantially.

While rcv=ENABLE, the PMA CARRIER function shall set carrier_status = pma_carrier.

While rcv≠ENABLE, the PMA CARRIER function shall set carrier_status = OFF.

This function operates independently of the Link Integrity function.

23.4.1.5 Link Integrity function

Link Integrity provides the ability to protect the network from the consequences of failure of the simplex link attached to RX_D2. While such a failure is present, transfer of data by the Transmit and Receive functions is disabled.

Link Integrity observes the incoming wire pair, RX_D2, to determine whether the device connected to the far end is of type 100BASE-T4. Based on its observations, Link Integrity sets two important internal variables:

a) pma_type variable is set to 100BASE-T4.
b) link_status variable is a parameter sent across the PMA Service interface.

The Link Integrity function shall comply with the state diagram of figure 23-12.

Four conditions gate the progression of states toward LINK_PASS: (1) reception of at least 31 link integrity test pulses; (2) reception of at least 96 more link integrity test pulses, or reception of carrier; (3) cessation of carrier, if it was present; (4) detection of equals link_control ENABLE.

While the PMA is not in the LINK_PASS state, the Link Integrity function sets rcv=DISABLE and xmit=DISABLE, thus disabling the bit transfer of the Transmit and Receive functions.

If a visible indicator is provided on the PHY to indicate the link status, it is recommended that the color be green and that the indicator be labeled appropriately. It is further recommended that the indicator be on when the PHY is in the LINK_PASS state and off otherwise.

23.4.1.6 PMA Align function

The PMA Align function accepts received ternary symbols from the PMA Receive function, along with pma_carrier. PMA Align is responsible for realigning the received ternary symbols to eliminate the effects of unequal pair propagation time, commonly called pair skew. PMA Align also looks for the SSD pattern to determine the proper alignment of 6T code groups, and then forwards PMA_UNITDATA.indicate (DATA) messages to the PCS. The SSD pattern includes referencing patterns on each of the three receive lines that may be used to establish the proper relationship of received ternary symbols (see figure 23-6).

NOTE—The skew between lines is not expected to change measurably from packet to packet.

At the beginning of each received frame, the PMA Carrier Sense function asserts pma_carrier=ON. During the preamble, the Clock Recovery function begins synchronizing its receive clock. Until clock is synchronized, data coming from the low-level PMA Receive function is meaningless. The PMA Align function is responsible for waiting for the receiver clock to stabilize and then properly recognizing the 100BASE-T4 coded SSD pattern. The PMA Align function shall send PMA_UNITDATA.indicate (PREAMBLE) messages to the PCS from the time pma_carrier=ON is asserted until the PMA is ready to transfer the first PMA_UNITDATA.indicate (DATA) message. Once the PMA Align function locates a SSD pattern, it begins forwarding PMA_UNITDATA.indicate (DATA) messages to the PCS, starting with the first ternary symbol of the first data word on pair BI_D3, as defined in figure 23-6. This first PMA_UNITDATA.indicate (DATA) message shall transfer the following ternary symbols, as specified in the frame structure diagram, figure 23-6:

rx_code_vector[BI_D3]first ternary symbol of first data code group

rx_code_vector[RX_D2]second ternary symbol prior to start of second data code group rx_code_vector[BI_D4]fourth ternary symbol prior to start of third data code group

PMA Align shall continue sending PMA_UNITDATA.indicate (DATA) messages until pma_carrier=OFF. While pma_carrier=OFF, PMA Align shall emit PMA_UNITDATA.indicate (IDLE) messages.

If no valid SSD pattern is recognized within 22 ternary symbol times of the assertion of pma_carrier=ON, the PMA Align function shall set rxerror_status=ERROR. The PMA Align function is permitted to begin sending PMA_UNITDATA.indicate (DATA) messages upon receipt of a partially recognized SSD pattern, but it is required to set rxerror_status=ERROR if the complete SSD does not match perfectly the expected ternary symbol sequence. Rxerror_status shall be reset to NO_ERROR when pma_carrier=OFF.

The PMA Align function is permitted to use the first received packet of at least minimum size after RESET or the transition to LINK_PASS to learn the nominal skew between pairs, adjust its equalizer, or perform any other initiation functions. During this first packet, the PMA Align function shall emit PMA_UNITDATA.indicate (PREAMBLE) messages, but may optionally choose to never begin sending PMA_UNITDATA.indicate (DATA) messages.

The PMA Align function shall tolerate a maximum skew between any two pairs of 60 ns in either direction without error.

To protect the network against the consequences of mistaken packet framing, the PMA Align function shall detect the following error and report it by setting rxerror_status=ERROR (optionally, those error patterns already detected by codeword_error, dc_balance_error, or eop_error do not also have to be detected by rxerror_status): *In a series of good packets, any one packet that has been corrupted with three or fewer ternary symbols in error causing its sosb 6T code groups on one or more pairs to appear in the wrong location.*

Several approaches are available for meeting this requirement, including, but not limited to, a) comparing the relative positions of sosb 6T code groups on successive packets; b) measuring the time between the first preamble pulse and reception of sosb on each pair; c) counting the number of zero crossings from the beginning of the preamble until sosb; and d) monitoring for exception strings like “11” and “–1–1–1” in conjunction with one or more of the above techniques.

Regardless of other considerations, when the receive function is disabled (rcv=DISABLE), the PMA Align function shall emit PMA_UNITDATA.indicate (IDLE) messages and no others.

23.4.1.7 Clock Recovery function

The Clock Recovery function couples to all three receive pairs. It provides a synchronous clock for sampling each pair. While it may not drive the MII directly, the Clock Recovery function is the underlying root source of RX_CLK.

The Clock Recovery function shall provide a clock suitable for synchronously decoding ternary symbols on each line within the bit error tolerance provided in 23.4.1.3. During each preamble, in order to properly recognize the frame delimiting pattern formed by code word sosb on each pair, the received clock signal must be stable and ready for use in time to decode the following ternary symbols: the 16th ternary symbol of pair RX_D2, the 18th ternary symbol of pair BI_D4, and the 14th ternary symbol of pair BI_D3.

23.4.2 PMA interface messages

The messages between the PMA and PCS are defined above in 23.3, PMA Service Interface. Communication between a repeater unit and PMA also uses the PMA Service Interface. Communication through the MDI is summarized in tables 23-2 and 23-3.

Table 23-2—MDI signals transmitted by the PHY

Signal	Allowed pair	Meaning
CS1	TX_D1, BI_D3 BI_D4	A waveform that conveys the ternary symbol 1. Nominal voltage level +3.5 V.
CS0	TX_D1, BI_D3 BI_D4	A waveform that conveys the ternary symbol 0. Nominal voltage level 0 V.
CS-1	TX_D1, BI_D3 BI_D4	A waveform that conveys the ternary symbol –1. Nominal voltage level –3.5 V.
TP_IDL_100	TX_D1	Idle signal. Indicates transmitter is currently operating at 100 Mb/s.

Table 23-3—Signals received at the MDI

Signal	Allowed pair	Meaning
CS1	RX_D2, BI_D3 BI_D4	A waveform that conveys the ternary symbol 1. Nominal transmitted voltage level +3.5 V.
CS0	RX_D2, BI_D3 BI_D4	A waveform that conveys the ternary symbol 0. Nominal transmitted voltage level 0 V.
CS-1	RX_D2, BI_D3 BI_D4	A waveform that conveys the ternary symbol –1. Nominal transmitted voltage level –3.5 V.
TP_IDL_100	RX_D2	Idle signal. Indicates transmitter is currently operating at 100 Mb/s.

TP_IDL_100 is defined in 23.4.1.2. The waveforms used to convey CS1, CS0, and CS-1 are defined in 23.5.1.2.

TP_IDL_100 is defined in 23.4.1.2. The encodings for CS1, CS0, and CS-1 are defined in 23.5.1.2.

Re-timing of CS1, CS0, and CS-1 signals within the PMA is required.

23.4.3 PMA state diagrams

The notation used in the state diagrams follows the conventions of 21.5. Transitions shown without source states are evaluated continuously and take immediate precedence over all other conditions.

23.4.3.1 PMA constants

CS0

A waveform that conveys the ternary symbol 0.

Value: CS0 has a nominal voltage of 0 V. See 23.5.1.2.

CS1

A waveform that conveys the ternary symbol 1.

Value: CS1 has a nominal peak voltage of +3.5 V. See 23.5.1.2.

CS-1

A waveform that conveys the ternary symbol –1.

Value: CS-1 has a nominal peak voltage of –3.5 V. See 23.5.1.2.

link_100_max

A constant.

Value: Greater than 5.0 ms and less than 7.0 ms.

Used by link_max_timer to detect the absence of 100BASE-T4 link test pulses on pair RX_D2.

link_100_min

A constant.

Value: Greater than 0.15 ms and less than 0.45 ms.

Used by cnt_link to detect link test pulses on pair RX_D2 that are too close together to be valid 100BASE-T4 link test pulses.

23.4.3.2 State diagram variables

pma_reset

Causes reset of all PCS functions.

Values: ON and OFF

Set by: PMA Reset

pma_carrier

A version of carrier_status used internally by the PMA sublayer. The variable pma_carrier always functions regardless of the link status. The value of pma_carrier is passed on through the PMA service interface as carrier_status when rcv=ENABLE. At other times, the passage of pma_carrier information to the PMA service interface is blocked.

Values: ON, OFF

Set by: PMA CARRIER

rcv

Controls the flow of data from the PMA to PCS through the PMA_UNITDATA.indicate message.

Values: ENABLE (receive is enabled)
DISABLE (the PMA always sends PMA_UNITDATA.indicate (IDLE), and carrier_status is set to OFF)

xmit

Controls the flow of data from PCS to PMA through the PMA_UNITDATA.request message.

Values: ENABLE (transmit is enabled)
DISABLE (the PMA interprets all PMA_UNITDATA.request messages as PMA_UNITDATA.request (IDLE). The PMA transmits no data, but continues sending TP_IDL_100).

23.4.3.3 State diagram timers

link_max_timer

A re-triggerable timer.

Values: The condition link_max_timer_done goes true when the timer expires.

Restart when: Timer is restarted for its full duration by every occurrence of either a link test pulse on pair RX_D2 or the assertion of pma_carrier=ON (restarting the timer resets the condition link_max_timer_done).

Duration: link_100_max

Used by Link Integrity to detect the absence of 100BASE-T4 link test pulses on pair RX_D2.

23.4.3.4 State diagram counters

cnt_link

Counts number of 100BASE-T4 link test pulses (see 23.5.1.3.1) received on pair RX_D2.

Values: nonnegative integers

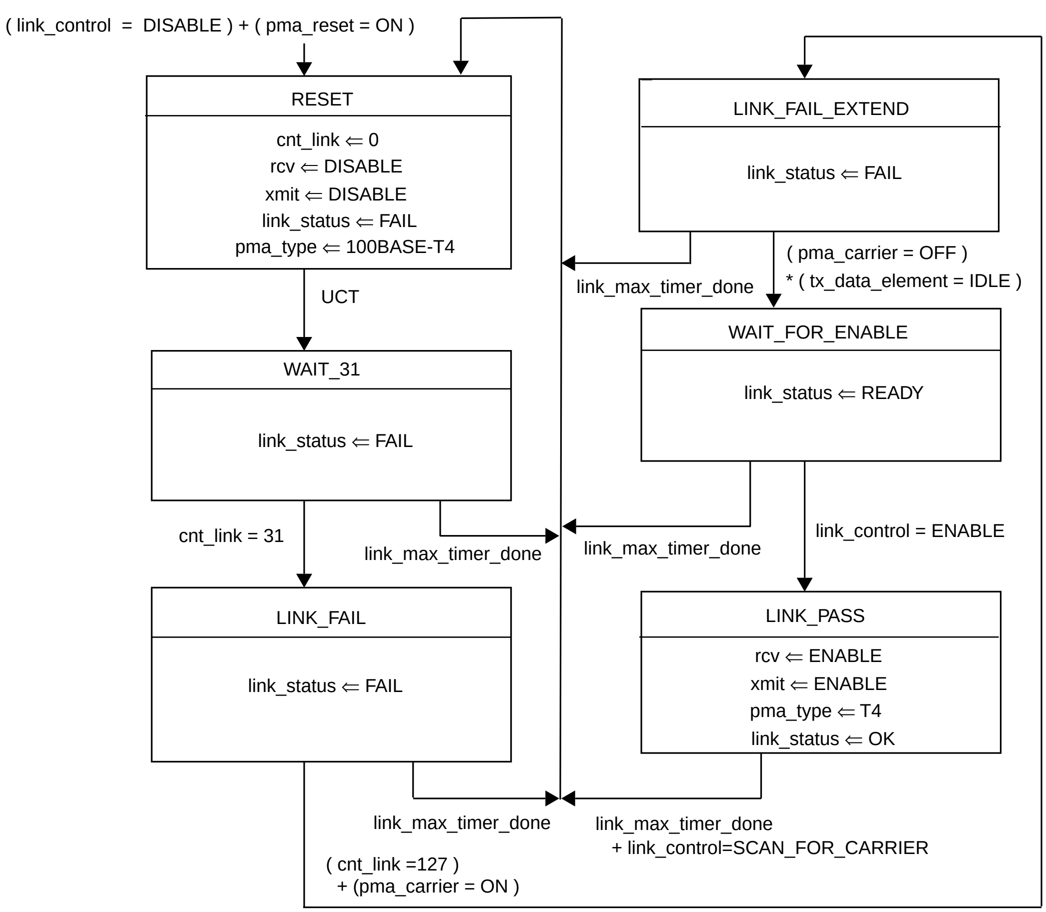
Reset to zero: On either of two conditions:

a) While in any state other than LINK_PASS, reset counter to zero if successive link test pulses are received within link_100_min.
b) While in any state, reset to zero if link_max_timer expires.

While in the LINK_PASS state, ignore pulses received within link_100_min (i.e., do not count them).

23.4.3.5 Link Integrity state diagram

The Link Integrity state diagram is shown in figure 23-12.



NOTE—The variables link_control and link_status are designated as link_control_[T4] and link_status_[T4], respectively, by the Auto-Negotiation Arbitration state diagram (figure 28-16).

Figure 23-12—Link integrity state diagram

23.5 PMA electrical specifications

This clause defines the electrical characteristics of the PHY at the MDI.

The ground reference point for all common-mode tests is the MII ground circuit. Implementations without an MII use the chassis ground. The values of all components in test circuits shall be accurate to within ±1% unless otherwise stated.

23.5.1 PMA-to-MDI interface characteristics

23.5.1.1 Isolation requirement

The PHY shall provide electrical isolation between the DTE, or repeater circuits including frame ground, and all MDI leads. This electrical separation shall withstand at least one of the following electrical strength tests:

a) 1500 V rms at 50 Hz to 60 Hz for 60 s, applied as specified in subclause 5.3.2 of IEC 950: 1991.
b) 2250 Vdc for 60 s, applied as specified in subclause 5.3.2 of IEC 950: 1991.
c) A sequence of ten 2400 V impulses of alternating polarity, applied at intervals of not less than 1 s. The shape of the impulses shall be 1.2/50 µs (1.2 µs virtual front time, 50 µs virtual time or half value), as defined in IEC 60.

There shall be no insulation breakdown, as defined in subclause 5.3.2 of IEC 950: 1991, during the test. The resistance after the test shall be at least 2 MΩ, measured at 500 Vdc.

23.5.1.2 Transmitter specifications

The PMA shall provide the Transmit function specified in 23.4.1.2 in accordance with the electrical specifications of this clause.

Where a load is not specified, the transmitter shall meet requirements of this clause when each transmit output is connected to a differentially connected 100 Ω resistive load.

23.5.1.2.1 Peak differential output voltage

While repetitively transmitting the ternary sequence [`0 0 1 0 0 0 0 0 -1 0 0 0`] (leftmost ternary symbol first), and while observing the differential transmitted output at the MDI, for any pair, with no intervening cable, the absolute value of both positive and negative peaks shall fall within the range of 3.15 V to 3.85 V (3.5 V ± 10%).

23.5.1.2.2 Differential output templates

While repetitively transmitting the ternary sequence [`0 0 1 0 0 0 0 0 -1 0 0 0`], and while observing the transmitted output at the MDI, the observed waveform shall fall within the normalized transmit template listed in table 23-4. Portions of this table are represented graphically in figure 23-13. The entire normalized transmit template shall be scaled by a single factor between 3.15 and 3.85. It is a functional requirement that linear interpolation be used between points. The template time axis may be shifted horizontally to attain the most favorable match. In addition to this simple test pattern, all other pulses, including link integrity pulses and also including the first pulse of each packet preamble, should meet this same normalized transmit template, with appropriate shifting and linear superposition of the CS1 and CS-1 template limits. Transmitters are allowed to insert additional delay in the transmit path in order to meet the first pulse requirement, subject to the overall timing limitations listed in 23.11, Timing summary.

While transmitting the TP_IDL_100 signal, and while observing the transmitted output at the MDI, the observed waveform shall fall within the normalized link pulse template listed in table 23-4. Portions of this table are represented graphically in figure 23-14. The entire template shall be scaled by the same factor used for the normalized transmit template test. It is a functional requirement that linear interpolation be used between template points. The template time axis may be shifted horizontally to attain the most favorable match.

After transmitting seven or more consecutive CS0 waveforms during the TP_IDL_100 signal, each pair, as observed using the 100BASE-T4 Transmit Test Filter (23.5.1.2.3) connected to the MDI, shall attain a state within 50 mV of zero.

When the TX_D1, BI_D3, or BI_D4 pair is driven with a repeating pattern (`1 -1 1 -1` ...) any harmonic measured at the MDI output shall be at least 27 dB below the fundamental at 12.5 MHz.

NOTES

1—The specification on maximum spectral components is not intended to ensure compliance with regulations concerning RF emissions. The implementor should consider any applicable local, national, or international regulations. Additional filtering of spectral components may therefore be necessary.

2—The repetitive pattern [`0 0 1 0 0 0 0 0 -1 0 0 0`] (leftmost ternary symbol first) may be synthesized using the 8B6T coding rules from a string of repeating data octets with value 73 hex. The repetitive pattern [`1 -1 1 -1 1 -1`] (leftmost ternary symbol first) may be synthesized using the 8B6T coding rules from a string of repeating data octets with value 92 hex.

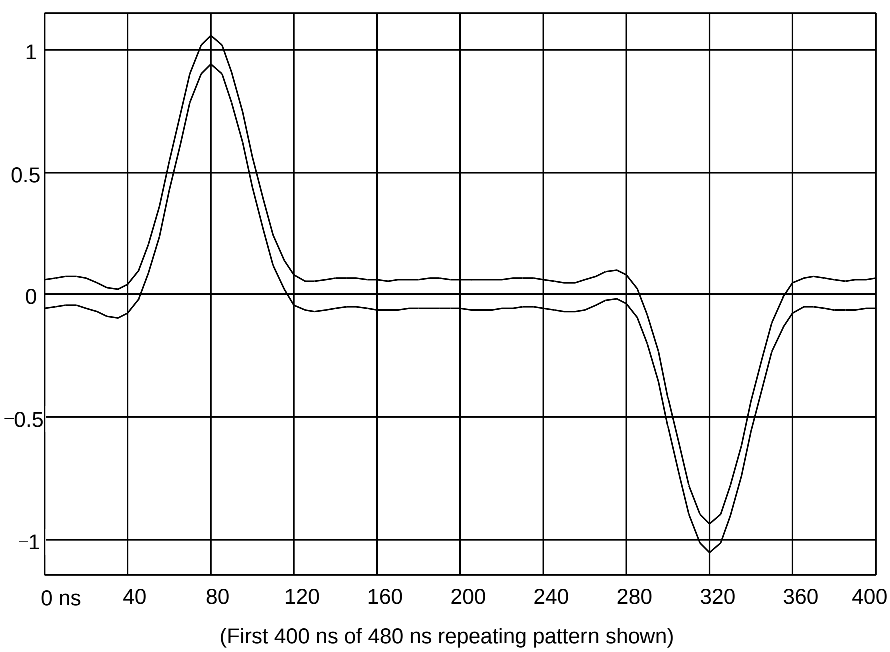


Figure 23-13—Normalized transmit template as measured at MD

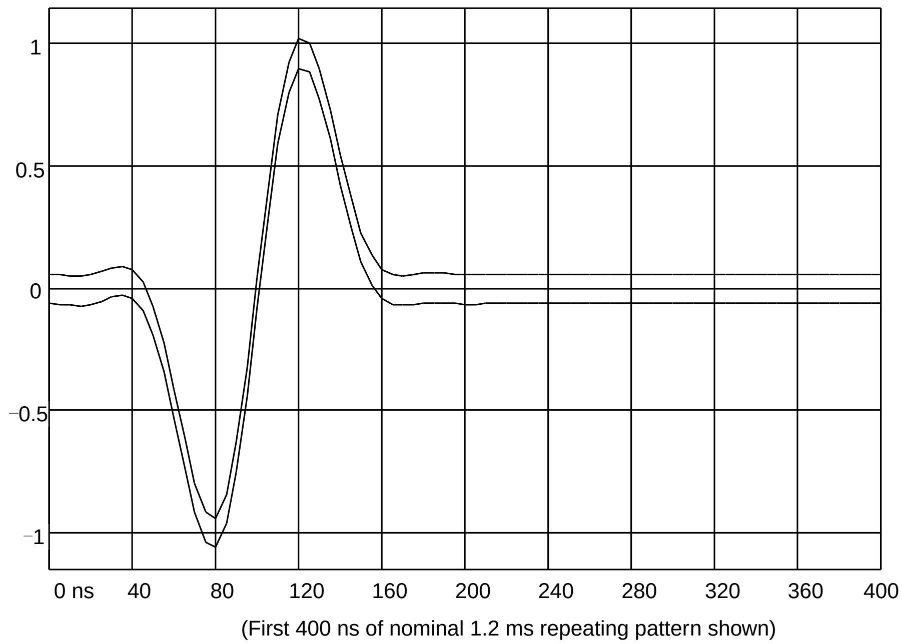


Figure 23-14—Normalized link pulse template as measured at MDI

The ideal template values may be automatically generated from the following equations:

Laplace transform of
Ideal transmit response $$IdealResponse(s) = \frac{Ideal(s)}{LPF(s)}$$

Where $Ideal(s)$ is a 100% raised cosine system response

Where $LPF(s)$ is a 3-pole Butterworth low pass filter response with –3 dB point at 25 MHz

Convert *IdealResponse(s)* from frequency domain to time domain

Use at least 8 samples per ternary symbol for the conversion

Superimpose alternating positive and negative copies of the ideal time response, seperated by 6 ternary symbol times, to form the ideal transmit voltage waveform.

The template limits are formed by offsetting the ideal transmit voltage waveform by plus and minus 6% of its peak.

23.5.1.2.3 Differential output ISI (intersymbol interference)

While observing a pseudo-random 8B6T coded data sequence (with every 6T code group represented at least once) preceded by at least 128 octets and followed by at least 128 octets of data, and while observing the transmitted output through a 100BASE-T4 Transmit Test Filter (one implementation of which is depicted in figure 23-16), the ISI shall be less than 9%. The ISI for this test is defined by first finding the largest of the three peak-to-peak ISI error voltages marked in figure 23-15 as TOP ISI, MIDDLE ISI, and BOTTOM ISI.

The largest of these peak-to-peak ISI error voltages is then divided by the overall peak-to-peak signal voltage. (The technique of limiting the ratio of worst ISI to overall peak-to-peak voltage at 9% accomplishes the same end as limiting the ratio of worst ISI to nominal peak-to-peak at 10%.)

Table 23-4—Normalized voltage templates as measured at the MDI

Time, ns	Normalized transmit template, pos. limit	Normalized transmit template, neg. limit	Normalized link template, pos. limit	Normalized link template, neg. limit
0	0.060	–0.061	0.061	–0.060
5	0.067	–0.054	0.056	–0.065
10	0.072	–0.049	0.052	–0.069
15	0.072	–0.049	0.052	–0.069
20	0.063	–0.058	0.058	–0.063
25	0.047	–0.074	0.071	–0.050
30	0.030	–0.091	0.086	–0.035
35	0.023	–0.098	0.094	–0.027
40	0.041	–0.080	0.080	–0.041
45	0.099	–0.022	0.027	–0.094
50	0.206	0.085	–0.076	–0.197
55	0.358	0.237	–0.231	–0.352
60	0.544	0.423	–0.428	–0.549
65	0.736	0.615	–0.640	–0.761
70	0.905	0.784	–0.829	–0.950
75	1.020	0.899	–0.954	–1.075
80	1.060	0.940	–0.977	–1.098
85	1.020	0.899	–0.876	–0.997
90	0.907	0.786	–0.653	–0.774
95	0.744	0.623	–0.332	–0.453
100	0.560	0.439	0.044	–0.077
105	0.384	0.263	0.419	0.298
110	0.239	0.118	0.738	0.617
115	0.137	0.016	0.959	0.838
120	0.077	–0.044	1.060	0.940
125	0.053	–0.068	1.044	0.923
130	0.050	–0.071	0.932	0.811
135	0.057	–0.064	0.759	0.638
140	0.064	–0.057	0.565	0.444
145	0.067	–0.054	0.383	0.262
150	0.065	–0.056	0.238	0.117
155	0.061	–0.060	0.138	0.017
160	0.057	–0.064	0.081	–0.040
165	0.055	–0.066	0.057	–0.064
170	0.056	–0.065	0.054	–0.067
175	0.059	–0.062	0.058	–0.063

Table 23-4—Normalized voltage templates as measured at the MDI *(Continued)*

Time, ns	Normalized transmit template, pos. limit	Normalized transmit template, neg. limit	Normalized link template, pos. limit	Normalized link template, neg. limit
180	0.062	–0.059	0.063	–0.058
185	0.064	–0.057	0.064	–0.057
190	0.064	–0.057	0.063	–0.058
195	0.062	–0.059	0.060	–0.061
200	0.060	–0.061	0.058	–0.063
205	0.057	–0.064	0.058	–0.063
210	0.056	–0.065	0.059	–0.062
215	0.058	–0.063	0.060	–0.061
220	0.061	–0.060	0.062	–0.059
225	0.064	–0.057	0.062	–0.059
230	0.066	–0.055	0.062	–0.059
235	0.065	–0.056	0.061	–0.060
240	0.061	–0.060	0.060	–0.061
245	0.054	–0.067	0.060	–0.061
250	0.049	–0.072	0.060	–0.061
255	0.049	–0.072	0.060	–0.061
260	0.058	–0.063	0.061	–0.060
265	0.074	–0.047	0.061	–0.060
270	0.091	–0.030	0.061	–0.060
275	0.099	–0.022	0.061	–0.060
280	0.080	–0.041	0.060	–0.061
285	0.022	–0.099	0.060	–0.061
290	–0.085	–0.206	0.060	–0.061
295	–0.238	–0.359	0.060	–0.061
300	–0.423	–0.544	0.061	–0.060
305	–0.615	–0.736	0.061	–0.060
310	–0.783	–0.904	0.061	–0.060
315	–0.899	-1.020	0.061	–0.060
320	–0.940	-1.061	0.060	–0.061
325	–0.899	-1.020	0.060	–0.061
330	–0.786	–0.907	0.060	–0.061
335	–0.623	–0.744	0.060	–0.061
340	–0.439	–0.560	0.061	–0.060
345	–0.263	–0.384	0.061	–0.060
350	–0.118	–0.239	0.061	–0.060
355	–0.016	–0.137	0.061	–0.060

Table 23-4—Normalized voltage templates as measured at the MDI *(Continued)*

Time, ns	Normalized transmit template, pos. limit	Normalized transmit template, neg. limit	Normalized link template, pos. limit	Normalized link template, neg. limit
360	0.044	–0.077	0.060	–0.061
365	0.068	–0.053	0.060	–0.061
370	0.070	–0.051	0.060	–0.061
375	0.064	–0.057	0.060	–0.061
380	0.057	–0.064	0.061	–0.060
385	0.054	–0.067	0.061	–0.060
390	0.056	–0.065	0.061	–0.060
395	0.060	–0.061	0.061	–0.060
400	0.064	–0.057	0.060	–0.061
405	0.065	–0.056	0.060	–0.061
410	0.064	–0.057	0.060	–0.061
415	0.061	–0.060	0.060	–0.061
420	0.059	–0.062	0.061	–0.060
425	0.058	–0.063	0.061	–0.060
430	0.059	–0.062	0.061	–0.060
435	0.060	–0.061	0.061	–0.060
440	0.061	–0.060	0.060	–0.061
445	0.062	–0.059	0.060	–0.061
450	0.062	–0.059	0.060	–0.061
455	0.061	–0.060	0.060	–0.061
460	0.060	–0.061	0.061	–0.060
465	0.059	–0.062	0.061	–0.060
470	0.060	–0.061	0.061	–0.060
475	0.060	–0.061	0.061	–0.060
480	0.061	–0.060	0.060	–0.061

It is a mandatory requirement that the peak-to-peak ISI, and the overall peak-to-peak signal voltage, be measured at a point in time halfway between the nominal zero crossings of the observed eye pattern.

It is a mandatory requirement that the 100BASE-T4 Transmit Test Filter perform the function of a third-order Butterworth filter with its –3 dB point at 25.0 MHz.

One acceptable implementation of a 100BASE-T4 Transmit Test Filter appears in figure 23-16. That implementation uses the 100BASE-T4 Transmit Test Filter as a line termination. The output of the filter is terminated in 100 Ω. It is a mandatory requirement that such implementations of the 100BASE-T4 Transmit Test Filter be designed such that the reflection loss of the filter, when driven by a 100 Ω source, exceeds 17 dB across the frequency range 2 to 12.5 MHz.

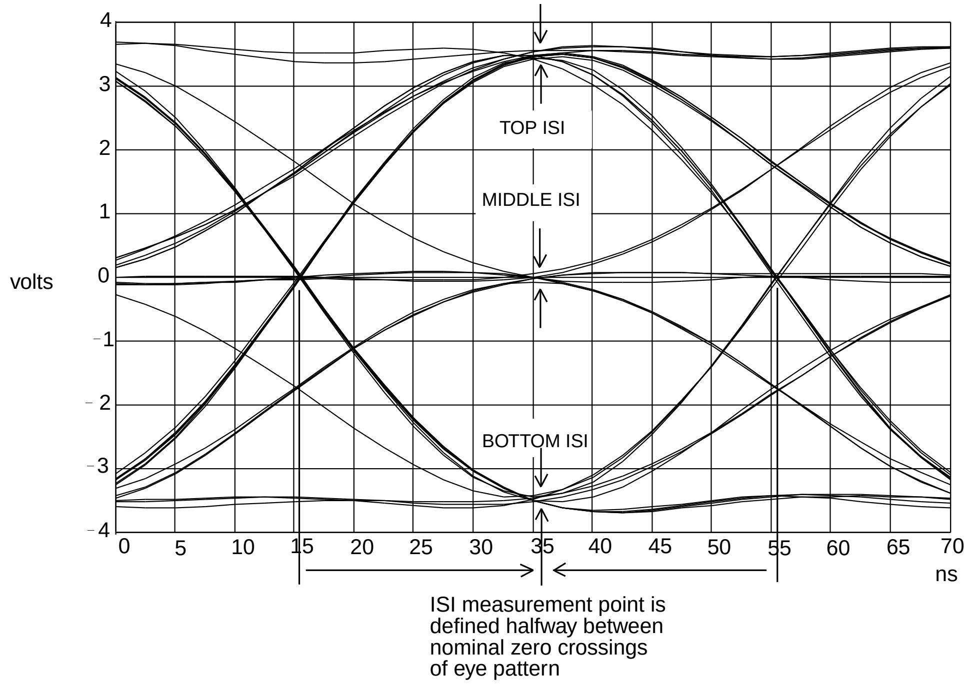


Figure 23-15—Definition of sampling points for ISI measurement

Equivalent circuits that implement the same overall transfer function are also acceptable. For example, the 100BASE-T4 Transmit Test Filter may be tapped onto a line in parallel with an existing termination. It is a mandatory requirement that such implementations of the 100BASE-T4 Transmit Test Filter be designed with an input impedance sufficiently high that the reflection loss of the parallel combination of filter and 100 Ω termination, when driven by 100 Ω, exceeds 17 dB across the frequency range 2 to 12.5 MHz.

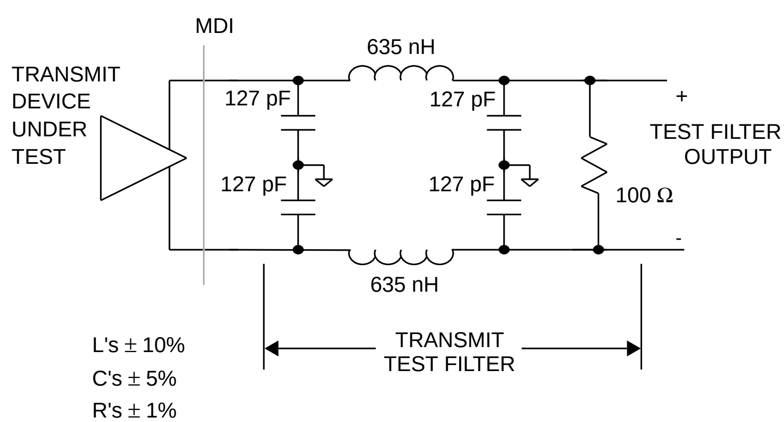


Figure 23-16—Acceptable implementation of transmit test filter

23.5.1.2.4 Transmitter differential output impedance

The differential output impedance as measured at the MDI for each transmit pair shall be such that any reflection due to differential signals incident upon the MDI from a balanced cable having an impedance of 100 Ω is at least 17 dB below the incident signal, over the frequency range of 2.0 MHz to 12.5 MHz. This return loss shall be maintained at all times when the PHY is fully powered.

With every transmitter connected as in figure 23-17, and while transmitting a repeating sequence of packets as specified in table 23-3, the amount of droop on any transmit pair as defined in figure 23-18 during the transmission of eop1 and eop4 shall not exceed 6.0%.

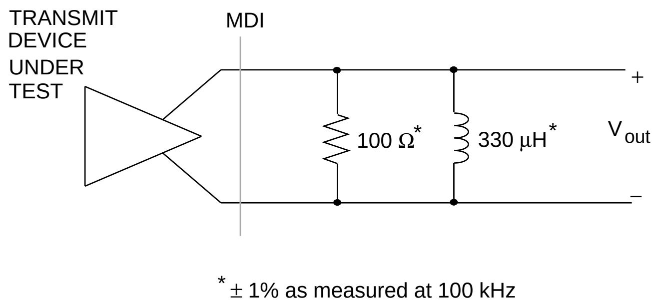


Figure 23-17—Output impedance test setup

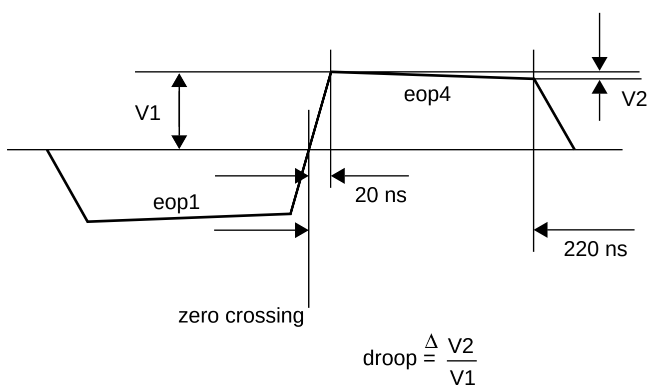


Figure 23-18—Measurement of output droop

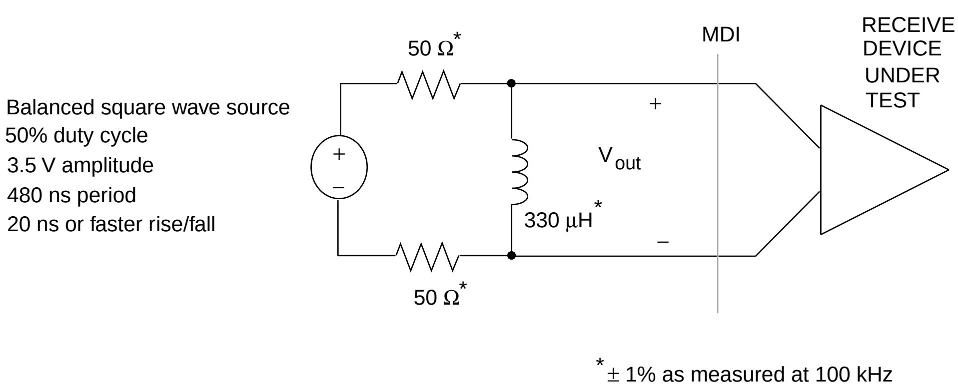


Figure 23-19—Input impedance test setup

Table 23-5—Sequence of packets for droop test

Packet sequence (Transmit this sequence of packets in a repetitive loop)	Packet length (Number of data octets)	Data, hex (All octets in each packet are the same)
first packet	64	AA
second packet	65	AA
third packet	66	AA

23.5.1.2.5 Output timing jitter

While repetitively transmitting a random sequence of valid 8B6T code words, and while observing the output of a 100BASE-T4 Transmit Test Filter connected at the MDI to any of the transmit pairs as specified in 23.5.1.2.3, the measured jitter shall be no more than 4 ns p-p. For the duration of the test, each of the other transmit pairs shall be connected to either a 100BASE-T4 Transmit Test Filter or a 100 Ω resistive load.

NOTES

1—Jitter is the difference between the actual zero crossing point in time and the ideal time. For various ternary transitions, the zero crossing time is defined differently. For transitions between +1 and –1 or vice versa, the zero crossing point is defined as that point in time when the voltage waveform crosses zero. For transitions between zero and the other values, or from some other value to zero, the zero crossing time is defined as that point in time when the voltage waveform crosses the boundary between logical voltage levels, halfway between zero volts and the logical +1 or logical –1 ideal level.

2—The ideal zero crossing times are contained in a set of points $\{t_n\}$ where $t_n = t_0 + n/f$, where n is an integer, and f is in the range 25.000 MHz ± 0.01%. A collection of zero crossing times satisfies the jitter requirement if there exists a pair (t_0, f) such that each zero crossing time is separated from some member of $\{t_n\}$ by no more than 4 ns.

23.5.1.2.6 Transmitter impedance balance

The common-mode to differential-mode impedance balance of each transmit output shall exceed

$$29 - 17\log\left(\frac{f}{10}\right)\text{dB}$$

where f is the frequency (in MHz) over the frequency range 2.0 MHz to 12.5 MHz. The balance is defined as

$$20\log\left(\frac{E_{\text{cm}}}{E_{\text{dif}}}\right)$$

where E_{cm} is an externally applied sine-wave voltage as shown in figure 23-20.

NOTE—The balance of the test equipment (such as the matching of the test resistors) must be insignificant relative to the balance requirements.

23.5.1.2.7 Common-mode output voltage

The implementor should consider any applicable local, national, or international regulations. Driving unshielded twisted pairs with high-frequency, common-mode voltages may result in interference to other equipment. FCC conducted and radiated emissions tests may require that, while transmitting data, the magnitude of the total common-mode output voltage, $E_{\text{cm(out)}}$, on any transmit circuit, be less than a few millivolts when measured as shown in figure 23-21.

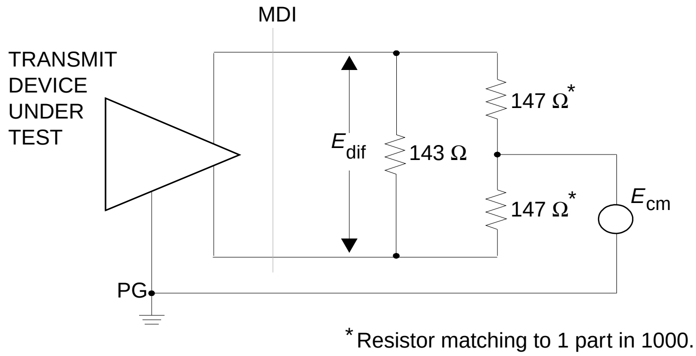


Figure 23-20—Transmitter impedance balance and common-mode rejection test circuit

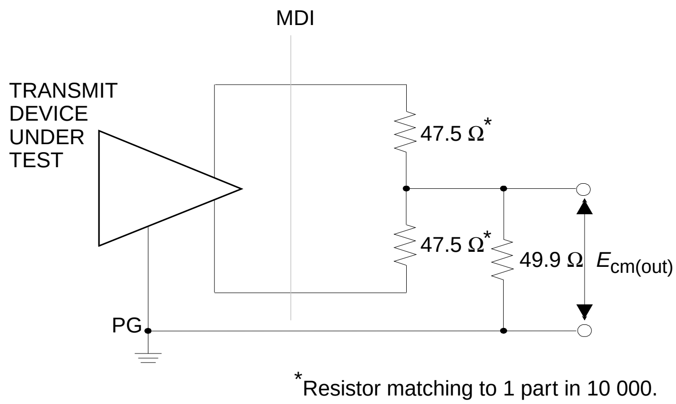


Figure 23-21—Common-mode output voltage test circuit

23.5.1.2.8 Transmitter common-mode rejection

The application of E_{cm} as shown in figure 23-20 shall not change the differential voltage at any transmit output, E_{dif}, by more than 100 mV for all data sequences while the transmitter is sending data. Additionally, the edge jitter added by the application of E_{cm} shall be no more than 1.0 ns. E_{cm} shall be a 15 V peak 10.1 MHz sine wave.

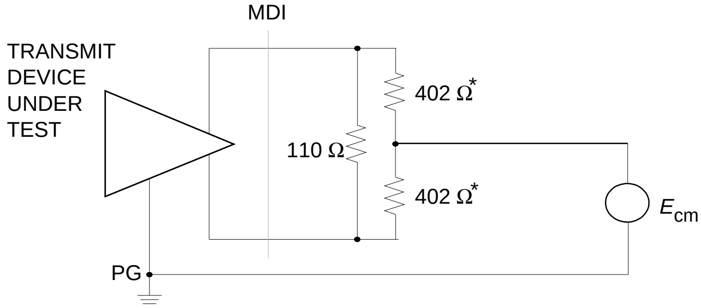
23.5.1.2.9 Transmitter fault tolerance

Transmitters, when either idle or nonidle, shall withstand without damage the application of short circuits across any transmit output for an indefinite period of time and shall resume normal operation after such faults are removed. The magnitude of the current through such a short circuit shall not exceed 420 mA.

Transmitters, when either idle or nonidle, shall withstand without damage a 1000 V common-mode impulse applied at E_{cm} of either polarity (as indicated in figure 23-22). The shape of the impulse shall be 0.3/50 µs (300 ns virtual front time, 50 µs virtual time of half value), as defined in IEC 60.

23.5.1.2.10 Transmit clock frequency

The ternary symbol transmission rate on each pair shall be 25.000 MHz ± 0.01%.



*Resistor matching to 1 part in 100.

Figure 23-22—Transmitter fault tolerance test circuit

23.5.1.3 Receiver specifications

The PMA shall provide the Receive function specified in 23.4.1.3 in accordance with the electrical specifications of this clause. The patch cables and interconnecting hardware used in test configurations shall meet Category 5 specifications as in ISO/IEC 11801: 1995.

The term *worst-case UTP model*, as used in this clause, refers to lumped-element cable model shown in figure 23-23 that has been developed to simulate the attenuation and group delay characteristics of 100 m of worst-case Category 3 PVC UTP cable.

This constant resistance filter structure has been optimized to best match the following amplitude and group delay characteristics, where the argument f is in hertz, and the argument x is the cable length in meters. For the worst-case UTP model, argument x was set to 100 m, and the component values determined for a best least mean squared fit of both real and imaginary parts of $H(f, x)$ over the frequency range 2 to 15 MHz.

NOTE—This group delay model is relative and does not includes the fixed delay associated with 100 m of Category 3 cable. An additional 570 ns of fixed delay should be added in order to obtain the absolute group delay.

$$PropagationImag(f, x) = j(-10)\sqrt{\frac{f}{10^7}}\left(\frac{x}{100}\right)$$

$$PropagationReal(f, x) = -\left(7.1\sqrt{\frac{f}{10^6} + 0.70\frac{f}{10^6}}\right)\left(\frac{x}{305}\right)$$

$$H(f, x) = 10^{\frac{PropagationImag(f, x) + PropagationReal(f, x)}{20}}$$

23.5.1.3.1 Receiver differential input signals

Differential signals received on the receive inputs that were transmitted within the constraints of 23.5.1.2, and have then passed through a worst-case UTP model, shall be correctly translated into one of the PMA_UNITDATA.indicate messages and sent to the PCS. In addition, the receiver, when presented with a link test pulse generated according to the requirements of 23.4.1.2 and followed by at least 3T of silence on pair RX_D2, shall accept it as a link test pulse.

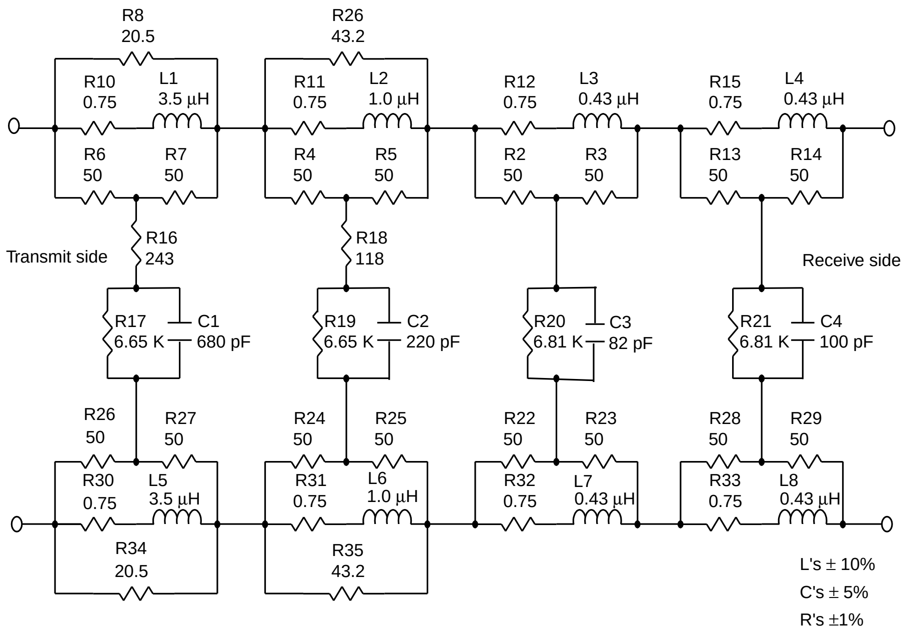


Figure 23-23—Worst-case UTP model

Both data and link test pulse receive features shall be tested in at least two configurations: using the worst-case UTP model, and with a connection less than one meter in length between transmitter and receiver.

A receiver is allowed to discard the first received packet after the transition into state LINK_PASS, using that packet for the purpose of fine-tuning its receiver equalization and clock recovery circuits.

NOTE—Implementors may find it practically impossible to meet the requirements of this subclause without using some form of adaptive equalization.

23.5.1.3.2 Receiver differential noise immunity

The PMA, when presented with 8B6T encoded data meeting the requirements of 23.5.1.3.1, shall translate this data into PMA_UNITDATA.indicate (DATA) messages with a bit loss of no more than that specified in 23.4.1.3.

The PMA Carrier Sense function shall *not* set pma_carrier=ON upon receiving any of the following signals on pair RX_D2 at the receiving MDI, as measured using a 100BASE-T4 transmit test filter (23.5.1.2.3):

a) All signals having a peak magnitude less than 325 mV.
b) All continuous sinusoidal signals of amplitude less than 8.7 V peak-to-peak and frequency less than 1.7 MHz.
c) All sine waves of single cycle or less duration, starting with phase 0° or 180°, and of amplitude less than 8.7 V peak-to-peak, where the frequency is between 1.7 MHz and 15 MHz. For a period of 7 BT before and after this single cycle, the signal shall be less than 325 mV.
d) Fast link pulse burst (FLP burst), as defined in clause 28.
e) The link integrity test pulse signal TP_IDL_100.

23.5.1.3.3 Receiver differential input impedance

The differential input impedance as measured at the MDI for each receive input shall be such that any reflection due to differential signals incident upon each receive input from a balanced cable having an impedance of 100 Ω is at least 17 dB below the incident signal, over the frequency range of 2.0 MHz to 12.5 MHz. This return loss shall be maintained at all times when the PHY is fully powered.

With each receiver connected as in figure 23-19, and with the source adjusted to simulate eop1 and eop4 (50% duty cycle square wave with 3.5 V amplitude, period of 480 ns, and risetime of 20 ns or faster), the amount of droop on each receive pair as defined in figure 23-18 shall not exceed 6.0%.

23.5.1.3.4 Common-mode rejection

While receiving packets from a compliant 100BASE-T4 transmitter connected to all MDI pins, a receiver shall send the proper PMA_UNITDATA.indicate messages to the PCS for any differential input signal E_s that results in a signal E_{dif} that meets 23.5.1.3.1 even in the presence of common-mode voltages E_{cm} (applied as shown in figure 23-24). E_{cm} shall be a 25 V peak-to-peak square wave, 500 kHz or lower in frequency, with edges no slower than 4 ns (20%–80%), connected to each of the receive pairs RX_D2, BI_D3, and BI_D4.

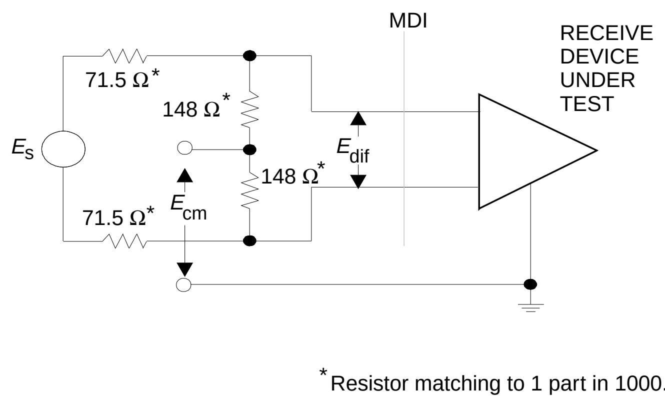


Figure 23-24—Receiver common-mode rejection test circuit

23.5.1.3.5 Receiver fault tolerance

The receiver shall tolerate the application of short circuits between the leads of any receive input for an indefinite period of time without damage and shall resume normal operation after such faults are removed. Receivers shall withstand without damage a 1000 V common-mode impulse of either polarity (E_{cm} as indicated in figure 23-25). The shape of the impulse shall be 0.3/50 µs (300 ns virtual front time, 50 µs virtual time of half value), as defined in IEC 60.

23.5.1.3.6 Receiver frequency tolerance

The receive feature shall properly receive incoming data with a ternary symbol rate within the range 25.000 MHz ± 0.01%.

23.5.2 Power consumption

After 100 ms following PowerOn, the current drawn by the PHY shall not exceed 0.75 A when powered through the MII.

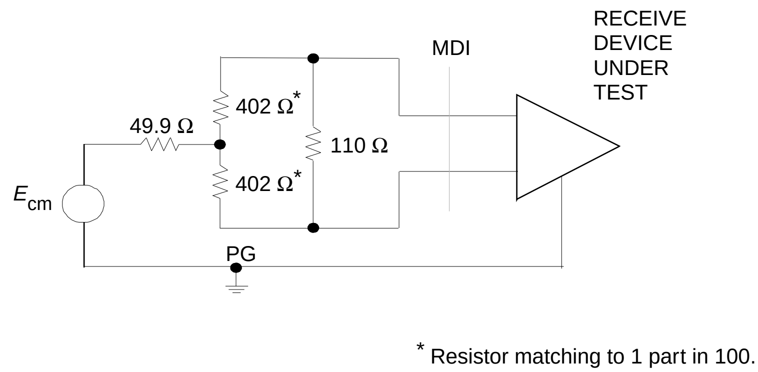


Figure 23-25—Common-mode impulse test circuit

The PHY shall be capable of operating from all voltage sources allowed by clause 22, including those current limited to 0.75 A, as supplied by the DTE or repeater through the resistance of all permissible MII cables.

The PHY shall not introduce extraneous signals on the MII control circuits during normal power-up and power-down.

While in power-down mode the PHY is not required to meet any of the 100BASE-T4 performance requirements.

23.6 Link segment characteristics

23.6.1 Cabling

Cabling and installation practices generally suitable for use with this standard appear in ISO/IEC 11801: 1995. Exceptions, notes, and additional requirements are as listed below.

a) 100BASE-T4 uses a star topology. Horizontal cabling is used to connect PHY entities.
b) 100BASE-T4 is an ISO/IEC 11801: 1995 class C application, with additional installation requirements and transmission parameters specified in 23.6.2 through 23.6.4. The highest fundamental frequency transmitted by 8B6T coding is 12.5 MHz. The aggregate data rate for three pairs using 8B6T coding is 100 Mb/s.
c) 100BASE-T4 shall use four pairs of balanced cabling, Category 3 or better, with a nominal characteristic impedance of 100 Ω.
d) When using Category 3 cable for the link segment, clause 23 recommends, but does not require, the use of Category 4 or better connecting hardware, patch cords and jumpers. The use of Category 4 or better connecting hardware increases the link segment composite NEXT loss, composite ELFEXT loss and reduces the link segment insertion loss. This lowers the link segment crosstalk noise, which in turn decreases the probability of errors.
e) The use of shielded cable is outside the scope of this standard.

23.6.2 Link transmission parameters

Unless otherwise specified, link segment testing shall be conducted using source and load impedances of 100 Ω.

23.6.2.1 Insertion loss

The insertion loss of a simplex link segment shall be no more than 12 dB at all frequencies between 2 and 12.5 MHz. This consists of the attenuation of the twisted pairs, connector losses, and reflection losses due to impedance mismatches between the various components of the simplex link segment. The insertion loss specification shall be met when the simplex link segment is terminated in source and load impedances that satisfy 23.5.1.2.4 and 23.5.1.3.3.

NOTE—The loss of PVC-insulated cable exhibits significant temperature dependence. At temperatures greater than 40 °C, it may be necessary to use a less temperature-dependent cable, such as many Fluorinated Ethylene Propylene (FEP), Polytetrafluoroethylene (PTFE), or Perfluoroalkoxy (PFA) plenum-rated cables.

23.6.2.2 Differential characteristic impedance

The magnitude of the differential characteristic impedance of a 3 m length of twisted pair used in a simplex link shall be between 85 Ω and 115 Ω for all frequencies between 2 MHz and 12.5 MHz.

23.6.2.3 Coupling parameters

In order to limit the noise coupled into a simplex link segment from adjacent simplex link segments, Near-End Crosstalk (NEXT) loss and Equal Level Far-End Crosstalk (ELFEXT) loss are specified for each simplex link segment. In addition, since three simplex links (TX_D1, BI_D3, and BI_D4) are used to send data between PHYs and one simplex link (RX_D2) is used to carry collision information as specified in 23.1.4, Multiple-Disturber NEXT loss and Multiple-Disturber ELFEXT loss are also specified.

23.6.2.3.1 Differential Near-End Crosstalk (NEXT) loss

The differential Near-End Crosstalk (NEXT) loss between two simplex link segments is specified in order to ensure that collision information can be reliably received by the PHY receiver. The NEXT loss between each of the three data carrying simplex link segments and the collision sensing simplex link segment shall be at least $24.5 - 15\times\log_{10}(f/12.5)$ (where f is the frequency in MHz) over the frequency range 2.0 MHz to 12.5 MHz.

23.6.2.3.2 Multiple-disturber NEXT (MDNEXT) loss

Since three simplex links are used to send data between PHYs and one simplex link is used to carry collision information, the NEXT noise that is coupled into the collision, sensing simplex link segment is from multiple (three) signal sources, or disturbers. The MDNEXT loss between the three data carrying simplex link segments and the collision sensing simplex link segment shall be at least $21.4 - 15\times\log_{10}(f/12.5)$ dB (where f is the frequency in MHz) over the frequency range 2.0 to 12.5 MHz. Refer to 12.7.3.2 and Appendix A3, Example Crosstalk Computation for Multiple Disturbers, for a tutorial and method for estimating the MDNEXT loss for an n-pair cable.

23.6.2.3.3 Equal Level Far-End Crosstalk (ELFEXT) loss

Equal Level Far-End Crosstalk (ELFEXT) loss is specified in order to limit the crosstalk noise at the far end of a simplex link segment to meet the BER objective specified in 23.1.2 and the noise specifications of 23.6.3. Far-End Crosstalk (FEXT) noise is the crosstalk noise that appears at the far end of a simplex link segment which is coupled from an adjacent simplex link segment with the noise source (transmitters) at the near end. ELFEXT loss is the ratio of the data signal to FEXT noise at the output of a simplex link segment (receiver input). To limit the FEXT noise from adjacent simplex link segments, the ELFEXT loss between two data carrying simplex link segments shall be greater than $23.1 - 20\times\log_{10}(f/12.5)$ dB (where f is the frequency in MHz) over the frequency range 2.0 MHz to 12.5 MHz. ELFEXT loss at frequency f and distance l is defined as

$$\text{ELFEXT\_Loss}\ (f,l) = 20 \times \log_{10}\left(\frac{V_{\text{pds}}}{V_{\text{pcn}}}\right) - \text{SLS\_Loss (dB)}$$

where

V_{pds}	is the peak voltage of disturbing signal (near-end transmitter)
V_{pcn}	is the peak crosstalk noise at the far end of disturbed simplex link segment
SLS_Loss	is the insertion loss of the disturbing simplex link segment

23.6.2.3.4 Multiple-disturber ELFEXT (MDELFEXT) loss

Since three simplex links are used to transfer data between PHYs, the FEXT noise that is coupled into an data carrying simplex link segment is from multiple (two) signal sources, or disturbers. The MDELFEXT loss between a data carrying simplex link segment and the other two data carrying simplex link segments shall be greater than $20.9 - 20 \times \log_{10}(f/12.5)$ (where f is the frequency in MHz) over the frequency range 2.0 MHz to 12.5 MHz. Refer to 12.7.3.2 and Appendix A3, Example Crosstalk Computation for Multiple Disturbers, for a tutorial and method for estimating the MDELFEXT loss for an n-pair cable.

23.6.2.4 Delay

Since T4 sends information over three simplex link segments in parallel, the absolute delay of each and the differential delay are specified to comply with network round-trip delay limits and ensure the proper decoding by receivers, respectively.

23.6.2.4.1 Maximum link delay

The propagation delay of a simplex link segment shall not exceed 570 ns at all frequencies between 2.0 MHz and 12.5 MHz.

23.6.2.4.2 Maximum link delay per meter

The propagation delay per meter of a simplex link segment shall not exceed 5.7 ns/m at all frequencies between 2.0 MHz and 12.5 MHz.

23.6.2.4.3 Difference in link delays

The difference in propagation delay, or skew, under all conditions, between the fastest and the slowest simplex link segment in a link segment shall not exceed 50 ns at all frequencies between 2.0 MHz and 12.5 MHz. It is a further functional requirement that, once installed, the skew between all pair combinations due to environmental conditions shall not vary more than ± 10 ns, within the above requirement.

23.6.3 Noise

The noise level on the link segments shall be such that the objective error rate is met. The noise environment consists generally of two primary contributors: self-induced near-end crosstalk, which affects the ability to detect collisions, and far-end crosstalk, which affects the signal-to-noise ratio during packet reception.

23.6.3.1 Near-End Crosstalk

The MDNEXT (Multiple-Disturber Near-End Crosstalk) noise on a link segment depends on the level of the disturbing signals on pairs TX_D1, BI_D3, and BI_D4, and the crosstalk loss between those pairs and the disturbed pair, RX_D2.

The MDNEXT noise on a link segment shall not exceed 325 mVp.

This standard is compatible with the following assumptions:

a) Three disturbing pairs with 99th percentile pair-to-pair NEXT loss greater than 24.5 dB at 12.5 MHz (i.e., Category 3 cable).
b) Six additional disturbers (2 per simplex link) representing connectors at the near end of the link segment with 99th percentile NEXT loss greater than 40 dB at 12.5 MHz (i.e., Category 3 connectors installed in accordance with 23.6.4.1).
c) All disturbers combined according to the MDNEXT Monte Carlo procedure outlined in Appendix A3, Example Crosstalk Computation for Multiple Disturbers.

The MDNEXT noise is defined using three maximum level 100BASE-T4 transmitters sending uncorrellated continuous data sequences while attached to the simplex link segments TX_D1, BI_D3, and BI_D4 (disturbing links), and the noise measured at the output of a filter connected to the simplex link segment RX_D2. (disturbed link). Each continuous data sequence is a pseudo-random bit pattern having a length of at least 2047 bits that has been coded according to the 8B6T coding rules in 23.2.1.2. The filter is the 100BASE-T4 Transmit Test Filter specified in 23.5.1.2.3.

23.6.3.2 Far-End Crosstalk

The MDFEXT (Multiple-Disturber Far-End Crosstalk) noise on a link segment depends on the level of the disturbing signals on pairs TX_D1, BI_D3, and BI_D4, and the various crosstalk losses between those pairs.

The MDFEXT noise on a link segment shall not exceed 87 mVp.

This standard is compatible with the following assumptions:

a) Two disturbing pairs with 99th percentile ELFEXT (Equal Level Far-End Crosstalk) loss greater than 23 dB at 12.5 MHz.
b) Nine additional disturbers (three per simplex link) representing connectors in the link segment with 99th percentile NEXT loss greater than 40 dB at 12.5 MHz.
c) All disturbers combined according to the MDNEXT Monte Carlo procedure outlined in Appendix A3, Example Crosstalk Computation for Multiple Disturbers.

The MDFEXT noise is defined using two maximum level 100BASE-T4 transmitters sending uncorrellated continuous data sequences while attached to two simplex link segments (disturbing links) and the noise measured at the output of a filter connected to the far end of a third simplex link segment (disturbed link). Each continuous data sequence is a pseudo-random bit pattern having a length of at least 2047 bits that has been coded according to the 8B6T coding rules in 23.2.1.2. The filter is the 100BASE-T4 Transmit Test Filter specified in 23.5.1.2.3.

23.6.4 Installation practice

23.6.4.1 Connector installation practices

The amount of untwisting in a pair as a result of termination to connecting hardware should be no greater than 25 mm (1.0 in) for Category 3 cables. This is the same value recommended in ISO/IEC 11801: 1995 for Category 4 connectors.

23.6.4.2 Disallow use of Category 3 cable with more than four pairs

Jumper cables, or horizontal runs, made from more than four pairs of Category 3 cable are not allowed.

23.6.4.3 Allow use of Category 5 jumpers with up to 25 pairs

Jumper cables made from up to 25 pairs of Category 5 cable, for the purpose of mass-terminating port connections at a hub, are allowed. Such jumper cables, if used, shall be limited in length to no more than 10 m total.

23.7 MDI specification

This clause defines the MDI. The link topology requires a crossover function between PMAs. Implementation and location of this crossover are also defined in this clause.

23.7.1 MDI connectors

Eight-pin connectors meeting the requirements of section 3 and figures 1-5 of IEC 603-7: 1990 shall be used as the mechanical interface to the balanced cabling. The plug connector shall be used on the balanced cabling and the jack on the PHY. These connectors are depicted (for informational use only) in figures 23-26 and 23-27. The table 23-6 shows the assignment of PMA signals to connector contacts for PHYs with and without an internal crossover.

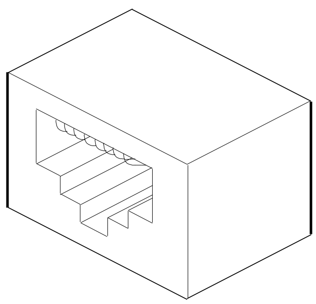


Figure 23-26—MDI connector

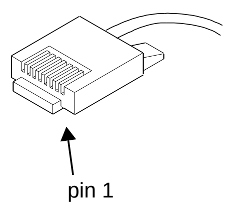


Figure 23-27—Balanced cabling connector

Table 23-6—MDI connection and labeling requirements

Contact	PHY without internal crossover (recommended for DTE) internal PMA signals	PHY with internal crossover (recommended for repeater) internal PMA signals	MDI labeling requirement
1	TX_D1+	RX_D2+	TX_D1+
2	TX_D1–	RX_D2–	TX_D1–
3	RX_D2+	TX_D1+	RX_D2+
4	BI_D3+	BI_D4+	BI_D3+
5	BI_D3–	BI_D4–	BI_D3–
6	RX_D2–	TX_D1–	RX_D2–
7	BI_D4+	BI_D3+	BI_D4+
8	BI_D4–	BI_D3–	BI_D4–

23.7.2 Crossover function

It is a functional requirement that a crossover function be implemented in every link segment. The crossover function connects the transmitters of one PHY to the receivers of the PHY at the other end of the link segment. Crossover functions may be implemented internally to a PHY or elsewhere in the link segment. For a PHY that does not implement the crossover function, the MDI labels in the last column of table 23-4 refer to its own internal circuits (second column). For PHYs that do implement the internal crossover, the MDI labels in the last column of table 23-4 refer to the internal circuits of the remote PHY of the link segment. Additionally, the MDI connector for a PHY that implements the crossover function shall be marked with the graphical symbol "X". Internal and external crossover functions are shown in figure 23-28. The crossover function specified here for pairs TX_D1 and RX_D2 is compatible with the crossover function specified in 14.5.2 for pairs TD and RD.

When a link segment connects a DTE to a repeater, it is recommended the crossover be implemented in the PHY local to the repeater. If both PHYs of a link segment contain internal crossover functions, an additional external crossover is necessary. It is recommended that the crossover be visible to an installer from one of the PHYs. When both PHYs contain internal crossovers, it is further recommended in networks in which the topology identifies either a central backbone segment or a central repeater that the PHY furthest from the central element be assigned the external crossover to maintain consistency.

Implicit implementation of the crossover function within a twisted-pair cable, or at a wiring panel, while not expressly forbidden, is beyond the scope of this standard.

23.8 System considerations

The repeater unit specified in clause 27 forms the central unit for interconnecting 100BASE-T4 twisted-pair links in networks of more than two nodes. It also provides the means for connecting 100BASE-T4 twisted-pair links to other 100 Mb/s baseband segments. The proper operation of a CSMA/CD network requires that network size be limited to control round-trip propagation delay as specified in clause 29.

23.9 Environmental specifications

23.9.1 General safety

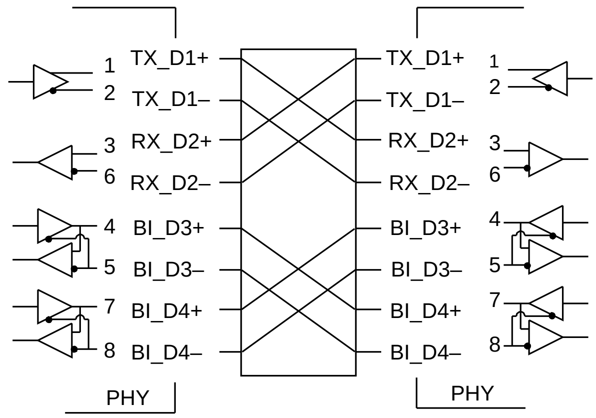
All equipment meeting this standard shall conform to IEC 950: 1991.

23.9.2 Network safety

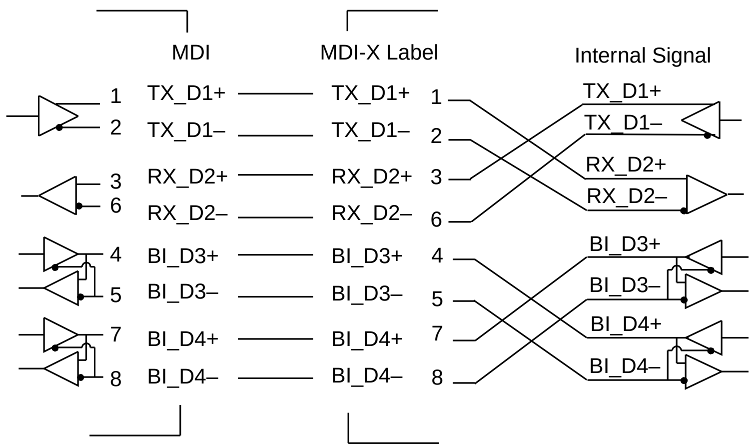
This clause sets forth a number of recommendations and guidelines related to safety concerns; the list is neither complete nor does it address all possible safety issues. The designer is urged to consult the relevant local, national, and international safety regulations to ensure compliance with the appropriate requirements.

LAN cable systems described in this clause are subject to at least four direct electrical safety hazards during their installation and use. These hazards are as follows:

a) Direct contact between LAN components and power, lighting, or communications circuits
b) Static charge buildup on LAN cables and components
c) High-energy transients coupled onto the LAN cable system
d) Voltage potential differences between safety grounds to which various LAN components are connected



a) Two PHYs with external crossover function



b) PHY with internal crossover function

Figure 23-28—Crossover function

Such electrical safety hazards must be avoided or appropriately protected against for proper network installation and performance. In addition to provisions for proper handling of these conditions in an operational system, special measures must be taken to ensure that the intended safety features are not negated during installation of a new network or during modification or maintenance of an existing network.

23.9.2.1 Installation

It is a mandatory functional requirement that sound installation practice, as defined by applicable local codes and regulations, be followed in every instance in which such practice is applicable.

23.9.2.2 Grounding

Any safety grounding path for an externally connected PHY shall be provided through the circuit ground of the MII connection.

WARNING—It is assumed that the equipment to which the PHY is attached is properly grounded, and not left floating nor serviced by a “doubly insulated, ac power distribution system.” The use of floating or insulated equipment, and the consequent implications for safety, are beyond the scope of this standard.

23.9.2.3 Installation and maintenance guidelines

It is a mandatory functional requirement that, during installation and maintenance of the cable plant, care be taken to ensure that noninsulated network cable conductors do not make electrical contact with unintended conductors or ground.

23.9.2.4 Telephony voltages

The use of building wiring brings with it the possibility of wiring errors that may connect telephony voltages to 100BASE-T4 equipment. Other than voice signals (which are low voltage), the primary voltages that may be encountered are the “battery” and ringing voltages. Although there is no universal standard, the following maximums generally apply.

Battery voltage to a telephone line is generally 56 Vdc applied to the line through a balanced 400 Ω source impedance.

Ringing voltage is a composite signal consisting of an ac component and a dc component. The ac component is up to 175 V peak at 20 Hz to 60 Hz with a 100 Ω source resistance. The dc component is 56 Vdc with a 300 Ω to 600 Ω source resistance. Large reactive transients can occur at the start and end of each ring interval.

Although 100BASE-T4 equipment is not required to survive such wiring hazards without damage, application of any of the above voltages shall not result in any safety hazard.

NOTE—Wiring errors may impose telephony voltages differentially across 100BASE-T4 transmitters or receivers. Because the termination resistance likely to be present across a receiver’s input is of substantially lower impedance than an off-hook telephone instrument, receivers will generally appear to the telephone system as off-hook telephones. Therefore, full-ring voltages will be applied for only short periods. Transmitters that are coupled using transformers will similarly appear like off-hook telephones (though perhaps a bit more slowly) due to the low resistance of the transformer coil.

23.9.3 Environment

23.9.3.1 Electromagnetic emission

The twisted-pair link shall comply with applicable local and national codes for the limitation of electromagnetic interference.

23.9.3.2 Temperature and humidity

The twisted-pair link is expected to operate over a reasonable range of environmental conditions related to temperature, humidity, and physical handling (such as shock and vibration). Specific requirements and values for these parameters are considered to be beyond the scope of this standard.

It is recommended that manufacturers indicate in the literature associated with the PHY the operating environmental conditions to facilitate selection, installation, and maintenance.

23.10 PHY labeling

It is recommended that each PHY (and supporting documentation) be labeled in a manner visible to the user with at least these parameters:

a) Data rate capability in Mb/s

b) Power level in terms of maximum current drain (for external PHYs)
c) Any applicable safety warnings

See also 23.7.2.

23.11 Timing summary

23.11.1 Timing references

All MII signals are defined (or corrected to) the DTE end of a zero length MII cable.

NOTE—With a finite length MII cable, TX_CLK appears in the PHY one cable propagation delay *earlier* than at the MII. This advances the transmit timing. Receive timing is retarded by the same amount.

The phrase *adjusted for pair skew*, when applied to a timing reference on a particular pair, means that the designated timing reference has been adjusted by adding to it the difference between the time of arrival of preamble on the latest of the three receive pairs and the time of arrival of preamble on that particular pair.

PMA_UNITDATA.request

Figures 23-29, 30, 31, and 32. The implementation of this abstract message is not specified. Conceptually, this is the time at which the PMA has been given full knowledge and use of the ternary symbols to be transmitted.

PMA_UNITDATA.indicate

Figure 23-33. The implementation of this abstract message is not specified. Conceptually, this is the time at which the PCS has been given full knowledge and use of the ternary symbols received.

WAVEFORM

Figure 23-29. Point in time at which output waveform has moved 1/2 way from previous nominal output level to present nominal output level.

TX_EN

Figure 23-30. First rising edge of TX_CLK following the rising edge of TX_EN.

NOT_TX_EN

Figures 23-31 and 32. First rising edge of TX_CLK following the falling edge of TX_EN.

CRS

Figure 23-33. Rising edge of CRS.

CARRIER_STATUS

Figure 23-33. Rising edge of carrier_status.

NOT_CARRIER_STATUS

Figure 23-34. Falling edge of carrier_status.

RX_DV

No figure. First rising edge of RX_CLK following rising edge of RX_DV.

COL

No figure. Rising edge of COL signal at MII.

NOT_COL

No figure. Falling edge of COL signal at MII.

PMA_ERROR

No figure. Time at which rxerror_status changes to ERROR.

23.11.2 Definitions of controlled parameters

PMA_OUT

Figure 23-29. Time between PMA_UNITDATA.request (tx_code_vector) and the WAVEFORM timing reference for each of the three transmit channels TX_D1, BI_D3, or BI_D4.

TEN_PMA

Figures 23-30, 31, and 32. Time between TX_EN timing reference and MA_UNITDATA.request (tx_code_vector).

TEN_CRS

Figure 23-30. Time between TX_EN timing reference and the loopback of TX_EN to CRS as measured at the CRS timing reference point.

NOT_TEN_CRS

Figures 23-31 and 32. Time between NOT_TX_EN timing reference and the loopback of TX_EN to CRS as measured at the NOT_CRS timing reference point. In the event of a collision (COL is raised at any point during a packet) the minimum time for NOT_TEN_CRS may optionally be as short as 0.

RX_PMA_CARRIER

Figure 23-33. Time between the WAVEFORM timing reference, adjusted for pair skew, of first pulse of a normal preamble (or first pulse of a preamble preceded by a link test pulse or a partial link test pulse) and the CARRIER_STATUS timing reference.

RX_CRS

Figure 23-33. Time between the WAVEFORM timing reference, adjusted for pair skew, of first pulse of a normal preamble (or first pulse of a preamble preceded by a link test pulse or a partial link test pulse) and the CRS timing reference.

NOTE—The input waveform used for this test is an ordinary T4 preamble, generated by a compliant T4 transmitter. As such, the delay between the first and third pulses of the preamble (which are used by the carrier sense logic) is very nearly 80 ns.

RX_NOT_CRS

For a data packet, the time between the WAVEFORM timing reference, adjusted for pair skew, of the first pulse of eop1, and the de-assertion of CRS. For a collision fragment, the time between the WAVEFORM timing reference, adjusted for pair skew, of the ternary symbol on pair TX_D2, which follows the last ternary data symbol received on pair RX_D2, and the de-assertion of CRS.

Both are limited to the same value. For a data packet, detection of the six ternary symbols of eopo1 is accomplished in the PCS layer. For a collision fragment, detection of the concluding seven ternary zeroes is accomplished in the PMA layer, and passed to the PCS in the form of the carrier_status indication.

FAIRNESS

The difference between RX_NOT_CRS at the conclusion of one packet and RX_CRS on a subsequent packet. The packets used in this test may arrive with an IPG anywhere in the range of 80 to 160.

RX_PMA_DATA

Figure 23-33. Time between the WAVEFORM timing reference, adjusted for pair skew, of first pulse of a normal preamble (or first pulse of a preamble preceded by a link test pulse or a partial link test pulse) and the particular PMA_UNITDATA.indicate that transfers to the PCS the first ternary symbol of the first 6T code group from receive pair BI_D3.

EOP_CARRIER_STATUS

Figure 23-34. For a data packet, the time between the WAVEFORM timing reference, adjusted for pair skew, of first pulse of eop1 and the NOT_CARRIER_STATUS timing reference.

EOC_CARRIER_STATUS

Figure 23-35. In the case of a colliding packet, the time between the WAVEFORM timing reference, adjusted for pair skew, of the ternary symbol on pair RX_D2, which follows the last ternary data symbol received on pair RX_D2 and the NOT_CARRIER_STATUS timing reference.

RX_RXDV

No figure. Time between WAVEFORM timing reference, adjusted for pair skew, of first pulse of a normal preamble (or first pulse of a preamble preceded by a link test pulse or a partial link test pulse) and the RX_DV timing reference.

RX_PMA_ERROR

No figure. In the event of a preamble in error, the time between the WAVEFORM timing reference adjusted for pair skew, of first pulse of that preamble (or first pulse of the preamble preceded by a link test pulse or a partial link test pulse), and the PMA_ERROR timing reference.

RX_COL

No figure. In the event of a collision, the time between the WAVEFORM timing reference adjusted for pair skew, of first pulse of a normal preamble (or first pulse of a preamble preceded by a link test pulse or a partial link test pulse), and the COL timing reference.

RX_NOT_COL

No figure. In the event of a collision in which the receive signal stops before the locally transmitted signal, the time between the WAVEFORM timing reference adjusted for pair skew, of the ternary symbol on pair RX_D2, which follows the last ternary data symbol received on pair RX_D2 and the NOT_COL timing reference point.

TX_NOT_COL

No figure. In the event of a collision in which the locally transmitted signal stops before the received signal, the time between the NOT_TX_EN timing reference and the loopback of TX_EN to COL as measured at the NOT_COL timing reference point.

TX_SKEW

Greatest absolute difference between a) the waveform timing reference of the first pulse of a preamble as measured on output pair TX_D1; b) the waveform timing reference of the first pulse of a preamble as measured on output pair BI_D3; and c) the waveform timing reference of the first pulse of a preamble as measured on output pair BI_D4. Link test pulses, if present during the measurement, must be separated from the preamble by at least 100 ternary symbols.

CRS_PMA_DATA

Time between the timing reference for CARRIER STATUS and the transferral, via PMA_UNITDATA.indicate, of the first ternary symbol of the 6T code group marked DATA1 in figure 23-6.

COL_to_BI_D3/D4_OFF

No figure. In the case of a colliding packet, the time between the WAVE FORM timing reference, adjusted for pair skew, of the first pulse of preamble (or the first pulse of the preamble preceded by a link test pulse or a partial link test pulse) on RX_D2, and the first ternary zero transmitted on BI_D3 and on BI_D4.

NOTE—Subclause 23.4.1.2 mandates that transmission on pairs BI_D3 and BI_D4 be halted in the event of a collision.

23.11.3 Table of required timing values

While in the LINK_PASS state, each PHY timing parameter shall fall within the Low and High limits listed in table 23-7. All units are in bit times. A bit time equals 10 ns.

Table 23-7—Required timing values

Controlled parameter	Low limit (bits)	High limit (bits)	Comment
PMA_OUT	1	9.5	
TEN_PMA + PMA_OUT	7	17.5	
TEN_CRS	0	+4	
NOT_TEN_CRS	0	36	
RX_PMA_CARRIER	0	15.5	
RX_CRS	0	27.5	
RX_NOT_CRS	0	51.5	
FAIRNESS	0	28	
RX_PMA_DATA	67	90.5	
EOP_CARRIER_STATUS	51	74.5	
EOC_CARRIER_STATUS	3	50.5	
RX_RXDV	81	114.5	
RX_PMA_ERROR	RX_PMA_DATA	RX_PMA_DATA + 20	Allowed limits equal the actual RX_PMA_DATA time for the device under test plus from 0 to 20 BT
RX_COL	0	27.5	SAME AS RX_CRS
RX_NOT_COL	0	51.5	SAME AS RX_NOT_CRS
TX_NOT_COL	0	36	
TX_SKEW	0	0.5	
CRS_PMA_DATA	0	78.5	
COL_to_BI_D3/D4_OFF	0	40	

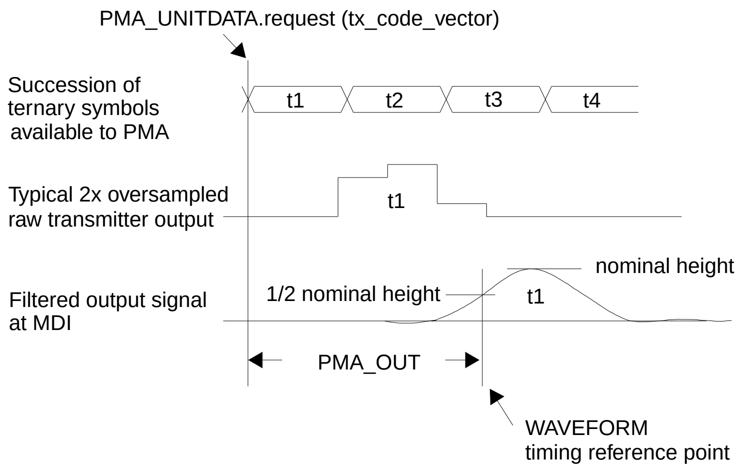


Figure 23-29—PMA TRANSMIT timing while tx_code_vector = DATA

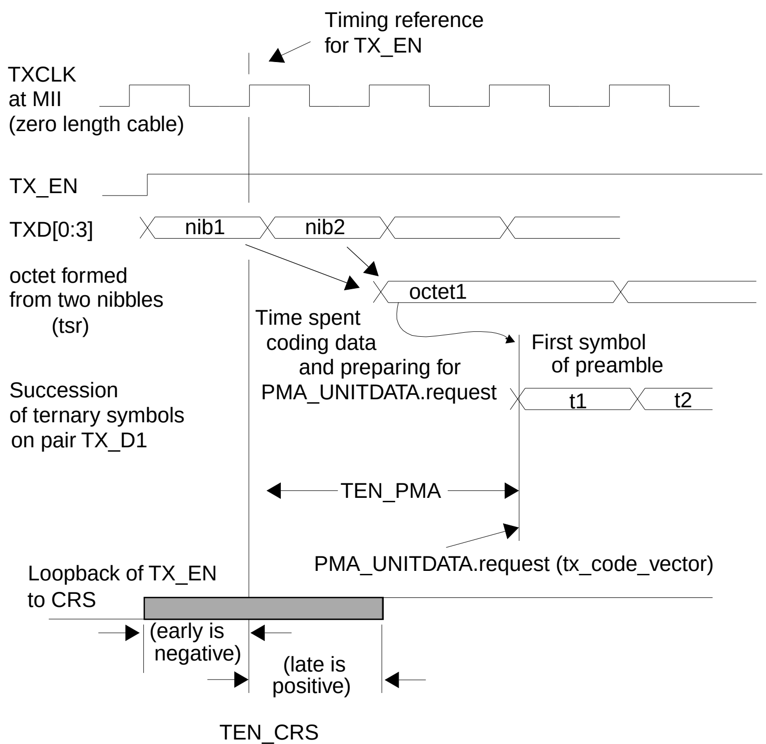


Figure 23-30—PCS TRANSMIT timing at start of packet

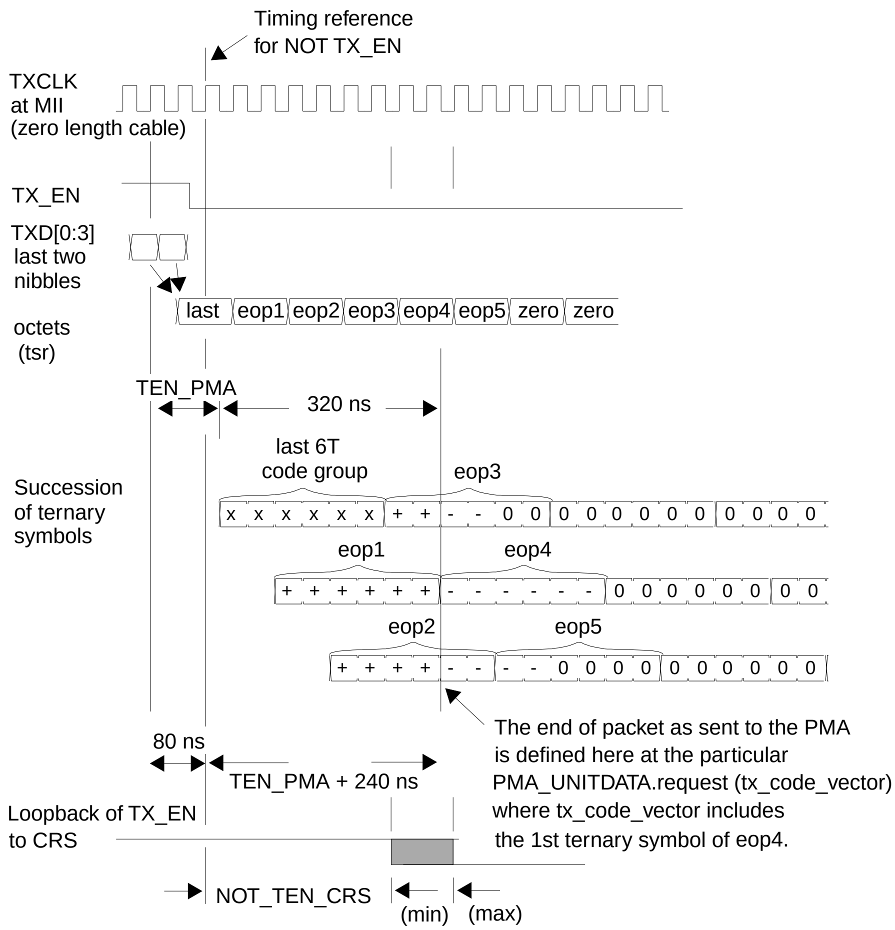


Figure 23-31—PCS TRANSMIT timing end of normal packet

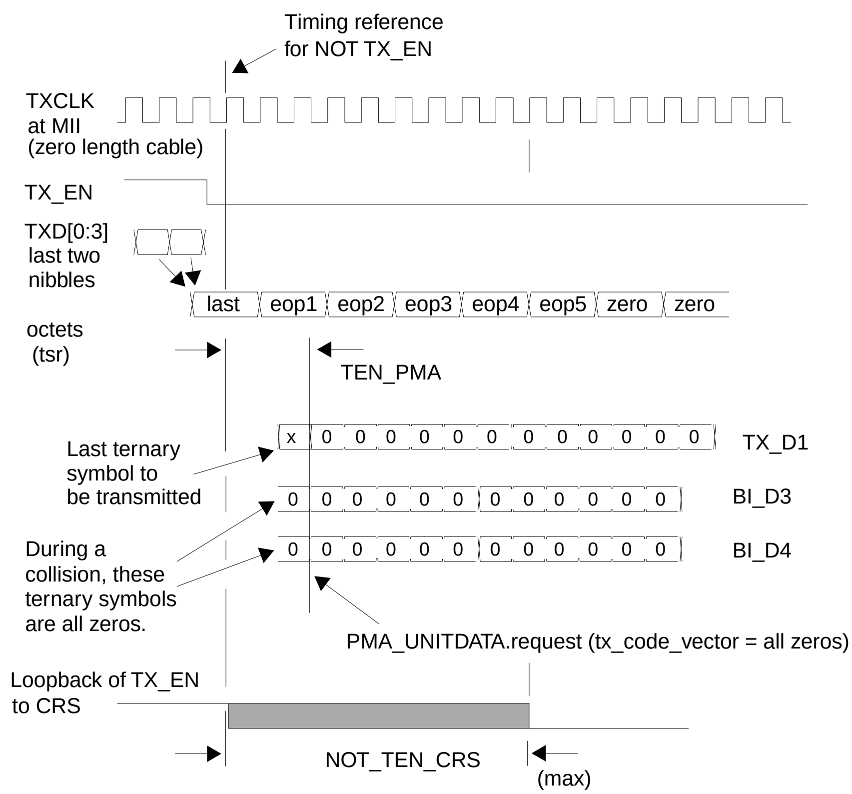


Figure 23-32—PCS TRANSMIT timing end of colliding packet

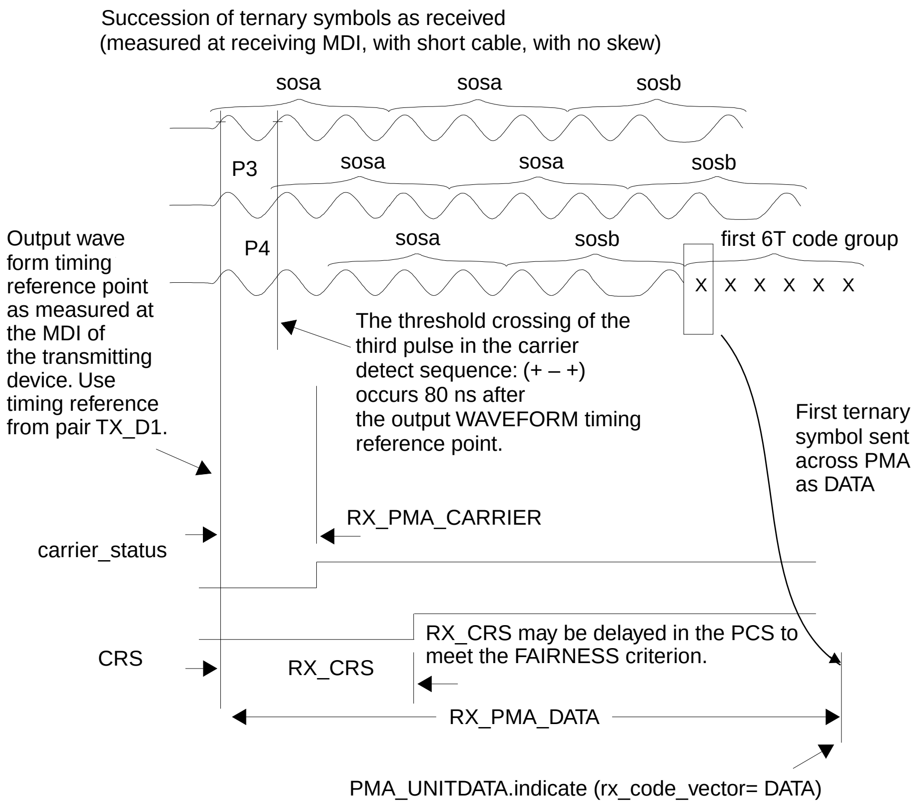
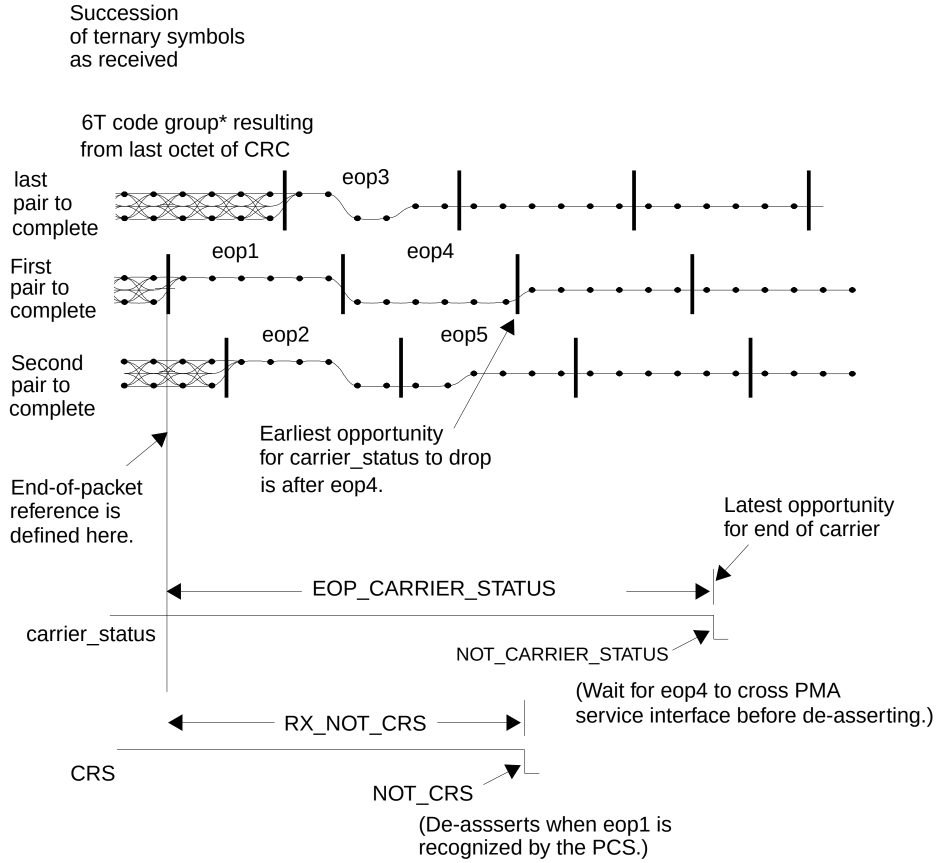


Figure 23-33—PMA RECEIVE timing start of packet



*RX_DV de-asserts after sending the last nibble of this decoded octet across the MII.
CRS may de-assert prior to that time.

Figure 23-34—PMA RECEIVE timing end of normal packet

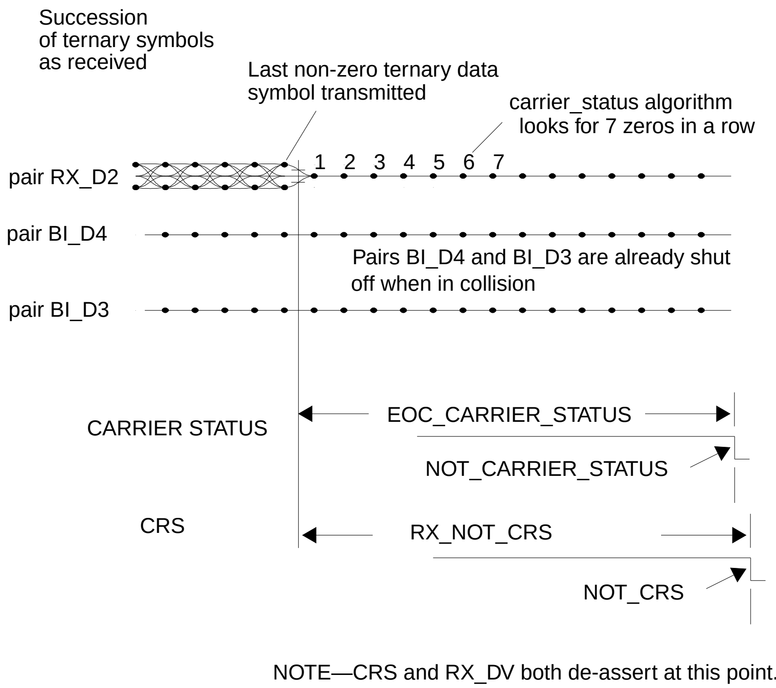


Figure 23-35—PMA RECEIVE timing end of colliding packet

23.12 Protocol Implementation Conformance Statement (PICS) proforma for clause 23, Physical Coding Sublayer (PCS), Physical Medium Attachment (PMA) sublayer and baseband medium, type 100BASE-T4[20]

23.12.1 Introduction

The supplier of a protocol implementation that is claimed to conform to IEEE Std 802.3u-1995, Physical Coding Sublayer (PCS), Physical Medium Attachment (PMA) sublayer and baseband medium, type 100BASE-T4, shall complete the following Protocol Implementation Conformance Statement (PICS) proforma.

A detailed description of the symbols used in the PICS proforma, along with instructions for completing the PICS proforma, can be found in clause 21.

23.12.2 Identification

23.12.2.1 Implementation identification

Supplier	
Contact point for enquiries about the PICS	
Implementation Name(s) and Version(s)	
Other information necessary for full identification—e.g., name(s) and version(s) for machines and/or operating systems; System Names(s)	
NOTES 1—Only the first three items are required for all implementations; other information may be completed as appropriate in meeting the requirements for the identification. 2—The terms Name and Version should be interpreted appropriately to correspond with a supplier's terminology (e.g., Type, Series, Model).	

23.12.2.2 Protocol summary

Identification of protocol standard	IEEE Std 802.3u-1995, Physical Coding Sublayer (PCS), Physical Medium Attachment (PMA) sublayer and baseband medium, type 100BASE-T4
Identification of amendments and corrigenda to this PICS proforma that have been completed as part of this PICS	
Have any Exception items been required? No [ ] Yes [ ] (See clause 21; the answer Yes means that the implementation does not conform to IEEE Std 802.3u-1995.)	
Date of Statement	

[20]*Copyright release for PICS proformas:* Users of this standard may freely reproduce the PICS proforma in this annex so that it can be used for its intended purpose and may further publish the completed PICS.

23.12.3 Major capabilities/options

Item	Feature	Subclause	Status	Support	Value/Comment
*MII	Exposed MII interface	23.1.5.3	O		Devices supporting this option must also support the PCS option
*PCS	PCS functions	23.1.5.2	O		Required for integration with DTE or MII
*PMA	Exposed PMA service interface	23.1.5.2	O		Required for integration into symbol level repeater core
*XVR	Internal wiring crossover	23.7.2	O		Usually implemented in repeater, usually not in DTE
*NWY	Support for optional Auto-Negotiation (clause 28)	23.1.5.6	O		Required if Auto-Negotiation is implemented
*INS	Installation / cable		O		Items marked with INS include installation practices and cable specifications not applicable to a PHY manufacturer

23.12.4 PICS proforma tables for the Physical Coding Sublayer (PCS), Physical Medium Attachment (PMA) sublayer and baseband medium, type 100BASE-T4

23.12.4.1 Compatibility considerations

Item	Feature	Subclause	Status	Support	Value/Comment
CCO-1	Compatibility at the MDI	23.1.5.1	M		

23.12.4.2 PCS Transmit functions

Item	Feature	Subclause	Status	Support	Value/Comment
PCT-1	PCS Transmit function	23.2.1.2	PCS:M		Complies with state diagram figure 23-8
PCT-2	Data encoding	23.2.1.2	PCS:M		8B6T with DC balance encoding rules
PCT-3	Order of ternary symbol transmission	Appendix 23-A	PCS:M		Leftmost symbol of each 6T code group first

23.12.4.3 PCS Receive functions

Item	Feature	Subclause	Status	Support	Value/Comment
PCR1	PCS Receive function	23.2.1.3	PCS:M		Complies with state diagram figure 23-9
PCR2	Value of RXD<3:0> while RXDV is de-asserted	23.2.1.3	PCS:M		All zeroes
PCR3	Data decoding	23.2.1.3	PCS:M		8B6T with error detecting rules
PCR4	Value of dc_balance_error, eop_error and codeword_error at times other than those specified in the error detecting rules.	23.2.1.3	PCS:M		OFF
PCR5	Codeword_error indication sets RX_ER when	23.2.1.3	PCS:M		During transfer of both affected data nibbles across the MII
PCR6	Dc_balance_error sets RX_ER when	23.2.1.3	PCS:M		During transfer of both affected nibbles across the MII
PCR7	Eop_error sets RX_ER when	23.2.1.3	PCS:M		During transfer of last decoded data nibble across the MII
PCR8	Action taken if carrier_status is truncated dur to early de-assertion of carrier_status	23.2.1.3	PCS:M		Assert RX_ER, and then de-assert RX_DV

23.12.4.4 Other PCS functions

Item	Feature	Subclause	Status	Support	Value/Comment
PCO1	PCS Reset function executed when	23.2.1.1	PCS:M		Power-on, or the receipt of a reset request from the management entity
PCO2	PCS Error Sense function	23.2.1.4	PCS:M		Complies with state diagram figure 23-10
PCO3	Signaling of RX_ER to MII	23.2.1.4	PCS:M		Before last nibble of clause 4 MAC frame has passed across MII
PCO4	Timing of rxerror_status	23.2.1.4	PCS:M		Causes RX_ER to appear on the MII no later than last nibble of first data octet
PCO5	PCS Carrier Sense function	23.2.1.5	PCS:M		Controls MII signal CRS according to rules in 23.2.1.5
PCO6	MII signal COL is asserted when	23.2.1.6	PCS:M		Upon detection of a PCS collision
PCO7	At other times COL remains	23.2.1.6	PCS:M		De-asserted
PCO8	Loopback implemented in accordance with 22.4.1.2	23.2.2.4	PCS:M		Redundantly specified in 22.2.4.1.2

Item	Feature	Subclause	Status	Support	Value/Comment
PCO9	No spurious signals emitted on the MDI during or after power down	23.2.2.4	M		
PCO10	PMA frame structure	23.2.3	M		Conformance to figure 23-6
PCO11	PMA_UNITDATA messages	23.2.3	PMA:M		Must have a clock for both directions

23.12.4.5 PCS state diagram variables

Item	Feature	Subclause	Status	Support	Value/Comment
PCS1	Timing of eop adjusted such that the last nibble sent across the MII with RX_DV asserted is	23.2.4.1.5	PCS:M		Last nibble of last decoded data octet in a packet
PCS2	Transmission of octets on the three transmit pairs	23.2.4.1.8	PCS:M		Transmission order is: TX_D1, then BI_D3, and then BI_D4
PCS3	Value of tsr during first 16 TX_CLK cycles after TX_EN is asserted	23.2.4.1.11	PCS:M		sosa, sosa, sosa, sosa, sosa, sosa, sosa, sosa, sosa, sosa, sosb, sosb, sosb, sosb, sosb, sosb
PCS4	Value of tsr during first 10 TX_CLK cycles after TX_EN is de-asserted	23.2.4.1.11	PCS:M		eop1, eop1, eop2, eop2, eop3, eop3, eop4, eop4, eop5, eop5
PCS5	TX_ER causes transmission of	23.2.4.1.11	PCS:M		bad_code
PCS6	TX_ER received during the first 16 TX_CLK cycles causes	23.2.4.1.11	PCS:M		Transmission of **bad_code** during 17th and 18th clock cycles
PCS7	Action taken in event TX_EN falls on an odd nibble boundary	23.2.4.1.11	PCS:M		Extension of TX_EN by one TX_CLK cycle, and transmission of bad_code
PCS8	Transmission when TX_EN is not asserted	23.2.4.1.11	PCS:M		zero_code
PCS9	TX_CLK generated synchronous to	23.2.4.1.12	PCS:M		tw1_timer

23.12.4.6 PMA service interface

Item	Feature	Subclause	Status	Support	Value/Comment
PMS1	Continuous generation of PMA_TYPE	23.3.1.2	M		
PMS2	Generation of PMA_UNITDATA.indicate (DATA) messages	23.3.3.2	M		synchronous with data received at the MDI
PMS3	Generation of PMA_CARRIER.indicate message	23.3.4.2	M		ON/OFF
PMS4	Generation of PMA_LINK.indicate message	23.3.5.2	M		FAIL/READY/OK
PMS5	Link_control defaults on power-on or reset to	23.3.6.2	M		ENABLE
PMS6	Action taken in SCAN_FOR_CARRIER mode	23.3.6.4	NWY:M		Enables link integrity state diagram, but blocks passage into LINK_PASS
PMS7	Reporting of link_status while in SCAN_FOR_CARRRIER mode	23.3.6.4	NWY:M		FAIL / READY
PMS8	Reporting of link_status while in DISABLE mode	23.3.6.4	NWY:M		FAIL
PMS9	Action taken in ENABLE mode	23.3.6.4	NWY:M		enables data processing functions
PMS10	Generation of PMA_RXERROR	23.3.7.2	M		ERROR / NO_ERROR

23.12.4.7 PMA Transmit functions

Item	Feature	Subclause	Status	Support	Value/Comment
PMT1	Transmission while (tx_code_vector=DATA) * (pma_carrier=OFF)	23.4.1.2	M		tx_code_vector[TX_D1] tx_code_vector[BI_D3] tx_code_vector[BI_D4]
PMT2	Transmission from time (tx_code_vector=DATA) * (pma_carrier=ON), until (tx_code_vector=IDLE	23.4.1.2	M		tx_code_vector[TX_D1] CS0 CS0
PMT3	Transmission while tx_code_vector=IDLE	23.4.1.2	M		Idle signal TP_DIL_100
PMT4	Duration of silence between link test pulses	23.4.1.2	M		1.2 ms ± 0.6 ms
PMT5	Link test pulse composed of	23.4.1.2	M		CS-1, CS1 transmitted on TX_D1
PMT6	Following a packet, TP_IDL_100 signal starts with	23.4.1.2	M		Period of silence

Item	Feature	Subclause	Status	Support	Value/Comment
PMT7	Effect of termination of TP_IDL_100	23.4.1.2	M		No delay or corruption of subsequent packet
PMT8	Zero crossing jitter of link test pulse	23.4.1.2	M		Less than 4 ns p-p
PMT9	Action taken when xmit=disable	23.4.1.2	M		Transmitter behaves as if tx_code_vector=IDLE

23.12.4.8 PMA Receive functions

Item	Feature	Subclause	Status	Support	Value/Comment
PMR1	Reception and translation of data with ternary symbol error rate less than	23.4.1.3	M		One part in 10^8
PMR2	Assertion of pma_carrier=ON upon reception of test signal	23.4.1.4	M		Test signal is a succession of three data values, produced synchronously with a 25 MHz clock, both preceded and followed by 100 symbols of silence. The three values are: 467 mV, –225 mV, and then 467 mV again
PMR3	condition required to turn off pma_carrier	23.4.1.4	M		Either of a) Seven consecutive zeroes b) Reception of eop1 per 23.4.1.4
PMR4	Value of carrier_status while rcv=ENABLE	23.4.1.4	M		pma_carrier
PMR5	Value of carrier_status while rcv=DISABLE	23.4.1.4	M		OFF

23.12.4.9 Link Integrity functions

Item	Feature	Subclause	Status	Support	Value/Comment
LIF1	Link Integrity function complies with	23.4.1.5	M		State diagram figure 23-12

23.12.4.10 PMA Align functions

Item	Feature	Subclause	Status	Support	Value/Comment
ALN1	Generation of PMA_UNITDATA.indicate (PREAMBLE) messages	23.4.1.6	M		
ALN2	Ternary symbols transferred by first PMA_UNITDATA.indicate (DATA) message	23.4.1.6	M		rx_code_vector[BI_D3]:first ternary symbol of first data code group rx_code_vector[RX_D2]:two ternary symbols prior to start of second data code group rx_code_vector[BI_D4]:four ternary symbols prior to start of third data code group
ALN3	PMA_UNITDATA.indicate (DATA) messages continue until carrier_status=OFF	23.4.1.6	M		

Item	Feature	Subclause	Status	Support	Value/Comment
ALN4	While carrier_status=OFF, PMA emits message	23.4.1.6	M		PMA_UNITDATA.indicate (IDLE)
ALN5	Failure to recognize SSD generates rxerror_status=ERROR	23.4.1.6	M		
ALN6	Action taken when carrier_status=OFF	23.4.1.6	M		Clear rxerror_status
ALN7	Action taken if first packet is used for alignment	23.4.1.6	M		PMA emits PMA_UNITDATA.indicate (PREAMBLE)
ALN8	Tolerance of line skew	23.4.1.6	M		60 ns
ALN9	Detection of misplaced **sosb** 6T code group caused by 3 or fewer ternary symbols in error	23.4.1.6	M		
ALN10	Action taken if **rcv**=disable	23.4.1.6	M		PMA emits PMA_UNITDATA.indicate (IDLE)

23.12.4.11 Other PMA functions

Item	Feature	Subclause	Status	Support	Value/Comment
PMO1	PMA Reset function	23.4.1.1	M		
PMO2	Suitable clock recovery	23.4.1.7	M		

23.12.4.12 Isolation requirements

Item	Feature	Subclause	Status	Support	Value/Comment
ISO1	Values of all components used in test circuits	23.5	M		Accurate to within ±1% unless required otherwise
ISO2	Electrical isolation meets	23.5.1.1	M		1500 V at 50–60 Hz for 60 s per IEC 950: 1991 *or* 2250 Vdc for 60 s per IEC 950: 1991 *or* Ten 2400 V pulses per IEC 60
ISO3	Insulation breakdown during isolation test	23.5.1.1	M		None per IEC 950: 1991
ISO4	Resistance after isolation test	23.5.1.1	M		At least 2 M Ω

23.12.4.13 PMA electrical requirements

Item	Feature	Subclause	Status	Support	Value/Comment
PME1	Conformance to all transmitter specifications in 23.5.1.2	23.5.1.2	M		
PME2	Transmitter load unless otherwise specified	23.5.1.2	M		100 Ω
PME3	Peak differential output voltage	23.5.1.2.1	M		3.15–3.85 V
PME4	Differential transmit template at MDI	23.5.1.2.2	M		Table 23-2
PME5	Differential MDI output template voltage scaling	23.5.1.2.2	M		3.15– 3.85 V
PME6	Interpolation between points on transmit template	23.5.1.2.2	M		Linear
PME7	Differential link pulse template at MDI	23.5.1.2.2	M		Table 23-2
PME8	Differential link pulse template scaling	23.5.1.2.2	M		Same value as used for differential transmit template scaling
PME9	Interpolation between point on link pulse template	23.5.1.2.2	M		Linear
PME10	State when transmitting seven or more consecutive CS0 during TP_IDL-100 signal	23.5.1.2.2	M		–50 mV to 50 mV
PME11	Limit on magnitude of harmonics measured at MDI	23.5.1.2.2	M		27 dB below fundamental
PME12	Differential output ISI	23.5.1.2.3	M		Less than 9%
PME13	Measurement of ISI and peak-to-peak signal voltage	23.5.1.2.3	M		Halfway between nominal zero crossing of the observed eye pattern
PME14	Transfer function of 100BASE-T4 transmit test filter	23.5.1.2.3	M		Third-order Butterworth filter with –3 dB point at 25.0 MHz
PME15	Reflection loss of 100BASE-T4 transmit test filter and 100 W load across the frequency range 2–12.5 MHz	23.5.1.2.3	M		Exceeds 17 dB
PME16	Differential output impedance	23.5.1.2.4	M		Provide return loss into 100 Ω of 17 dB from 2.0 to 12.5 MHz
PME17	Maintenance of return loss	23.5.1.2.4	M		At all times PHY is fully powered
PME18	Droop as defined in figure 23-18 during transmission of eop1 and eop4	23.5.1.2.4	M		Less than 6%
PME19	Output timing jitter	23.5.1.2.5	M		No more than 4 ns peak-to-peak

Item	Feature	Subclause	Status	Support	Value/Comment
PME20	Measurement of output timing jitter	23.5.1.2.5	M		Other transmit outputs connected to 100BASE-T4 ISI test filter or 100 Ω load
PME21	Minimum transmitter impedance balance	23.5.1.2.6	M		$29 - 17\log\left(\frac{f}{10}\right)\text{dB}$
PME22	Transmitter common-mode rejection; effect of E_{cm} as shown in figure 23-20 upon E_{dif}	23.5.1.2.8	M		Less than 100 mV
PME23	Transmitter common-mode rejection; effect of E_{cm} as shown in figure 23-20 upon edge jitter	23.5.1.2.8	M		Less than 1.0 ns
PME24	E_{cm} used for common-mode rejection tests	23.5.1.2.8	M		15 V peak, 10.1 MHz sine wave
PME25	Transmitter faults; response to indefinite application of short circuits	23.5.1.2.9	M		Withstand without damage and resume operation after fault is removed
PME26	Transmitter faults; response to 1000 V common-mode impulse per IEC 60	23.5.1.2.9	M		Withstand without damage
PME27	Shape of impulse used for common-mode impulse test	23.5.1.2.9	M		0.3/50 µs as defined in IEC 60
PME28	Ternary symbol transmission rate	23.5.1.2.10	M		25.000 MHz ± 0.01%
PME29	Conformance to all receiver specifications in 23.5.1.3	23.5.1.3	M		
PME30	Action taken upon receipt of differential signals that were transmitted within the constraints of 23.5.1.2 and have passed through worst-case UTP model	23.5.1.3.1	M		Correctly translated into PMA_UNITDATA messages
PME31	Action taken upon receipt of link test pulse	23.5.1.3.1	M		Accept as a link test pulse
PME32	Test configuration for data reception and link test pulse tests	23.5.1.3.1	M		Using worst-case UTP model, and with a connection less than one meter in length
PME33	Bit loss	23.5.1.3.2	M		No more than that specified in 23.5.1.3.1
PME34	Reaction of pma_carrier to signal less than 325 mV peak	23.5.1.3.2	M		Must not set pma_carrier=ON
PME35	Reaction of pma_carrier to continuous sinusoid less than 1.7 MHz	23.5.1.3.2	M		Must not set pma_carrier=ON
PME36	Reaction of pma_carrier to single cycle or less	23.5.1.3.2	M		Must not set pma_carrier=ON

Item	Feature	Subclause	Status	Support	Value/Comment
PME37	Reaction of pma_carrier to fast link pulse as defined in clause 28	23.5.1.3.2	M		Must not set pma_carrier=ON
PME38	Reaction of pma_carrier to link integrity test pulse signal TP_IDL_100	23.5.1.3.2	M		Must not set pma_carrier=ON
PME39	Differential input impedance	23.5.1.3.3	M		Provide return loss into 100 Ω of 17 dB from 2.0 to 12.5 MHz
PME40	Maintenance of return loss	23.5.1.3.3	M		At all times PHY is fully powered
PME41	Droop as defined in figure 23-18 during reception of test signal defined in figure 23-19	23.5.1.3.3	M		Less than 6%
PME42	Receiver common-mode rejection; effect of E_{cm} as shown in figure 23-24	23.5.1.3.4	M		Receiver meets 23.5.1.3.1
PME43	E_{cm} used for common-mode rejection tests	23.5.1.3.4	M		25 V peak-to-peak square wave, 500 kHz or lower in frequency, with edges no slower than 4 ns
PME44	Receiver faults; response to indefinite application of short circuits	23.5.1.3.5	M		Withstand without damage and resume operation after fault is removed
PME45	Receiver faults; response to 1000 V common mode impulse per IEC 60	23.5.1.3.5	M		Withstand without damage
PME46	Shape of impulse used for common mode impulse test	23.5.1.3.5	M		0.3/50 µs as defined in IEC 60
PME47	Receiver properly receives data have a worst-case ternary symbol range	23.5.1.3.6	M		25.00 MHz ± 0.01%
PME48	Steady-state current consumption	23.5.2	MII:M		0.75 A maximum
PME49	PHY operating voltage range	23.5.2	MII:M		Includes worst voltage available from MII
PME50	Extraneous signals induced on the MII control circuits during normal power-up and power-down	23.5.2	M		None

23.12.4.14 Characteristics of the link segment

Item	Feature	Subclause	Status	Support	Value/Comment
LNK1	Cable used	23.6.1	INS:M		Four pairs of balanced cabling, Category 3 or better, with a nominal characteristic impedance of 100 Ω
LNK2	Source and load impedance used for cable testing (unless otherwise specified)	23.6.2	INS:M		100 Ω
LNK3	Insertion loss of simplex link segment	23.6.2.1	INS:M		Less than 12 dB
LNK4	Source and load impedances used to measure cable insertion loss	23.6.2.1	INS:M		Meet 23.5.1.2.4 and 23.5.1.3.3
LNK5	Characteristic impedance over the range 2–12.5 MHz	26.6.2.2	INS:M		85–115 Ω
LNK6	NEXT loss between 2 and 12.5 MHz	23.6.2.3.1	INS:M		Greater than $24.5 - 15\log\left(\frac{f}{12.5}\right)$dB
LNK7	MDNEXT loss between 2 and 12.5 MHz	23.6.2.3.2	INS:M		Greater than $21.4 - 15\log\left(\frac{f}{12.5}\right)$dB
LNK8	ELFEXT loss between 2 and 12.5 MHz	23.6.2.3.3	INS:M		Greater than $23.1 - 15\log\left(\frac{f}{12.5}\right)$dB
LNK9	MDELFEXT loss between 2 and 12.5 MHz	23.6.2.3.4	INS:M		Greater than $20.9 - 15\log\left(\frac{f}{12.5}\right)$dB
LNK10	Propagation delay	23.6.2.4.1	INS:M		Less than 570 ns
LNK11	Propagation delay per meter	23.6.2.4.2	INS:M		Less than 5.7 ns/m
LNK12	Skew	23.6.2.4.3	INS:M		Less than 50 ns
LNK13	Variation in skew once installed	23.6.243.3	INS:M		Less than ± 10 ns, within constraint of LNK8
LNK14	Noise level	23.6.3	INS:M		Such that objective error rate is met
LNK15	MDNEXT noise	23.6.3.1	INS:M		Less than 325 mVp
LNK16	MDFEXT noise	23.6.3.2	INS:M		Less than 87 mVp
LNK17	Maximum length of Category 5, 25-pair jumper cables	23.6.3.2	INS:M		10 m

23.12.4.15 MDI requirements

Item	Feature	Subclause	Status	Support	Value/Comment
MDI1	MDI connector	23.7.1	M		IEC 603-7: 1990
MDI2	Connector used on PHY	23.7.1	M		Jack (as opposed to plug)
MDI3	Crossover in every twisted-pair link	23.7.2	INS:M		
MDI4	MDI connector that implements the crossover function	23.7.2	XVR:M		Marked with “X”

23.12.4.16 General safety and environmental requirements

Item	Feature	Subclause	Status	Support	Value/Comment
SAF1	Conformance to safety specifications	23.9.1	M		IEC 950: 1991
SAF2	Installation practice	23.9.2.1	INS:M		Sound practice, as defined by applicable local codes
SAF3	Any safety grounding path for an externally connected PHY shall be provided through the circuit ground of the MII connection	23.9.2.2	M		
SAF4	Care taken during installation to ensure that noninsulated network cable conductors do not make electrical contact with unintended conductors or ground	23.9.2.3	INS:M		
SAF5	Application of voltages specified in 23.9.2.4 does not result in any safety hazard	23.9.2.4	M		
SAF6	Conformance with local and national codes for the limitation of electromagnetic interference	23.9.3.1	INS:M		

23.12.4.17 Timing requirements

Item	Feature	Subclause	Status	Support	Value/Comment
TIM1	PMA_OUT	23.11.3	PMA:M		1 to 9.5 BT
TIM2	TEN_PMA + PMA_OUT	23.11.3	PCS:M		7 to 17.5 BT
TIM3	TEN_CRS	23.11.3	PCS:M		0 to +4 BT
TIM4	NOT_TEN_CRS	23.11.3	PCS:M		28 to 36 BT

Item	Feature	Subclause	Status	Support	Value/Comment
TIM5	RX_PMA_CARRIER	23.11.3	PMA:M		Less than 15.5 BT
TIM6	RX_CRS	23.11.3	PCS:M		Less than 27.5 BT
TIM7	RX_NOT_CRS	23.11.3	PCS:M		0 to 51.5 BT
TIM8	FAIRNESS	23.11.3	PCS:M		0 to 28 BT
TIM9	RX_PMA_DATA	23.11.3	PMA:M		67 to 90.5 BT
TIM10	EOP_CARRIER_STATUS	23.11.3	M		51 to 74.5 BT
TIM11	EOC_CARRIER_STATUS	23.11.3	M		3 to 50.5 BT
TIM12	RX_RXDV	23.11.3	PCS:M		81 to 114.5 BT
TIM13	RX_PMA_ERROR	23.11.3	M		Allowed limits equal the actual RX_PMA_DATA time for the device under test plus from 0 to 20 BT
TIM14	RX_COL	23.11.3	PCS:M		Less than 27.5 BT
TIM15	RX_NOT_COL	23.11.3	PCS:M		Less than 51.5 BT
TIM16	TX_NOT_COL	23.11.3	PCS:M		Less than 36 BT
TIM17	TX_SKEW	23.11.3	M		Less than 0.5 BT
TIM18	CRS_PMA_DATA	23.11.3	PMA:M		Less than 78.5 BT
TIM19	COL_to_BI_D3/4_OFF	23.11.3	PMA:M		Less than 40 BT

24. Physical Coding Sublayer (PCS) and Physical Medium Attachment (PMA) sublayer, type 100BASE-X

24.1 Overview

24.1.1 Scope

This clause specifies the Physical Coding Sublayer (PCS) and the Physical Medium Attachment (PMA) sublayer that are common to a family of 100 Mb/s Physical Layer implementations, collectively known as 100BASE-X. There are currently two embodiments within this family: 100BASE-TX and 100BASE-FX. 100BASE-TX specifies operation over two copper media: two pairs of shielded twisted-pair cable (STP) and two pairs of unshielded twisted-pair cable (Category 5 UTP).[21] 100BASE-FX specifies operation over two optical fibers. The term 100BASE-X is used when referring to issues common to both 100BASE-TX and 100BASE-FX.

100BASE-X leverages the Physical Layer standards of ISO 9314 and ANSI X3T12 (FDDI) through the use of their Physical Medium Dependent (PMD) sublayers, including their Medium Dependent Interfaces (MDI). For example, ANSI X3.263: 199X (TP-PMD) defines a 125 Mb/s, full-duplex signaling system for twisted-pair wiring that forms the basis for 100BASE-TX as defined in clause 25. Similarly, ISO 9314-3: 1990 defines a system for transmission on optical fiber that forms the basis for 100BASE-FX as defined in clause 26.

100BASE-X maps the interface characteristics of the FDDI PMD sublayer (including MDI) to the services expected by the CSMA/CD MAC. 100BASE-X can be extended to support any other full duplex medium requiring only that the medium be PMD compliant.

24.1.2 Objectives

The following are the objectives of 100BASE-X:

a) Support the CSMA/CD MAC.
b) Support the 100BASE-T MII, repeater, and optional Auto-Negotiation.
c) Provide 100 Mb/s data rate at the MII.
d) Support cable plants using Category 5 UTP, 150 Ω STP or optical fiber, compliant with ISO/IEC 11801: 1995.
e) Allow for a nominal network extent of 200–400 m, including:
    1) unshielded twisted-pair links of 100 m;
    2) two repeater networks of approximately 200 m span;
    3) one repeater networks of approximately 300 m span (using fiber); and
    4) DTE/DTE links of approximately 400 m (using fiber).
f) Preserve full-duplex behavior of underlying PMD channels.

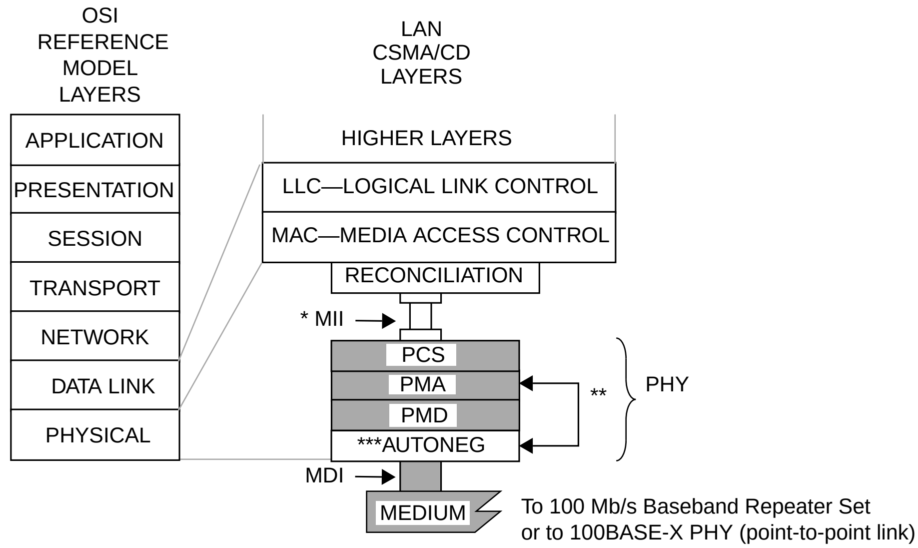
24.1.3 Relationship of 100BASE-X to other standards

Figure 24-1 depicts the relationships among the 100BASE-X sublayers (shown shaded), other 100BASE-T sublayers, the CSMA/CD MAC, and the IEEE 802.2 LLC.

24.1.4 Summary of 100BASE-X sublayers

The following provides an overview of the 100BASE-X sublayers that are embodied in the 100BASE-X Physical sublayer (PHY).[22]

[21] ISO/IEC 11801: 1995 makes no distinction between shielded or unshielded twisted-pair cables, referring to both as balanced cables.
[22] The 100BASE-X PHY should not be confused with the FDDI PHY, which is a sublayer functionally aligned to the 100BASE-T PCS.



MDI = MEDIUM DEPENDENT INTERFACE
MII = MEDIA INDEPENDENT INTERFACE
PCS = PHYSICAL CODING SUBLAYER
PMA = PHYSICAL MEDIUM ATTACHMENT
PHY = PHYSICAL LAYER DEVICE
PMD = PHYSICAL MEDIUM DEPENDENT

* MII is optional.
** AUTONEG communicates with the PMA sublayer through the PMA service interface messages PMA_LINK.request and PMA_LINK.indicate.
*** AUTONEG is optional.

Figure 24-1—Type 100BASE-X PHY relationship to the ISO Open Systems Interconnection (OSI) reference model and the IEEE 802.3 CSMA/CD LAN model

24.1.4.1 Physical Coding Sublayer (PCS)

The PCS interface is the Media Independent Interface (MII) that provides a uniform interface to the Reconciliation sublayer for all 100BASE-T PHY implementations (e.g., 100BASE-X and 100BASE-T4). 100BASE-X, as other 100BASE-T PHYs, is modeled as providing services to the MII. This is similar to the use of an AUI interface.

The 100BASE-X PCS realizes all services required by the MII, including:

a) Encoding (decoding) of MII data nibbles to (from) five-bit code-groups (4B/5B);
b) Generating Carrier Sense and Collision Detect indications;
c) Serialization (deserialization) of code-groups for transmission (reception) on the underlying serial PMA, and
d) Mapping of Transmit, Receive, Carrier Sense and Collision Detection between the MII and the underlying PMA.

24.1.4.2 Physical Medium Attachment (PMA) sublayer

The PMA provides a medium-independent means for the PCS and other bit-oriented clients (e.g., repeaters) to support the use of a range of physical media. The 100BASE-X PMA performs the following functions:

a) Mapping of transmit and receive code-bits between the PMA's client and the underlying PMD;
b) Generating a control signal indicating the availability of the PMD to a PCS or other client, also synchronizing with Auto-Negotiation when implemented;
c) Optionally, generating indications of activity (carrier) and carrier errors from the underlying PMD;
d) Optionally, sensing receive channel failures and transmitting the Far-End Fault Indication; and detecting the Far-End Fault Indication; and
e) Recovery of clock from the NRZI data supplied by the PMD.

24.1.4.3 Physical Medium Dependent (PMD) sublayer

100BASE-X uses the FDDI signaling standards ISO 9314-3: 1990 and ANSI X3.263: 199X (TP-PMD). These signaling standards, called PMD sublayers, define 125 Mb/s, full-duplex signaling systems that accommodate multi-mode optical fiber, STP and UTP wiring. 100BASE-X uses the PMDs specified in these standards with the PMD Service Interface specified in 24.4.1.

The MDI, logically subsumed within the PMD, provides the actual medium attachment, including connectors, for the various supported media.

100BASE-X does not specify the PMD and MDI other than including the appropriate standard by reference along with the minor adaptations necessary for 100BASE-X. Figure 24-2 depicts the relationship between 100BASE-X and the PMDs of ISO 9314-3: 1990 (for 100BASE-FX) and ANSI X3.263: 199X (for 100BASE-TX). The PMDs (and MDIs) for 100BASE-TX and 100BASE-FX are specified in subsequent clauses of this standard.

24.1.5 Inter-sublayer interfaces

There are a number of interfaces employed by 100BASE-X. Some (such as the PMA and PMD interfaces) use an abstract service model to define the operation of the interface. The PCS Interface is defined as a set of physical signals, in a medium-independent manner (MII). Figure 24-3 depicts the relationship and mapping of the services provided by all of the interfaces relevant to 100BASE-X.

It is important to note that, while this specification defines interfaces in terms of bits, nibbles, and code-groups, implementations may choose other data path widths for implementation convenience. The only exceptions are: a) the MII, which, when implemented, uses a nibble-wide data path as specified in clause 22, and b) the MDI, which uses a serial, physical interface.

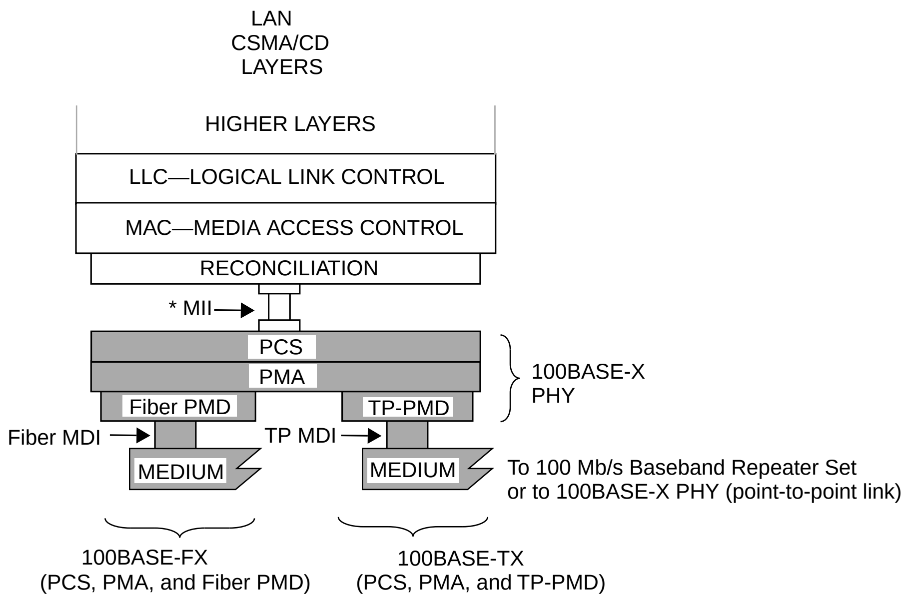
24.1.6 Functional block diagram

Figure 24-4 provides a functional block diagram of the 100BASE-X PHY.

24.1.7 State diagram conventions

The body of this standard is comprised of state diagrams, including the associated definitions of variables, constants, and functions. Should there be a discrepancy between a state diagram and descriptive text, the state diagram prevails.

The notation used in the state diagrams follows the conventions of 21.5; state diagram timers follow the conventions of 14.2.3.2.



MDI = MEDIUM DEPENDENT INTERFACE
MII = MEDIA INDEPENDENT INTERFACE
PCS = PHYSICAL CODING SUBLAYER
PMA = PHYSICAL MEDIUM ATTACHMENT
PHY = PHYSICAL LAYER DEVICE
Fiber PMD = PHYSICAL MEDIUM DEPENDENT SUBLAYER FOR FIBER
TP-PMD = PHYSICAL MEDIUM DEPENDENT SUBLAYER FOR TWISTED PAIRS

NOTE—The PMD sublayers are mutually independent.
* MII is optional.

Figure 24-2—Relationship of 100BASE-X and the PMDs

24.2 Physical Coding Sublayer (PCS)

24.2.1 Service Interface (MII)

The PCS Service Interface allows the 100BASE-X PCS to transfer information to and from the MAC (via the Reconciliation sublayer) or other PCS client, such as a repeater. The PCS Service Interface is precisely defined as the Media Independent Interface (MII) in clause 22.

In this clause, the setting of MII variables to TRUE or FALSE is equivalent, respectively, to “asserting” or “de-asserting” them as specified in clause 22.

24.2.2 Functional requirements

The PCS comprises the Transmit, Receive, and Carrier Sense functions for 100BASE-T. In addition, the collisionDetect signal required by the MAC (COL on the MII) is derived from the PMA code-bit stream. The PCS shields the Reconciliation sublayer (and MAC) from the specific nature of the underlying channel. Specifically for receiving, the 100BASE-X PCS passes to the MII a sequence of data nibbles derived from incoming code-groups, each comprised of five code-bits, received from the medium. Code-group alignment and MAC packet delimiting is performed by embedding special non-data code-groups. The MII uses a nibble-wide, synchronous data path, with packet delimiting being provided by separate TX_EN and RX_DV

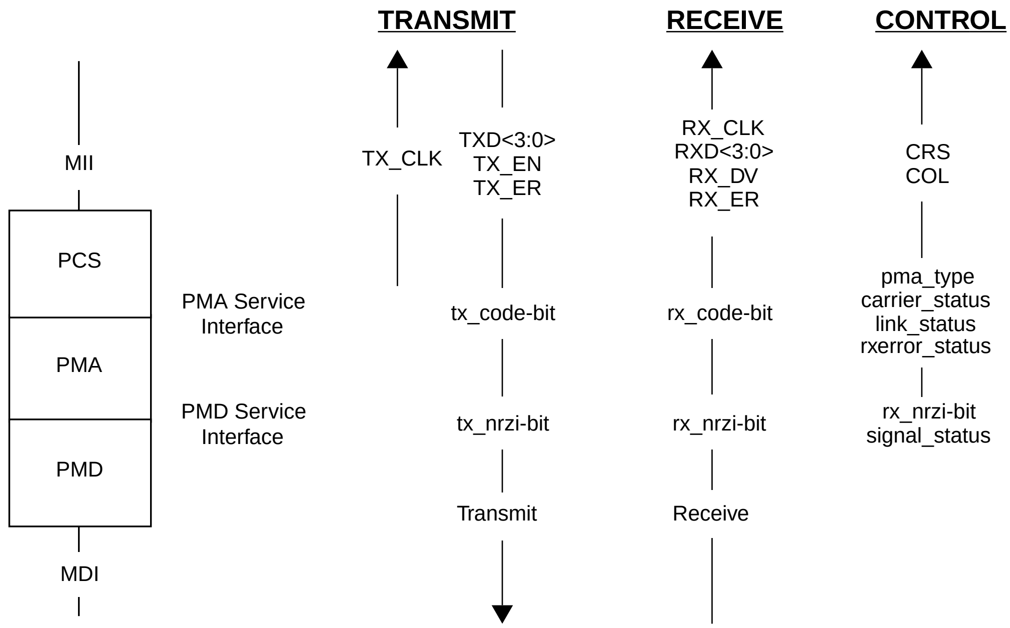


Figure 24-3—Interface mapping

signals. The PCS provides the functions necessary to map these two views of the exchanged data. The process is reversed for transmit.

The following provides a detailed specification of the functions performed by the PCS, which comprise five parallel processes (Transmit, Transmit Bits, Receive, Receive Bits, and Carrier Sense). Figure 24-4 includes a functional block diagram of the PCS.

The Receive Bits process accepts continuous code-bits via the PMA_UNITDATA.indicate primitive. Receive monitors these bits and generates RXD <3:0>, RX_DV and RX_ER on the MII, and the internal flag, receiving, used by the Carrier Sense and Transmit processes.

The Transmit process generates continuous code-groups based upon the TXD <3:0>, TX_EN, and TX_ER signals on the MII. These code-groups are transmitted by Transmit Bits via the PMA_UNITDATA.request primitive. The Transmit process generates the MII signal COL based on whether a reception is occurring simultaneously with transmission. Additionally, it generates the internal flag, transmitting, for use by the Carrier Sense process.

The Carrier Sense process asserts the MII signal CRS when either transmitting or receiving is TRUE. Both the Transmit and Receive processes monitor link_status via the PMA_LINK.indicate primitive, to account for potential link failure conditions.

24.2.2.1 Code-groups

The PCS maps four-bit nibbles from the MII into five-bit code-groups, and vice versa, using a 4B/5B block coding scheme. A code-group is a consecutive sequence of five code-bits interpreted and mapped by the PCS. Implicit in the definition of a code-group is an establishment of code-group boundaries by an alignment function within the PCS Receive process. It is important to note that, with the sole exception of the SSD, which is used to achieve alignment, code-groups are undetectable and have no meaning outside the 100BASE-X physical protocol data unit, called a “stream.”

The coding method used, derived from ISO 9314-1: 1989, provides

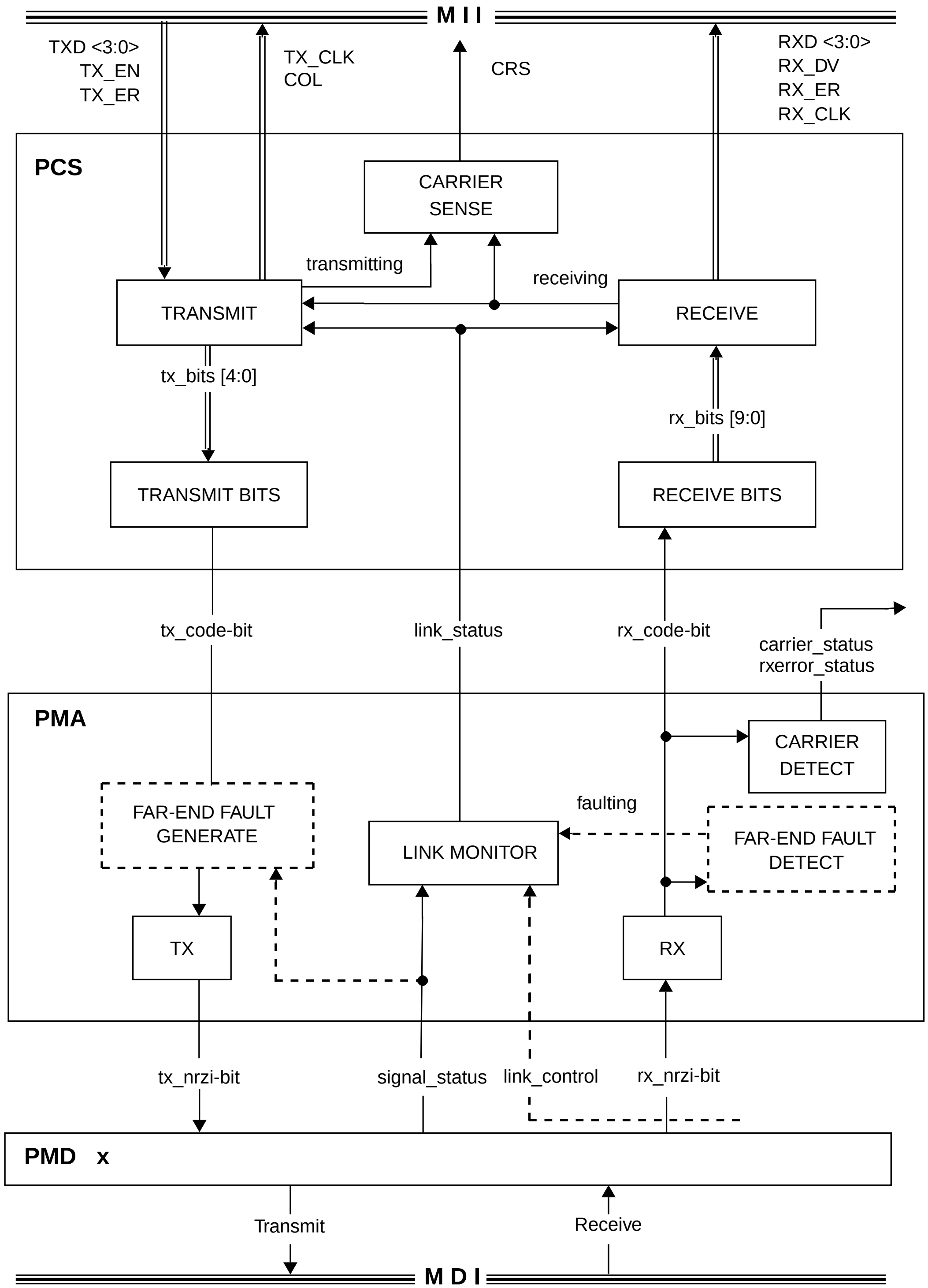


Figure 24-4—Functional block diagram

a) Adequate codes (32) to provide for all Data code-groups (16) plus necessary control code-groups;
b) Appropriate coding efficiency (4 data bits per 5 code-bits; 80%) to effect a 100 Mb/s Physical Layer interface on a 125 Mb/s physical channel as provided by FDDI PMDs; and
c) Sufficient transition density to facilitate clock recovery (when not scrambled).

Table 24-1 specifies the interpretation assigned to each five bit code-group, including the mapping to the nibble-wide (TXD or RXD) Data signals on the MII. The 32 code-groups are divided into four categories, as shown.

For clarity in the remainder of this clause, code-group names are shown between /slashes/. Code-group sequences are shown in succession, e.g.: /1/2/....

The indicated code-group mapping is identical to ISO 9314-1: 1989, with four exceptions:

a) The FDDI term *symbol* is avoided in order to prevent confusion with other 100BASE-T terminology. In general, the term *code-group* is used in its place.
b) The /S/ and /Q/ code-groups are not used by 100BASE-X and are interpreted as INVALID.
c) The /R/ code-group is used in 100BASE-X as the second code-group of the End-of-Stream delimiter rather than to indicate a Reset condition.
d) The /H/ code-group is used to propagate receive errors rather than to indicate the Halt Line State.

24.2.2.1.1 Data code-groups

A Data code-group conveys one nibble of arbitrary data between the MII and the PCS. The sequence of Data code-groups is arbitrary, where any Data code-group can be followed by any other Data code-group. Data code-groups are coded and decoded but not interpreted by the PCS. Successful decoding of Data code-groups depends on proper receipt of the Start-of-Stream delimiter sequence, as defined in table 24-1.

24.2.2.1.2 Idle code-groups

The Idle code-group (/I/) is transferred between streams. It provides a continuous fill pattern to establish and maintain clock synchronization. Idle code-groups are emitted from, and interpreted by, the PCS.

24.2.2.1.3 Control code-groups

The Control code-groups are used in pairs (/J/K/, /T/R/) to delimit MAC packets. Control code-groups are emitted from, and interpreted by, the PCS.

24.2.2.1.4 Start-of-Stream Delimiter (/J/K/)

A Start-of-Stream Delimiter (SSD) is used to delineate the boundary of a data transmission sequence and to authenticate carrier events. The SSD is unique in that it may be recognized independently of previously established code-group boundaries. The Receive function within the PCS uses the SSD to establish code-group boundaries. A SSD consists of the sequence /J/K/.

On transmission, the first 8 bits of the MAC preamble are replaced by the SSD, a replacement that is reversed on reception.

24.2.2.1.5 End-of-Stream delimiter (/T/R/)

An End-of-Stream delimiter (ESD) terminates all normal data transmissions. Unlike the SSD, an ESD cannot be recognized independent of previously established code-group boundaries. An ESD consists of the sequence /T/R/.

Table 24-1—4B/5B code-groups

	PCS code-group [4:0] 4 3 2 1 0	Name	MII (TXD/ RXD) <3:0> 3 2 1 0	Interpretation
DATA	1 1 1 1 0	0	0 0 0 0	Data 0
	0 1 0 0 1	1	0 0 0 1	Data 1
	1 0 1 0 0	2	0 0 1 0	Data 2
	1 0 1 0 1	3	0 0 1 1	Data 3
	0 1 0 1 0	4	0 1 0 0	Data 4
	0 1 0 1 1	5	0 1 0 1	Data 5
	0 1 1 1 0	6	0 1 1 0	Data 6
	0 1 1 1 1	7	0 1 1 1	Data 7
	1 0 0 1 0	8	1 0 0 0	Data 8
	1 0 0 1 1	9	1 0 0 1	Data 9
	1 0 1 1 0	A	1 0 1 0	Data A
	1 0 1 1 1	B	1 0 1 1	Data B
	1 1 0 1 0	C	1 1 0 0	Data C
	1 1 0 1 1	D	1 1 0 1	Data D
	1 1 1 0 0	E	1 1 1 0	Data E
	1 1 1 0 1	F	1 1 1 1	Data F
	1 1 1 1 1	I	undefined	IDLE; used as inter-stream fill code
CONTROL	1 1 0 0 0	J	0 1 0 1	Start-of-Stream Delimiter, Part 1 of 2; always used in pairs with K
	1 0 0 0 1	K	0 1 0 1	Start-of-Stream Delimiter, Part 2 of 2; always used in pairs with J
	0 1 1 0 1	T	undefined	End-of-Stream Delimiter, Part 1 of 2; always used in pairs with R
	0 0 1 1 1	R	undefined	End-of-Stream Delimiter, Part 2 of 2; always used in pairs with T
INVALID	0 0 1 0 0	H	Undefined	Transmit Error; used to force signaling errors
	0 0 0 0 0	V	Undefined	Invalid code
	0 0 0 0 1	V	Undefined	Invalid code
	0 0 0 1 0	V	Undefined	Invalid code
	0 0 0 1 1	V	Undefined	Invalid code
	0 0 1 0 1	V	Undefined	Invalid code
	0 0 1 1 0	V	Undefined	Invalid code
	0 1 0 0 0	V	Undefined	Invalid code
	0 1 1 0 0	V	Undefined	Invalid code
	1 0 0 0 0	V	Undefined	Invalid code
	1 1 0 0 1	V	Undefined	Invalid code

24.2.2.1.6 Invalid code-groups

The /H/ code-group indicates that the PCS's client wishes to indicate a Transmit Error to its peer entity. The normal use of this indicator is for repeaters to propagate received errors. Transmit Error code-groups are emitted from the PCS, at the request of the PCS's client through the use of the TX_ER signal, as described in 24.2.4.2.

The presence of any invalid code-group on the medium, including /H/, denotes a collision artifact or an error condition. Invalid code-groups are not intentionally transmitted onto the medium by DTE's. The PCS indicates the reception of an Invalid code-group on the MII through the use of the RX_ER signal, as described in 24.2.4.4.

24.2.2.2 Encapsulation

The 100BASE-X PCS accepts frames from the MAC through the Reconciliation sublayer and MII. Due to the continuously signaled nature of the underlying PMA, and the encoding performed by the PCS, the 100BASE-X PCS encapsulates the MAC frame (100BASE-X Service Data Unit, SDU) into a Physical Layer stream (100BASE-X Protocol Data Unit, PDU).

Except for the two code-group SSD, data nibbles within the SDU (including the non-SSD portions of the MAC preamble and SFD) are not interpreted by the 100BASE-X PHY. The conversion from a MAC frame to a Physical Layer stream and back to a MAC frame is transparent to the MAC.

Figure 24-5 depicts the mapping between MAC frames and Physical Layer streams.

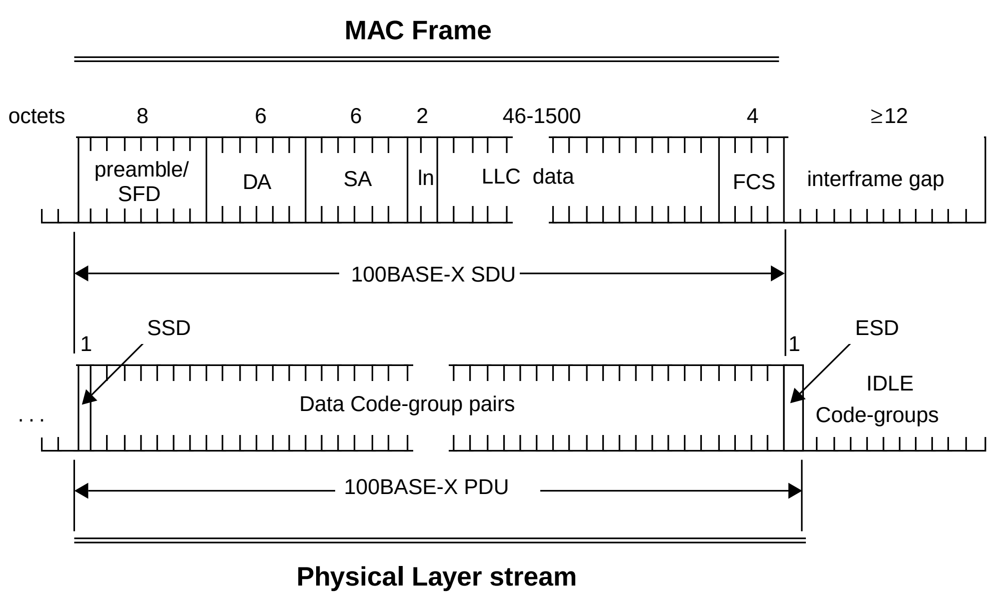


Figure 24-5—PCS encapsulation

A properly formed stream can be viewed as comprising three elements:

a) *Start-of-Stream Delimiter.* The start of a Physical Layer stream is indicated by a SSD, as defined in 24.2.2.1. The SSD replaces the first octet of the preamble from the MAC frame and vice versa.
b) *Data Code-groups.* Between delimiters (SSD and ESD), the PCS conveys Data code-groups corresponding to the data nibbles of the MII. These Data code-groups comprise the 100BASE-X Service Data Unit (SDU). Data nibbles within the SDU (including those corresponding to the MAC preamble and SFD) are not interpreted by the 100BASE-X PCS.
c) *End-of-Stream Delimiter.* The end of a properly formed stream is indicated by an ESD, as defined in 24.2.2.1. The ESD is transmitted by the PCS following the de-assertion of TX_EN on the MII, which corresponds to the last data nibble composing the FCS from the MAC. It is transmitted during the period considered by the MAC to be the interframe gap (IFG). On reception, ESD is interpreted by the PCS as terminating the SDU.

Between streams, IDLE code-groups are conveyed between the PCS and PMA.

24.2.2.3 Data delay

The PCS maps a non-aligned code-bit data path from the PMA to an aligned, nibble-wide data path on the MII, both for Transmit and Receive. Logically, received bits must be buffered to facilitate SSD detection and alignment, coding translation, and ESD detection. These functions necessitate an internal PCS delay of at least two code-groups. In practice, alignment may necessitate even longer delays of the incoming code-bit stream.

When the MII is present as an exposed interface, the MII signals TX_CLK and RX_CLK, not depicted in the following state diagrams, shall be generated by the PCS in accordance with clause 22.

24.2.2.4 Mapping between MII and PMA

Figure 24-6 depicts the mapping of the nibble-wide data path of the MII to the five-bit-wide code-groups (internal to the PCS) and the code-bit path of the PMA interface.

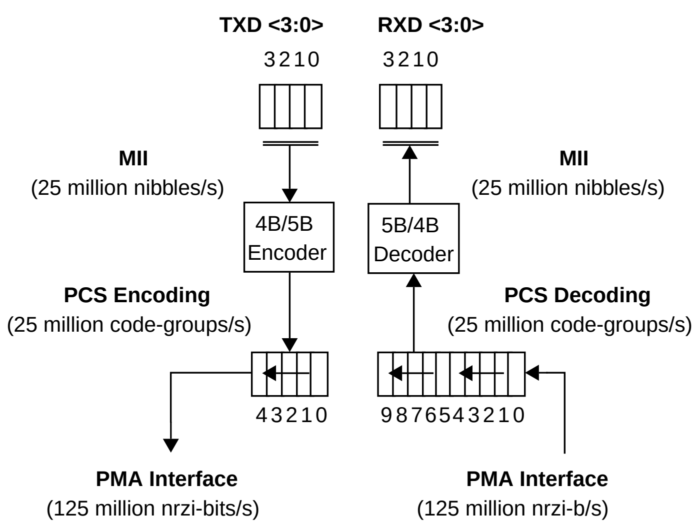


Figure 24-6—PCS reference diagram

Upon receipt of a nibble from the MII, the PCS encodes it into a five-bit code-group, according to 24.2.2.1. Code-groups are serialized into code-bits and passed to the PMA for transmission on the underlying medium, according to figure 24-6. The first transmitted code-bit of a code-group is bit 4, and the last code-bit transmitted is bit 0. There is no numerical significance ascribed to the bits within a code-group; that is, the code-group is simply a five-bit pattern that has some predefined interpretation.

Similarly, the PCS deserializes code-bits received from the PMA, according to figure 24-6. After alignment is achieved, based on SSD detection, the PCS converts code-groups into MII data nibbles, according to 24.2.2.1.

24.2.3 State variables

24.2.3.1 Constants

DATA
: The set of 16 code-groups corresponding to valid DATA, as specified in 24.2.2.1. (In the Receive state diagram, the set operators $\in$ and $\notin$ are used to represent set membership and non-membership, respectively.)

ESD
: The code-group pair corresponding to the End-of-Stream delimiter, as specified in 24.2.2.1.

ESD1
: The code-group pair corresponding to the End-of-Stream delimiter, Part 1 (/T/), as specified in 24.2.2.1.

ESD2
: The code-group pair corresponding to the End-of-Stream delimiter, Part 2 (/R/), as specified in 24.2.2.1.

HALT
: The Transmit Error code-group (/H/), as specified in 24.2.2.1.

IDLE
: The IDLE code-group, as specified in 24.2.2.1.

IDLES
: A code-group pair comprised of /I/I/; /I/ as specified in 24.2.2.1.

SSD
: The code-group pair corresponding to the Start-of-Stream delimiter, as specified in 24.2.2.1.

SSD1
: The code-group corresponding to the Start-of-Stream delimiter, Part 1 (/J/), as specified in 24.2.2.1.

SSD2
: The code-group corresponding to the Start-of-Stream delimiter, Part 2 (/K/), as specified in 24.2.2.1.

24.2.3.2 Variables

In the following, values for the MII parameters are definitively specified in clause 22.

COL
: The COL signal of the MII as specified in clause 22.

CRS
: The CRS signal of the MII as specified in clause 22.

link_status
The link_status parameter as communicated by the PMA_LINK.indicate primitive.

Values: FAIL; the receive channel is not intact
READY; the receive channel is intact and ready to be enabled by Auto-Negotiation
OK; the receive channel is intact and enabled for reception

receiving
A boolean set by the Receive process to indicate non-IDLE activity (after squelch). Used by the Carrier Sense process, and also interpreted by the Transmit process for indicating a collision.

Values: TRUE; unsquelched carrier being received
FALSE; carrier not being received

rx_bits [9:0]
A vector of the 10 most recently received code-bits from the PMA as assembled by Receive Bits and processed by Receive. rx_bits [0] is the most recently received (newest) code-bit; rx_bits [9] is the least recently received code-bit (oldest). When alignment has been achieved, it contains the last two code-groups.

rx_code-bit
The rx_code-bit parameter as communicated by the most recent PMA_UNITDATA.indicate primitive (that is, the value of the most recently received code-bit from the PMA).

RX_DV
The RX_DV signal of the MII as specified in clause 22. Set by the Receive process, RX_DV is also interpreted by the Receive Bits process as an indication that rx_bits is code-group aligned.

RX_ER
The RX_ER signal of the MII as specified in clause 22.

RXD <3:0>
The RXD <3:0> signal of the MII as specified in clause 22.

transmitting
A boolean set by the Transmit Process to indicate a transmission in progress. Used by the Carrier Sense process.

Values: TRUE; the PCS's client is transmitting
FALSE; the PCS's client is not transmitting

tx_bits [4:0]
A vector of code-bits representing a code-group prepared for transmission by the Transmit Process and transmitted to the PMA by the Transmit Bits process.

TX_EN
The TX_EN signal of the MII as specified in clause 22.

TX_ER
The TX_ER signal of the MII as specified in clause 22.

TXD <3:0>
The TXD <3:0> signal of the MII as specified in clause 22.

24.2.3.3 Functions

nibble DECODE (code-group)
In Receive, this function takes as its argument a five-bit code-group and returns the corresponding MII RXD <3:0> nibble, per table 24-1.

code-group ENCODE (nibble)
In the Transmit process, this function takes as its argument an MII TXD <3:0> nibble, and returns the corresponding five-bit code-group per table 24-1.

SHIFTLEFT (rx_bits)
In Receive Bits, this function shifts rx_bits left one bit placing rx_bits [8] in rx_bits [9], rx_bits [7] in rx_bits [8] and so on until rx_bits [1] gets rx_bits [0].

24.2.3.4 Timers

code-bit_timer

In the Transmit Bits process, the timer governing the output of code-bits from the PCS to the PMA and thereby to the medium with a nominal 8 ns period. This timer shall be derived from a fixed frequency oscillator with a base frequency of 125 MHz ± 0.005% and phase jitter above 20 kHz less than ± 8°.

24.2.3.5 Messages

gotCodeGroup.indicate

A signal sent to the Receive process by the Receive Bits process after alignment has been achieved signifying completion of reception of the next code-group in rx_bits(4:0), with the preceding code-group moved to rx_bits [9:5]. rx_bits [9:5] may be considered as the “current” code-group.

PMA_UNITDATA.indicate (rx_code-bit)

A signal sent by the PMA signifying that the next code-bit from the medium is available in rx_code-bit.

sentCodeGroup.indicate

A signal sent to the Transmit process from the Transmit Bits process signifying the completion of transmission of the code-group in tx_bits [4:0].

24.2.4 State diagrams

24.2.4.1 Transmit Bits

Transmit Bits is responsible for taking code-groups prepared by the Transmit process and transmitting them to the PMA using PMA_UNITDATA.request, the frequency of which determines the transmit clock. Transmit deposits these code-groups in tx_bits with Transmit Bits signaling completion of a code-group transmission with sentCodeGroup.indicate.

The PCS shall implement the Transmit Bits process as depicted in figure 24-7 including compliance with the associated state variables as specified in 24.2.3.

24.2.4.2 Transmit

The Transmit process sends code-groups to the PMA via tx_bits and the Transmit Bits process. When initially invoked, and between streams (delimited by TX_EN on the MII), the Transmit process sources continuous Idle code-groups (/I/) to the PMA. Upon the assertion of TX_EN by the MII, the Transmit process passes an SSD (/J/K/) to the PMA, ignoring the TXD <3:0> nibbles during these two code-group times. Following the SSD, each TXD <3:0> nibble is encoded into a five-bit code-group until TX_EN is deasserted. If, while TX_EN is asserted, the TX_ER signal is asserted, the Transmit process passes Transmit Error code-groups (/H/) to the PMA. Following the de-assertion of TX_EN, an ESD (/T/R/) is generated, after which the transmission of Idle code-groups is resumed by the IDLE state.

Collision detection is implemented by noting the occurrence of carrier receptions during transmissions, following the model of 10BASE-T. The indication of link_status ≠ OK by the PMA at any time causes an immediate transition to the IDLE state and supersedes any other Transmit process operations.

The PCS shall implement the Transmit process as depicted in figure 24-8 including compliance with the associated state variables as specified in 24.2.3.

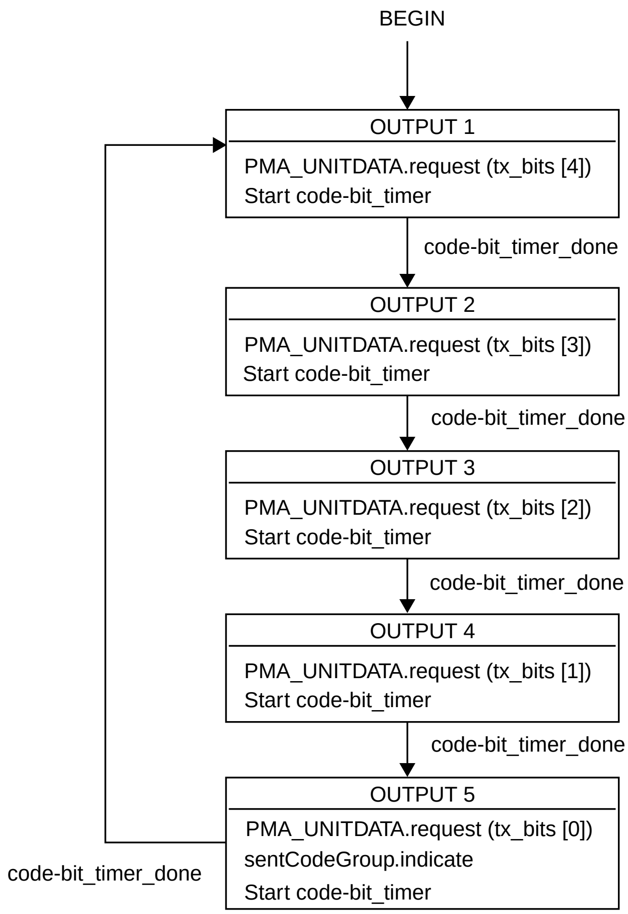


Figure 24-7—Transmit Bits state diagram

24.2.4.3 Receive Bits

The Receive Bits process collects code-bits from the PMA interface passing them to the Receive process via rx_bits. rx_bits [9:0] represents a sliding, 10-bit window on the PMA code-bits, with newly received code-bits from the PMA (rx_code-bit) being shifted into rx_bits [0]. This is depicted in figure 24-9. Bits are collected serially until Receive indicates alignment by asserting RX_DV, after which Receive Bits signals Receive for every five code-bits accumulated. Serial processing resumes with the de-assertion of RX_DV.

The PCS shall implement the Receive Bits process as depicted in figure 24-10 including compliance with the associated state variables as specified in 24.2.3.

24.2.4.4 Receive

The Receive process state machine can be viewed as comprising two sections: prealigned and aligned. In the prealigned states, IDLE, CARRIER DETECT, and CONFIRM K, the Receive process is waiting for an indication of channel activity followed by a SSD. After successful alignment, the incoming code-groups are decoded while waiting for stream termination.

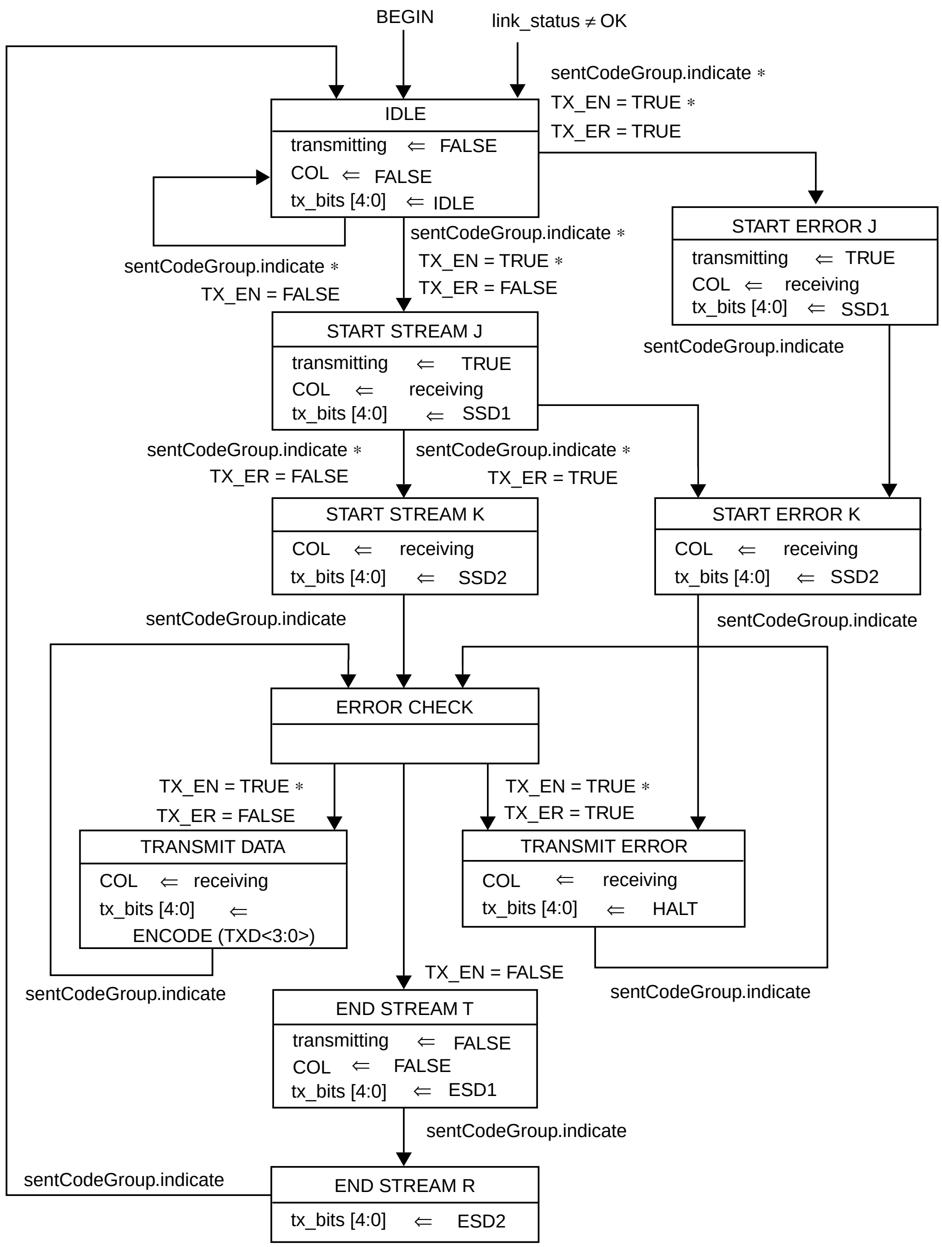


Figure 24-8—Transmit state diagram

24.2.4.4.1 Detecting channel activity

The detection of activity on the underlying channel is used both by the MAC (via the MII CRS signal and the Reconciliation sublayer) for deferral purposes, and by the Transmit process for collision detection. Activity, signaled by the assertion of receiving, is indicated by the receipt of two non-contiguous ZEROS within any 10 code-bits of the incoming code-bit stream.

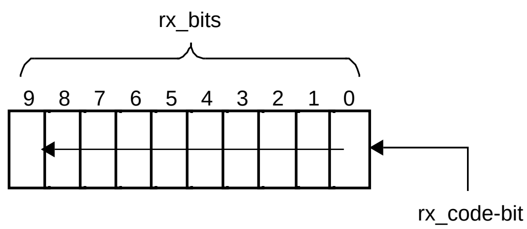


Figure 24-9—Receive Bits reference diagram

24.2.4.4.2 Code-group alignment

After channel activity is detected, the Receive process first aligns the incoming code-bits on code-group boundaries for subsequent data decoding. This is achieved by scanning the rx_bits vector for a SSD (/J/K/). The MII RX_DV signal remains deasserted during this time, which ensures that the Reconciliation sublayer will ignore any signals on RXD <3:0>. Detection of the SSD causes the Receive process to enter the START OF STREAM J state.

Well-formed streams contain SSD (/J/K/) in place of the first eight preamble bits. In the event that something else is sensed immediately following detection of carrier, a False Carrier Indication is signaled to the MII by asserting RX_ER and setting RXD to 1110 while RX_DV remains de-asserted. The associated carrier event, as terminated by 10 ONEs, is otherwise ignored.

24.2.4.4.3 Stream decoding

The Receive process substitutes a sequence of alternating ONE and ZERO data-bits for the SSD, which is consistent with the preamble pattern expected by the MAC.

The Receive process then performs the DECODE function on the incoming code-groups, passing decoded data to the MII, including those corresponding to the remainder of the MAC preamble and SFD. The MII signal RX_ER is asserted upon decoding any code-group following the SSD that is neither a valid Data code-group nor a valid stream termination sequence.

24.2.4.4.4 Stream termination

There are two means of effecting stream termination in the Receive process (figure 24-11).

A normal stream termination is caused by detection of an ESD (/T/R/) in the rx_bits vector. In order to preserve the ability of the MAC to properly delimit the FCS at the end of the frame (that is, to avoid incorrect AlignmentErrors in the MAC) the internal signal receiving (and through it, the MII CRS signal, per clause 22) is de-asserted immediately following the last code-bit in the stream that maps to the FCS. Note that the condition link_status ≠ OK during stream reception (that is, when receiving = TRUE) causes an immediate transition to the LINK FAILED state and supersedes any other Receive process operations.

A premature stream termination is caused by the detection of two Idle code-groups (/I/I) in the rx_bits vector prior to an ESD. Note that RX_DV remains asserted during the nibble corresponding to the first five contiguous ONEs while RX_ER is signaled on the MII. RX_ER is also asserted in the LINK FAILED state, which ensures that RX_ER remains asserted for sufficient time to be detected.

Stream termination causes a transition to the IDLE state.

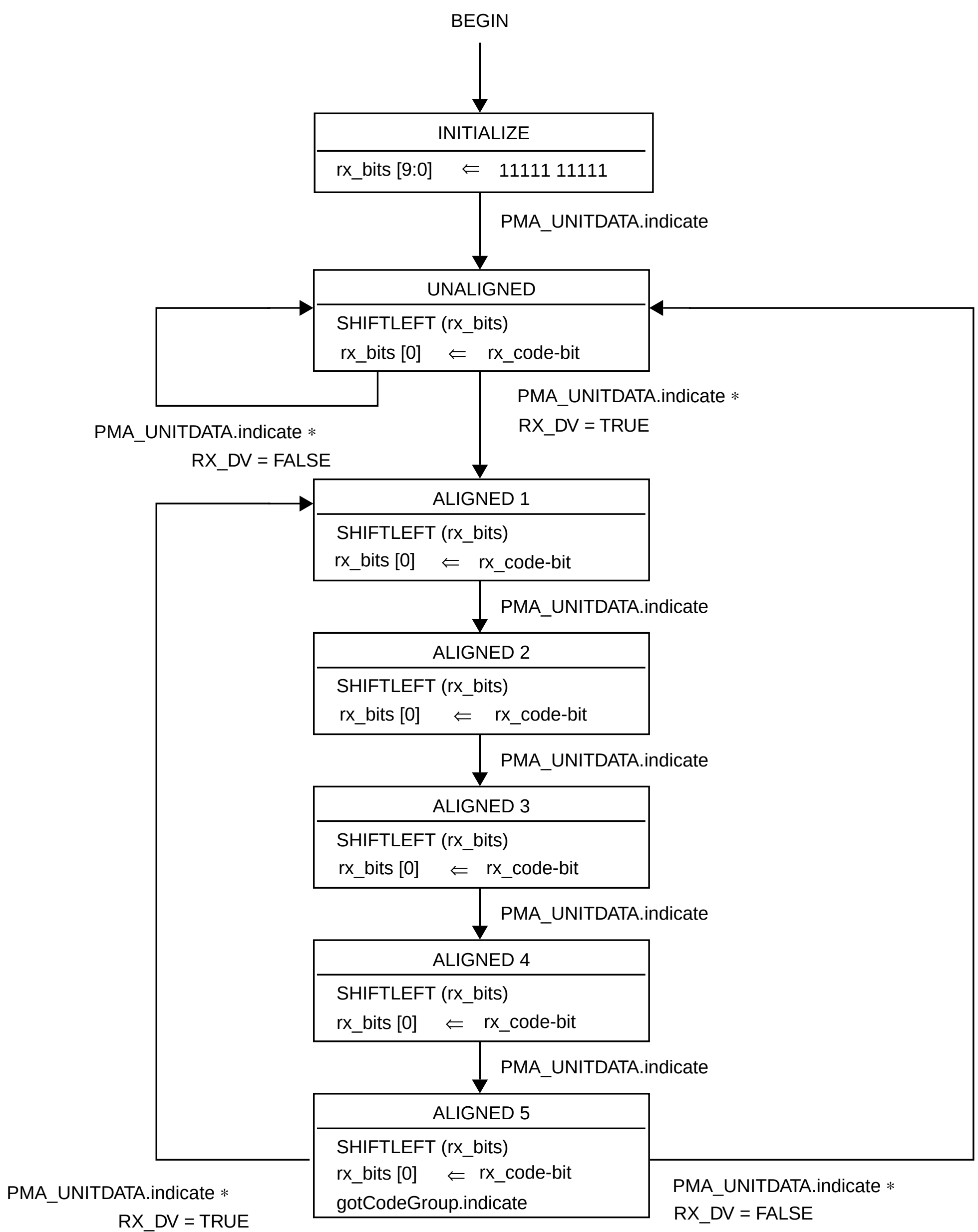


Figure 24-10—Receive Bits state diagram

The PCS shall implement the Receive process as depicted in figure 24-11 including compliance with the associated state variables as specified in 24.2.3.

24.2.4.5 Carrier Sense

The Carrier Sense process generates the signal CRS on the MII, which (via the Reconciliation sublayer) the MAC uses for frame receptions and for deferral. The process operates by performing a logical OR operation on the internal messages receiving and transmitting, generated by the Receive and Transmit processes, respectively.

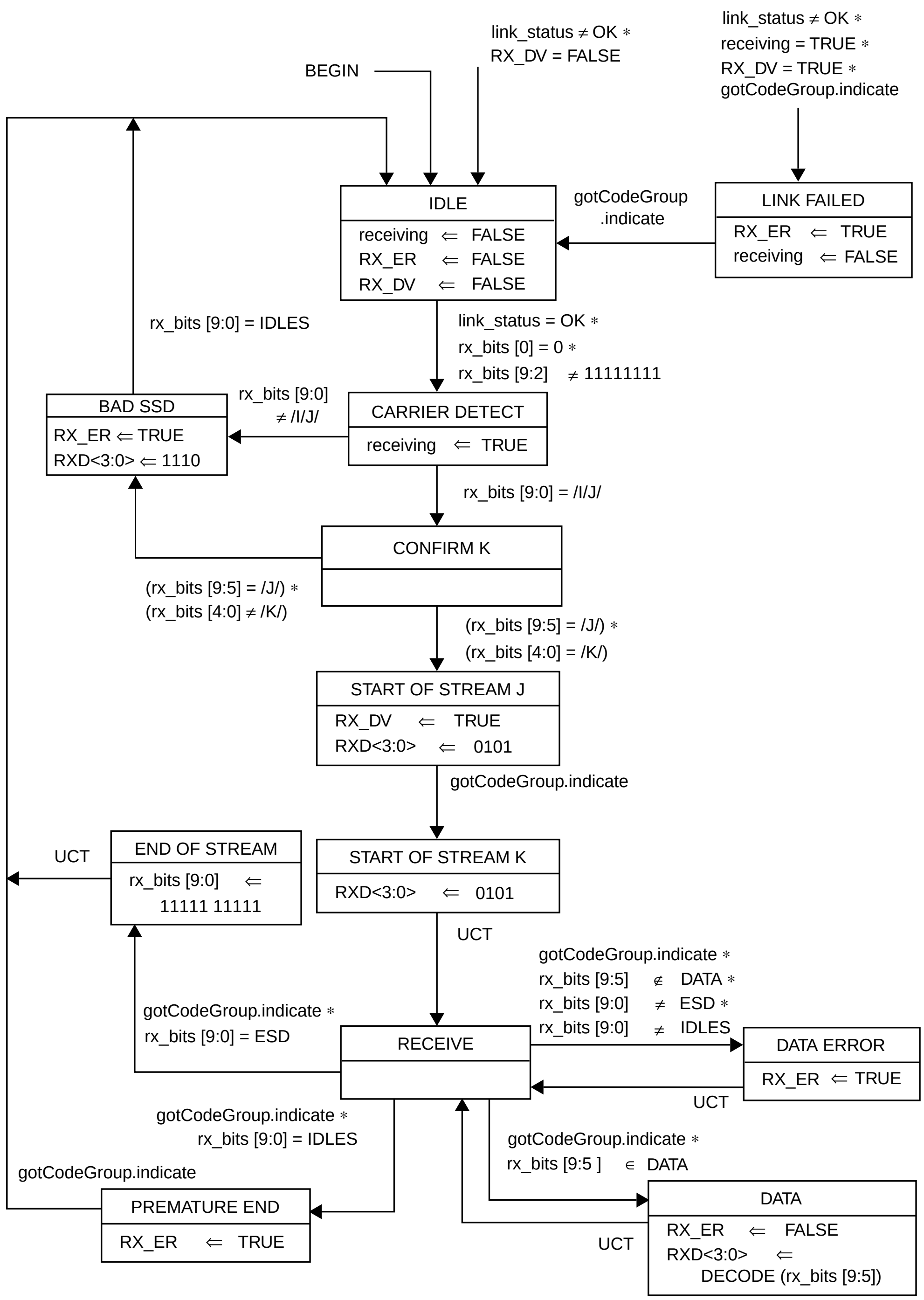


Figure 24-11—Receive state diagram

The PCS shall implement the Carrier Sense process as depicted in figure 24-12 including compliance with the associated state variables as specified in 24.2.3.

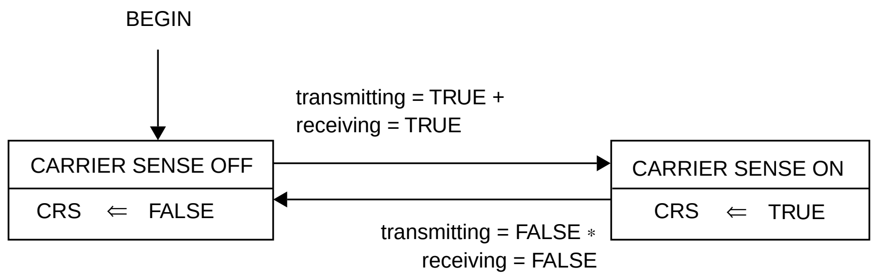


Figure 24-12—Carrier Sense state diagram

24.3 Physical Medium Attachment (PMA) sublayer

24.3.1 Service interface

The following specifies the service interface provided by the PMA to the PCS or another client, such as a repeater. These services are described in an abstract manner and do not imply any particular implementation.

The PMA Service Interface supports the exchange of code-bits between the PCS and/or Repeater entities. The PMA converts code-bits into NRZI format and passes these to the PMD, and vice versa. It also generates additional status indications for use by its client.

The following primitives are defined:

PMA_TYPE.indicate
PMA_UNITDATA.request
PMA_UNITDATA.indicate
PMA_CARRIER.indicate
PMA_LINK.indicate
PMA_LINK.request
PMA_RXERROR.indicate

24.3.1.1 PMA_TYPE.indicate

This primitive is generated by the PMA to indicate the nature of the PMA instantiation. The purpose of this primitive is to allow clients to support connections to the various types of 100BASE-T PMA entities in a generalized manner.

24.3.1.1.1 Semantics of the service primitive

PMA_TYPE.indicate (pma_type)

The pma_type parameter for use with a 100BASE-X PMA is “X”.

24.3.1.1.2 When generated

The PMA continuously generates this primitive to indicate the value of pma_type.

24.3.1.1.3 Effect of receipt

The effect of receipt of this primitive by the client is unspecified by the PMA sublayer.

24.3.1.2 PMA_UNITDATA.request

This primitive defines the transfer of data (in the form of code-bits) from the PMA's client to the PMA.

24.3.1.2.1 Semantics of the service primitive

PMA_UNITDATA.request (tx_code-bit)

This primitive defines the transfer of data (in the form of code-bits) from the PCS or other client to the PMA. The tx_code-bit parameter can take one of two values: ONE or ZERO.

24.3.1.2.2 When generated

The PCS or other client continuously sends, at a nominal 125 Mb/s rate, the appropriate code-bit for transmission on the medium.

24.3.1.2.3 Effect of receipt

Upon receipt of this primitive, the PMA generates a PMD_UNITDATA.request primitive, requesting transmission of the indicated code-bit, in NRZI format (tx_nrzi-bit), on the MDI.

24.3.1.3 PMA_UNITDATA.indicate

This primitive defines the transfer of data (in the form of code-bits) from the PMA to the PCS or other client.

24.3.1.3.1 Semantics of the service primitive

PMA_UNITDATA.indicate (rx_code-bit)

The data conveyed by PMA_UNITDATA.indicate is a continuous code-bit sequence at a nominal 125 Mb/s rate. The rx_code-bit parameter can take one of two values: ONE or ZERO.

24.3.1.3.2 When generated

The PMA continuously sends code-bits to the PCS or other client corresponding to the PMD_UNITDATA.indicate primitives received from the PMD.

24.3.1.3.3 Effect of receipt

The effect of receipt of this primitive by the client is unspecified by the PMA sublayer.

24.3.1.4 PMA_CARRIER.indicate

This primitive is generated by the PMA to indicate that a non-squelched, non-IDLE code-bit sequence is being received from the PMD. The purpose of this primitive is to give clients the earliest reliable indication of activity on the underlying continuous-signaling channel.

24.3.1.4.1 Semantics of the service primitive

PMA_CARRIER.indicate (carrier_status)

The carrier_status parameter can take on one of two values, ON or OFF, indicating whether a non-squelched, non-IDLE code-bit sequence (that is, carrier) is being received (ON) or not (OFF).

24.3.1.4.2 When generated

The PMA generates this primitive to indicate a change in the value of carrier_status.

24.3.1.4.3 Effect of receipt

The effect of receipt of this primitive by the client is unspecified by the PMA sublayer.

24.3.1.5 PMA_LINK.indicate

This primitive is generated by the PMA to indicate the status of the underlying PMD receive link.

24.3.1.5.1 Semantics of the service primitive

PMA_LINK.indicate (link_status)

The link_status parameter can take on one of three values: READY, OK, or FAIL, indicating whether the underlying receive channel is intact and ready to be enabled by Auto-Negotiation (READY), intact and enabled (OK), or not intact (FAIL). Link_status is set to FAIL when the PMD sets signal_status to OFF; when Auto-Negotiation (optional) sets link_control to DISABLE; or when Far-End Fault Detect (optional) sets faulting to TRUE. When link_status ≠ OK, then rx_code-bit and carrier_status are undefined.

24.3.1.5.2 When generated

The PMA generates this primitive to indicate a change in the value of link_status.

24.3.1.5.3 Effect of receipt

The effect of receipt of this primitive by the client is unspecified by the PMA sublayer.

24.3.1.6 PMA_LINK.request

This primitive is generated by the Auto-Negotiation algorithm, when implemented, to allow it to enable and disable operation of the PMA. See clause 28. When Auto-Negotiation is not implemented, the primitive is never invoked and the PMA behaves as if link_control = ENABLE.

24.3.1.6.1 Semantics of the service primitive

PMA_LINK.request (link_control)

The link_control parameter takes on one of three values: SCAN_FOR_CARRIER, DISABLE, or ENABLE. Auto-Negotiation sets link_control to SCAN_FOR_CARRIER prior to receiving any fast link pulses, permitting the PMA to sense a 100BASE-X signal. Auto-Negotiation sets link_control to DISABLE when it senses an Auto-Negotiation partner (fast link pulses) and must temporarily disable the 100BASE-X PHY while negotiation ensues. Auto-Negotiation sets link_control to ENABLE when full control is passed to the 100BASE-X PHY.

24.3.1.6.2 When generated

Auto-Negotiation generates this primitive to indicate a change in link_control as described in clause 28.

24.3.1.6.3 Effect of receipt

This primitive affects operation of the PMA Link Monitor function as described in 24.3.4.4.

24.3.1.7 PMA_RXERROR.indicate

This primitive is generated by the PMA to indicate that an error has been detected during a carrier event.

24.3.1.7.1 Semantics of the service primitive

PMA_RXERROR.indicate (rxerror_status)

The rxerror_status parameter can take on one of two values: ERROR or NO_ERROR, indicating whether the received carrier event contains a detectable error (ERROR) or not (NO_ERROR). A carrier event is considered to be in error when it is not started by a Start-of-Stream Delimiter.

24.3.1.7.2 When generated

The PMA generates this primitive whenever a new, non-squelched carrier event is not started by a Start-of-Stream Delimiter.

24.3.1.7.3 Effect of receipt

The effect of receipt of this primitive by the client is unspecified by the PMA sublayer.

24.3.2 Functional requirements

The 100BASE-X PMA comprises the following functions:

a) Mapping of transmit and receive code-bits between the PMA Service Interface and the PMD Service Interface;
b) Link Monitor, which maps the PMD_SIGNAL.indicate primitive to the PMA_LINK.indicate primitive, indicating the availability of the underlying PMD;
c) Carrier Detection, which generates the PMA_CARRIER.indicate and PMA_RXERROR.indicate primitives from inspection of received PMD signals; and
d) Far-End Fault (optional), comprised of the Far-End Fault Generate and Far-End Fault Detect processes, which sense receive channel failures and send the Far-End Fault Indication, and sense the Far-End Fault Indication.

Figure 24-4 includes a functional block diagram of the PMA.

24.3.2.1 Far-End fault

Auto-Negotiation provides a Remote Fault capability useful for detection of asymmetric link failures; i.e., channel error conditions detected by the far-end station but not the near-end station. Since Auto-Negotiation is specified only for media supporting eight-pin modular connectors, such as used by 100BASE-TX over unshielded twisted pair, Auto-Negotiation's Remote Fault capability is unavailable to other media for which it may be functionally beneficial, such as 100BASE-TX over shielded twisted pair or 100BASE-FX. A remote fault capability for 100BASE-FX is particularly useful due to this medium's applicability over longer distances (making end-station checking inconvenient) and for backbones (in which detection of link failures can trigger redundant systems).

For these reasons, 100BASE-X provides an optional Far-End Fault facility when Auto-Negotiation cannot be used. Far-End Fault shall not be implemented for media capable of supporting Auto-Negotiation.

When no signal is being received, as indicated by the PMD's signal detect function, the Far-End Fault feature permits the station to transmit a special Far-End Fault Indication to its far-end peer. The Far-End Fault Indication is sent only when a physical error condition is sensed on the receive channel. In all other situations, including reception of the Far-End Fault Indication itself, the PMA passes through tx_code-bit. (Note that the Far-End Fault architecture is such that IDLEs are automatically transmitted when the Far-End Fault Indication is detected. This is necessary to re-establish communication when the link is repaired.)

The Far-End Fault Indication is comprised of three or more repeating cycles, each of 84 ONEs followed by a single ZERO. This signal is sent in-band and is readily detectable but is constructed so as to not satisfy the 100BASE-X carrier sense criterion. It is therefore transparent to the PMA's client and to stations not implementing Far-End Fault.

As shown in figure 24-4, Far-End Fault is implemented through the Far-End Fault Generate, Far-End Fault Detect and the Link Monitor processes.

The Far-End Fault Generate process, which is interposed between the incoming tx_code-bit stream and the TX process, is responsible for sensing a receive channel failure (signal_status=OFF) and transmitting the Far-End Fault Indication in response. The transmission of the Far-End Fault Indication may start or stop at any time depending only on signal_status.

The Far-End Fault Detect process continuously monitors rx_code-bits from the RX process for the Far-End Fault Indication. Detection of the Far-End Fault Indication disables the station by causing the Link Monitor process to deassert link_status, which in turn causes the station to source IDLEs. Far-End Fault detection can also be used by management functions not specified in this clause.

24.3.2.2 Comparison to previous 802.3 PMAs

Previous 802.3 PMA's perform the additional functions of SQE Test and Jabber. Neither of these functions is implemented in the 100BASE-X PMA.

SQE Test is provided in other Physical Layers to check the integrity of the Collision Detection mechanism independently of the Transmit and Receive capabilities of the Physical Layer. Since 100BASE-X effects collision detection by sensing receptions that occur during transmissions, collision detection is dependent on the health of the receive channel. By checking the ability to properly receive signals from the PMD, the Link Monitor function therefore functionally subsumes the functions previously implemented by SQE Test.

The Jabber function prevents a DTE from causing total network failure under certain classes of faults. When using mixing media (e.g., coaxial cables or passive optical star couplers), this function must naturally be implemented in the DTE. 100BASE-X requires the use of an active repeater, with one DTE or repeater attached to each port. As an implementation optimization, the Jabber function has therefore been moved to the repeater in 100BASE-X.

24.3.3 State variables

24.3.3.1 Constants

FEF_CYCLES

The number of consecutive cycles (of FEF_ONES ONEs and a single ZERO) necessary to indicate the Far-End Fault Indication. This value is 3.

FEF_ONES

The number of consecutive ONEs to be transmitted for each cycle of the Far-End Fault Indication. This value is 84.

24.3.3.2 Variables

carrier_status

The carrier_status parameter to be communicated by the Carrier Detect process through the PMA_CARRIER.indicate primitive. Carrier is defined as receipt of 2 noncontiguous ZEROes in 10 code-bits.

Values: ON; carrier is being received
OFF; carrier is not being received

faulting

The faulting variable set by the Far-End Fault Detect process, when implemented, indicating whether or not a Far-End Fault Indication is being sensed. This variable is used by the Link Monitor process to force link_status to FAIL.When Far-End Fault is not implemented, this variable is always FALSE.

Values: TRUE; Far-End Fault Indication is being sensed
FALSE; Far-End Fault Indication is not being sensed

link_control

The link_control parameter as communicated by the PMA_LINK.request primitive. When Auto-Negotiation is not implemented, the value of link_control is always ENABLE. See clause 28 for a complete definition.

link_status

The link_status parameter as communicated by the Link Monitor process through the PMA_LINK.indicate primitive.

Values: FAIL; the receive channel is not intact
READY; the receive channel is intact and ready to be enabled by Auto-Negotiation
OK; the receive channel is intact and enabled for reception

r_bits [9:0]

In Carrier Detect, a vector of the 10 most recently received code-bits from the PMD RX process. r_bits [0] is the most recently received (newest) code-bit; r_bits [9] is the least recently received code-bit (oldest). r_bits is an internal variable used exclusively by the Carrier Detect process.

rx_code-bit

The rx_code-bit parameter as delivered by the RX process, which operates in synchronism with the PMD_UNITDATA.indicate primitive. rx_code-bit is the most recently received code-bit from the PMD after conversion from NRZI.

rxerror_status

The rxerror_status parameter to be communicated by the Carrier Detect process through the PMA_RXERROR.indicate primitive.

Values: NO_ERROR; no error detected in the carrier event being received
ERROR; the carrier event being received is in error

signal_status

The signal_status parameter as communicated by the PMD_SIGNAL.indicate primitive.

Values: ON; the quality and level of the received signal is satisfactory
OFF; the quality and level of the received signal is not satisfactory

tx_code-bit_in

In Link Fault Generate, the tx_code-bit parameter as conveyed to the PMA from the PMA client by the PMA_UNITDATA.request.

tx_code-bit_out

In Link Fault Generate, the tx_code-bit parameter to be passed to the TX process. Note that this is called tx_code-bit by the TX process.

24.3.3.3 Functions

SHIFTLEFT (rx_bits)

In Carrier Detect, this function shifts rx_bits left one bit placing rx_bits [8] in rx_bits [9], rx_bits [7] in rx_bits [8] and so on until rx_bits [1] gets rx_bits [0].

24.3.3.4 Timers

stabilize_timer

An implementation-dependent delay timer between 330 μs and 1000 μs, inclusive, to ensure that the link is stable.

24.3.3.5 Counters

num_cycles

In Link Fault Detect, a counter containing the number of consecutive Far-End Fault cycles currently sensed. This counter gets reset on intialization or when the bit stream fails to qualify as a potential Far-End Fault Indication. It never exceeds FEF_CYCLES.

num_ones

This represents two separate and independent counters: In Link Fault Generate, a counter containing the number of consecutive ONEs already sent during this cycle of the Far-End Fault Indication. In Link Fault Detect, a counter containing the number of consecutive ONEs currently sensed; it gets reset whenever a ZERO is detected or when the bit stream fails to qualify as a potential Far-End Fault Indication. These counters never exceed FEF_ONES.

24.3.3.6 Messages

PMD_UNITDATA.indicate (rx_nrzi-bit)

A signal sent by the PMD signifying that the next nrzi-bit is available from the medium. nrzi-bit is converted (instantaneously) to code-bit by the RX process and used by the Carrier Detect process.

5xPMD_UNITDATA.indicates

In Carrier Detect, this shorthand notation represents repetition of the preceding state five times synchronized with five successive PMD_UNITDATA.indicates.

PMA_UNITDATA.request (tx_code-bit)

A signal sent by the PMA's client signifying that the next nrzi-bit is available for transmission. For this process, the tx_code-bit parameter is interpreted as tx_code-bit_in.

24.3.4 Process specifications and state diagrams

24.3.4.1 TX

The TX process passes data from the PMA's client directly to the PMD. The PMA shall implement the TX process as follows: Upon receipt of a PMA_UNITDATA.request (tx_code-bit), the PMA performs a conversion to NRZI format and generates a PMD_UNITDATA.request (tx_nrzi-bit) primitive with the same logical value for the tx_nrzi-bit parameter. Note that tx_code-bit is equivalent to tx_code-bit_out of the Link Fault Generate process when implemented.

24.3.4.2 RX

The RX process passes data from the PMD directly to the PMA's client and to the Carrier Detect process. The PMA shall implement the RX process as follows: Upon receipt of a PMD_UNITDATA.indicate (rx_nrzi-bit), the PMA performs a conversion from NRZI format and generates a PMA_UNITDATA.indicate (rx_code-bit) primitive with the same logical value for the rx_code-bit parameter.

24.3.4.3 Carrier detect

The PMA Carrier Detect process provides repeater clients an indication that a carrier event has been sensed and an indication if it is deemed in error. A carrier event is defined as receipt of two non-contiguous ZEROS within any 10 rx_code-bits. A carrier event is in error if it does not start with an SSD. The Carrier Detect process performs this function by continuously monitoring the code-bits being delivered by the RX process, and checks for specific patterns which indicate non-IDLE activity and SSD bit patterns.

The Carrier Detect process collects code-bits from the PMD RX process. r_bits [9:0] represents a sliding, 10-bit window on the code-bit sequence, with newly received code-bits from the RX process being shifted into r_bits [0]. The process shifts the r_bits vector to the left, inserts the newly received code-bit into position 0, and waits for the next PMD.UNITDATA.indicate before repeating the operation. This is depicted in figure 24-13. The Carrier Detect process monitors the r_bits vector until it detects two noncontiguous ZEROS in the incoming code-bit sequence. This signals a transition of carrier_status from OFF to ON. Each new carrier is further examined for a leading SSD (1100010001) with rxerror_status set to ERROR if it is not confirmed. A pattern of 10 contiguous ONEs in the stream indicates a return to carrier_status = OFF. Code-bit patterns of contiguous ONEs correspond to IDLE code-groups in the PCS, per the encoding specified in 24.2.2.1.

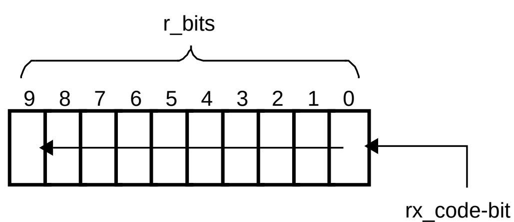


Figure 24-13—Carrier Detect reference diagram

The PMA shall, if it is supporting a repeater, implement the Carrier Detect process as depicted in figure 24-14 including compliance with the associated state variables as specified in 24.3.3.

24.3.4.4 Link Monitor

The Link Monitor process is responsible for determining whether the underlying receive channel is providing reliable data. Failure of the underlying channel typically causes the PMA's client to suspend normal actions. The Link Monitor process takes advantage of the PMD sublayer's continuously signaled transmission scheme, which provides the PMA with a continuous indication of signal detection on the channel through signal_status as communicated by the PMD_SIGNAL.indicate primitive. It responds to control by Auto-Negotiation, when implemented, which is effected through the link_control parameter of PMA_SIGNAL.request.

The Link Monitor process monitors signal_status, setting link_status to FAIL whenever signal_status is OFF or when Auto-Negotiation sets link_control to DISABLE. The link is deemed to be reliably operating when signal_status has been continuously ON for a period of time. This period is implementation dependent but not less than 330 µs or greater than 1000 µs. If so qualified, Link Monitor sets link_status to READY in order to synchronize with Auto-Negotiation, when implemented. Auto-Negotiation permits full operation by setting link_control to ENABLE. When Auto-Negotiation is not implemented, Link Monitor operates with link_control always set to ENABLE.

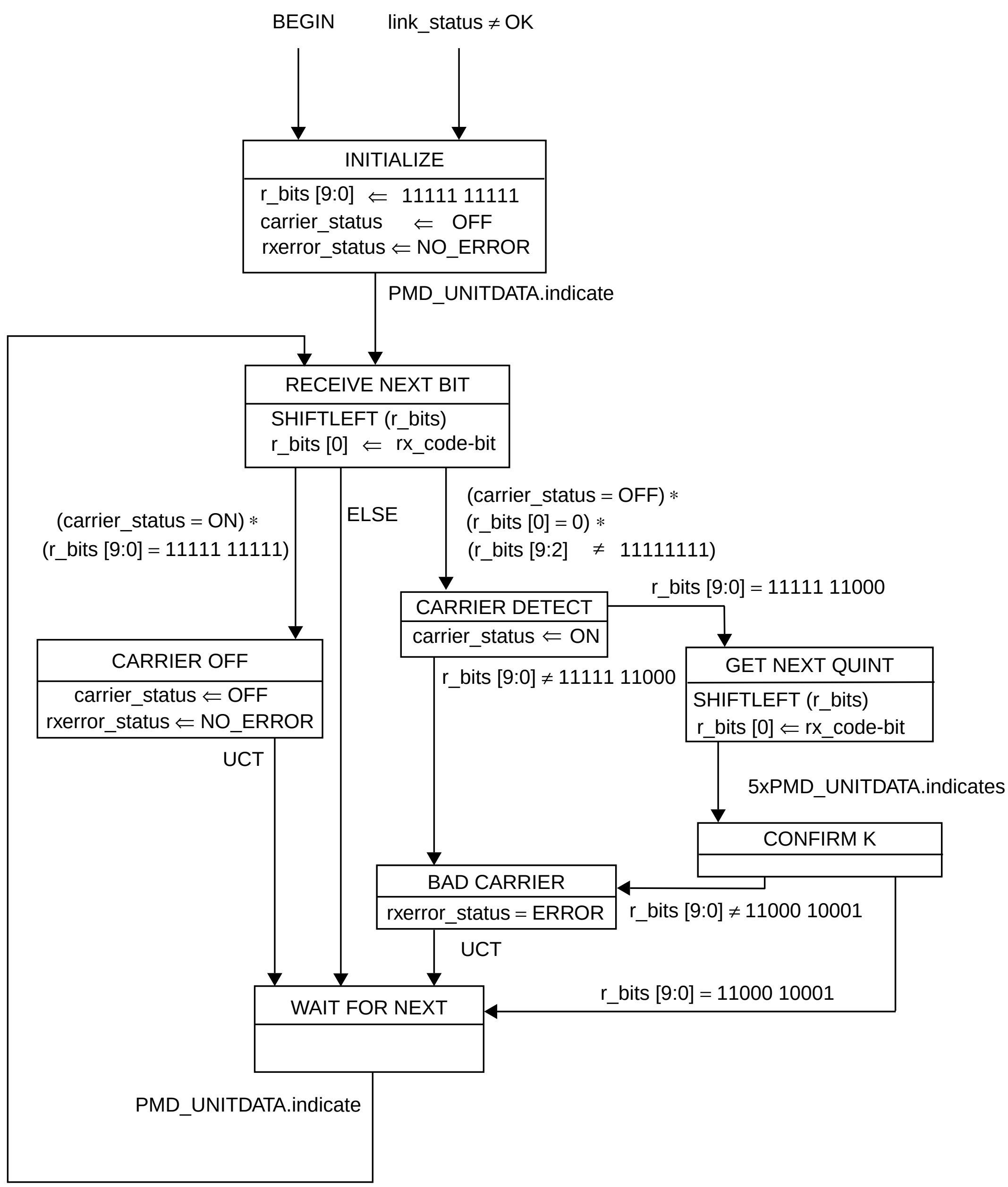
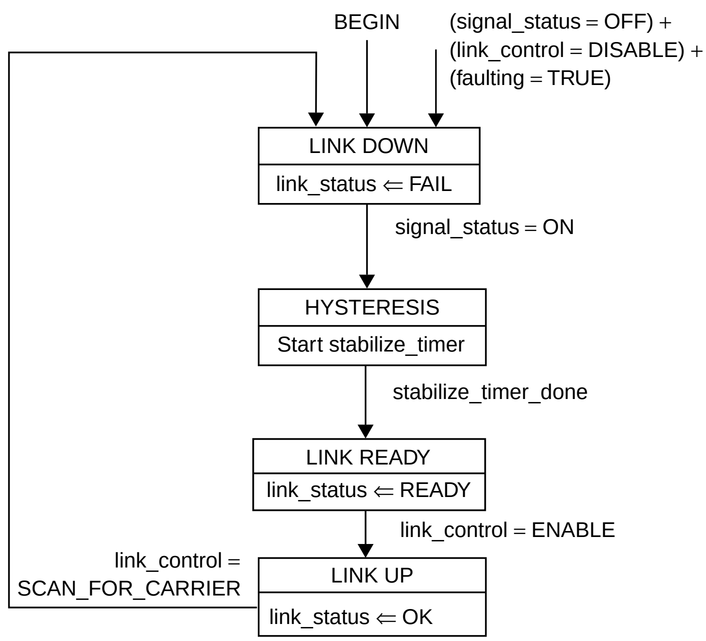


Figure 24-14—Carrier Detect state diagram

The PMA shall implement the Link Monitor process as depicted in figure 24-15 including compliance with the associated state variables as specified in 24.3.3.

24.3.4.5 Far-End Fault Generate

Far-End Fault Generate simply passes tx_code-bits to the TX process when signal_status=ON. When signal_status=OFF, it repetitively generates each cycle of the Far-End Fault Indication until signal_status is reasserted.



NOTE—The variables link_control and link_status are designated as link_control_[TX] and link_status_[TX], respectively, by the Auto-Negotiation Arbitration state diagram (figure 28-16).

Figure 24-15—Link Monitor state diagram

If Far-End Fault is implemented, the PMA shall implement the Far-End Fault Generate process as depicted in figure 24-16 including compliance with the associated state variables as specified in 24.3.3.

24.3.4.6 Far-End Fault Detect

Far-End Fault Detect passively monitors the rx_code-bit stream from the RX process for the Far-End Fault Indication. It does so by maintaining counters for the number of consecutive ONEs seen since the last ZERO (num_ones) and the number of cycles of 84 ONEs and a single ZERO (num_cycles). The Far-End Fault Indication is denoted by three or more cycles, each of 84 ONEs and a single ZERO. Note that the number of consecutive ONEs may exceed 84 on the first cycle.

If Far-End Fault is implemented, the PMA shall implement the Far-End Fault Detect process as depicted in figure 24-17 including compliance with the associated state variables as specified in 24.3.3.

24.4 Physical Medium Dependent (PMD) sublayer service interface

24.4.1 PMD service interface

The following specifies the services provided by the PMD. The PMD is a sublayer within 100BASE-X and may not be present in other 100BASE-T PHY specifications. PMD services are described in an abstract manner and do not imply any particular implementation. It should be noted that these services are functionally identical to those defined in the FDDI standards, such as ISO 9314-3: 1990 and ANSI X3.263: 199X, with two exceptions:

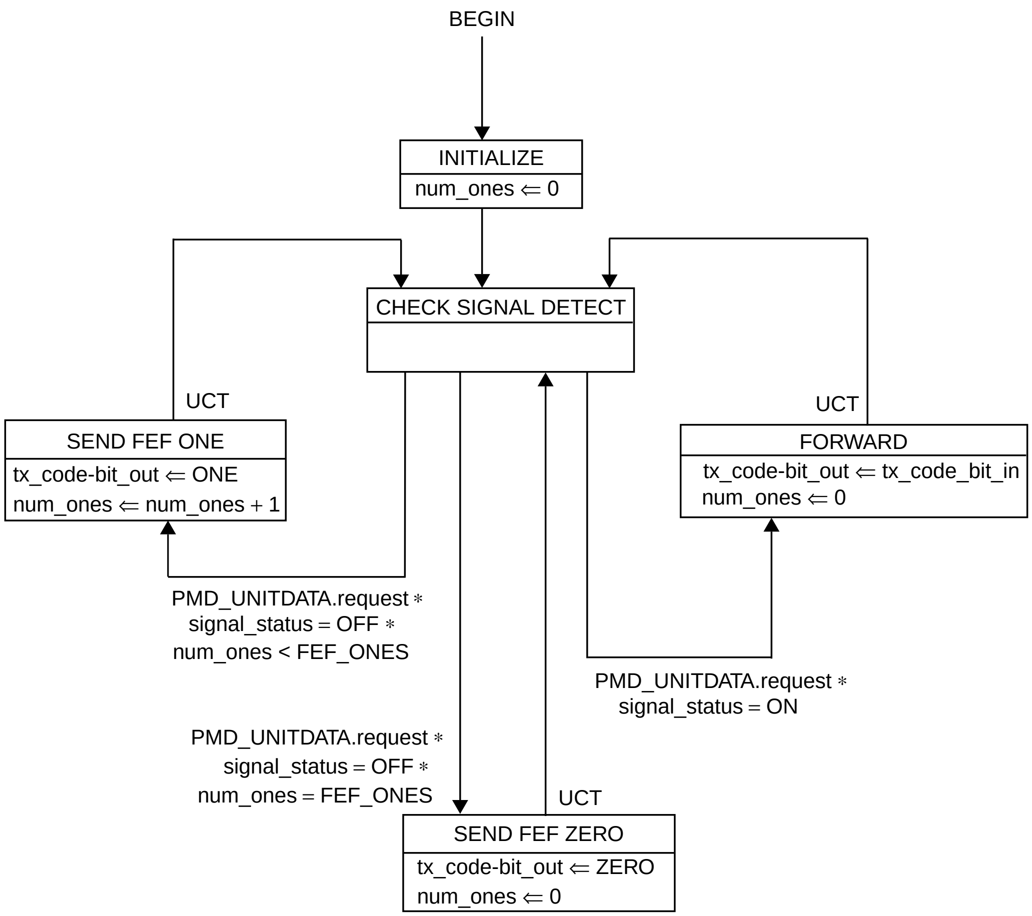


Figure 24-16—Far-End Fault Generate state diagram

a) 100BASE-X does not include a Station Management (SMT) function; therefore the PMD-to-SMT interface defined in ISO 9314-3: 1990 and ANSI X3.263: 199X.
b) 100BASE-X does not support multiple instances of a PMD in service to a single PMA; therefore, no qualifiers are needed to identify the unique PMD being referenced.

There are also *editorial* differences between the interfaces specified here and in the referenced standards, as required by the context of 100BASE-X.

The PMD Service Interface supports the exchange of nrzi-bits between PMA entities. The PMD translates the nrzi-bits to and from signals suitable for the specified medium.

The following primitives are defined:

PMD_UNITDATA.request

PMD_UNITDATA.indicate

PMD_SIGNAL.indicate

24.4.1.1 PMD_UNITDATA.request

This primitive defines the transfer of data (in the form of nrzi-bits) from the PMA to the PMD.

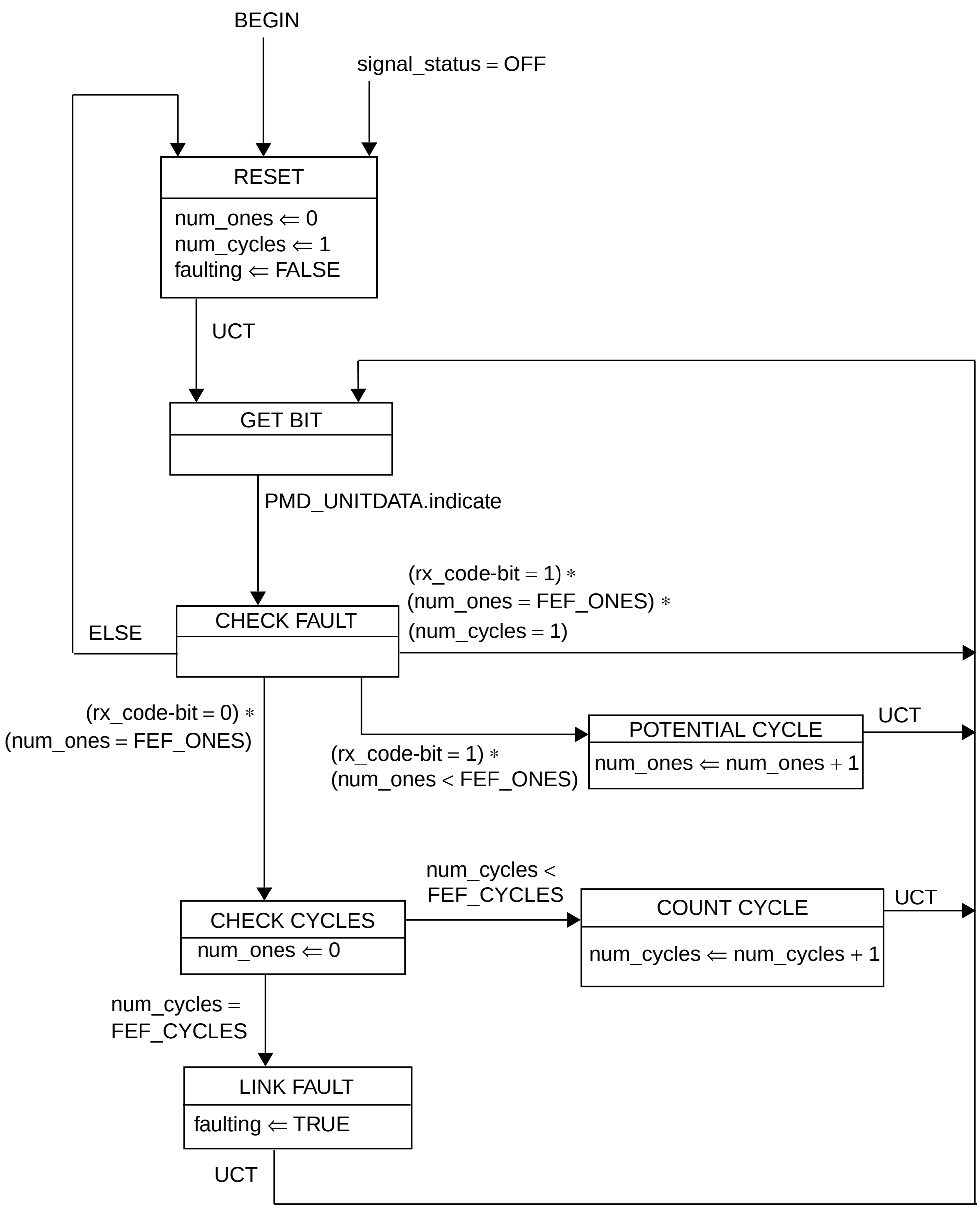


Figure 24-17—Far-End Fault Detect state diagram

24.4.1.1.1 Semantics of the service primitive

PMD_UNITDATA.request (tx_nrzi-bit)

The data conveyed by PMD_UNITDATA.request is a continuous sequence of nrzi-bits. The tx_nrzi-bit parameter can take one of two values: ONE or ZERO.

24.4.1.1.2 When generated

The PMA continuously sends, at a nominal 125 Mb/s rate, the PMD the appropriate nrzi-bits for transmission on the medium.

24.4.1.1.3 Effect of receipt

Upon receipt of this primitive, the PMD converts the specified nrzi-bit into the appropriate signals on the MDI.

24.4.1.2 PMD_UNITDATA.indicate

This primitive defines the transfer of data (in the form of nrzi-bits) from the PMD to the PMA.

24.4.1.2.1 Semantics of the service primitive

PMD_UNITDATA.indicate (rx_nrzi-bit)

The data conveyed by PMD_UNITDATA.indicate is a continuous nrzi-bit sequence. The rx_nrzi-bit parameter can take one of two values: ONE or ZERO.

24.4.1.2.2 When generated

The PMD continuously sends nrzi-bits to the PMA corresponding to the signals received from the MDI.

24.4.1.2.3 Effect of receipt

The effect of receipt of this primitive by the client is unspecified by the PMD sublayer.

24.4.1.3 PMD_SIGNAL.indicate

This primitive is generated by the PMD to indicate the status of the signal being received from the MDI.

24.4.1.3.1 Semantics of the service primitive

PMD_SIGNAL.indicate (signal_status)

The signal_status parameter can take on one of two values: ON or OFF, indicating whether the quality and level of the received signal is satisfactory (ON) or unsatisfactory (OFF). When signal_status = OFF, then rx_nrzi-bit is undefined, but consequent actions based on PMD_SIGNAL.indicate, where necessary, interpret rx_nrzi-bit as logic ZERO.

24.4.1.3.2 When generated

The PMD generates this primitive to indicate a change in the value of signal_status.

24.4.1.3.3 Effect of receipt

The effect of receipt of this primitive by the client is unspecified by the PMD sublayer.

24.4.2 Medium Dependent Interface (MDI)

The MDI, a physical interface associated with a PMD, is comprised of an electrical or optical medium connector. The 100BASE-X MDIs, defined in subsequent clauses, are specified by reference to the appropriate FDDI PMD, such as in ISO 9314-3: 1990 and ANSI X3.263: 199X, together with minor modifications (such as connectors and pin-outs) necessary for 100BASE-X.

24.5 Compatibility considerations

There is no requirement for a compliant device to implement or expose any of the interfaces specified for the PCS, PMA, or PMD. However, if an exposed interface is provided to the PCS, it shall comply with the requirements for the MII, as specified in clause 22.

24.6 Delay constraints

Proper operation of a CSMA/CD LAN demands that there be an upper bound on the propagation delays through the network. This implies that MAC, PHY, and repeater implementors must conform to certain delay minima and maxima, and that network planners and administrators conform to constraints regarding the cable topology and concatenation of devices. MAC constraints are contained in clause 21. Topological constraints are contained in clause 29.

The reference point for all MDI measurements is the 50% point of the mid-cell transition corresponding to the reference code-bit, as measured at the MDI. Although 100BASE-TX output is scrambled, it is assumed that these measurements are made via apparatuses that appropriately account for this.

24.6.1 PHY delay constraints (exposed MII)

Every 100BASE-X PHY with an exposed MII shall comply with the bit delay constraints specified in table 24-2. These figures apply for all 100BASE-X PMDs.

Table 24-2—MDI to MII delay constraints (exposed MII)

Sublayer measurement points	Event	Min (bits)	Max (bits)	Input timing reference	Output timing reference
MII ⇔ MDI	TX_EN Sampled to MDI Output	6	14	TX_CLK rising	1st bit of /J/
	MDI input to CRS assert		20	1st bit of /J/	
	MDI input to CRS de-assert (aligned)	13	24	1st bit of /T/	
	MDI input to CRS de-assert (unaligned)	13	24	1st ONE	
	MDI input to COL assert		20	1st bit of /J/	
	MDI input to COL de-assert (aligned)	13	24	1st bit of /T/	
	MDI input to COL de-assert (unaligned)	13	24	1st ONE	
	TX_EN sampled to CRS assert	0	4	TX_CLK rising	
	TX_EN sampled to CRSde-assert	0	16	TX_CLK rising	

24.6.2 DTE delay constraints (unexposed MII)

Every 100BASE-X DTE with no exposed MII shall comply with the bit delay constraints specified in table 24-3. These figures apply for all 100BASE-X PMDs.

24.6.3 Carrier de-assertion/assertion constraint

To ensure fair access to the network, each DTE shall, additionally, satisfy the following:

Table 24-3—DTE delay constraints (unexposed MII)

Sublayer measurement points	Event	Min (bits)	Max (bits)	Input timing reference	Output timing reference
MAC ⇔ MDI	MAC transmit start to MDI output		18		1st bit of /J/
	MDI input to MDI output (worst-case nondeferred transmit)		54	1st bit of /J/	1st bit of /J/
	MDI input to collision detect		28	1st bit of /J/	
	MDI input to MDI output = Jam (worst case collision response)		54	1st bit of /J/	1st bit of jam

(MAX MDI to MAC Carrier De-assert Detect) – (MIN MDI to MAC Carrier Assert Detect) < 13

24.7 Environmental specifications

All equipment subject to this clause shall conform to the requirements of 14.7 and applicable sections of ISO/IEC 11801: 1995.

24.8 Protocol Implementation Conformance Statement (PICS) proforma for clause 24, Physical Coding Sublayer (PCS) and Physical Medium Attachment (PMA) sublayer, type 100BASE-X[23]

24.8.1 Introduction

The supplier of a protocol implementation that is claimed to conform to IEEE Std 802.3u-1995, Physical Coding Sublayer (PCS) and Physical Medium Attachment (PMA) sublayer, type 100BASE-X, shall complete the following Protocol Implementation Conformance Statement (PICS) proforma.

A detailed description of the symbols used in the PICS proforma, along with instructions for completing the PICS proforma, can be found in clause 21.

24.8.2 Identification

24.8.2.1 Implementation identification

Supplier	
Contact point for enquiries about the PICS	
Implementation Name(s) and Version(s)	
Other information necessary for full identification—e.g., name(s) and version(s) for machines and/or operating systems; System Names(s)	
NOTES 1—Only the first three items are required for all implementations; other information may be completed as appropriate in meeting the requirements for the identification. 2—The terms Name and Version should be interpreted appropriately to correspond with a supplier's terminology (e.g., Type, Series, Model).	

24.8.2.2 Protocol summary

Identification of protocol standard	IEEE Std 802.3u-1995, Physical Coding Sublayer (PCS) and Physical Medium Attachment (PMA) sublayer, type 100BASE-X
Identification of amendments and corrigenda to this PICS proforma that have been completed as part of this PICS	
Have any Exception items been required? No [ ] Yes [ ] (See clause 21; the answer Yes means that the implementation does not conform to IEEE Std 802.3u-1995.)	
Date of Statement	

[23]*Copyright release for PICS proformas:* Users of this standard may freely reproduce the PICS proforma in this annex so that it can be used for its intended purpose and may further publish the completed PICS.

24.8.2.3 Major capabilities/options

Item	Feature	Subclause	Status	Support	Value/Comment
*DTE	Supports DTE without MII	24.4	O/1		
*REP	Supports Repeater without MII	24.4	O/1		
*MII	Supports exposed MII interface	24.4	O/1		
*PCS	Implements PCS functions	24.2	REP: O DTE: M MII: M		
PMA	Implements PMA RX, TX and Link Monitor functions	24.3	M		
*NWC	Medium capable of supporting Auto-Negotiation		O		See clause 28
*FEF	Implements Far-End Fault	24.3.2.1	NWC: X		
NWY	Supports Auto-Negotiation (clause 28)		NWC: O		See clause 28

24.8.3 PICS proforma tables for the Physical Coding Sublayer (PCS) and Physical Medium Attachment (PMA) sublayer, type 100BASE-X

24.8.3.1 General compatibility considerations

Item	Feature	Subclause	Status	Support	Value/Comment
GN1	Compliance with MII requirements	24.4	MII:M		See clause 22
GN2	Environmental specifications	24.7	M		

24.8.3.2 PCS functions

Item	Feature	Subclause	Status	Support	Value/Comment
PS1	Transmit Bits process	24.2.3	PCS:M		
PS2	Transmit process	24.2.4.2	PCS:M		
PS3	Receive Bits process	24.2.4.3	PCS:M		
PS4	Receive process	24.2.4.4	PCS:M		
PS5	Carrier Sense process	24.2.4.5	PCS:M		

24.8.3.3 PMA functions

Item	Feature	Subclause	Status	Support	Value/Comment
PA1	TX process	24.3.4.1	M		
PA2	RX process	24.3.4.2	M		
PA3	Carrier Detect process	24.3.2.1	REP: M		
PA4	Link Monitor process	24.3.4.4	M		
PA5	Far-End Fault Generate process	24.3.4.5	FEF: M		
PA6	Far-End Fault Detect process	24.3.4.6	FEF: M		

24.8.3.4 Timing

Item	Feature	Subclause	Status	Support	Value/Comment
TM1	Support for MII signals TX_CLK and RX_CLK	24.2.2.3	MII:M		See clause 22
TM2	Accuracy of code-bit_timer	24.2.3	M		
TM3	Compliance with PHY bit delay constraints	24.6.1	MII:M REP: O		
TM4	Compliance with DTE bit delay constraints	24.6.2	DTE:M		
TM5	Compliance with Carrier Deassert/Assert Constraint	24.6.3	DTE:M		

25. Physical Medium Dependent (PMD) sublayer and baseband medium, type 100BASE-TX

25.1 Overview

This clause specifies the 100BASE-X PMD (including MDI) and baseband medium for twisted-pair wiring, 100BASE-TX. In order to form a complete 100BASE-TX Physical Layer it shall be integrated with the 100BASE-X PCS and PMA of clause 24, which are assumed incorporated by reference. As such, the 100BASE-TX PMD shall comply with the PMD service interface specified in 24.4.1.

25.2 Functional specifications

The 100BASE-TX PMD (and MDI) is specified by incorporating the FDDI TP-PMD standard, ANSI X3.263: 199X (TP-PMD), by reference, with the modifications noted below. This standard provides support for Category 5 unshielded twisted pair (UTP) and shielded twisted pair (STP). For improved legibility in this clause, ANSI X3.263: 199X (TP-PMD), will henceforth be referred to as TP-PMD.

25.3 General exceptions

The 100BASE-TX PMD is precisely the PMD specified as TP-PMD, with the following general modifications:

a) The Scope and General description discussed in TP-PMD 1 and 5 relate to the use of those standards with an FDDI PHY, ISO 9314-1: 1989, and MAC, ISO 9314-2: 1989. These sections are not relevant to the use of the PMD with 100BASE-X.
b) The Normative references, Definitions and Conventions of TP-PMD 2, 3, and 4 are used only as necessary to interpret the applicable sections of TP-PMD referenced in this clause.
c) The PMD Service Specifications of TP-PMD 6 are replaced by those specified in 24.4.1. The 100BASE-TX PMD Service specification is a proper subset of the PMD Service Specification in TP-PMD.
d) There are minor terminology differences between this standard and TP-PMD that do not cause ambiguity. The terminology used in 100BASE-X was chosen to be consistent with other IEEE 802 standards, rather than with FDDI. Terminology is both defined and consistent within each standard. Special note should be made of the interpretations shown in table 25-1.

Table 25-1—Interpretation of general FDDI terms and concepts

FDDI term or concept	Interpretation for 100BASE-TX
bypass	<unused>
Connection Management (CMT)	<no comparable entity>
frame	stream
Halt Line State (HLS)	<unused>
hybrid mode	<no comparable entity>
MAC (or MAC-2)	MAC
Master Line State (MLS)	<unused>
maximum frame size = 9000 symbols	maximum stream size = 3054 code-groups
PHY (or PHY-2)	PMA; i.e., PMD client

Table 25-1—Interpretation of general FDDI terms and concepts *(Continued)*

FDDI term or concept	Interpretation for 100BASE-TX
PHY Service Data Unit (SDU)	stream
PM_SIGNAL.indication (Signal_Detect)	PMD_SIGNAL.indicate (signal_status)
PM_UNITDATA.indication (PM_Indication)	PMD_UNITDATA.indicate (nrzi-bit)
PM_UNITDATA.request (PM_Request)	PMD_UNITDATA.request (nrzi-bit)
preamble	inter-packet IDLEs
Quiet Line State (QLS)	<unused>
SM_PM_BYPASS.request (Control_Action)	Assume: SM_PM_BYPASS.request(Control_Action = Insert)
SM_PM_CONTROL.request (Control_Action)	Assume: SM_PM_CONTROL.request (Control_Action = Transmit_Enable)
SM_PM_SIGNAL.indication (Signal_Detect)	<unused>
Station Management (SMT)	<no comparable entity>
symbol	code-group

25.4 Specific requirements and exceptions

The 100BASE-TX PMD (including MDI) and baseband medium shall comply to the requirements of TP-PMD, 7, 8, 9, 10, and 11, and normative annex A with the exceptions listed below. In TP-PMD, informative annexes B, C, E, F, G, I, and J, with exceptions listed below, provide additional information useful to PMD sublayer implementors. Where there is conflict between specification in TP-PMD and those in this standard, those of this standard shall prevail.

25.4.1 Change to 7.2.3.1.1, "Line state patterns"

Descrambler synchronization on the Quiet Line State (QLS), Halt Line State (HLS), and Master Line State (MLS) Line State Patterns cited in TP-PMD 7.2.3.1.1 is optional.

25.4.2 Change to 7.2.3.3, "Loss of synchronization"

The synchronization error triggered by PH_Invalid as defined in TP-PMD 7.2.3.3a is not applicable.

25.4.3 Change to table 8-1, "Contact assignments for unshielded twisted pair"

100BASE-TX for unshielded twisted pair adopts the contact assignments of 10BASE-T. Therefore, the contact assignments shown in TP-PMD table 8-1 shall instead be as depicted in table 25-2.

25.4.4 Deletion of 8.3, "Station labelling"

Clause 8.3 of TP-PMD shall not be applied to 100BASE-TX.

25.4.5 Change to 9.1.9, "Jitter"

The jitter measurement specified in 9.1.9 of TP-PMD may be performed using scrambled IDLEs.

Table 25-2—UTP MDI contact assignments

CONTACT	PHY without internal crossover MDI SIGNAL	PHY with internal crossover MDI SIGNAL
1	Transmit +	Receive +
2	Transmit –	Receive –
3	Receive +	Transmit +
4		
5		
6	Receive –	Transmit –
7		
8		

25.4.6 Replacement of 11.2, "Crossover function"

Clause 11.2 of TP-PMD is replaced with the following:

A crossover function compliant with 14.5.2 shall be implemented except that a) the signal names are those used in TP-PMD, and b) the contact assignments for STP are those shown in table 8-2 of TP-PMD. Note that compliance with 14.5.2 implies a recommendation that crossover (for both UTP and STP) be performed within repeater PHYs.

25.4.7 Change to A.2, "DDJ test pattern for baseline wander measurements"

The length of the test pattern specified in TP-PMD annex A.2 may be shortened to accommodate feasible 100BASE-X measurements, but shall not be shorter than 3000 code-groups.

NOTE—This pattern is to be applied to the MII. (When applied to the MAC, the nibbles within each byte are to be swapped. E.g., as delivered to the MAC, the test pattern would start, "60 c9 16 ...".)

25.4.8 Change to annex G, "Stream cipher scrambling function"

An example of a stream cipher scrambling implementation is shown in TP-PMD annex G. This may be modified to allow synchronization solely on the IDLE sequences between packets.

25.4.9 Change to annex I, "Common mode cable termination"

The contact assignments shown in TP-PMD figures I-1 and I-2 shall instead comply with those specified in table 25-2.

25.5 Protocol Implementation Conformance Statement (PICS) proforma for clause 25, Physical Medium Dependent (PMD) sublayer and baseband medium, type 100BASE-TX[24]

25.5.1 Introduction

The supplier of a protocol implementation that is claimed to conform to IEEE Std 802.3u-1995, Physical Medium Dependent (PMD) sublayer and baseband medium, type 100BASE-TX, shall complete the following Protocol Implementation Conformance Statement (PICS) proforma.

A detailed description of the symbols used in the PICS proforma, along with instructions for completing the PICS proforma, can be found in clause 21.

25.5.2 Identification

25.5.2.1 Implementation identification

Supplier	
Contact point for enquiries about the PICS	
Implementation Name(s) and Version(s)	
Other information necessary for full identification—e.g., name(s) and version(s) for machines and/or operating systems; System Names(s)	
NOTES 1—Only the first three items are required for all implementations; other information may be completed as appropriate in meeting the requirements for the identification. 2—The terms Name and Version should be interpreted appropriately to correspond with a supplier's terminology (e.g., Type, Series, Model).	

25.5.2.2 Protocol summary

Identification of protocol standard	IEEE Std 802.3u-1995, Physical Medium Dependent (PMD) sublayer and baseband medium, type 100BASE-TX
Identification of amendments and corrigenda to this PICS proforma that have been completed as part of this PICS	
Have any Exception items been required? No [ ] Yes [ ] (See clause 21; the answer Yes means that the implementation does not conform to IEEE Std 802.3u-1995.)	
Date of Statement	

[24]*Copyright release for PICS proformas:* Users of this standard may freely reproduce the PICS proforma in this annex so that it can be used for its intended purpose and may further publish the completed PICS.

25.5.3 Major capabilities/options

Item	Feature	Subclause	Status	Support	Value/Comment
*TXU	Supports unshielded twisted pair	25.2	O/1		
TXS	Supports shielded twisted pair	25.2	O/1		

25.5.4 PICS proforma tables for the Physical Medium Dependent (PMD) sublayer and baseband medium, type 100BASE-TX

25.5.4.1 General compatibility considerations

Item	Feature	Subclause	Status	Support	Value/Comment
GN1	Integrates 100BASE-X PMA and PCS	25.1	M		See clause 24

25.5.4.2 PMD compliance

Item	Feature	Subclause	Status	Support	Value/Comment
PD1	Compliance with 100BASE-X PMD Service Interface	25.1	M		See 24.2.3
PD2	Compliance with ANSI X3.237: 199X, 7, 8 (excluding 8.3), 9, 10, 11 and normative annex A, with listed exceptions	25.4 25.4.5	M		
PD3	Precedence over ANSI X3.237-199X	25.4	M		
PD4	MDI contact assignments for unshielded twisted pair	25.4.4 25.4.10	TXU: M		
PD5	Compliance with crossover function of 14.5.2 with listed adaptations	25.4.7	M		
PD6	Minimum jitter test pattern length	25.4.8	M		3000 code-groups

26. Physical Medium Dependent (PMD) sublayer and baseband medium, type 100BASE-FX

26.1 Overview

This clause specifies the 100BASE-X PMD (including MDI) and fiber optic medium for multi-mode fiber, 100BASE-FX. In order to form a complete 100BASE-FX Physical Layer it shall be integrated with the 100BASE-X PCS and PMA of clause 24, which are assumed incorporated by reference. As such, the 100BASE-FX PMD shall comply with the PMD service interface specified in 24.4.1.

26.2 Functional specifications

The 100BASE-FX PMD (and MDI) is specified by incorporating the FDDI PMD standard, ISO 9314-3: 1990, by reference, with the modifications noted below. This standard provides support for two optical fibers. For improved legibility in this clause, ISO 9314-3: 1990 will henceforth be referred to as fiber-PMD.

26.3 General exceptions

The 100BASE-FX PMD is precisely the PMD specified as fiber-PMD, with the following general modifications:

a) The Scope and General description discussed in fiber-PMD 1 and 5 relate to the use of those standards with an FDDI PHY, ISO 9314-1: 1989, and MAC, ISO 9314-2: 1989. These clauses are not relevant to the use of the PMD with 100BASE-X.
b) The Normative references, Definitions and Conventions of fiber-PMD 2, 3, and 4 are used only as necessary to interpret the applicable sections of fiber-PMD referenced in this clause.
c) The PMD Service Specifications of fiber-PMD 6 are replaced by those specified in 24.4.1. The 100BASE-FX PMD Service specification is a proper subset of the PMD service specification in fiber-PMD.
d) There are minor terminology differences between this standard and fiber-PMD that do not cause ambiguity. The terminology used in 100BASE-X was chosen to be consistent with other IEEE 802 standards, rather than with FDDI. Terminology is both defined and consistent within each standard. Special note should be made of the interpretations shown in table 26-1.

Table 26-1—Interpretation of general FDDI terms and concepts

FDDI term or concept	Interpretation for 100BASE-X
bypass	<unused>
Connection Management (CMT)	<no comparable entity>
frame	stream
Halt Line State (HLS)	<unused>
hybrid mode	<no comparable entity>
MAC (or MAC-2)	MAC
Master Line State (MLS)	<unused>
maximum frame size = 9000 symbols	maximum stream size = 3054 code-groups

Table 26-1—Interpretation of general FDDI terms and concepts *(Continued)*

FDDI term or concept	Interpretation for 100BASE-X
PHY (or PHY-2)	PMA; i.e., PMD client
PHY Service Data Unit (SDU)	stream
PM_SIGNAL.indication (Signal_Detect)	PMD_SIGNAL.indicate (signal_status)
PM_UNITDATA.indication (PM_Indication)	PMD_UNITDATA.indicate (nrzi-bit)
PM_UNITDATA.request (PM_Request)	PMD_UNITDATA.request (nrzi-bit)
preamble	inter-packet IDLEs
Quiet Line State (QLS)	<unused>
SM_PM_BYPASS.request (Control_Action)	Assume: SM_PM_BYPASS.request (Control_Action = Insert)
SM_PM_CONTROL.request (Control_Action)	Assume: SM_PM_CONTROL.request (Control_Action = Transmit_Enable)
SM_PM_SIGNAL.indication (Signal_Detect)	<unused>
Station Management (SMT)	<no comparable entity>
symbol	code-group

26.4 Specific requirements and exceptions

The 100BASE-FX PMD (including MDI) and baseband medium shall conform to the requirements of fiber-PMD 8, 9, and 10. In fiber-PMD, informative annexes A through G provide additional information useful to PMD sublayer implementors. Where there is conflict between specifications in fiber-PMD and those in this standard, those of this standard shall prevail.

26.4.1 Medium Dependent Interface (MDI)

The 100BASE-FX medium dependent interface (MDI) shall conform to one of the following connectors. The recommended alternative is the Low Cost Fibre Optical Interface Connector.

a) Low Cost Fibre Optical Interface Connector (commonly called the duplex SC connector) as specified in ANSI X3.237-199X, 7.1.1 through 7.3.1, inclusive.

b) Media Interface Connector (MIC) as specified in fiber-PMD 7 and annex F. When the MIC is used, the receptacle shall be keyed as “M”.

c) Optical Medium Connector Plug and Socket (commonly called ST connector) as specified in 15.3.2.

26.4.2 Crossover function

A crossover function shall be implemented in every cable-pair link. The crossover function connects the transmitter of one PHY to the receiver of the PHY at the other end of the cable-pair link. For 100BASE-FX, the crossover function is realized in the cable plant.

26.5 Protocol Implementation Conformance Statement (PICS) proforma for clause 26, Physical Medium Dependent (PMD) sublayer and baseband medium, type 100BASE-FX[25]

26.5.1 Introduction

The supplier of a protocol implementation that is claimed to conform to IEEE Std 802.3u-1995, Physical Medium Dependent (PMD) sublayer and baseband medium, type 100BASE-FX, shall complete the following Protocol Implementation Conformance Statement (PICS) proforma.

A detailed description of the symbols used in the PICS proforma, along with instructions for completing the PICS proforma, can be found in clause 21.

26.5.2 Identification

26.5.2.1 Implementation identification

Supplier	
Contact point for enquiries about the PICS	
Implementation Name(s) and Version(s)	
Other information necessary for full identification—e.g., name(s) and version(s) for machines and/or operating systems; System Names(s)	
NOTES 1—Only the first three items are required for all implementations; other information may be completed as appropriate in meeting the requirements for the identification. 2—The terms Name and Version should be interpreted appropriately to correspond with a supplier's terminology (e.g., Type, Series, Model).	

26.5.3 Protocol summary

Identification of protocol standard	IEEE Std 802.3u-1995, Physical Medium Dependent (PMD) sublayer and baseband medium, type 100BASE-FX
Identification of amendments and corrigenda to this PICS proforma that have been completed as part of this PICS	
Have any Exception items been required? No [ ] Yes [ ] (See clause 21; the answer Yes means that the implementation does not conform to IEEE Std 802.3u-1995.)	
Date of Statement	

[25]*Copyright release for PICS proformas:* Users of this standard may freely reproduce the PICS proforma in this annex so that it can be used for its intended purpose and may further publish the completed PICS.

26.5.4 Major capabilities/options

Item	Feature	Subclause	Status	Support	Value/Comment
FSC	Supports Low Cost Fibre Optical Interface Connector (duplex SC)	26.4.2	O/1		Recommended. See ANSI X3.237-199X, 7.1.1 through 7.3.1
*FMC	Supports Media Interface Connector (MIC)	26.4.2	O/1		See ISO 9314-3: 1990, 7 and annex F
FST	Supports Optical Medium Connector Plug and Socket (ST)	26.4.2	O/1		See 15.3.2

26.5.5 PICS proforma tables for Physical Medium Dependent (PMD) sublayer and baseband medium, type 100BASE-FX

26.5.5.1 General compatibility considerations

Item	Feature	Subclause	Status	Support	Value/Comment
GN1	Integrates 100BASE-X PMA and PCS	26.1	M		See clause 24

26.5.5.2 PMD compliance

Item	Feature	Subclause	Status	Support	Value/Comment
PD1	Compliance with 100BASE-X PMD Service Interface	26.1	M		See 24.2.3
PD2	Compliance with ISO 9314-3: 1990 8, 9, and 10	26.4	M		
PD3	Precedence over ISO 9314-3: 1990	26.4	M		
PD4	MIC receptacle keying	26.4.2	FMC: M		“M”
PD5	Crossover function in cable	26.4.3	M		

27. Repeater for 100 Mb/s baseband networks

27.1 Overview

27.1.1 Scope

Clause 27 defines the functional and electrical characteristics of a repeater for use with 100BASE-T 100 Mb/s baseband networks. A repeater for any other ISO/IEC 8802-3 network type is beyond the scope of this clause. The relationship of this standard to the entire ISO/IEC 8802-3 CSMA/CD LAN standard is shown in figure 27-1. The purpose of the repeater is to provide a simple, inexpensive, and flexible means of coupling two or more segments.

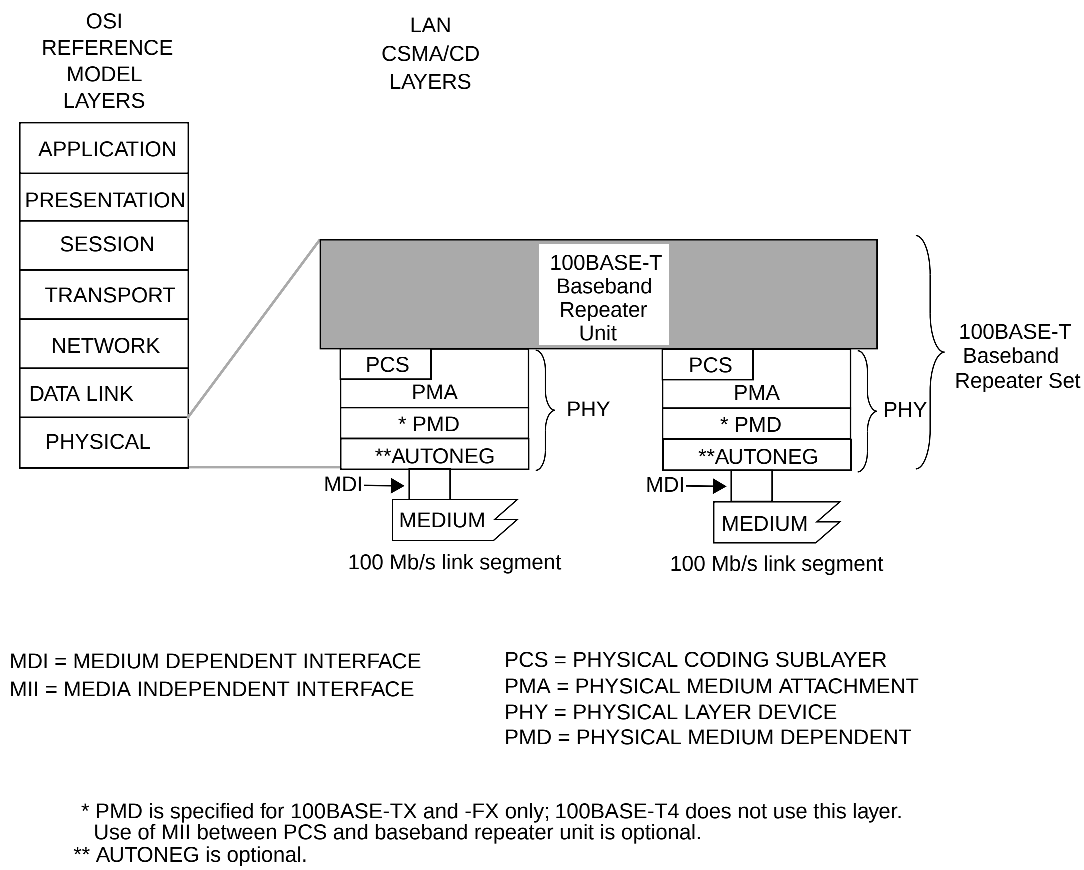


Figure 27-1—100BASE-T repeater set relationship to the OSI reference model

27.1.1.1 Repeater set

Repeater sets are an integral part of all 100 Mb/s baseband networks with more than two DTEs and are used to extend the physical system topology by providing a means of coupling two or more segments. Multiple repeater sets are permitted within a single collision domain to provide the maximum connection path length. Segments may be connected directly by a repeater or a pair of repeaters that are, in turn, connected by a inter-repeater link (IRL). Allowable topologies shall contain only one operative signal path between any two points on the network. A repeater set is not a station and does not count toward the overall limit of 1024 stations on a network.

A repeater set can receive, and if necessary decode, data from any segment under worst-case noise, timing, and signal amplitude conditions. It retransmits the data to all other segments attached to it with timing, amplitude, and, if necessary, coding restored. The retransmission of data occurs simultaneously with reception. If a collision occurs, the repeater set propagates the collision event throughout the network by transmitting a Jam signal. A repeater set also provides a degree of protection to a network by isolating a faulty segment's carrier activity from propagating through the network.

27.1.1.2 Repeater unit

A repeater unit is a subset of a repeater set containing all the repeater-specific components and functions, exclusive of PHY components and functions. A repeater unit connects to the PMA and, if necessary, the PCS sublayers of its PHYs.

27.1.1.3 Repeater classes

Two classes of repeater sets are defined—Class I and Class II.

Class I:
: A type of repeater set specified such that in a maximum length segment topology, only one such repeater set may exist between any two DTEs within a single collision domain.

Class II:
: A type of repeater set specified such that in a maximum length segment topology, only two such repeater sets may exist between any two DTEs within a single collision domain.

More complex topologies are possible in systems that do not use worst-case cable. See clause 29 for requirements.

27.1.2 Application perspective

This subclause states the broad objectives and assumptions underlying the specification defined through clause 27.

27.1.2.1 Objectives

a) Provide physical means for coupling two or more LAN segments at the Physical Layer.
b) Support interoperability of independently developed physical, electrical, and optical interfaces.
c) Provide a communication channel with a mean bit error rate, at the physical service interface equivalent to that for the attached PHY.
d) Provide for ease of installation and service.
e) Ensure that fairness of DTE access is not compromised.
f) Provide for low-cost networks, as related to both equipment and cabling.
g) Make use of building wiring appropriate for the supported PHYs and telephony wiring practices.

27.1.2.2 Compatibility considerations

All implementations of the repeater set shall be compatible at the MDI. The repeater set is defined to provide compatibility among devices designed by different manufacturers. Designers are free to implement circuitry within the repeater set in an application-dependent manner provided the appropriate PHY specifications are met.

27.1.2.2.1 Internal segment compatibility

Implementations of the repeater set that contain a MAC layer for network management or other purposes, irrespective of whether they are connected through an exposed repeater port or are internally ported, shall conform to the requirements of clause 30 on that port if repeater management is implemented.

27.1.3 Relationship to PHY

A close relationship exists between clause 27 and the PHY clauses, clause 23 for the 100BASE-T4 PHY and clauses 24 to 26 for the 100BASE-X PHYs. The PHY's PMA, PCS, and MDI specification provide the actual medium attachment, including drivers, receivers, and Medium Interface Connectors for the various supported media. The repeater clause does not define a new PHY; it utilizes the existing PHYs complete and without modification.

27.2 PMA interface messages

The messages between the repeater unit and the PMA in the PHY utilizes the PMA service interface defined in 23.3 and 24.3. The PMA service interface primitives are summarized below:

PMA_TYPE.indicate
PMA_UNITDATA.request
PMA_UNITDATA.indicate
PMA_CARRIER.indicate
PMA_LINK.indicate
PMA_RXERROR.indicate

27.3 Repeater functional specifications

A repeater set provides the means whereby data from any segment can be received under worst case noise, timing, and amplitude conditions and then retransmitted with timing and amplitude restored to all other attached segments. Retransmission of data occurs simultaneously with reception. If a collision occurs, the repeater set propagates the collision event throughout the network by transmitting a Jam signal. If an error is received by the repeater set, no attempt is made to correct it and it is propagated throughout the network by transmitting an invalid signal.

The repeater set provides the following functional capability to handle data flow between ports:

a) *Signal restoration.* Provides the ability to restore the timing and amplitude of the received signal prior to retransmission.
b) *Transmit function.* Provides the ability to output signals on the appropriate port and encoded appropriately for that port. Details of signal processing are described in the specifications for the PHYs.
c) *Receive function.* Provides the ability to receive input signals presented to the ports. Details of signal processing are described in the specifications for the PHYs.
d) *Data-Handling function.* Provides the ability to transfer code-elements between ports in the absence of a collision.
e) *Received Event-Handling requirement.* Provides the ability to derive a carrier signal from the input signals presented to the ports.
f) *Collision-Handling function.* Provides the ability to detect the simultaneous reception of frames at two or more ports and then to propagate a Jam message to all connected ports.
g) *Error-Handling function.* Provides the ability to prevent substandard links from generating streams of false carrier and interfering with other links.

h) *Partition function.* Provides the ability to prevent a malfunctioning port from generating an excessive number of consecutive collisions and indefinitely disrupting data transmission on the network.
i) *Receive Jabber function.* Provides the ability to interrupt the reception of abnormally long streams of input data.

27.3.1 Repeater functions

The repeater set shall provide the Signal Restoration, Transmit, Receive, Data Handling, Received Event Handling, Collision Handling, Error Handling, Partition, and Receive Jabber functions. The repeater is transparent to all network acquisition activity and to all DTEs. The repeater will not alter the basic fairness criterion for all DTEs to access the network or weigh it toward any DTE or group of DTEs regardless of network location.

The Transmit and Receive functional requirements are specified by the PHY clauses, clause 23 for 100BASE-T4 and clauses 24 to 26 for 100BASE-X.

27.3.1.1 Signal restoration functional requirements

27.3.1.1.1 Signal amplification

The repeater set (including its integral PHYs) shall ensure that the amplitude characteristics of the signals at the MDI outputs of the repeater set are within the tolerances of the specification for the appropriate PHY type. Therefore, any loss of signal-to-noise ratio due to cable loss and noise pickup is regained at the output of the repeater set as long as the incoming data is within system specification.

27.3.1.1.2 Signal wave-shape restoration

The repeater set (including its integral PHYs) shall ensure that the wave-shape characteristics of the signals at the MDI outputs of a repeater set are within the specified tolerance for the appropriate PHY type. Therefore, any loss of wave-shape due to PHYs and media distortion is restored at the output of the repeater set.

27.3.1.1.3 Signal retiming

The repeater set (including its integral PHYs) shall ensure that the timing of the encoded data output at the MDI outputs of a repeater set are within the specified tolerance for the appropriate PHY type. Therefore, any receive jitter from the media is removed at the output of the repeater set.

27.3.1.2 Data-handling functional requirements

27.3.1.2.1 Data frame forwarding

The repeater set shall ensure that the data frame received on a single input port is distributed to all other output ports in a manner appropriate for the PHY type of that port. The data frame is that portion of the packet after the SFD and before the end-of-frame delimiter. The only exceptions to this rule are when contention exists among any of the ports, when the receive port is partitioned as defined in 27.3.1.6, when the receive port is in the Jabber state as defined in 27.3.1.7, or when the receive port is in the Link Unstable state as defined in 27.3.1.5.1. Between unpartitioned ports, the rules for collision handling (see 27.3.1.4) take precedence.

27.3.1.2.2 Received code violations

The repeater set shall ensure that any code violations received while forwarding a packet are propagated to all outgoing segments. These code violations shall be forwarded as received or replaced by bad_code (see 23.2.1.2) or /H/ (see 24.2.2.1) code-groups, as appropriate for the outgoing PHY type. Once a received code violation has been replaced by bad_code or the /H/ code-group, this substitution shall continue for the remainder of the packet regardless of its content. The only exception to this rule is when contention exists among any of the ports, where the rules for collision handling (see 27.3.1.4) then take precedence.

27.3.1.3 Received event-handling functional requirements

27.3.1.3.1 Received event handling

For all its ports, the repeater set shall implement a function (scarrier_present) that represents a received event. Received events include both the data frame and any encapsulation of the data frame such as Preamble, SFD and the code-groups /H/, /J/, /K/, bad_code, eop, /T/, /R/, etc. A received event is exclusive of the IDLE pattern. Upon detection of scarrier_present from one port, the repeater set repeats all received signals in the data frame from that port to the other port (or ports) as described in figure 27-2.

27.3.1.3.2 Preamble regeneration

The repeater set shall output preamble as appropriate for the outgoing PHY type followed by the SFD.

27.3.1.3.3 Start-of-packet propagation delay

The start-of-packet propagation delay for a repeater set is the time delay between the start of the packet (see 24.6 and 23.11.3) on its repeated-from (input) port to the start of the packet on its repeated-to (output) port (or ports). This parameter is referred to as the SOP delay. The maximum value of this delay is constrained by table 27-2.

27.3.1.3.4 Start-of-packet variability

The start-of-packet variability for a repeater set is defined as the total worst-case difference between start-of-packet propagation delays for successive packets separated by 104 bit times (BT) or less at the same input port. The variability shall be less than or equal to those specified in table 27-1.

Table 27-1—Start-of-packet variability

Input port type	Variability (BT)
100BASE-FX	7.0
100BASE-TX	7.0
100BASE-T4	8.0

27.3.1.4 Collision-handling functional requirements

27.3.1.4.1 Collision detection

The repeater performs collision detection by monitoring all its enabled input ports for received events. When the repeater detects received events on more than one input port, it shall enter a collision state and transmit the Jam message to all of its output ports.

27.3.1.4.2 Jam generation

While a collision is occurring between any of its ports, the repeater unit shall transmit the Jam message to all of the PMAs to which it is connected. The Jam message shall be transmitted in accordance with the repeater state diagram in figure 27-4 and figure 27-5.

27.3.1.4.3 Collision-jam propagation delay

The start-of-collision Jam propagation delay for a repeater set is the time delay between the start of the second packet input signals to arrive at its port and the start of Jam (see 24.6 and 23.11) out on all ports. This parameter is referred to as the SOJ delay. The delay shall be constrained by table 27-2.

Table 27-2—Start-of-packet propagation and start-of-collision Jam propagation delays

Class I repeater	Class II repeater with all ports TX/FX	Class II repeater with any port T4
SOP + SOJ ≤ 140 BT	SOP ≤ 46 BT, SOJ ≤ 46 BT	SOP+SOJ ≤ 67 BT

27.3.1.4.4 Cessation-of-collision Jam propagation delay

The cessation-of-collision Jam propagation delay for a repeater set is the time delay between the end of the packet (see 24.6 and 23.11.3) that creates a state such that Jam should end at a port and the end of Jam (see 24.6 and 23.11.3) at that port. The states of the input signals that should cause Jam to end are covered in detail in the repeater state diagrams. This parameter is referred to as the EOJ delay. The delay shall be constrained by table 27-3.

Table 27-3—Cessation-of-collision Jam propagation delay

Class I repeater	Class II repeater
EOJ ≤ SOP	EOJ ≤ SOP

27.3.1.5 Error-handling functional requirements

27.3.1.5.1 100BASE-X carrier integrity functional requirements

In 100BASE-TX and 100BASE-FX systems, it is desirable that the repeater set protect the network from some transient fault conditions that would disrupt network communications. Potential likely causes of such conditions are DTE and repeater power-up and power-down transients, cable disconnects, and faulty wiring.

Each 100BASE-TX and 100BASE-FX repeater PMA interface shall contain a self-interrupt capability, as described in figure 27-9, to prevent a segment's spurious carrier activity from reaching the repeater unit and hence propagating through the network.

The repeater PMA interface shall count consecutive false carrier events. A false carrier event is defined as a carrier event that does not begin with a valid start-of-stream delimiter (see 24.2.2.1.4). The count shall be incremented on each false carrier event and shall be reset on reception of a valid carrier event. In addition, each PMA interface shall contain a false carrier timer, which is enabled at the beginning of a false carrier event and reset at the conclusion of such an event. A repeater unit shall transmit the Jam message to all of the PMAs to which it is connected for the duration of the false carrier event or until the duration of the event exceeds the time specified by the false_carrier_timer (see 27.3.2.1.4), whichever is shorter. The Jam message shall be transmitted in accordance with the repeater state diagram in figure 27-4 and figure 27-5. The LINK UNSTABLE condition shall be detected when the False Carrier Count exceeds the value FCCLimit (see 27.3.2.1.1) or the duration of a false carrier event exceeds the time specified by the false_carrier_timer. In addition, the LINK UNSTABLE condition shall be detected upon power-up reset.

Upon detection of LINK UNSTABLE, the port shall perform the following:

a) Inhibit sending further messages to the repeater unit.
b) Inhibit sending further output messages from the repeater unit.
c) Continue to monitor activity on that PMA interface.

The repeater shall exit the LINK UNSTABLE condition when one of the following is met:

a) The repeater has detected no activity (Idle) for more than the time specified by ipg_timer plus idle_timer (see 27.3.2.1.4) on port X.
b) A valid carrier event with a duration greater than the time specified by valid_carrier_timer (see 27.3.2.1.4) has been received, preceded by no activity (Idle) for more than the time specified by ipg_timer (see 27.3.2.1.4) on port X.

27.3.1.5.2 Speed handling

If the PHY has the capability of detecting speeds other than 100 Mb/s, then the repeater set shall have the capability of blocking the flow of non-100 Mb/s signals. The incorporation of 100 Mb/s and 10 Mb/s repeater functionality within a single repeater set is beyond the scope of this standard.

27.3.1.6 Partition functional requirements

In large multisegment networks it may be desirable that the repeater set protect the network from some fault conditions that would disrupt network communications. A potentially likely cause of this condition could be due to a cable fault.

Each repeater PMA interface shall contain a self-interrupt capability, as described in figure 27-8, to prevent a faulty segment's carrier activity from reaching the repeater unit and hence propagating through the network. The repeater PMA interface shall count consecutive collisions. The count shall be incremented on each transmission that suffers a collision and shall be reset on a successful transmission. If this count exceeds the value CCLimit (see 27.3.2.1.1) the Partition condition shall be detected.

Upon detection of Partition, the port shall perform the following:

a) Inhibit sending further input messages to the repeater unit.
b) Continue to output messages from the repeater unit.
c) Continue to monitor activity on that PMA interface.

The repeater shall reset the Partition function when one of the following conditions is met:

a) On power-up reset.
b) The repeater has detected activity on the port for more than the number of bits specified for no_collision_timer (see 27.3.2.1.4) without incurring a collision.

27.3.1.7 Receive jabber functional requirements

Each repeater PMA interface shall contain a self-interrupt capability, as described in figure 27-7, to prevent an illegally long reception of data from reaching the repeater unit. The repeater PMA interface shall provide a window of duration jabber_timer bit times (see 27.3.2.1.4) during which the input messages may be passed on to other repeater unit functions. If a reception exceeds this duration, the jabber condition shall be detected.

Upon detection of jabber, the port shall perform the following:

a) Inhibit sending further input messages to the repeater unit.
b) Inhibit sending further output messages from the repeater unit.

The repeater PMA interface shall reset the Jabber function and re-enable data transmission and reception when either one of the following conditions is met:

a) On power-up reset.
b) When carrier is no longer detected.

27.3.2 Detailed repeater functions and state diagrams

A precise algorithmic definition is given in this subclause, providing a complete procedural model for the operation of a repeater, in the form of state diagrams. Note that whenever there is any apparent ambiguity concerning the definition of repeater operation, the state diagrams should be consulted for the definitive statement.

The model presented in this subclause is intended as a primary specification of the functions to be provided by any repeater unit. It is important to distinguish, however, between the model and a real implementation. The model is optimized for simplicity and clarity of presentation, while any realistic implementation should place heavier emphasis on such constraints as efficiency and suitability to a particular implementation technology.

It is the functional behavior of any repeater unit implementation that shall match the standard, not the internal structure. The internal details of the procedural model are useful only to the extent that they help specify the external behavior clearly and precisely. For example, the model uses a separate Receive Port Jabber state diagram for each port. However, in actual implementation, the hardware may be shared.

The notation used in the state diagram follows the conventions of 1.2.1. Note that transitions shown without source states are evaluated at the completion of every state and take precedence over other transition conditions.

27.3.2.1 State diagram variables

27.3.2.1.1 Constants

CCLimit

The number of consecutive collisions that must occur before a segment is partitioned.

Values: Positive integer greater than 60.

FCCLimit

The number of consecutive False Carrier events that must occur before a segment is isolated.

Value: 2.

27.3.2.1.2 Variables

activity(Port designation)

Indicates port activity status. The repeater core effects a summation of this variable received from all its attached ports and responds accordingly.

Values: 0; no frame or packet activity at any port.
1; exactly 1 port of the repeater set has frame or packet activity input.
>1; more than 1 port of the repeater set has frame or packet activity input. Alternately, one or more ports has detected a carrier that is not valid.

all_data_sent

Indicates if all received data frame bits or code-groups from the current frame have been sent. During or after collision the all_data_sent variable follows the inverse of the carrier of port N.

Values: true; all received data frame bits or code-groups have been sent.
false; all received data frame bits or code-groups have not been sent.

begin

The Interprocess flag controlling state diagram initialization values.

Values: true
false

carrier_status(X)

Signal received from PMA; indicates the status of sourced Carrier input at port X.

Values: ON; the carrier_status parameter of the PMA_CARRIER.indicate primitive for port X is ON.
OFF; the carrier_status parameter of the PMA_CARRIER.indicate primitive for port X is OFF.

data_ready

Indicates if the repeater has detected and/or decoded the MAC SFD and is ready to send the received data.

Values: true; the MAC SFD has been detected and/or decoded.
false; the MAC SFD has not been detected nor decoded.

force_jam(X)

Flag from Carrier Integrity state diagram for port X, which determines whether all ports should transmit Jam.

Values: true; the Carrier Integrity Monitor has determined that it requires all ports be forced to transmit Jam.
false; the Carrier Integrity Monitor has determined that it does not require all ports be forced to transmit Jam.

Default: for T4 ports: false

isolate(X)

Flag from Carrier Integrity state diagram for port X, which determines whether a port should be enabled or disabled.

Values: true; the Carrier Integrity Monitor has determined the port should be disabled.
false; the Carrier Integrity Monitor has determined the port should be enabled.

jabber(X)

Flag from Receive Timer state diagram for port X which indicates that the port has received excessive length activity.

Values: true; port has exceeded the continuous activity limit.
false; port has not exceeded the continuous activity limit.

link_status(X)

Signal received from PMA; indicates link status for port X (see 23.1.4.5 and 24.3.1.5).

Values: OK; the link_status parameter of the PMA_LINK.indicate primitive for port X is OK.
READY; the link_status parameter of the PMA_LINK.indicate primitive for port X is READY.
FAIL; the link_status parameter of the PMA_LINK.indicate primitive for port X is FAIL.

opt(X)

Implementation option. Either value may be chosen for repeater implementation.

Values: true; port will emit the JamT4 pattern in response to collision conditions.
false; port will append Jam pattern after preamble and SFD in response to collision conditions.

OUT(X)

Type of output repeater is sourcing at port X.

Values: Idle; repeater is transmitting an IDLE pattern as described by 23.4.1.2 or 24.2.2.1.2.
In(N); repeater is transmitting rx_code_bit(s) as received from port (N) except /J/K/ (see 24.3.4.2).
Pream; repeater is sourcing preamble pattern as defined by the PMA or PCS of the port type (see 23.2.1.2, 24.2.2.2, figure 23-6, and figure 24-5).
Data; repeater is transmitting data frame on port X. This data represents the original MAC source data field, properly encoded for the PHY type (see 23.2.1.2 and 24.2.2.2).
Jam; repeater is sourcing well formed arbitrary data encodings, excluding SFD, to the port PMA.
JamX; repeater is sourcing the pattern 010101... repetitively on port X.
JamT4; repeater is sourcing the pattern +–+–... repetitively on port X
SFD; repeater is sourcing the Start Frame Delimiter on port X encoded as defined by the appropriate PHY (see 23.2.3 and figure 24-5).
/J/K/; repeater is sourcing the code-groups /J/K/ as defined by the PMA on port X (see 24.2.2.1.4).
/T/R/; repeater is sourcing the code-groups /T/R/ as defined by the PMA on port X (see 24.2.2.1.5).
DF; repeater is sourcing the data frame of the packet on port X. These are code elements originating on port N exclusive of EOP1-5, SOSA, and SOSB (see 23.2.3 and 23.2.4).
EOP; repeater is sourcing end-of-packet delimiter (EOP1-5) as defined by the appropriate PMA on port X (see 23.2.1.2 and 23.2.4.1).
bad_code; repeater is sourcing bad_code as defined by the PMA of the transmit port (see 23.2.4.1).
tx_err; repeater is sourcing a transmit error code element, either bad_code (see 23.2.4.1) or the code-group /H/ (see 24.2.2.1) as appropriate to the outgoing PHY type.

partition(X)

Flag from Partition state diagram for port X, which determines whether a port receive path should be enabled or disabled.

Values: true; port has exceeded the consecutive collision limit.
false; port has not exceeded the consecutive collision limit.

rxerror_status(X)

Signal received from PMA; indicates if port X has detected an error condition from the PMA (see 23.3.7.1 and figure 24-14). The repeater need not propagate this error condition during collision events.

Values: ERROR; the rxerror_status parameter of the PMA_RXERROR.indicate primitive for port X is ERROR.
NO_ERROR; the rxerror_status parameter of the PMA_RXERROR.indicate primitive for port X is NO_ERROR.

RX_ER(X)

Signal received from PCS; indicates if port X has detected an error condition from the PCS (see 23.2.1.4, 24.2.3.2, figure 23-10, and figure 24-11). The repeater need not propagate this error condition during collision events.

Values: true; the PCS RX_ER signal for port X is asserted.
false; the PCS RX_ER signal for port X is negated.

scarrier_present(X)

Signal received from PMA; indicates the status of sourced Carrier input at port X.

Values: true; the carrier_status parameter of the PMA_CARRIER.indicate primitive for port X is ON.
false; the carrier_status parameter of the PMA_CARRIER.indicate primitive for port X is OFF.

source_type(X)

Signal received from PMA; indicates PMA type for port X. The first port to assert activity maintains the source type status for all transmitting port(s) until activity is deasserted. Repeaters may optionally force nonequality on comparisons using this variable. It must then follow the behavior of the state diagrams accordingly and meet all the delay parameters as applicable for the real implemented port type(s).

Values: FXTX; the pma_type parameter of the PMA_TYPE.indicate primitive for port X is X.
T4; the pma_type parameter of the PMA_TYPE.indicate primitive for port X is T4.

27.3.2.1.3 Functions

command(X)

A function that passes an inter-process flag to all ports specified by X.

Values: copy; indicates that the repeater core has summed the activity levels of its active ports and is in the ACTIVE state.
collision; indicates that the repeater core has summed the activity levels of its active ports and is in the JAM state.
quiet; indicates that the repeater core has summed the activity levels of its active ports and is in the IDLE state.

port(Test)

A function that returns the designation of a port passing the test condition. For example, port(activity = scarrier_present) returns the designation: X for a port for which scarrier_present = true. If multiple ports meet the test condition, the Port function will be assigned one and only one of the acceptable values.

27.3.2.1.4 Timers

All timers operate in the same fashion. A timer is reset and starts timing upon entering a state where “start x_timer” is asserted. At time “x” after the timer has been started, “x_timer_done” is asserted and remains asserted until the timer is reset. At all other times, “x_timer_not_done” is asserted.

When entering a state where "start x_timer" is asserted, the timer is reset and restarted even if the entered state is the same as the exited state.

The timers used in the repeater state diagrams are defined as follows:

false_carrier_timer

Timer for length of false carrier (27.3.1.5.1) that must be present before the ISOLATION state is entered. The timer is done when it reaches 450 – 500 BT.

idle_timer

Timer for length of time without carrier activity that must be present before the ISOLATION state is exited (27.3.1.5.1). The timer is done when it reaches 33 000 ± 25% BT.

ipg_timer

Timer for length of time without carrier activity that must be present before carrier integrity tests (27.3.1.5.1) are re-enabled. The timer is done when it reaches 64 – 86 BT.

jabber_timer

Timer for length of carrier which must be present before the Jabber state is entered (27.3.1.7). The timer is done when it reaches 40 000 – 75 000 BT.

no_collision_timer

Timer for length of packet without collision before the Partition state is exited (27.3.1.6). The timer is done when it reaches 450 – 560 BT.

valid_carrier_timer

Timer for length of valid carrier that must be present before the Isolation state is exited (27.3.1.5.1). The timer is done when it reaches 450 – 500 BT.

27.3.2.1.5 Counters

CC(X)

Consecutive port collision count for port X. Partitioning occurs on a terminal count of CCLimit being reached.

Values: Non-negative integers up to a terminal count of CCLimit.

FCC(X)

False Carrier Counter for port X. Isolation occurs on a terminal count of FCCLimit being reached.

Values: Non-negative integers up to a terminal count of FCCLimit.

27.3.2.1.6 Port designation

Ports are referred to by number. Port information is obtained by replacing the X in the desired function with the number of the port of interest. Ports are referred to in general as follows:

X

Generic port designator. When X is used in a state diagram, its value is local to that diagram and not global to the set of state diagrams.

N

Is defined by the Port function on exiting the IDLE or JAM states of figure 27-2. It indicates a port that caused the exit from these states.

ALL

Indicates all repeater ports are to be considered. All ports shall meet test conditions in order for the test to pass.

ALLXN

Indicates all ports except N should be considered. All ports considered shall meet the test conditions in order for the test to pass.

ANY

Indicates all ports are to be considered. One or more ports shall meet the test conditions in order for the test to pass.

27.3.2.2 State diagrams

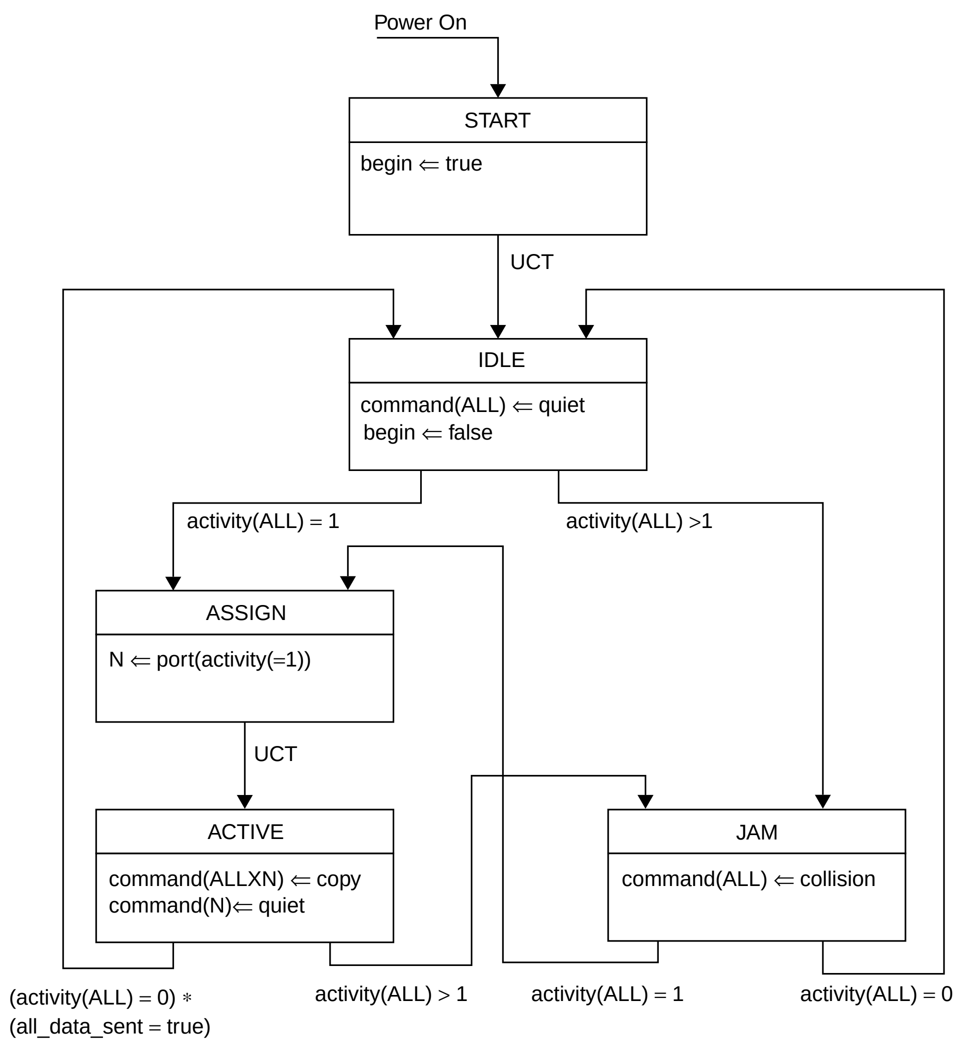


Figure 27-2—Repeater core state diagram

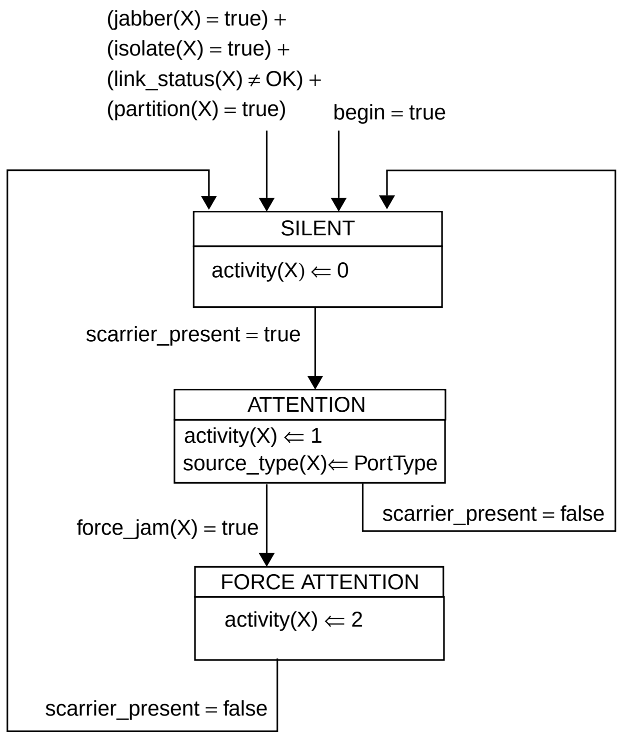


Figure 27-3—Receive state diagram for port X

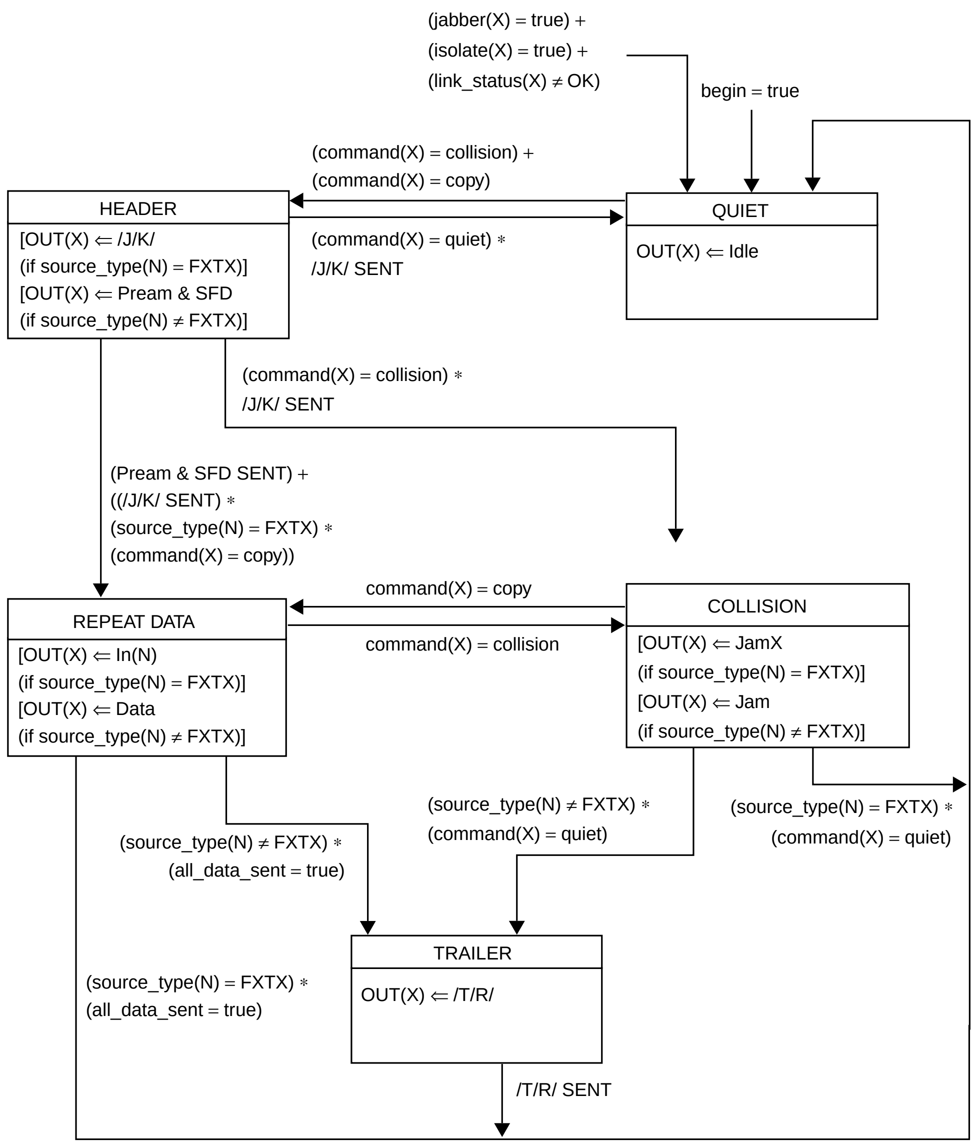


Figure 27-4—100BASE-TX and 100BASE-FX transmit state diagram for port X

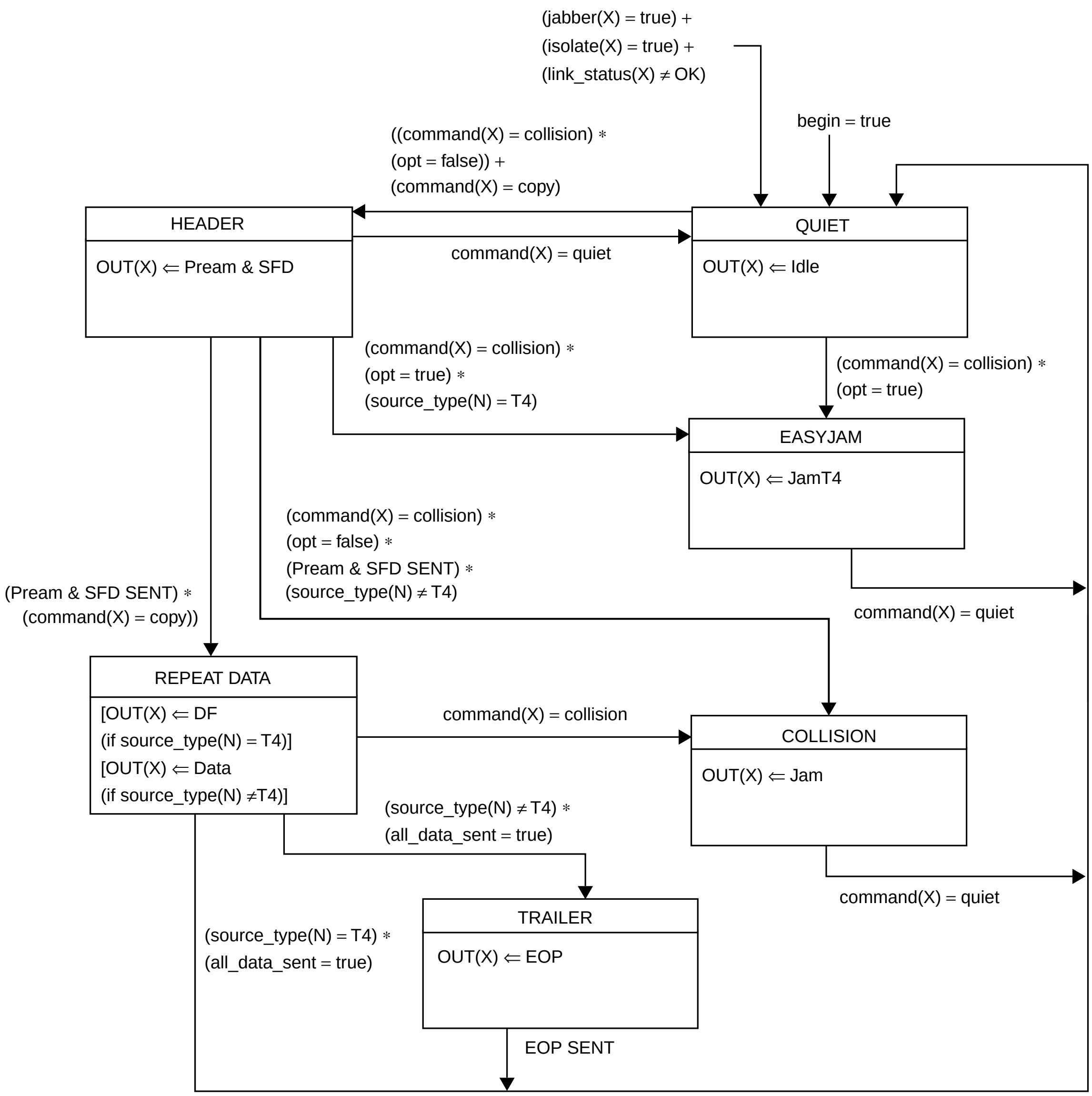


Figure 27-5—100BASE-T4 transmit state diagram for port X

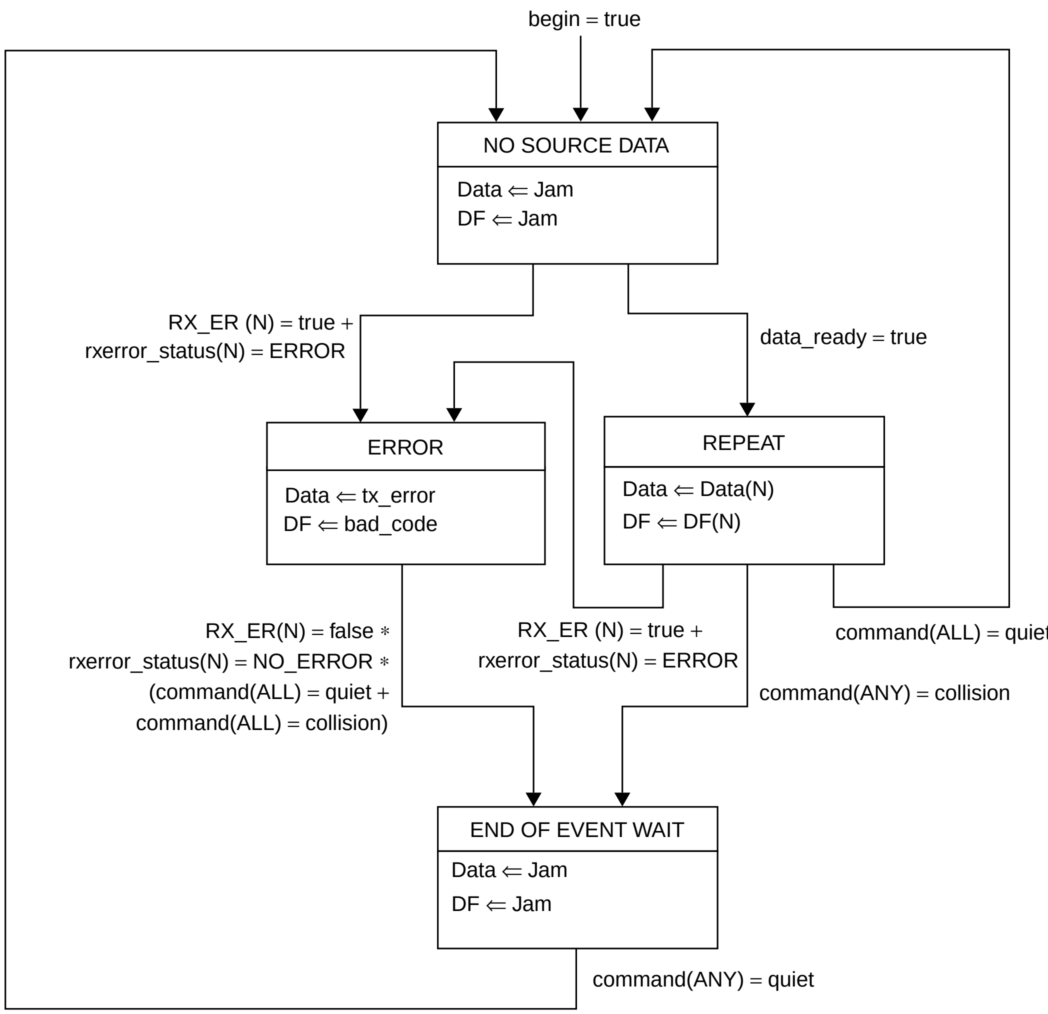


Figure 27-6—Repeater data-handler state diagram

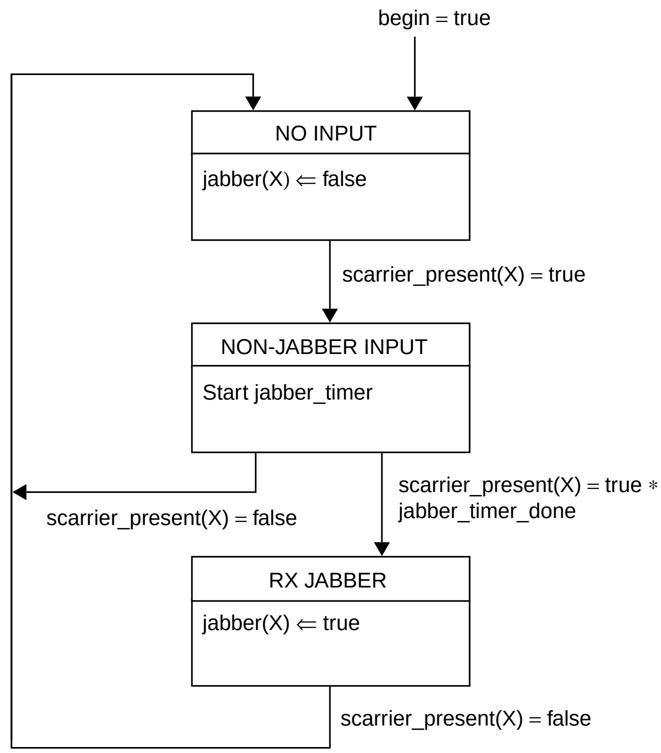


Figure 27-7—Receive timer state diagram for port X

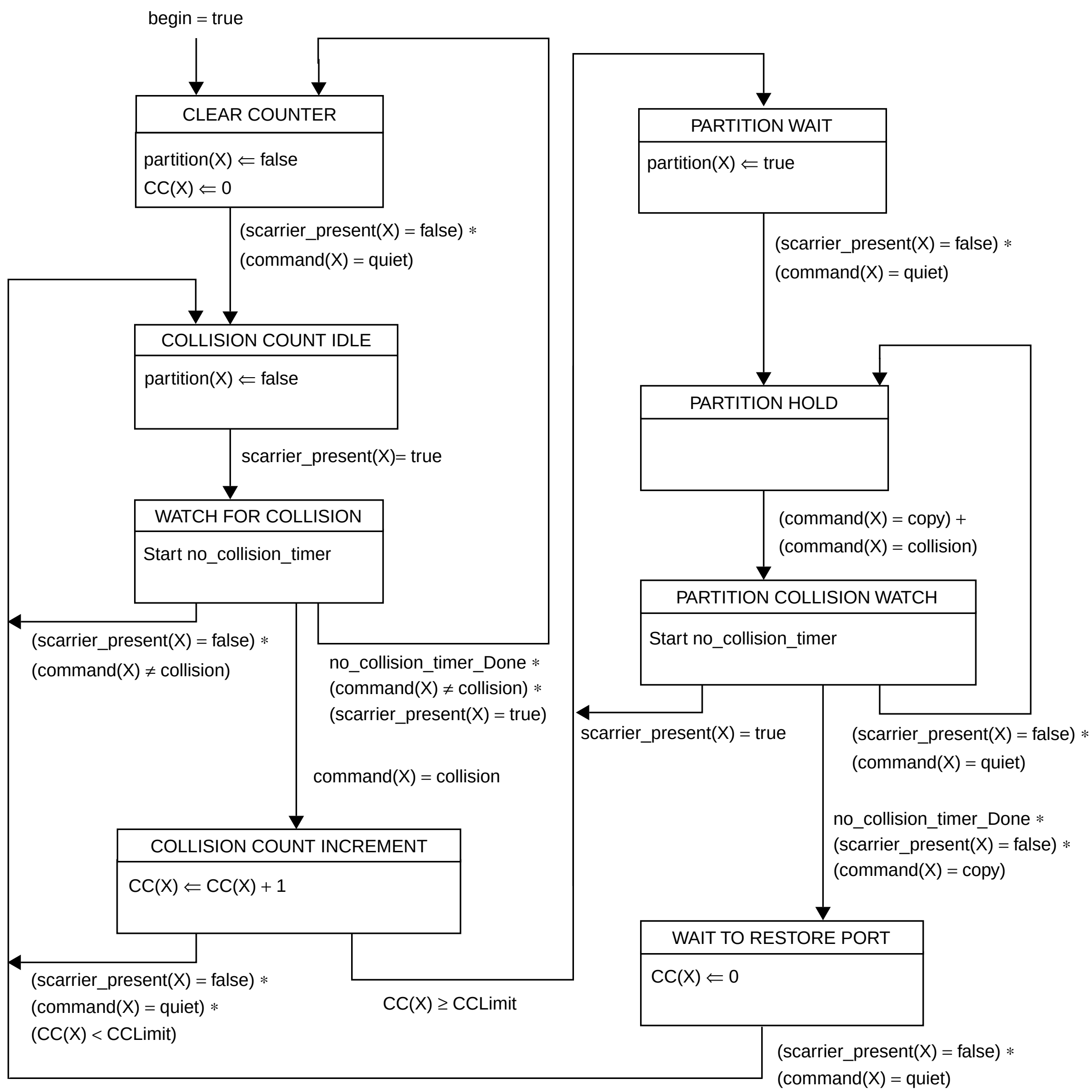


Figure 27-8—Partition state diagram for port X

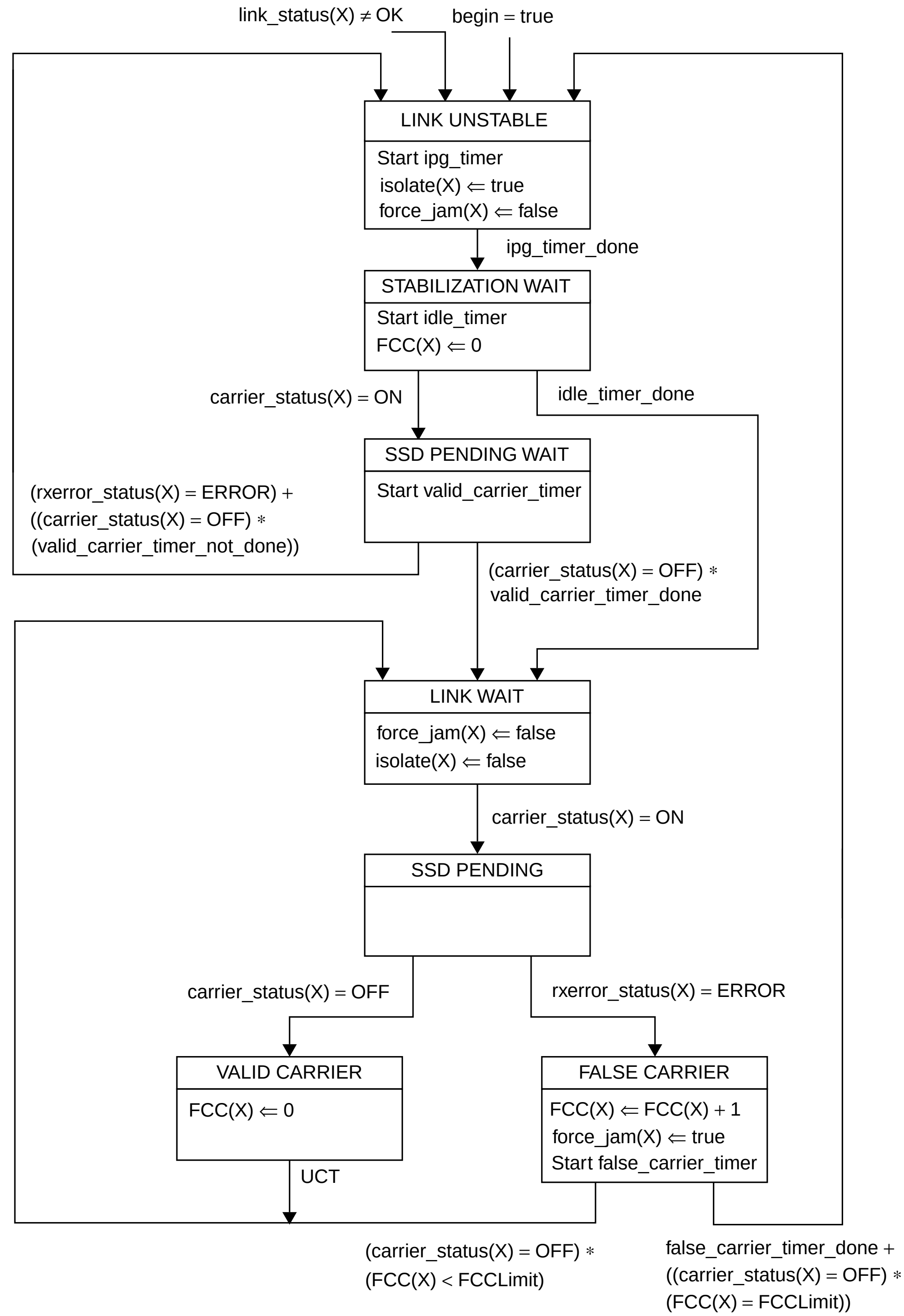


Figure 27-9—100BASE-X carrier integrity monitor state diagram for port X

27.4 Repeater electrical specifications

27.4.1 Electrical isolation

Network segments that have different isolation and grounding requirements shall have those requirements provided by the port-to-port isolation of the repeater set.

27.5 Environmental specifications

27.5.1 General safety

All equipment meeting this standard shall conform to IEC 950: 1991.

27.5.2 Network safety

This subclause sets forth a number of recommendations and guidelines related to safety concerns; the list is neither complete nor does it address all possible safety issues. The designer is urged to consult the relevant local, national, and international safety regulations to ensure compliance with the appropriate requirements.

LAN cable systems described in this subclause are subject to at least four direct electrical safety hazards during their installation and use. These hazards are as follows:

a) Direct contact between LAN components and power, lighting, or communications circuits.
b) Static charge buildup on LAN cables and components.
c) High-energy transients coupled onto the LAN cable system.
d) Voltage potential differences between safety grounds to which the various LAN components are connected.

Such electrical safety hazards must be avoided or appropriately protected against for proper network installation and performance. In addition to provisions for proper handling of these conditions in an operational system, special measures must be taken to ensure that the intended safety features are not negated during installation of a new network or during modification or maintenance of an existing network. Isolation requirements are defined in 27.5.3.

27.5.2.1 Installation

Sound installation practice, as defined by applicable local codes and regulations, shall be followed in every instance in which such practice is applicable.

27.5.2.2 Grounding

The safety ground, or chassis ground for the repeater set, shall be provided through the main ac power cord via the third wire ground as defined by applicable local codes and regulations. It is recommended that an external PHY to the repeater should also be mechanically grounded to the repeater unit through the power and ground signals in the MII connection and via the metal shell and shield of the MII connector if available.

If the MDI connector should provide a shield connection, the shield may be connected to the repeater safety ground. A network segment connected to the repeater set through the MDI may use a shield. If both ends of the network segment have a shielded MDI connector available, then the shield may be grounded at both ends according to local regulations and ISO/IEC 11801: 1995, and as long as the ground potential difference between both ends of the network segment is less than 1 V rms. The same rules apply towards an inter-repeater link between two repeaters. Multiple repeaters should reside on the same power main; if not, then it is highly recommended that the repeaters be connected via fiber.

WARNING—It is assumed that the equipment to which the repeater is attached is properly grounded and not left floating nor serviced by a “doubly insulated ac power distribution system.” The use of floating or insulated equipment, and the consequent implications for safety, are beyond the scope of this standard.

27.5.2.3 Installation and maintenance guidelines

During installation and maintenance of the cable plant, care should be taken to ensure that uninsulated network cable connectors do not make electrical contact with unintended conductors or ground.

27.5.3 Electrical isolation

There are two electrical power distribution environments to be considered that require different electrical isolation properties:

a) *Environment A.* When a LAN or LAN segment, with all its associated interconnected equipment, is entirely contained within a single low-voltage power distribution system and within a single building.
b) *Environment B.* When a LAN crosses the boundary between separate power distribution systems or the boundary of a single building.

27.5.3.1 Environment A requirements

Attachment of network segments via repeater sets requires electrical isolation of 500 V rms, one-minute withstand, between the segment and the protective ground of the repeater unit.

27.5.3.2 Environment B requirements

The attachment of network segments that cross environment B boundaries requires electrical isolation of 1500 V rms, one-minute withstand, between each segment and all other attached segments and also the protective ground of the repeater unit.

The requirements for interconnected electrically conducting LAN segments that are partially or fully external to a single building environment may require additional protection against lightning strike hazards. Such requirements are beyond the scope of this standard. It is recommended that the above situation be handled by the use of nonelectrically conducting segments (e.g., fiber optic).

It is assumed that any nonelectrically conducting segments will provide sufficient isolation within that media to satisfy the isolation requirements of environment B.

27.5.4 Reliability

A two-port repeater set shall be designed to provide a mean time between failure (MTBF) of at least 50 000 hours of continuous operation without causing a communications failure among stations attached to the network medium. Repeater sets with more than two ports shall add no more than 3.46×10^{-6} failures per hour for each additional port.

The repeater set electronics should be designed to minimize the probability of component failures within the repeater electronics that prevent communications among other PHYs on the individual segments. Connectors and other passive components comprising the means of connecting the repeater to the cable should be designed to minimize the probability of total network failure.

27.5.5 Environment

27.5.5.1 Electromagnetic emission

The repeater shall comply with applicable local and national codes for the limitation of electromagnetic interference.

27.5.5.2 Temperature and humidity

The repeater is expected to operate over a reasonable range of environmental conditions related to temperature, humidity, and physical handling (such as shock and vibration). Specific requirements and values for these parameters are considered to be beyond the scope of this standard.

It is recommended that manufacturers indicate in the literature associated with the repeater the operating environmental conditions to facilitate selection, installation, and maintenance.

27.6 Repeater labeling

It is required that each repeater (and supporting documentation) shall be labeled in a manner visible to the user with these parameters:

a) Crossover ports appropriate to the respective PHY should be marked with an X.
b) The repeater set class type should be labeled in the following manner:
   1) Class I: a Roman numeral “I” centered within a circle.
   2) Class II: a Roman numeral “II” centered within a circle.

Additionally it is recommended that each repeater (and supporting documentation) also be labeled in a manner visible to the user with at least these parameters:

a) Data rate capability in Mb/s
b) Any applicable safety warnings
c) Port type, i.e., 100BASE-TX and 100BASE-T4
d) Worst-case bit time delays between any two ports appropriate for
   1) Start-of-packet propagation delay
   2) Start-of-collision Jam propagation delay
   3) Cessation-of-collision Jam propagation delay

27.7 Protocol Implementation Conformance Statement (PICS) proforma for clause 27, Repeater for 100 Mb/s baseband networks[26]

27.7.1 Introduction

The supplier of a protocol implementation that is claimed to conform to IEEE Std 802.3u-1995, Repeater for 100 Mb/s baseband networks, shall complete the following Protocol Implementation Conformance Statement (PICS) proforma.

27.7.2 Identification

27.7.2.1 Implementation identification

Supplier	
Contact point for enquiries about the PICS	
Implementation Name(s) and Version(s)	
Other information necessary for full identification—e.g., name(s) and version(s) for machines and/or operating systems; System Names(s)	
NOTES 1—Only the first three items are required for all implementations; other information may be completed as appropriate in meeting the requirements for the identification. 2—The terms Name and Version should be interpreted appropriately to correspond with a supplier's terminology (e.g., Type, Series, Model).	

27.7.2.2 Protocol summary

Identification of protocol standard	IEEE Std 802.3u-1995, Repeater for 100 Mb/s baseband networks
Identification of amendments and corrigenda to this PICS proforma that have been completed as part of this PICS	
Have any Exception items been required? No [ ] Yes [ ] (See clause 21; the answer Yes means that the implementation does not conform to IEEE Std 802.3u-1995.)	
Date of Statement	

[26] *Copyright release for PICS proformas:* Users of this standard may freely reproduce the PICS proforma in this annex so that it can be used for its intended purpose and may further publish the completed PICS.

27.7.3 Major capabilities/options

Item	Feature	Subclause	Status	Support	Value/Comment
*FXP	Repeater supports 100BASEFX connections	27.1.2.2	O		
*TXP	Repeater supports 100BASETX connections	27.1.2.2	O		
*T4P	Repeater supports 100BASET4 connections	27.1.2.2	O		
*CLI	Repeater meets Class I delays	27.1.1.3	O		
*CLII	Repeater meets Class II delays	27.1.1.3	O		
*PHYS	PHYs capable of detecting non 100BASE-T signals	27.3.1.5.2	O		

In addition, the following predicate name is defined for use when different implementations from the set above have common parameters:

*XP:FXP or TXP

27.7.4 PICS proforma tables for the Repeater for 100 Mb/s baseband networks

27.7.4.1 Compatibility considerations

Item	Feature	Subclause	Status	Support	Value/Comment
CC1	100BASE-FX port compatible at the MDI	27.1.2.2	FXP:M		
CC2	100BASE-TX port compatible at the MDI	27.1.2.2	TXP:M		
CC3	100BASE-T4 port compatible at the MDI	27.1.2.2	T4P:M		
CC4	Internal segment compatibility	27.1.2.2.1	M		Internal port meets clause 29 when repeater management implemented

27.7.4.2 Repeater functions

Item	Feature	Subclause	Status	Support	Value/Comment
RF1	Signal Restoration	27.3.1	M		
RF2	Data Handling	27.3.1	M		
RF3	Received Event Handling	27.3.1	M		
RF4	Collision Handling	27.3.1	M		
RF5	Error Handling	27.3.1	M		
RF6	Partition	27.3.1	M		
RF7	Received Jabber	27.3.1	M		

27.7.4.3 Signal restoration function

Item	Feature	Subclause	Status	Support	Value/Comment
SR1	Output amplitude as required by 100BASE-FX	27.3.1.1.1	FXP:M		
SR2	Output amplitude as required by 100BASE-TX	27.3.1.1.1	TXP:M		
SR3	Output amplitude as required by 100BASE-T4	27.3.1.1.1	T4P:M		
SR4	Output signal wave-shape as required by 100BASE-FX	27.3.1.1.2	FXP:M		
SR5	Output signal wave-shape as required by 100BASE-TX	27.3.1.1.2	TXP:M		
SR6	Output signal wave-shape as required by 100BASE-T4	27.3.1.1.2	T4P:M		
SR7	Output data timing as required by 100BASE-FX	27.3.1.1.3	FXP:M		
SR8	Output data timing as required by 100BASE-TX	27.3.1.1.3	TXP:M		
SR9	Output data timing as required by 100BASE-T4	27.3.1.1.3	T4P:M		

27.7.4.4 Data-Handling function

Item	Feature	Subclause	Status	Support	Value/Comment
DH1	Data frames forwarded to all ports except receiving port	27.3.1.2.1	M		
DH2	Data frames transmitted as appropriate for 100BASE-FX	27.3.1.2.1	FXP:M		
DH3	Data frames transmitted as appropriate for 100BASE-TX	27.3.1.2.1	TXP:M		
DH4	Data frames transmitted as appropriate for 100BASE-T4	27.3.1.2.1	T4P:M		
DH5	Code Violations forwarded to all transmitting ports	27.3.1.2.2	M		
DH6	Code Violations forwarded as received	27.3.1.2.2	O.1		
DH7	Received Code Violation forwarded as /H/ or as received	27.3.1.2.2	XP:O.1		
DH8	Received Code Violation forwarded as bad_code or as received	27.3.1.2.2	T4P:O.1		
DH9	Code element substitution for remainder of packet after received Code Violation	27.3.1.2.2	M		

27.7.4.5 Receive Event-Handling function

Item	Feature	Subclause	Status	Support	Value/Comment
RE1	scarrier_present detect implemented	27.3.1.3.1	M		
RE2	Repeat all received signals	27.3.1.3.1	M		
RE3	Preamble encoded as required by 100BASE-FX	27.3.1.3.2	FXP:M		
RE4	Preamble encoded as required by 100BASE-TX	27.3.1.3.2	TXP:M		
RE5	Preamble encoded as required by 100BASE-T4	27.3.1.3.2	T4P:M		
RE6	Start-of-packet propagation delay, Class I repeater	27.3.1.3.3	CLI:M		
RE7	Start-of-packet propagation delay, Class II repeater	27.3.1.3.3	CLII:M		

Item	Feature	Subclause	Status	Support	Value/Comment
RE8	Start-of-packet variability for 100BASE-FX input port	27.3.1.3.4	FXP:M		7.0 BT
RE8	Start-of-packet variability for 100BASE-TX input port	27.3.1.3.4	TXP:M		7.0 BT
RE9	Start-of-packet variability for 100BASE-T4 input port	27.3.1.3.4	T4P:M		8.0 BT

27.7.4.6 Collision-Handling function

Item	Feature	Subclause	Status	Support	Value/Comment
CO1	Collision Detection	27.3.1.4.1	M		Receive event on more than one port
CO2	Jam Generation	27.3.1.4.2	M		Transmit Jam message while collision is detected
CO3	Collision-Jam Propagation delay, Class I repeater.	27.3.1.4.3	CLI:M		SOP + SOJ ≤ 140 BT
CO4	Collision-Jam Propagation delay, Class II repeater with any port T4	27.3.1.4.3	CLII:M		SOP + SOJ ≤ 67 BT
CO5	Collision-Jam Propagation delay, Class II repeater, all TX/FX ports	27.3.1.4.3	CLII:M		SOP ≤ 46, SOJ ≤ 46 BT
CO6	Cessation of Collision Propagation delay, Class I repeater	27.3.1.4.4	CLI:M		EOJ ≤ SOP
CO7	Cessation of Collision Propagation delay, Class II repeater	27.3.1.4.4	CLII:M		EOJ ≤ SOP

27.7.4.7 Error-Handling function

Item	Feature	Subclause	Status	Support	Value/Comment
EH1	Carrier Integrity function implementation	27.3.1.5.1	XP:M		Self-interrupt of data reception
EH2	False carrier count for Link Unstable detection	27.3.1.5.1	XP:M		False carrier count in excess of FCCLimit
EH3	False carrier count reset	27.3.1.5.1	XP:M		Count reset on valid carrier
EH4	False carrier timer for Link Unstable detection	27.3.1.5.1	XP:M		False carrier of length in excess of false_carrier_timer
EH5	Jam message duration	27.3.1.5.1	XP:M		Equals duration of false carrier event, but not greater than duration of false_carrier_timer
EH6	Link Unstable detection	27.3.1.5.1	XP:M		False Carrier count exceed FCCLimit or False carrier exceeds the false_carrier_timer or power-up reset
EH7	Messages sent to repeater unit in Link Unstable state	27.3.1.5.1	XP:M		Inhibited sending messages to repeater unit
EH8	Messages sent from repeater unit in Link Unstable state	27.3.1.5.1	XP:M		Inhibited sending output messages

Item	Feature	Subclause	Status	Support	Value/Comment
EH9	Monitoring activity on PMA interface in Link Unstable state	27.3.1.5.1	XP:M		Continue monitoring activity at PMA interface
EH10	Reset of Link Unstable state	27.3.1.5.1	XP:M		No activity for more than ipg_timer plus idle_timer or Valid carrier event of duration greater than valid_carrier_timer preceded by Idle of duration greater than ipg_timer
EH11	Block flow of non-100 Mb/s signals	27.3.1.5.2	PHYS:M		

27.7.4.8 Partition function

Item	Feature	Subclause	Status	Support	Value/Comment
PA1	Partition function implementation	27.3.1.6	M		Self-interrupt of data reception
PA2	Consecutive collision count for entry into partition state	27.3.1.6	M		Consecutive collision in excess of CCLimit
PA3	Consecutive collision counter incrementing	27.3.1.6	M		Count incremented on each transmission that suffers a collision
PA4	Consecutive collision counter reset	27.3.1.6	M		Count reset on successful collision
PA5	Messages sent to repeater unit in Partition state	27.3.1.6	M		Inhibited sending messages to repeater unit
PA6	Messages sent from repeater unit in Partition state	27.3.1.6	M		Continue sending output messages
PA7	Monitoring activity on PMA interface in Partition state	27.3.1.6	M		Continue monitoring activity at PMA interface
PA8	Reset of Partition state	27.3.1.6	M		Power-up reset or Detecting activity for greater than duration no_collision_timer without a collision

27.7.4.9 Receive Jabber function

Item	Feature	Subclause	Status	Support	Value/Comment
RJ1	Receive Jabber function implementation	27.3.1.7	M		Self-interrupt of data reception
RJ2	Excessive receive duration timer for Receive Jabber detection	27.3.1.7	M		Reception duration in excess of jabber_timer
RJ3	Messages sent to repeater unit in Receive Jabber state	27.3.1.7	M		Inhibit sending input messages to repeater unit
RJ4	Messages sent from repeater unit in Receive Jabber state	27.3.1.7	M		Inhibit sending output messages
RJ5	Reset of Receive Jabber state	27.3.1.7	M		Power-up reset or Carrier no longer detected

27.7.4.10 Repeater state diagrams

Item	Feature	Subclause	Status	Support	Value/Comment
SD1	Repeater core state diagram	27.3.2.2	M		Meets the requirements of figure 27-2
SD2	Receive state diagram for port X	27.3.2.2	M		Meets the requirements of figure 27-3
SD3	100BASE-TX and 100BASE-FX Transmit state diagram for port X	27.3.2.2	XP:M		Meets the requirements of figure 27-4
SD4	100BASE-T4 Transmit state diagram for port X	27.3.2.2	T4P:M		Meets the requirements of figure 27-5
SD5	Repeater data-handler state diagram	27.3.2.2	M		Meets the requirements of figure 27-6
SD6	Receive timer for port X state diagram	27.3.2.2	M		Meets the requirements of figure 27-7
SD7	Repeater partition state diagram for port X	27.3.2.2	M		Meets the requirements of figure 27-8
SD8	Carrier integrity monitor for port X state diagram	27.3.2.2	M		Meets the requirements of figure 27-9

27.7.4.11 Repeater electrical

Item	Feature	Subclause	Status	Support	Value/Comment
EL1	Port-to-port isolation	27.4.1	M		Satisfies isolation and grounding requirements for attached network segments
EL2	Safety	27.5.1	M		IEC 950: 1991
EL3	Installation practices	27.5.2.1	M		Sound, as defined by local code and regulations
EL4	Grounding	27.5.2.2	M		Chassis ground provided through ac mains cord
EL5	2-port repeater set MTBF	27.5.4	M		At least 50 000 hours
EL6	Additional port effect on MTBF	27.5.4	M		No more than 3.46×10^{-6} increase in failures per hour
EL7	Electromagnetic interference	27.5.5.1	M		Comply with local or national codes

27.7.4.12 Repeater labeling

Item	Feature	Subclause	Status	Support	Value/Comment
LB1	Crossover ports	27.6	M		Marked with an X
LB2	Class I repeater	27.6	CLI:M		Marked with a Roman numeral I centered within a circle
LB3	Class II repeater	27.6	CLII:M		Marked with Roman numerals II centered within a circle
LB4	Data Rate	27.6	O		100 Mb/s
LB5	Safety warnings	27.6	O		Any applicable
LB6	Port Types	27.6	O		100BASE-FX, 100BASE-TX or 100BASE-T4
LB7	Worse-case start-of-packet propagation delay	27.6	O		Value in Bit Times
LB8	Worse-case start-of-collision-Jam propagation delay	27.6	O		Value in Bit Times
LB9	Worse-case Cessation-of-Collision Jam propagation delay	27.6	O		Value in Bit Times

28. Physical Layer link signaling for 10 Mb/s and 100 Mb/s Auto-Negotiation on twisted pair

28.1 Overview

28.1.1 Scope

Clause 28 describes the Auto-Negotiation function that allows a device to advertise enhanced modes of operation it possesses to a device at the remote end of a link segment and to detect corresponding enhanced operational modes that the other device may be advertising.

The objective of the Auto-Negotiation function is to provide the means to exchange information between two devices that share a link segment and to automatically configure both devices to take maximum advantage of their abilities. Auto-Negotiation is performed using a modified 10BASE-T link integrity test pulse sequence, such that no packet or upper layer protocol overhead is added to the network devices (see figure 28-1). Auto-Negotiation does not test the link segment characteristics (see 28.1.4).

The function allows the devices at both ends of a link segment to advertise abilities, acknowledge receipt and understanding of the common mode(s) of operation that both devices share, and to reject the use of operational modes that are not shared by both devices. Where more than one common mode exists between the two devices, a mechanism is provided to allow the devices to resolve to a single mode of operation using a predetermined priority resolution function. The Auto-Negotiation function allows the devices to switch between the various operational modes in an ordered fashion, permits management to disable or enable the Auto-Negotiation function, and allows management to select a specific operational mode. The Auto-Negotiation function also provides a Parallel Detection function to allow 10BASE-T, 100BASE-TX, and 100BASE-T4 compatible devices to be recognized, even though they may not provide Auto-Negotiation.

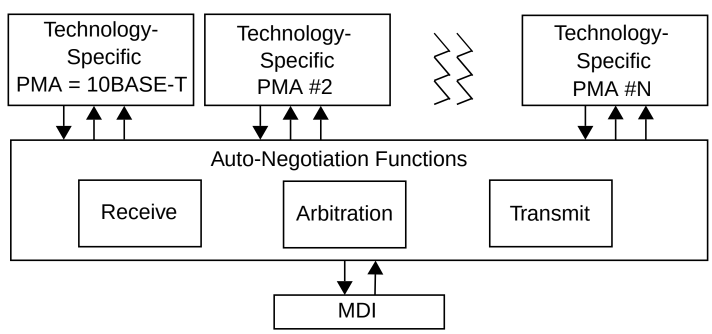


Figure 28-1—High-level model

The basic mechanism to achieve Auto-Negotiation is to pass information encapsulated within a burst of closely spaced link integrity test pulses that individually meet the 10BASE-T Transmitter Waveform for Link Test Pulse (figure 14-12). This burst of pulses is referred to as a Fast Link Pulse (FLP) Burst. Each device capable of Auto-Negotiation issues FLP Bursts at power up, on command from management, or due to user interaction. The FLP Burst consists of a series of link integrity test pulses that form an alternating clock/data sequence. Extraction of the data bits from the FLP Burst yields a Link Code Word that identifies the operational modes supported by the remote device, as well as some information used for the Auto-Negotiation function's handshake mechanism.

To maintain interoperability with existing 10BASE-T devices, the function also supports the reception of 10BASE-T compliant link integrity test pulses. 10BASE-T link pulse activity is referred to as the Normal Link Pulse (NLP) sequence and is defined in 14.2.1.1. A device that fails to respond to the FLP Burst sequence by returning only the NLP sequence is treated as a 10BASE-T compatible device.

28.1.2 Application perspective/objectives

The Auto-Negotiation function is designed to be expandable and allow IEEE 802.3 compatible devices using an eight-pin modular connector to self-configure a jointly compatible operating mode. Implementation of the Auto-Negotiation function is optional. However, it is highly recommended that this method alone be utilized to perform the negotiation of the link operation.

The following are the objectives of Auto-Negotiation:

a) Must interoperate with the IEEE 802.3 10BASE-T installed base.
b) Must allow automatic upgrade from the 10BASE-T mode to the desired “High-Performance Mode.”
c) Requires that the 10BASE-T data service is the Lowest Common Denominator (LCD) that can be resolved. A 10BASE-T PMA is not required to be implemented, however. Only the NLP Receive Link Integrity Test function is required.
d) Reasonable and cost-effective to implement.
e) Must provide a sufficiently extensible code space to
    1) Meet existing and future requirements.
    2) Allow simple extension without impacting the installed base.
    3) Accommodate remote fault signals.
    4) Accommodate link partner ability detection.
f) Must allow manual or Network Management configuration to override the Auto-Negotiation.
g) Must be capable of operation in the absence of Network Management.
h) Must not preclude the ability to negotiate “back” to the 10BASE-T operational mode.
i) Must operate when
    1) The link is initially electrically connected.
    2) A device at either end of the link is powered up, reset, or a renegotiation request is made.
j) The Auto-Negotiation function may be enabled by automatic, manual, or Network Management intervention.
k) Completes the base page Auto-Negotiation function in a bounded time period.
l) Will provide the basis for the link establishment process in future CSMA/CD compatible LAN standards that use an eight-pin modular connector.
m) Must not cause corruption of IEEE 802.3 Layer Management statistics.
n) Operates using a peer-to-peer exchange of information with no requirement for a master device (not master-slave).
o) Must be robust in the UTP cable noise environment.
p) Must not significantly impact EMI/RFI emissions.

28.1.3 Relationship to ISO/IEC 8802-3

The Auto-Negotiation function is provided at the Physical Layer of the OSI reference model as shown in figure 28-2. Devices that support multiple modes of operation may advertise this fact using this function. The actual transfer of information of ability is observable only at the MDI or on the medium. Auto-Negotiation signaling does not occur across either the AUI or MII. Control of the Auto-Negotiation function may be supported through the Management Interface of the MII or equivalent. If an explicit embodiment of the MII is supported, the control and status registers to support the Auto-Negotiation function shall be implemented in accordance with the definitions in clause 22 and 28.2.4. If a physical embodiment of the MII management is not present, then it is strongly recommended that the implementation provide control and status mechanisms equivalent to those described in clause 22 and 28.2.4 for manual and/or management interaction.

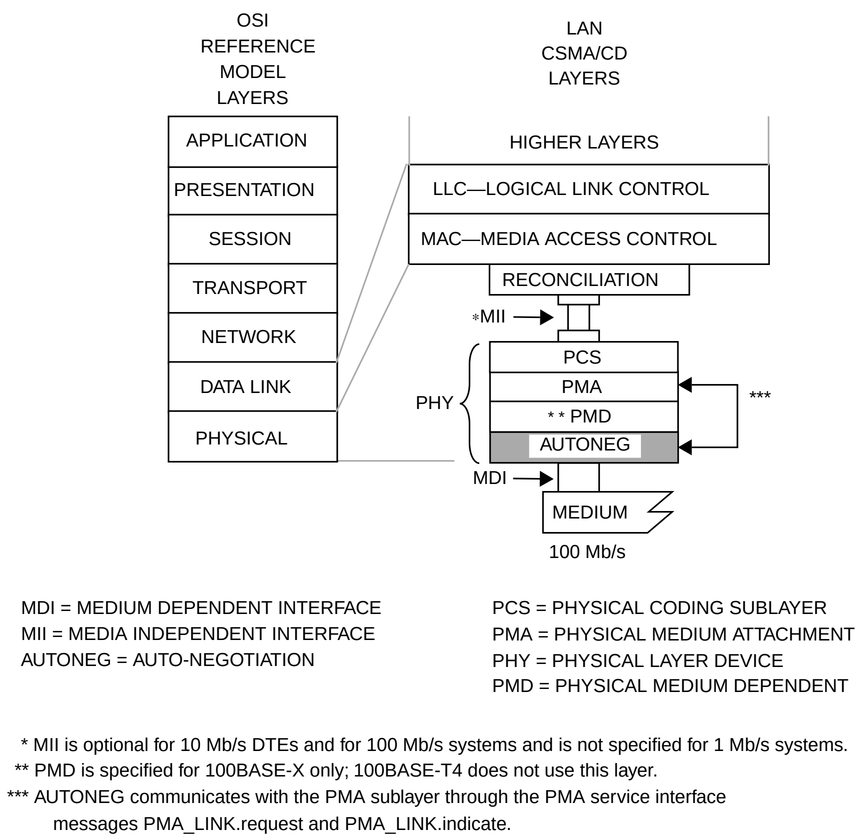


Figure 28-2—Location of Auto-Negotiation function within the ISO reference model

28.1.4 Compatibility considerations

The Auto-Negotiation function is designed to be completely backwards compatible and interoperable with 10BASE-T compliant devices. In order to achieve this, a device supporting the Auto-Negotiation function must provide the NLP Receive Link Integrity Test function as defined in figure 28-17. The Auto-Negotiation function also supports connection to 100BASE-TX and 100BASE-T4 devices without Auto-Negotiation through the Parallel Detection function. Connection to technologies other than 10BASE-T, 100BASE-TX, or 100BASE-T4 that do not incorporate Auto-Negotiation is not supported.

Implementation of the Auto-Negotiation function is optional. For CSMA/CD compatible devices that use the eight-pin modular connector of ISO/IEC 8877: 1992 and that also encompass multiple operational modes, if a signaling method is used to automatically configure the preferred mode of operation, then the Auto-Negotiation function shall be used in compliance with clause 28. If the device uses 10BASE-T compatible link signaling to advertise non-CSMA/CD abilities, the device shall implement the Auto-Negotiation function as administered by this specification. All future CSMA/CD implementations that use an eight-pin modular connector shall be interoperable with devices supporting clause 28. If the implementor of a non-CSMA/CD eight-pin modular device wishes to assure that its operation does not conflict with CSMA/CD devices, then adherence to clause 28 is recommended.

While this Auto-Negotiation function must be implemented in CSMA/CD compatible devices that utilize the eight-pin modular connector, encompass multiple operational modes, and offer an Auto-Negotiation mechanism, the use of this function does not mandate that the 10BASE-T packet data communication service must exist. A device that employs this function must support the 10BASE-T Link Integrity Test function through the NLP Receive Link Integrity Test state diagram. The device may also need to support other technology-dependent link test functions depending on the modes supported. Auto-Negotiation does not perform cable tests, such as detect number of conductor pairs (if more than two pairs are required) or cable performance measurements. Some PHYs that explicitly require use of high-performance cables, may require knowledge of the cable type, or additional robustness tests (such as monitoring CRC or framing errors) to determine if the link segment is adequate.

28.1.4.1 Interoperability with existing 10BASE-T devices

During Auto-Negotiation, FLP Bursts separated by 16 ± 8 ms are transmitted. The FLP Burst itself is a series of pulses separated by 62.5 ± 7 µs. The timing of FLP Bursts will cause a 10BASE-T device that is in the LINK TEST PASS state to remain in the LINK TEST PASS state while receiving FLP Bursts. An Auto-Negotiation able device must recognize the NLP sequence from a 10BASE-T Link Partner, cease transmission of FLP Bursts, and enable the 10BASE-T PMA, if present. If the NLP sequence is detected and if the Auto-Negotiation able device does not have a 10BASE-T PMA, it will cease transmission of FLP Bursts, forcing the 10BASE-T Link Partner into the LINK TEST FAIL state(s) as indicated in figure 14-6.

NOTE—Auto-Negotiation does not support the transmission of the NLP sequence. The 10BASE-T PMA provides this function if it is connected to the MDI. In the case where an Auto-Negotiation able device without a 10BASE-T PMA is connected to a 10BASE-T device without Auto-Negotiation, the NLP sequence is not transmitted because the Auto-Negotiation function has no 10BASE-T PMA to enable that can transmit the NLP sequence.

28.1.4.2 Interoperability with Auto-Negotiation compatible devices

An Auto-Negotiation compatible device decodes the base Link Code Word from the FLP Burst, and examines the contents for the highest common ability that both devices share. Both devices acknowledge correct receipt of each other's base Link Code Words by responding with FLP Bursts containing the Acknowledge Bit set. After both devices complete acknowledgment, and optionally, Next Page exchange, both devices enable the highest common mode negotiated. The highest common mode is resolved using the priority resolution hierarchy specified in annex 28B. It may subsequently be the responsibility of a technology-dependent link integrity test function to verify operation of the link prior to enabling the data service.

28.1.4.3 Cabling compatibility with Auto-Negotiation

Provision has been made within Auto-Negotiation to limit the resulting link configuration in situations where the cabling may not support the highest common capability of the two end points. The system administrator/installer must take the cabling capability into consideration when configuring a hub port's advertised capability. That is, the advertised capability of a hub port should not result in an operational mode that is not compatible with the cabling.

28.2 Functional specifications

The Auto-Negotiation function provides a mechanism to control connection of a single MDI to a single PMA type, where more than one PMA type may exist. Management may provide additional control of Auto-Negotiation through the Management function, but the presence of a management agent is not required.

The Auto-Negotiation function shall provide the Auto-Negotiation Transmit, Receive, Arbitration, and NLP Receive Link Integrity Test functions and comply with the state diagrams of figures 28-14 to 28-17. The Auto-Negotiation functions shall interact with the technology-dependent PMAs through the Technology-Dependent Interface. Technology-dependent PMAs include, but are not limited to, 100BASE-TX and 100BASE-T4. Technology-dependent link integrity test functions shall be implemented and interfaced to only if the device supports the given technology. For example, a 10BASE-T and 100BASE-TX Auto-Negotiation able device must implement and interface to the 100BASE-TX PMA/link integrity test function, but does not need to include the 100BASE-T4 PMA/Link Integrity Test function. The Auto-Negotiation function shall provide an optional Management function that provides a control and status mechanism.

28.2.1 Transmit function requirements

The Transmit function provides the ability to transmit FLP Bursts. The first FLP Bursts exchanged by the Local Device and its Link Partner after Power-On, link restart, or renegotiation contain the base Link Code Word defined in 28.2.1.2. The Local Device may modify the Link Code Word to disable an ability it possesses, but will not transmit an ability it does not possess. This makes possible the distinction between local abilities and advertised abilities so that multimode devices may Auto-Negotiate to a mode lower in priority than the highest common local ability.

28.2.1.1 Link pulse transmission

Auto-Negotiation's method of communication builds upon the link pulse mechanism employed by 10BASE-T MAUs to detect the status of the link. Compliant 10BASE-T MAUs transmit link integrity test pulses as a mechanism to determine if the link segment is operational in the absence of packet data. The 10BASE-T NLP sequence is a pulse (figure 14-12) transmitted every 16 ± 8 ms while the data transmitter is idle.

Auto-Negotiation substitutes the FLP Burst in place of the single 10BASE-T link integrity test pulse within the NLP sequence (figure 28-3). The FLP Burst encodes the data that is used to control the Auto-Negotiation function. FLP Bursts shall not be transmitted when Auto-Negotiation is complete and the highest common denominator PMA has been enabled.

FLP Bursts were designed to allow use beyond initial link Auto-Negotiation, such as for a link monitor type function. However, use of FLP Bursts beyond the current definition for link startup shall be prohibited. Definition of the use of FLP Bursts while in the FLP LINK GOOD state is reserved.

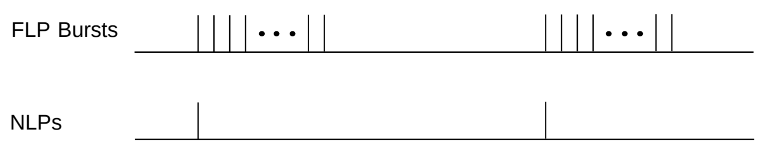


Figure 28-3—FLP Burst sequence to NLP sequence mapping

28.2.1.1.1 FLP burst encoding

FLP Bursts shall be composed of link pulses meeting the requirements of figure 14-12. A Fast Link Pulse Burst consists of 33 pulse positions. The 17 odd-numbered pulse positions shall contain a link pulse and represent clock information. The 16 even-numbered pulse positions shall represent data information as follows: a link pulse present in an even-numbered pulse position represents a logic one, and a link pulse absent from an even-numbered pulse position represents a logic zero. Clock pulses are differentiated from data pulses by the spacing between pulses as shown in figure 28-5 and enumerated in table 28-1.

The encoding of data using pulses in an FLP Burst is illustrated in figure 28-4.

28.2.1.1.2 Transmit timing

The first pulse in an FLP Burst shall be defined as a clock pulse. Clock pulses within an FLP Burst shall be spaced at 125 ± 14 µs. If the data bit representation of logic one is to be transmitted, a pulse shall occur 62.5 ± 7 µs after the preceding clock pulse. If a data bit representing logic zero is to be transmitted, there shall be no link integrity test pulses within 111 µs of the preceding clock pulse.

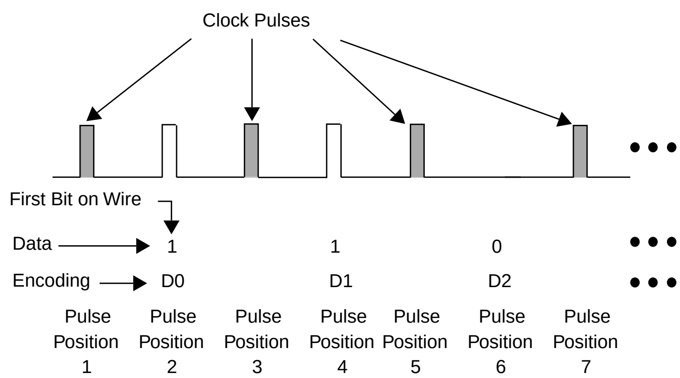


Figure 28-4—Data bit encoding within FLP Bursts

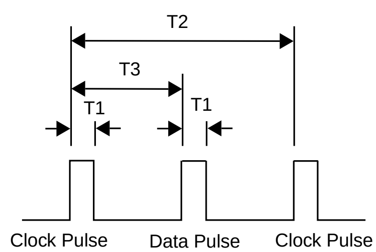


Figure 28-5—FLP Burst pulse-to-pulse timing

The first link pulse in consecutive FLP Bursts shall occur at a 16 ± 8 ms interval (figure 28-6).

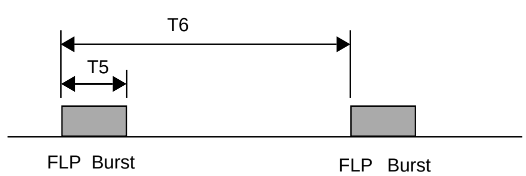


Figure 28-6—FLP Burst to FLP Burst timing

Table 28-1—FLP Burst timing summary

#	Parameter	Min.	Typ.	Max.	Units
T1	Clock/Data Pulse Width (figure 14-12)		100		ns
T2	Clock Pulse to Clock Pulse	111	125	139	µs
T3	Clock Pulse to Data Pulse (Data = 1)	55.5	62.5	69.5	µs
T4	Pulses in a Burst	17		33	#
T5	Burst Width		2		ms
T6	FLP Burst to FLP Burst	8	16	24	ms

28.2.1.2 Link Code Word encoding

The base Link Code Word (base page) transmitted within an FLP Burst shall convey the encoding shown in figure 28-7. The Auto-Negotiation function may support additional pages using the Next Page function. Encodings for the Link Code Word(s) used in Next Page exchange are defined in 28.2.3.4. In an FLP Burst, D0 shall be the first bit transmitted.

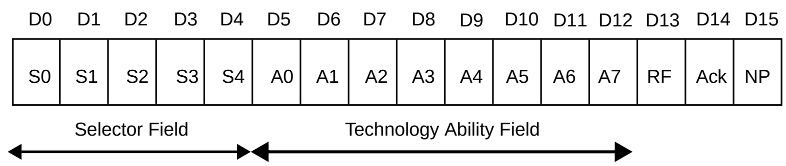


Figure 28-7—Base page encoding

28.2.1.2.1 Selector Field

Selector Field (S[4:0]) is a five bit wide field, encoding 32 possible messages. Selector Field encoding definitions are shown in annex 28A. Combinations not specified are reserved for future use. Reserved combinations of the Selector Field shall not be transmitted.

28.2.1.2.2 Technology Ability Field

Technology Ability Field (A[7:0]) is an eight bit wide field containing information indicating supported technologies specific to the selector field value. These bits are mapped to individual technologies such that abilities are advertised in parallel for a single selector field value. The Technology Ability Field encoding for the IEEE 802.3 selector is described in annex 28B.2. Multiple technologies may be advertised in the Link Code Word. A device shall support the data service ability for a technology it advertises. It is the responsibility of the Arbitration function to determine the common mode of operation shared by a Link Partner and to resolve multiple common modes.

NOTE—While devices using a Selector Field value other than the IEEE 802.3 Selector Field value are free to define the Technology Ability Field bits, it is recommended that the 10BASE-T bit be encoded in the same bit position as in the IEEE 802.3 selector. A common bit position can be important if the technology using the other selector will ever coexist on a device that also offers a 10BASE-T mode.

28.2.1.2.3 Remote Fault

Remote Fault (RF) is encoded in bit D13 of the base Link Code Word. The default value is logic zero. The Remote Fault bit provides a standard transport mechanism for the transmission of simple fault information. When the RF bit in the Auto-Negotiation advertisement register (register 4) is set to logic one, the RF bit in the transmitted base Link Code Word is set to logic one. When the RF bit in the received base Link Code Word is set to logic one, the Remote Fault bit in the MII status register (register 1) will be set to logic one, if the MII management function is present.

The Remote Fault bit shall be used in accordance with the Remote Fault function specifications (28.2.3.5).

28.2.1.2.4 Acknowledge

Acknowledge (Ack) is used by the Auto-Negotiation function to indicate that a device has successfully received its Link Partner's Link Code Word. The Acknowledge Bit is encoded in bit D14 regardless of the value of the Selector Field or Link Code Word encoding. If no Next Page information is to be sent, this bit shall be set to logic one in the Link Code Word after the reception of at least three consecutive and consistent FLP Bursts (ignoring the Acknowledge bit value). If Next Page information is to be sent, this bit shall be set to logic one after the device has successfully received at least three consecutive and matching FLP Bursts (ignoring the Acknowledge bit value), and will remain set until the Next Page information has been loaded into the Auto-Negotiation Next Page register (register 7). In order to save the current received Link Code Word, this must be read from the Auto-Negotiation link partner ability register (register 6) before the Next Page of transmit information is loaded into the Auto-Negotiation Next Page register. After the COMPLETE ACKNOWLEDGE state has been entered, the Link Code Word shall be transmitted six to eight (inclusive) times.

28.2.1.2.5 Next Page

Next Page (NP) is encoded in bit D15 regardless of the Selector Field value or Link Code Word encoding. Support for transmission and reception of additional Link Code Word encodings is optional. If Next Page ability is not supported, the NP bit shall always be set to logic zero. If a device implements Next Page ability and wishes to engage in Next Page exchange, it shall set the NP bit to logic one. A device may implement Next Page ability and choose not to engage in Next Page exchange by setting the NP bit to a logic zero. The Next Page function is defined in 28.2.3.4.

28.2.1.3 Transmit Switch function

The Transmit Switch function shall enable the transmit path from a single technology-dependent PMA to the MDI once a highest common denominator choice has been made and Auto-Negotiation has completed.

During Auto-Negotiation, the Transmit Switch function shall connect only the FLP Burst generator controlled by the Transmit State Diagram, figure 28-14, to the MDI.

When a PMA is connected to the MDI through the Transmit Switch function, the signals at the MDI shall conform to all of the PHY's specifications.

28.2.2 Receive function requirements

The Receive function detects the NLP sequence using the NLP Receive Link Integrity Test function of figure 28-17. The NLP Receive Link Integrity Test function will not detect link pass based on carrier sense.

The Receive function detects the FLP Burst sequence, decodes the information contained within, and stores the data in rx_link_code_word[16:1]. The Receive function incorporates a receive switch to control connection to the 100BASE-TX or 100BASE-T4 PMAs in addition to the NLP Receive Link Integrity Test function, excluding the 10BASE-T Link Integrity Test function present in a 10BASE-T PMA. If Auto-Negotiation detects link_status=READY from any of the technology-dependent PMAs prior to FLP Burst detection, the autoneg_wait_timer (28.3.2) is started. If any other technology-dependent PMA indicates link_status=READY when the autoneg_wait_timer expires, Auto-Negotiation will not allow any data service to be enabled and may signal this as a remote fault to the Link Partner using the base page and will flag this in the Local Device by setting the Parallel Detection Fault bit (6.4) in the Auto-Negotiation expansion register. If a 10BASE-T PMA exists above the Auto-Negotiation function, it is not permitted to receive MDI activity in parallel with the NLP Receive Link Integrity Test function or any other technology-dependent function.

28.2.2.1 FLP Burst ability detection and decoding

In figures 28-8 to 28-10, the symbol "t_0=0" indicates the event that caused the timers described to start, and all subsequent times given are referenced from that point. All timers referenced shall expire within the range specified in table 28-8 in 28.3.2.

The Receive function shall identify the Link Partner as Auto-Negotiation able if it receives 6 to 17 (inclusive) consecutive link pulses that are separated by at least flp_test_min_timer time (5–25 µs) but less than flp_test_max_timer time (165–185 µs) as shown in figure 28-8. The information contained in the FLP Burst that identifies the Link Partner as Auto-Negotiation able shall not be passed to the Arbitration function if the FLP Burst is not complete. The Receive function may use the FLP Burst that identifies the Link Partner as Auto-Negotiation able for ability matching if the FLP Burst is complete. However, it is not required to use this FLP Burst for any purpose other than identification of the Link Partner as Auto-Negotiation able. Implementations may ignore multiple FLP Bursts before identifying the Link Partner as Auto-Negotiation able to allow for potential receive equalization time.

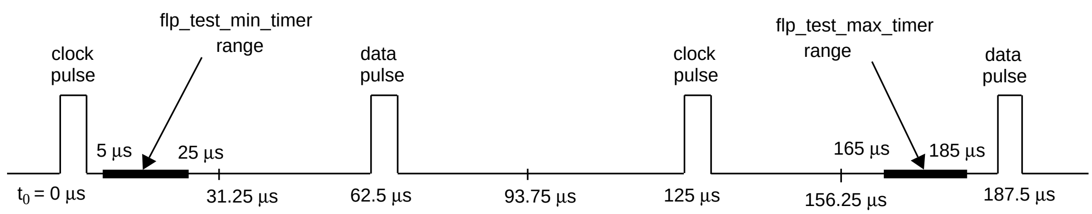


Figure 28-8—FLP detect timers (flp_test_min/max_timers)

The Receive function captures and decodes link pulses received in FLP Bursts. The first link pulse in an FLP Burst shall be interpreted as a clock link pulse. Detection of a clock link pulse shall restart the data_detect_min_timer and data_detect_max timer. The data_detect_min/max_timers enable the receiver to distinguish data pulses from clock pulses and logic one data from logic zero data, as follows:

a) If, during an FLP Burst, a link pulse is received when the data_detect_min_timer has expired while the data_detect_max_timer has not expired, the data bit shall be interpreted as a logic one (figure 28-9).
b) If, during an FLP Burst, a link pulse is received after the data_detect_max_timer has expired, the data bit shall be interpreted as a logic zero (figure 28-9) and that link pulse shall be interpreted as a clock link pulse.

As each data bit is identified it is stored in the appropriate rx_link_code_word[16:1] element.

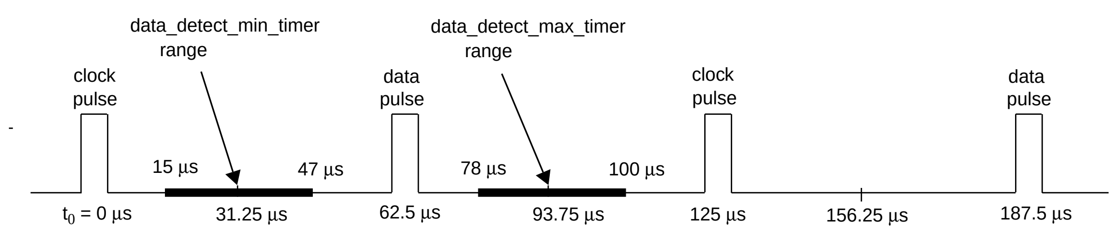
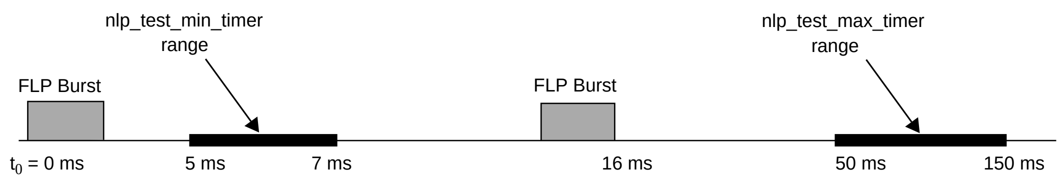


Figure 28-9—FLP data detect timers (data_detect_min/max_timers)

FLP Bursts conforming to the nlp_test_min_timer and nlp_test_max_timer timing as shown in figure 28-10 shall be considered to have valid separation.

28.2.2.2 NLP detection

NLP detection is accomplished via the NLP Receive Link Integrity Test function in figure 28-17. The NLP Receive Link Integrity Test function is a modification of the original 10BASE-T Link Integrity Test function (figure 14-6), where the detection of receive activity will not cause a transition to the LINK TEST PASS state during Auto-Negotiation. The NLP Receive Link Integrity Test function also incorporates the Technology-Dependent Interface requirements.



NOTE—The reference for the starting of the nlp_test_min_timer is from the beginning of the FLP Burst, as shown by t_0, while the reference for the starting of the nlp_test_max_timer is from the expiration of the nlp_test_min_timer.

Figure 28-10—FLP Burst timer (nlp_test_min/max_timers)

28.2.2.3 Receive Switch function

The Receive Switch function shall enable the receive path from the MDI to a single technology-dependent PMA once a highest common denominator choice has been made and Auto-Negotiation has completed.

During Auto-Negotiation, the Receive Switch function shall connect both the FLP Burst receiver controlled by the Receive state diagram, figure 28-15, and the NLP Receive Link Integrity Test state diagram, figure 28-17, to the MDI. During Auto-Negotiation, the Receive Switch function shall also connect the 100BASE-TX and 100BASE-T4 PMA receivers to the MDI if the 100BASE-TX and/or 100BASE-T4 PMAs are present.

When a PMA is connected to the MDI through the Receive Switch function, the signals at the PMA shall conform to all of the PHY’s specifications.

28.2.2.4 Link Code Word matching

The Receive function shall generate ability_match, acknowledge_match, and consistency_match variables as defined in 28.3.1.

28.2.3 Arbitration function requirements

The Arbitration function ensures proper sequencing of the Auto-Negotiation function using the Transmit function and Receive function. The Arbitration function enables the Transmit function to advertise and acknowledge abilities. Upon indication of acknowledgment, the Arbitration function determines the highest common denominator using the priority resolution function and enables the appropriate technology-dependent PMA via the Technology-Dependent Interface (28.2.6).

28.2.3.1 Parallel detection function

The Local Device detects a Link Partner that supports Auto-Negotiation by FLP Burst detection. The Parallel Detection function allows detection of Link Partners that support 100BASE-TX, 100BASE-T4, and/or 10BASE-T, but do not support Auto-Negotiation. Prior to detection of FLP Bursts, the Receive Switch shall direct MDI receive activity to the NLP Receive Link Integrity Test state diagram, 100BASE-TX and 100BASE-T4 PMAs, if present, but shall not direct MDI receive activity to the 10BASE-T or any other PMA. If at least one of the 100BASE-TX, 100BASE-T4, or NLP Receive Link Integrity Test functions establishes link_status=READY, the LINK STATUS CHECK state is entered and the autoneg_wait_timer is started. If exactly one link_status=READY indication is present when the autoneg_wait_timer expires, then Auto-Negotiation shall set link_control=ENABLE for the PMA indicating link_status=READY. If a PMA is enabled, the Arbitration function shall set link_control=DISABLE to all other PMAs and indicate that Auto-Negotiation has completed. On transition to the FLP LINK GOOD CHECK state from the LINK STA-

TUS CHECK state the Parallel Detection function shall set the bit in the link partner ability register (register 5) corresponding to the technology detected by the Parallel Detection function.

NOTES

1—Native 10BASE-T devices will be detected by the NLP Receive Link Integrity Test function, an integrated part of the Auto-Negotiation function. Hence, Parallel Detection for the 10BASE-T PMA is not required or allowed.

2—When selecting the highest common denominator through the Parallel Detection function, only the half-duplex mode corresponding to the selected PMA may automatically be detected.

28.2.3.2 Renegotiation function

A renegotiation request from any entity, such as a management agent, shall cause the Arbitration function to disable all technology-dependent PMAs and halt any transmit data and link pulse activity until the break_link_timer expires (28.3.2). Consequently, the Link Partner will go into link fail and normal Auto-Negotiation resumes. The Local Device shall resume Auto-Negotiation after the break_link_timer has expired by issuing FLP Bursts with the base page valid in tx_link_code_word[16:1].

Once Auto-Negotiation has completed, renegotiation will take place if the Highest Common Denominator technology that receives link_control=ENABLE returns link_status=FAIL. To allow the PMA an opportunity to determine link integrity using its own link integrity test function, the link_fail_inhibit_timer qualifies the link_status=FAIL indication such that renegotiation takes place if the link_fail_inhibit_timer has expired and the PMA still indicates link_status=FAIL or link_status=READY.

28.2.3.3 Priority Resolution function

Since a Local Device and a Link Partner may have multiple common abilities, a mechanism to resolve which mode to configure is required. The mechanism used by Auto-Negotiation is a Priority Resolution function that predefines the hierarchy of supported technologies. The single PMA enabled to connect to the MDI by Auto-Negotiation shall be the technology corresponding to the bit in the Technology Ability Field common to the Local Device and Link Partner that has the highest priority as defined in annex 28B. This technology is referred to as the Highest Common Denominator, or HCD, technology. If the Local Device receives a Technology Ability Field with a bit set that is reserved, the Local Device shall ignore that bit for priority resolution. Determination of the HCD technology occurs on entrance to the FLP LINK GOOD CHECK state. In the event that a technology is chosen through the Parallel Detection function, that technology shall be considered the highest common denominator (HCD) technology. In the event that there is no common technology, HCD shall have a value of “NULL,” indicating that no PMA receives link_control=ENABLE, and link_status_[HCD]=FAIL.

28.2.3.4 Next Page function

The Next Page function uses the standard Auto-Negotiation arbitration mechanisms to allow exchange of arbitrary pieces of data. Data is carried by optional Next Pages of information, which follow the transmission and acknowledgment procedures used for the base Link Code Word. Two types of Next Page encodings are defined: Message Pages and Unformatted Pages.

A dual acknowledgment system is used. Acknowledge (Ack) is used to acknowledge receipt of the information; Acknowledge 2 (Ack2) is used to indicate that the receiver is able to act on the information (or perform the task) defined in the message.

Next Page operation is controlled by the same two mandatory control bits, Next Page and Acknowledge, used in the Base Link Code Word. Setting the NP bit in the Base Link Code Word to logic one indicates that the device is Next Page Able. If both a device and its Link Partner are Next Page Able, then Next Page exchange may occur. If one or both devices are not Next Page Able, then Next Page exchange will not occur and, after the base Link Code Words have been exchanged, the FLP LINK GOOD CHECK state will be entered. The Toggle bit is used to ensure proper synchronization between the Local Device and the Link Partner.

Next Page exchange occurs after the base Link Code Words have been exchanged. Next Page exchange consists of using the normal Auto-Negotiation arbitration process to send Next Page messages. Two message encodings are defined: Message Pages, which contain predefined 11 bit codes, and Unformatted Pages. Unformatted Pages can be combined to send extended messages. If the Selector Field values do not match, then each series of Unformatted Pages shall be preceded by a Message Page containing a message code that defines how the following Unformatted Pages will be interpreted. If the Selector Field values match, then the convention governing the use of Message Pages shall be as defined by the Selector Field value definition. Any number of Next Pages may be sent in any order; however, it is recommended that the total number of Next Pages sent be kept small to minimize the link startup time.

Next Page transmission ends when both ends of a link segment set their Next Page bits to logic zero, indicating that neither has anything additional to transmit. It is possible for one device to have more pages to transmit than the other device. Once a device has completed transmission of its Next Page information, it shall transmit Message Pages with Null message codes and the NP bit set to logic zero while its Link Partner continues to transmit valid Next Pages. An Auto-Negotiation able device shall recognize reception of Message Pages with Null message codes as the end of its Link Partner's Next Page information.

28.2.3.4.1 Next Page encodings

The Next Page shall use the encoding shown in figures 28-11 and 28-12 for the NP, Ack, MP, Ack2, and T bits. The 11-bit field D10–D0 shall be encoded as a Message Code Field if the MP bit is logic one and an Unformatted Code Field if MP is set to logic zero.

D0	D1	D2	D3	D4	D5	D6	D7	D8	D9	D10	D11	D12	D13	D14	D15
M0	M1	M2	M3	M4	M5	M6	M7	M8	M9	M10	T	Ack2	MP	Ack	NP

Message Code Field (D0–D10)

Figure 28-11—Message Page encoding

D0	D1	D2	D3	D4	D5	D6	D7	D8	D9	D10	D11	D12	D13	D14	D15
U0	U1	U2	U3	U4	U5	U6	U7	U8	U9	U10	T	Ack2	MP	Ack	NP

Unformatted Code Field (D0–D10)

Figure 28-12—Unformatted Page encoding

28.2.3.4.2 Next Page

Next Page (NP) is used by the Next Page function to indicate whether or not this is the last Next Page to be transmitted. NP shall be set as follows:

logic zero = last page.
logic one = additional Next Page(s) will follow.

28.2.3.4.3 Acknowledge

As defined in 28.2.1.2.4.

28.2.3.4.4 Message Page

Message Page (MP) is used by the Next Page function to differentiate a Message Page from an Unformatted Page. MP shall be set as follows:

logic zero = Unformatted Page.
logic one = Message Page.

28.2.3.4.5 Acknowledge 2

Acknowledge 2 (Ack2) is used by the Next Page function to indicate that a device has the ability to comply with the message. Ack2 shall be set as follows:

logic zero = cannot comply with message.
logic one = will comply with message.

28.2.3.4.6 Toggle

Toggle (T) is used by the Arbitration function to ensure synchronization with the Link Partner during Next Page exchange. This bit shall always take the opposite value of the Toggle bit in the previously exchanged Link Code Word. The initial value of the Toggle bit in the first Next Page transmitted is the inverse of bit 11 in the base Link Code Word and, therefore, may assume a value of logic one or zero. The Toggle bit shall be set as follows:

logic zero = previous value of the transmitted Link Code Word equalled logic one.
logic one = previous value of the transmitted Link Code Word equalled logic zero.

28.2.3.4.7 Message Page encoding

Message Pages are formatted pages that carry a single predefined Message Code, which is enumerated in annex 28C. Two-thousand and forty-eight Message Codes are available. The allocation of these codes will be controlled by the contents of annex 28C. If the Message Page bit is set to logic one, then the bit encoding of the Link Code Word shall be interpreted as a Message Page.

28.2.3.4.8 Message Code Field

Message Code Field (M[10:0]) is an eleven bit wide field, encoding 2048 possible messages. Message Code Field definitions are shown in annex 28C. Combinations not specified are reserved for future use. Reserved combinations of the Message Code Field shall not be transmitted.

28.2.3.4.9 Unformatted Page encoding

Unformatted Pages carry the messages indicated by Message Pages. Five control bits are predefined, the remaining 11 bits may take on an arbitrary value. If the Message Page bit is set to logic zero, then the bit encoding of the Link Code Word shall be interpreted as an Unformatted Page.

28.2.3.4.10 Unformatted Code Field

Unformatted Code Field (U[10:0]) is an eleven bit wide field, which may contain an arbitrary value.

28.2.3.4.11 Use of Next Pages

a) Both devices must indicate Next Page ability for either to commence exchange of Next Pages.
b) If both devices are Next Page able, then both devices shall send at least one Next Page.
c) Next Page exchange shall continue until neither device on a link has more pages to transmit as indicated by the NP bit. A Message Page with a Null Message Code Field value shall be sent if the device has no other information to transmit.
d) A Message Code can carry either a specific message or information that defines how following Unformatted Page(s) should be interpreted.
e) If a Message Code references Unformatted Pages, the Unformatted Pages shall immediately follow the referencing Message Code in the order specified by the Message Code.
f) Unformatted Page users are responsible for controlling the format and sequencing for their Unformatted Pages.

28.2.3.4.12 MII register requirements

The Next Page Transmit register defined in 28.2.4.1.6 shall hold the Next Page to be sent by Auto-Negotiation. Received Next Pages may be stored in the Auto-Negotiation link partner ability register.

28.2.3.5 Remote fault sensing function

The Remote Fault function may indicate to the Link Partner that a fault condition has occurred using the Remote Fault bit and, optionally, the Next Page function.

Sensing of faults in a device as well as subsequent association of faults with the Remote Fault bit shall be optional. If the Local Device has no mechanism to detect a fault or associate a fault condition with the received Remote Fault bit indication, then it shall transmit the Remote Fault bit with the value contained in the Auto-Negotiation advertisement register bit (4.13).

A Local Device may indicate it has sensed a fault to its Link Partner by setting the Remote Fault bit in the Auto-Negotiation advertisement register and renegotiating.

If the Local Device sets the Remote Fault bit to logic one, it may also use the Next Page function to specify information about the fault that has occurred. Remote Fault Message Page Codes have been specified for this purpose.

The Remote Fault bit shall remain set until after successful negotiation with the base Link Code Word, at which time the Remote Fault bit shall be reset to a logic zero. On receipt of a base Link Code Word with the Remote Fault bit set to logic one, the device shall set the Remote Fault bit in the MII status register (1.4) to logic one if the MII management function is present.

28.2.4 Management function requirements

The management interface is used to communicate Auto-Negotiation information to the management entity. If an MII is physically implemented, then management access is via the MII Management interface. Where no physical embodiment of the MII exists, an equivalent to MII registers 0, 1, 4, 5, 6, and 7 (clause 22) are recommended to be provided.

28.2.4.1 Media Independent Interface

The Auto-Negotiation function shall have five dedicated registers:

a) MII control register (register 0).
b) MII status register (register 1).

c) Auto-Negotiation advertisement register (register 4).
d) Auto-Negotiation link partner ability register (register 5).
e) Auto-Negotiation expansion register (register 6).

If the Next Page function is implemented, the Auto-Negotiation Next Page Transmit Register (register 7) shall be implemented.

28.2.4.1.1 MII control register

MII control register (register 0) provides the mechanism to disable/enable and/or restart Auto-Negotiation. The definition for this register is provided in 22.2.4.1.

The Auto-Negotiation function shall be enabled by setting bit 0.12 to a logic one. If bit 0.12 is set to a logic one, then bits 0.13 and 0.8 shall have no effect on the link configuration, and the Auto-Negotiation process will determine the link configuration. If bit 0.12 is cleared to logic zero, then bits 0.13 and 0.8 will determine the link configuration regardless of the prior state of the link configuration and the Auto-Negotiation process.

A PHY shall return a value of one in bit 0.9 until the Auto-Negotiation process has been initiated. The Auto-Negotiation process shall be initiated by setting bit 0.9 to a logic one. If Auto-Negotiation was completed prior to this bit being set, the process shall be reinitiated. If a PHY reports via bit 1.3 that it lacks the ability to perform Auto-Negotiation, then this bit will have no meaning, and should be written as zero. This bit is self-clearing. The Auto-Negotiation process shall not be affected by clearing this bit to logic zero.

28.2.4.1.2 MII status register

The MII status register (register 1) includes information about all modes of operations supported by the Local Device's PHY, the status of Auto-Negotiation, and whether the Auto-Negotiation function is supported by the PHY or not. The definition for this register is provided in 22.2.4.2.

When read as a logic one, bit 1.5 indicates that the Auto-Negotiation process has been completed, and that the contents of registers 4, 5, and 6 are valid. When read as a logic zero, bit 1.5 indicates that the Auto-Negotiation process has not been completed, and that the contents of registers 4, 5, and 6 are meaningless. A PHY shall return a value of zero in bit 1.5 if Auto-Negotiation is disabled by clearing bit 0.12. A PHY shall also return a value of zero in bit 1.5 if it lacks the ability to perform Auto-Negotiation.

When read as logic one, bit 1.4 indicates that a remote fault condition has been detected. The type of fault as well as the criteria and method of fault detection is PHY specific. The Remote Fault bit shall be implemented with a latching function, such that the occurrence of a remote fault will cause the Remote Fault bit to become set and remain set until it is cleared. The Remote Fault bit shall be cleared each time register 1 is read via the management interface, and shall also be cleared by a PHY reset.

When read as a one, bit 1.3 indicates that the PHY has the ability to perform Auto-Negotiation. When read as a logic zero, bit 1.3 indicates that the PHY lacks the ability to perform Auto-Negotiation.

28.2.4.1.3 Auto-Negotiation advertisement register (register 4) (R/W)

This register contains the Advertised Ability of the PHY. (See table 28-2). The bit definition for the base page is defined in 28.2.1.2. On power-up, before Auto-Negotiation starts, this register shall have the following configuration: The Selector Field (4.4:0) is set to an appropriate code as specified in annex 28A. The Acknowledge bit (4.14) is set to logic zero. The Technology Ability Field (4.12:5) is set based on the values set in the MII status register (register 1) (1.15:11) or equivalent.

Only the bits in the Technology Ability Field that represent the technologies supported by the Local Device may be set. Any of the Technology Ability Field bits that may be set can also be cleared by management

Table 28-2—Advertisement register bit definitions

Bit(s)	Name	Description	R/W
4.15	Next Page	See 28.2.1.2	R/W
4.14	Reserved	Write as zero, ignore on read	RO
4.13	Remote Fault	See 28.2.1.2	R/W
4.12:5	Technology Ability Field	See 28.2.1.2	R/W
4.4:0	Selector Field	See 28.2.1.2	R/W

before a renegotiation. This can be used to enable management to Auto-Negotiate to an alternate common mode.

The management entity may initiate renegotiation with the Link Partner using alternate abilities by setting the Selector Field (4.4:0) and Technology Ability Field (4.12:5) to indicate the preferred mode of operation and setting the Restart Auto-Negotiation bit (0.9) in the control register (register 0) to logic one.

Any writes to this register prior to completion of Auto-Negotiation as indicated by bit 1.5 should be followed by a renegotiation for the new values to be properly used for Auto-Negotiation. Once Auto-Negotiation has completed, this register value may be examined by software to determine the highest common denominator technology.

28.2.4.1.4 Auto-Negotiation link partner ability register (register 5) (RO)

All of the bits in the Auto-Negotiation link partner ability register are read only. A write to the Auto-Negotiation link partner ability register shall have no effect.

This register contains the Advertised Ability of the Link Partner's PHY. (See tables 28-3 and 28-4.) The bit definitions shall be a direct representation of the received Link Code Word (figure 28-7). Upon successful completion of Auto-Negotiation, status register (register 1) Auto-Negotiation Complete bit (1.5) shall be set to logic one. If the Next Page function is supported, the Auto-Negotiation link partner ability register may be used to store Link Partner Next Pages.

Table 28-3—Link partner ability register bit definitions (Base Page)

Bit(s)	Name	Description	R/W
5.15	Next Page	See 28.2.1.2	RO
5.14	Acknowledge	See 28.2.1.2	RO
5.13	Remote Fault	See 28.2.1.2	RO
5.12:5	Technology Ability Field	See 28.2.1.2	RO
5.4:0	Selector Field	See 28.2.1.2	RO

The values contained in this register are only guaranteed to be valid once Auto-Negotiation has successfully completed, as indicated by bit 1.5 or, if used with Next Page exchange, after the Page Received bit (6.1) has been set to logic one.

Table 28-4—Link partner ability register bit definitions (Next Page)

Bit(s)	Name	Description	R/W
5.15	Next Page	See 28.2.3.4	RO
5.14	Acknowledge	See 28.2.3.4	RO
5.13	Message Page	See 28.2.3.4	RO
5.12	Acknowledge 2	See 28.2.3.4	RO
5.11	Toggle	See 28.2.3.4	RO
5.10:0	Message/Unformatted Code Field	See 28.2.3.4	RO

NOTE—If this register is used to store Link Partner Next Pages, the previous value of this register is assumed to be stored by a management entity that needs the information overwritten by subsequent Link Partner Next Pages.

28.2.4.1.5 Auto-Negotiation expansion register (register 6) (RO)

All of the bits in the Auto-Negotiation expansion register are read only; a write to the Auto-Negotiation expansion register shall have no effect. (See table 28-5.)

Table 28-5—Expansion register bit definitions

Bit(s)	Name	Description	R/W	Default
6.15:5	Reserved	Write as zero, ignore on read	RO	0
6.4	Parallel Detection Fault	1 = A fault has been detected via the Parallel Detection function. 0 = A fault has not been detected via the Parallel Detection function.	RO/ LH	0
6.3	Link Partner Next Page Able	1 = Link Partner is Next Page able 0 = Link Partner is not Next Page able	RO	0
6.2	Next Page Able	1 = Local Device is Next Page able 0 = Local Device is not Next Page able	RO	0
6.1	Page Received	1 = A New Page has been received 0 = A New Page has not been received	RO/ LH	0
6.0	Link Partner Auto-Negotiation Able	1 = Link Partner is Auto-Negotiation able 0 = Link Partner is not Auto-Negotiation able	RO	0

Bits 6.15:5 are reserved for future Auto-Negotiation expansion.

The Parallel Detection Fault bit (6.4) shall be set to logic one to indicate that zero or more than one of the NLP Receive Link Integrity Test function, 100BASE-TX, or 100BASE-T4 PMAs have indicated link_status=READY when the autoneg_wait_timer expires. The Parallel Detection Fault bit shall be reset to logic zero on a read of the Auto-Negotiation expansion register (register 6).

The Link Partner Next Page Able bit (6.3) shall be set to logic one to indicate that the Link Partner supports the Next Page function. This bit shall be reset to logic zero to indicate that the Link Partner does not support the Next Page function.

The Next Page Able bit (6.2) shall be set to logic one to indicate that the Local Device supports the Next Page function. The Next Page Able bit (6.2) shall be set to logic zero if the Next Page function is not supported.

The Page Received bit (6.1) shall be set to logic one to indicate that a new Link Code Word has been received and stored in the Auto-Negotiation link partner ability register. The Page Received bit shall be reset to logic zero on a read of the Auto-Negotiation expansion register (register 6).

The Link Partner Auto-Negotiation Able bit (6.0) shall be set to logic one to indicate that the Link Partner is able to participate in the Auto-Negotiation function. This bit shall be reset to logic zero if the Link Partner is not Auto-Negotiation able.

28.2.4.1.6 Auto-Negotiation Next Page transmit register (register 7) (R/W)

The Auto-Negotiation Next Page Transmit register contains the Next Page Link Code Word to be transmitted when Next Page ability is supported. (See table 28-6.) The contents are defined in 28.2.3.4. On power-up, this register shall contain the default value of 2001H, which represents a Message Page with the Message Code set to Null Message. This value may be replaced by any valid Next Page Message Code that the device wishes to transmit. Writing to this register shall set mr_next_page_loaded to true.

Table 28-6—Next Page transmit register bit definitions

Bit(s)	Name	Description	R/W
7.15	Next Page	See 28.2.3.4	R/W
7.14	Reserved	Write as 0, ignore on read	RO
7.13	Message Page	See 28.2.3.4	R/W
7.12	Acknowledge 2	See 28.2.3.4	R/W
7.11	Toggle	See 28.2.3.4	RO
7.10:0	Message/Unformatted Code Field	See 28.2.3.4	R/W

28.2.4.1.7 State diagram variable to MII register mapping

The state diagrams of figures 28-14 to 28-17 generate and accept variables of the form “mr_x”, where x is an individual signal name. These variables comprise a management interface that may be connected to the MII management function or other equivalent function. Table 28-7 describes how the MII registers map to the management function interface signals.

28.2.4.2 Auto-Negotiation managed object class

The Auto-Negotiation Managed Object Class is defined in clause 30.

Table 28-7—State diagram variable to MII register mapping

State diagram variable	MII register
mr_adv_ability[16:1]	4.15:0 Auto-Negotiation advertisement register
mr_autoneg_complete	1.5 Auto-Negotiation Complete
mr_autoneg_enable	0.12 Auto-Negotiation Enable
mr_lp_adv_ability[16:1]	5.15:0 Auto-Negotiation link partner ability register
mr_lp_autoneg_able	6.0 Link Partner Auto-Negotiation Able
mr_lp_np_able	6.3 Link Partner Next Page Able
mr_main_reset	0.15 Reset
mr_next_page_loaded	Set on write to Auto-Negotiation Next Page Transmit register; cleared by Arbitration state diagram
mr_np_able	6.2 Next Page Able
mr_np_tx[16:1]	7.15:0 Auto-Negotiation Next Page Transmit Register
mr_page_rx	6.1 Page Received
mr_parallel_detection_fault	6.4 Parallel Detection Fault
mr_restart_negotiation	0.9 Auto-Negotiation Restart
set if Auto-Negotiation is available	1.3 Auto-Negotiation Ability

28.2.5 Absence of management function

In the absence of any management function, the advertised abilities shall be provided through a logical equivalent of mr_adv_ability[16:1]. A device shall comply with all Next Page function requirements, including the provision of the mr_np_able, mr_lp_np_able, and mr_next_page_loaded variables (or their logical equivalents), in order to permit the NP bit to be set to logic one in the transmitted Link Code Word.

NOTE—Storage of a valid base Link Code Word is required to prevent a deadlock situation where negotiation must start again while Next Pages are being transmitted. If a shared transmit register were used, then renegotiation could not occur when Next Pages were being transmitted because the base Link Code Word would not be available. This requirement can be met using a number of different implementations, including use of temporary registers or register stacks.

28.2.6 Technology-Dependent Interface

The Technology-Dependent Interface is the communication mechanism between each technology's PMA and the Auto-Negotiation function. Auto-Negotiation can support multiple technologies, all of which need not be implemented in a given device. Each of these technologies may utilize its own technology-dependent link integrity test function.

28.2.6.1 PMA_LINK.indicate

This primitive is generated by the PMA to indicate the status of the underlying medium. The purpose of this primitive is to give the PCS, repeater client, or Auto-Negotiation function a means of determining the validity of received code elements.

28.2.6.1.1 Semantics of the service primitive

PMA_LINK.indicate(link_status)

The link_status parameter shall assume one of three values: READY, OK, or FAIL, indicating whether the underlying receive channel is intact and ready to be enabled (READY), intact and enabled (OK), or not intact (FAIL). When link_status=FAIL or link_status=READY, the PMA_CARRIER.indicate and PMA_UNITDATA.indicate primitives are undefined.

28.2.6.1.2 When generated

A technology-dependent PMA and the NLP Receive Link Integrity Test state diagram (figure 28-17) shall generate this primitive to indicate the value of link_status.

28.2.6.1.3 Effect of receipt

The effect of receipt of this primitive shall be governed by the state diagrams of figure 28-16.

28.2.6.2 PMA_LINK.request

This primitive is generated by Auto-Negotiation to allow it to enable and disable operation of the PMA.

28.2.6.2.1 Semantics of the service primitive

PMA_LINK.request(link_control)

The link_control parameter shall assume one of three values: SCAN_FOR_CARRIER, DISABLE, or ENABLE.

The link_control=SCAN_FOR_CARRIER mode is used by the Auto-Negotiation function prior to receiving any FLP Bursts or link_status=READY indications. During this mode, the PMA shall search for carrier and report link_status=READY when carrier is received, but no other actions shall be enabled.

The link_control=DISABLE mode shall be used by the Auto-Negotiation function to disable PMA processing.

The link_control=ENABLE mode shall be used by Auto-Negotiation to turn control over to a single PMA for all normal processing functions.

28.2.6.2.2 When generated

The Auto-Negotiation function shall generate this primitive to indicate to the PHY how to respond, in accordance with the state diagrams of figures 28-15 and 28-16.

Upon power-on or reset, if the Auto-Negotiation function is enabled (mr_autoneg_enable=true) the PMA_LINK.request(DISABLE) message shall be issued to all technology-dependent PMAs. If Auto-Negotiation is disabled at any time including at power-on or reset, the state of PMA_LINK.request(link_control) is implementation dependent.

28.2.6.2.3 Effect of receipt

The effect of receipt of this primitive shall be governed by the NLP Receive Link Integrity Test state diagram (figure 28-17) and the receiving technology-dependent link integrity test function, based on the intent specified in the primitive semantics.

28.3 State diagrams and variable definitions

The notation used in the state diagrams (figures 28-14 to 28-17) follows the conventions in 21.5. State diagram variables follow the conventions of 21.5.2 except when the variable has a default value. Variables in a state diagram with default values evaluate to the variable default in each state where the variable value is not explicitly set. Variables using the "mr_x" notation do not have state diagram defaults; however, their appropriate initialization conditions when mapped to the MII interface are covered in 28.2.4 and 22.2.4. The variables, timers, and counters used in the state diagrams are defined in 28.3, 14.2.3, and 28.2.6.

Auto-Negotiation shall implement the Transmit state diagram, Receive state diagram, Arbitration state diagram, and NLP Receive Link Integrity Test state diagram as depicted in 28.3. Additional requirements to these state diagrams are made in the respective functional requirements sections. Options to these state diagrams clearly stated as such in the functional requirements sections or state diagrams shall be allowed. In the case of any ambiguity between stated requirements and the state diagrams, the state diagrams shall take precedence.

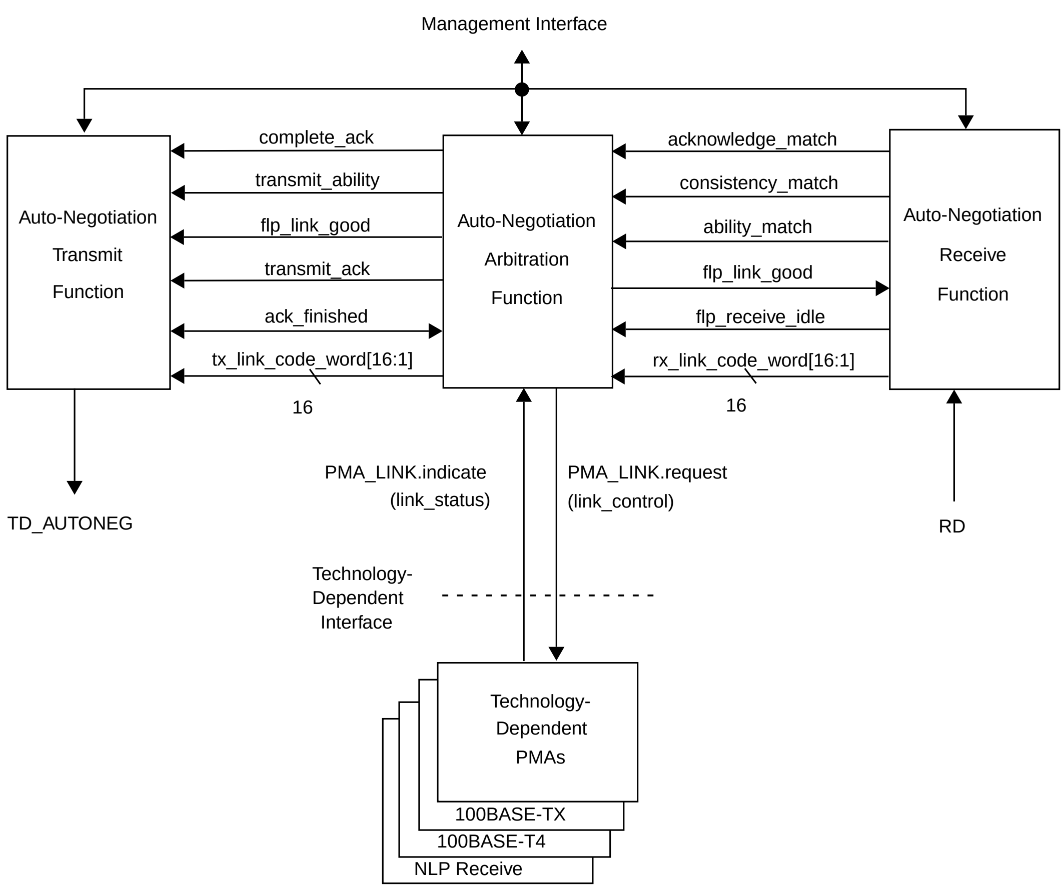


Figure 28-13—Functional reference diagram

28.3.1 State diagram variables

A variable with "_[x]" appended to the end of the variable name indicates a variable or set of variables as defined by "x". "x" may be as follows:

all; represents all specific technology-dependent PMAs supported in the Local Device and the NLP

Receive Link Integrity Test state diagram.

HCD; represents the single technology-dependent PMA chosen by Auto-Negotiation as the highest common denominator technology through the Priority Resolution or Parallel Detection function. To select 10BASE-T, LIT is used instead of NLP to enable the full 10BASE-T Link Integrity Test function state diagram.

notHCD; represents all technology-dependent PMAs not chosen by Auto-Negotiation as the highest common denominator technology through the Priority Resolution or Parallel Detection function.

TX; represents that the 100BASE-TX PMA is the signal source.

T4; represents that the 100BASE-T4 PMA is the signal source.

NLP; represents that the NLP Receive Link Integrity Test function is the signal source.

PD; represents all of the following that are present: 100BASE-TX PMA, 100BASE-T4 PMA, and the NLP Receive Link Integrity Test state diagram.

LIT; represents the 10BASE-T Link Integrity Test function state diagram is the signal source or destination.

Variables with [16:1] appended to the end of the variable name indicate arrays that can be directly mapped to 16-bit registers. For these variables, "[x]" indexes an element or set of elements in the array, where "[x]" may be as follows:

— Any integer.
— Any variable that takes on integer values.
— NP; represents the index of the Next Page bit.
— ACK; represents the index of the Acknowledge bit.
— RF; represents the index of the Remote Fault bit.

Variables of the form "mr_x", where x is a label, comprise a management interface that is intended to be connected to the MII Management function. However, an implementation-specific management interface may provide the control and status function of these bits.

ability_match

Indicates that three consecutive Link Code Words match, ignoring the Acknowledge bit. Three consecutive words are any three words received one after the other, regardless of whether the word has already been used in a word-match comparison or not.

Values: false; three matching consecutive Link Code Words have not been received, ignoring the Acknowledge bit (default).
true; three matching consecutive Link Code Words have been received, ignoring the Acknowledge bit.

NOTE—This variable is set by this variable definition; it is not set explicitly in the state diagrams.

ack_finished

Status indicating that the final remaining_ack_cnt Link Code Words with the Ack bit set have been transmitted.

Values: false; more Link Code Words with the Ack bit set to logic one must be transmitted.
true; all remaining Link Code Words with the Ack bit set to logic one have been transmitted.

acknowledge_match

Indicates that three consecutive Link Code Words match and have the Acknowledge bit set. Three consecutive words are any three words received one after the other, regardless of whether the word has already been used in a word match comparison or not.

Values: false; three matching and consecutive Link Code Words have not been received with the

Acknowledge bit set (default).
true; three matching and consecutive Link Code Words have been received with the Acknowledge bit set.

NOTE—This variable is set by this variable definition; it is not set explicitly in the state diagrams.

base_page
Status indicating that the page currently being transmitted by Auto-Negotiation is the initial Link Code Word encoding used to communicate the device’s abilities.

Values: false; a page other than base Link Code Word is being transmitted.
true; the base Link Code Word is being transmitted.

complete_ack
Controls the counting of transmitted Link Code Words that have their Acknowledge bit set.

Values: false; transmitted Link Code Words with the Acknowledge bit set are not counted (default).
true; transmitted Link Code Words with the Acknowledge bit set are counted.

consistency_match
Indicates that the Link Code Word that caused ability_match to be set is the same as the Link Code Word that caused acknowledge_match to be set.

Values: false; the Link Code Word that caused ability_match to be set is not the same as the Link Code Word that caused acknowledge_match to be set, ignoring the Acknowledge bit value.
true; the Link Code Word that caused ability_match to be set is the same as the Link Code Word that caused acknowledge_match to be set, independent of the Acknowledge bit value.

NOTE—This variable is set by this variable definition; it is not set explicitly in the state diagrams.

desire_np
Status indicating that the Local Device desires to engage in Next Page exchange. This information comes from the setting of the NP bit in the base Link Code Word stored in the Auto-Negotiation advertisement register (register 4).

Values: false; Next Page exchange is not desired.
true; Next Page exchange is desired.

flp_link_good
Indicates that Auto-Negotiation has completed.

Values: false; negotiation is in progress (default).
true; negotiation is complete, forcing the Transmit and Receive functions to IDLE.

flp_receive_idle
Indicates that the Receive state diagram is in the IDLE, LINK PULSE DETECT, or LINK PULSE COUNT state.

Values: false; the Receive state diagram is not in the IDLE, LINK PULSE DETECT, or LINK PULSE COUNT state (default).
true; the Receive state diagram is in the IDLE, LINK PULSE DETECT, or LINK PULSE COUNT state.

link_control
This variable is defined in 28.2.6.2.1.

link_status
This variable is defined in 28.2.6.1.1.

linkpulse
Indicates that a valid Link Pulse as transmitted in compliance with figure 14-12 has been received.

Values: false; linkpulse is set to false after any Receive State Diagram state transition (default).

true; linkpulse is set to true when a valid Link Pulse is received.

mr_autoneg_complete
Status indicating whether Auto-Negotiation has completed or not.

Values: false; Auto-Negotiation has not completed.
true; Auto-Negotiation has completed.

mr_autoneg_enable
Controls the enabling and disabling of the Auto-Negotiation function.

Values: false; Auto-Negotiation is disabled.
true; Auto-Negotiation is enabled.

mr_adv_ability[16:1]
A 16-bit array that contains the Advertised Abilities Link Code Word.
For each element within the array:

Values: Zero; data bit is logical zero.
One; data bit is logical one.

mr_lp_adv_ability[16:1]
A 16-bit array that contains the Link Partner's Advertised Abilities Link Code Word.
For each element within the array:

Values: Zero; data bit is logical zero.
One; data bit is logical one.

mr_lp_np_able
Status indicating whether the Link Partner supports Next Page exchange.

Values: false; the Link Partner does not support Next Page exchange.
true; the Link Partner supports Next Page exchange.

mr_np_able
Status indicating whether the Local Device supports Next Page exchange.

Values: false; the Local Device does not support Next Page exchange.
true; the Local Device supports Next Page exchange.

mr_lp_autoneg_able
Status indicating whether the Link Partner supports Auto-Negotiation.

Values: false; the Link Partner does not support Auto-Negotiation.
true; the Link Partner supports Auto-Negotiation.

mr_main_reset
Controls the resetting of the Auto-Negotiation state diagrams.

Values: false; do not reset the Auto-Negotiation state diagrams.
true; reset the Auto-Negotiation state diagrams.

mr_next_page_loaded
Status indicating whether a new page has been loaded into the Auto-Negotiation Next Page Transmit register (register 7).

Values: false; a New Page has not been loaded.
true; a New Page has been loaded.

mr_np_tx[16:1]
A 16-bit array that contains the new Next Page to transmit.
For each element within the array:

Values: Zero; data bit is logical zero.
One; data bit is logical one.

mr_page_rx

Status indicating whether a New Page has been received. A New Page has been successfully received when acknowledge_match=true and consistency_match=true and the Link Code Word has been written to mr_lp_adv_ability[16:1].

Values: false; a New Page has not been received.
true; a New Page has been received.

mr_parallel_detection_fault

Error condition indicating that while performing Parallel Detection, either flp_receive_idle = false, or zero or more than one of the following indications were present when the autoneg_wait_timer expired. This signal is cleared on read of the Auto-Negotiaion expansion register.

1) link_status_ [NLP] = READY
2) link_status_[TX] = READY
3) link_status_[T4] = READY

Values: false; Exactly one of the above three indications was true when the autoneg_wait_timer expired, and flp_receive_idle = true.
true; either zero or more than one of the above three indications was true when the autoneg_wait_timer expired, or flp_receive_idle = false.

mr_restart_negotiation

Controls the entrance to the TRANSMIT DISABLE state to break the link before Auto-Negotiation is allowed to renegotiate via management control.

Values: false; renegotiation is not taking place.
true; renegotiation is started.

power_on

Condition that is true until such time as the power supply for the device that contains the Auto-Negotiation state diagrams has reached the operating region or the device has low power mode set via MII control register bit 0.11.

Values: false; the device is completely powered (default).
true; the device has not been completely powered.

rx_link_code_word[16:1]

A 16-bit array that contains the data bits to be received from an FLP Burst.
For each element within the array:

Values: zero; data bit is a logical zero.
one; data bit is a logical one.

single_link_ready

Status indicating that flp_receive_idle = true and only one the of the following indications is being received:

1) link_status_[NLP] = READY
2) link_status_[TX] = READY
3) link_status_[T4] = READY

Values: false; either zero or more than one of the above three indications are true or flp_receive_idle = false.
true; Exactly one of the above three indications is true and flp_receive_idle = true.

NOTE—This variable is set by this variable definition; it is not set explicitly in the state diagrams.

TD_AUTONEG

Controls the signal sent by Auto-Negotiation on the TD_AUTONEG circuit.

Values: idle; Auto-Negotiation prevents transmission of all link pulses on the MDI.
link_test_pulse; Auto-Negotiation causes a single link pulse as defined by figure 14-12 to be transmitted on the MDI.

toggle_rx

Flag to keep track of the state of the Link Partner's Toggle bit.

Values: 0; Link Partner's Toggle bit equals logic zero.
1; Link Partner's Toggle bit equals logic one.

toggle_tx

Flag to keep track of the state of the Local Device's Toggle bit.

Values: 0; Local Device's Toggle bit equals logic zero.
1; Local Device's Toggle bit equals logic one.

transmit_ability

Controls the transmission of the Link Code Word containing tx_link_code_word[16:1].

Values: false; any transmission of tx_link_code_word[16:1] is halted (default).
true; the transmit state diagram begins sending tx_link_code_word[16:1].

transmit_ack

Controls the setting of the Acknowledge bit in the tx_link_code_word[16:1] to be transmitted.

Values: false; sets the Acknowledge bit in the transmitted tx_link_code_word[16:1] to a logic zero (default).
true; sets the Acknowledge bit in the transmitted tx_link_code_word[16:1] to a logic one.

transmit_disable

Controls the transmission of tx_link_code_word[16:1].

Values: false; tx_link_code_word[16:1] transmission is allowed (default).
true; tx_link_code_word[16:1] transmission is halted.

tx_link_code_word[16:1]

A 16-bit array that contains the data bits to be transmitted in an FLP Burst. This array may be loaded from mr_adv_ability or mr_np_tx.
For each element within the array:

Values: Zero; data bit is logical zero.
One; data bit is logical one.

28.3.2 State diagram timers

All timers operate in the manner described in 14.2.3.2.

autoneg_wait_timer

Timer for the amount of time to wait before evaluating the number of link integrity test functions with link_status=READY asserted. The autoneg_wait_timer shall expire 500–1000 ms from the assertion of link_status=READY from the 100BASE-TX PMA, 100BASE-T4 PMA, or the NLP Receive State diagram.

break_link_timer

Timer for the amount of time to wait in order to assure that the Link Partner enters a Link Fail state. The timer shall expire 1200–1500 ms after being started.

data_detect_max_timer

Timer for the maximum time between a clock pulse and the next link pulse. This timer is used in conjunction with the data_detect_min_timer to detect whether the data bit between two clock pulses is a logic zero or a logic one. The data_detect_max_timer shall expire 78–100 µs from the last clock pulse.

data_detect_min_timer

Timer for the minimum time between a clock pulse and the next link pulse. This timer is used in conjunction with the data_detect_max_timer to detect whether the data bit between two clock pulses is a logic zero or a logic one. The data_detect_min_timer shall expire 15–47 µs from the last clock pulse.

flp_test_max_timer

Timer for the maximum time between two link pulses within an FLP Burst. This timer is used in conjunction with the flp_test_min_timer to detect whether the Link Partner is transmitting FLP Bursts. The flp_test_max_timer shall expire 165–185 µs from the last link pulse.

flp_test_min_timer

Timer for the minimum time between two link pulses within an FLP Burst. This timer is used in conjunction with the flp_test_max_timer to detect whether the Link Partner is transmitting FLP Bursts. The flp_test_min_timer shall expire 5–25 µs from the last link pulse.

interval_timer

Timer for the separation of a transmitted clock pulse from a data bit. The interval_timer shall expire 55.5—69.5 µs from each clock pulse and data bit.

link_fail_inhibit_timer

Timer for qualifying a link_status=FAIL indication or a link_status=READY indication when a specific technology link is first being established. A link will only be considered “failed” if the link_fail_inhibit_timer has expired and the link has still not gone into the link_status=OK state. The link_fail_inhibit_timer shall expire 750–1000 ms after entering the FLP LINK GOOD CHECK state.

NOTE—The link_fail_inhibit_timer expiration value must be greater than the time required for the Link Partner to complete Auto-Negotiation after the Local Device has completed Auto-Negotiation plus the time required for the specific technology to enter the link_status=OK state. The maximum time difference between a Local Device and its Link Partner completing Auto-Negotiation is

(Maximum FLP Burst to FLP Burst separation) × (Maximum number of FLP Bursts needed to complete acknowledgment) = (24 ms) × (8 bursts) = 192 ms.

For example, 100BASE-T4 requires approximately 460 ms to enter link_status=OK for a total minimum link_fail_inhibit_timer time of 652 ms. The lower bound for the link_fail_inhibit_timer was chosen to provide adequate margin for the current technologies and any future PMAs.

nlp_test_max_timer

Timer for the maximum time that no FLP Burst may be seen before forcing the receive state diagram to the IDLE state. The nlp_test_max_timer shall expire 50–150 ms after being started or restarted.

nlp_test_min_timer

Timer for the minimum time between two consecutive FLP Bursts. The nlp_test_min_timer shall expire 5–7 ms after being started or restarted.

transmit_link_burst_timer

Timer for the separation of a transmitted FLP Burst from the next FLP Burst. The transmit_link_burst_timer shall expire 5.7-22.3 ms after the last transmitted link pulse in an FLP Burst.

Table 28-8—Timer min./max. value summary

Parameter	Min.	Typ.	Max.	Units
autoneg_wait_timer	500		1000	ms
break_link_timer	1200		1500	ms
data_detect_min_timer	15		47	µs
data_detect_max_timer	78		100	µs

Table 28-8—Timer min./max. value summary *(Continued)*

Parameter	Min.	Typ.	Max.	Units
flp_test_min_timer	5		25	µs
flp_test_max_timer	165		185	µs
interval_timer	55.5	62.5	69.5	µs
link_fail_inhibit_timer	750		1000	ms
nlp_test_max_timer	50		150	ms
nlp_test_min_timer	5		7	ms
transmit_link_burst_timer	5.7	14	22.3	ms

28.3.3 State diagram counters

flp_cnt

A counter that may take on integer values from 0 to 17. This counter is used to keep a count of the number of FLPs detected to enable the determination of whether the Link Partner supports Auto-Negotiation.

Values: not_done; 0 to 5 inclusive.
done; 6 to 17 inclusive.
init; counter is reset to zero.

remaining_ack_cnt

A counter that may take on integer values from 0 to 8. The number of additional Link Code Words with the Acknowledge Bit set to logic one to be sent to ensure that the Link Partner receives the acknowledgment.

Values: not_done; positive integers between 0 and 5 inclusive.
done; positive integers 6 to 8 inclusive (default).
init; counter is reset to zero.

rx_bit_cnt

A counter that may take on integer values from 0 to 17. This counter is used to keep a count of data bits received from an FLP Burst and to ensure that when erroneous extra pulses are received, the first 16 bits are kept while the rest are ignored. When this variable reaches 16 or 17, enough data bits have been received. This counter does not increment beyond 17 and does not return to 0 until it is reinitialized.

Values: not_done; 1 to 15 inclusive.
done; 16 or 17
init; counter is reset to zero.
rx_bit_cnt_check; 10 to 17 inclusive.

tx_bit_cnt

A counter that may take on integer values from 1 to 17. This counter is used to keep a count of data bits sent within an FLP Burst. When this variable reaches 17, all data bits have been sent.

Values: not_done; 1 to 16 inclusive.
done; 17.
init; counter is initialized to 1.

28.3.4 State diagrams

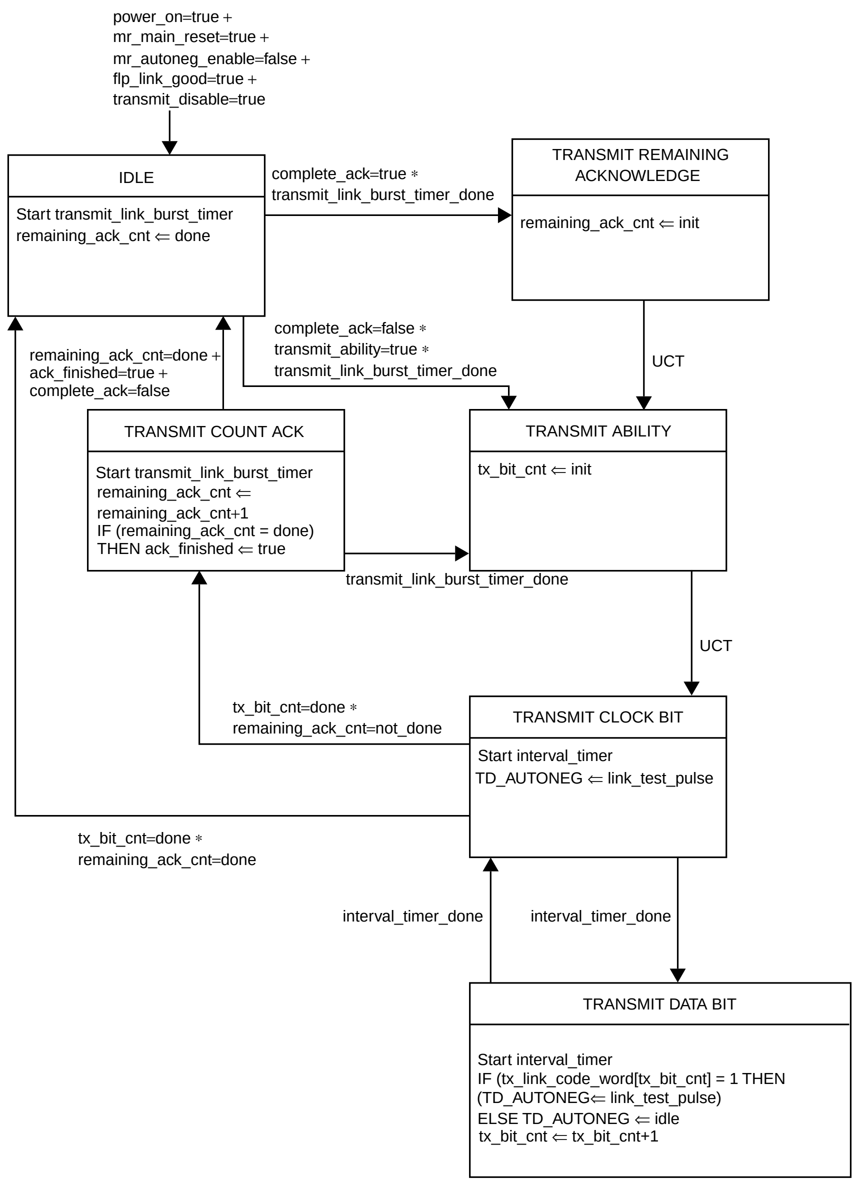


Figure 28-14—Transmit state diagram

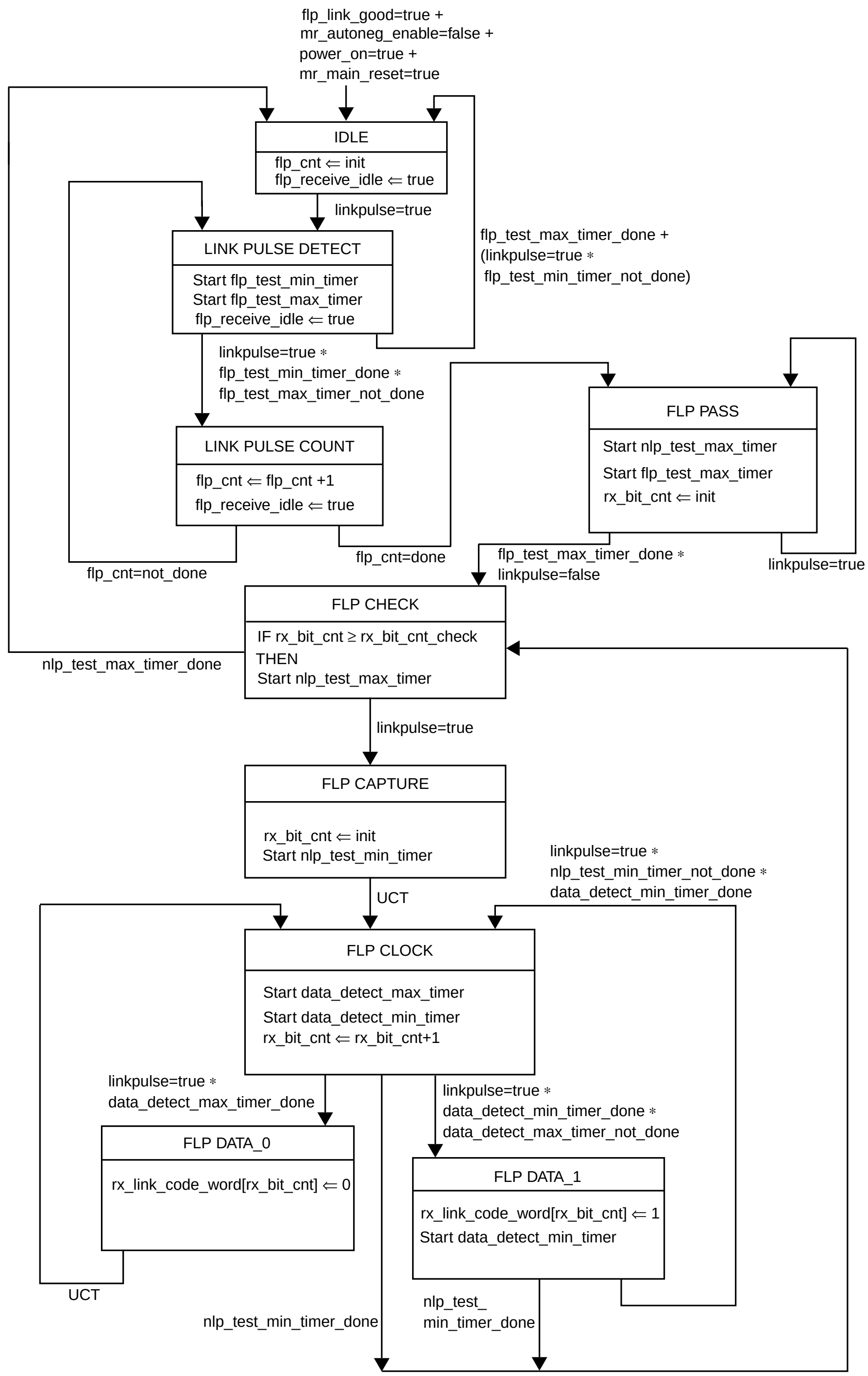


Figure 28-15—Receive state diagram

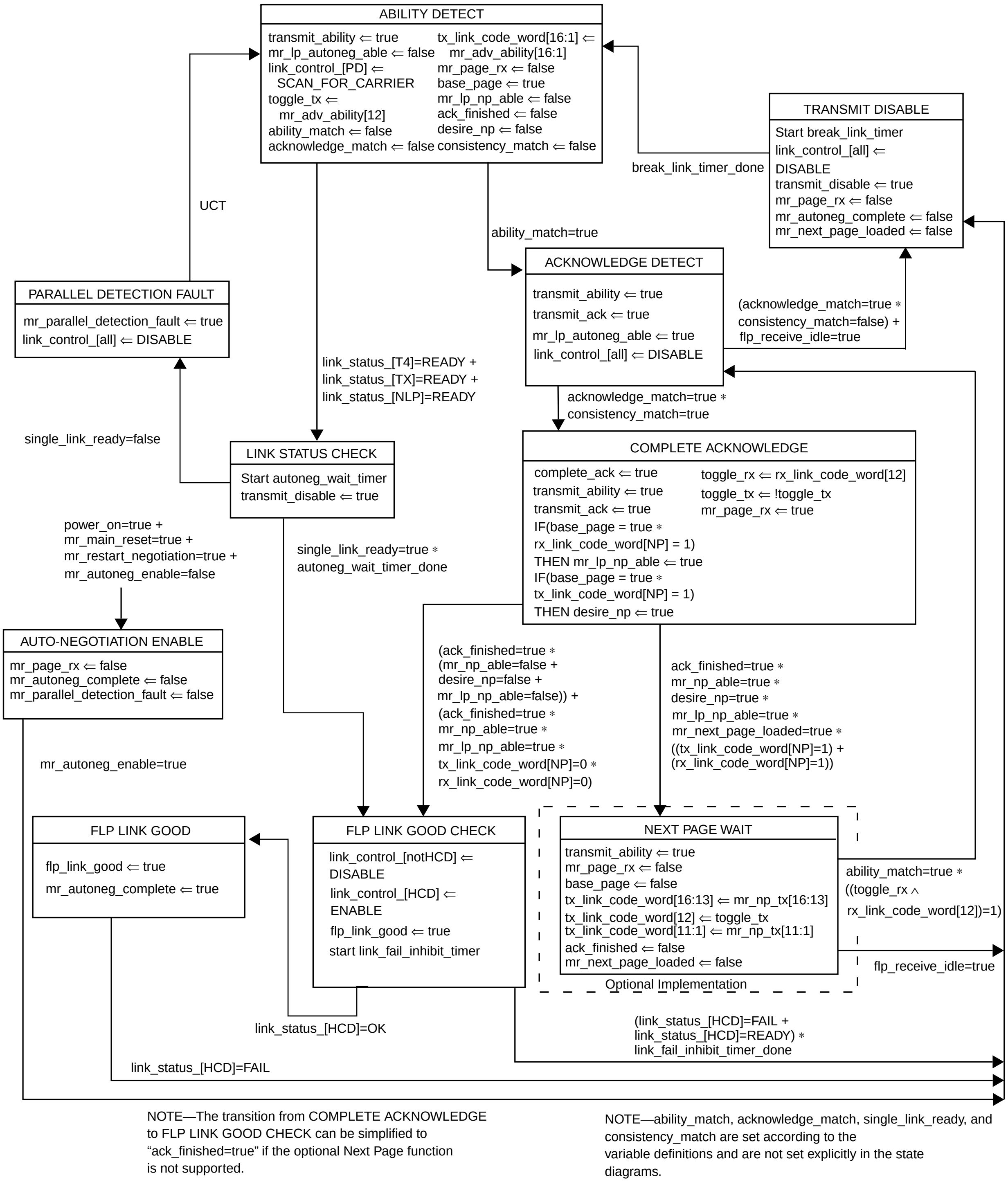
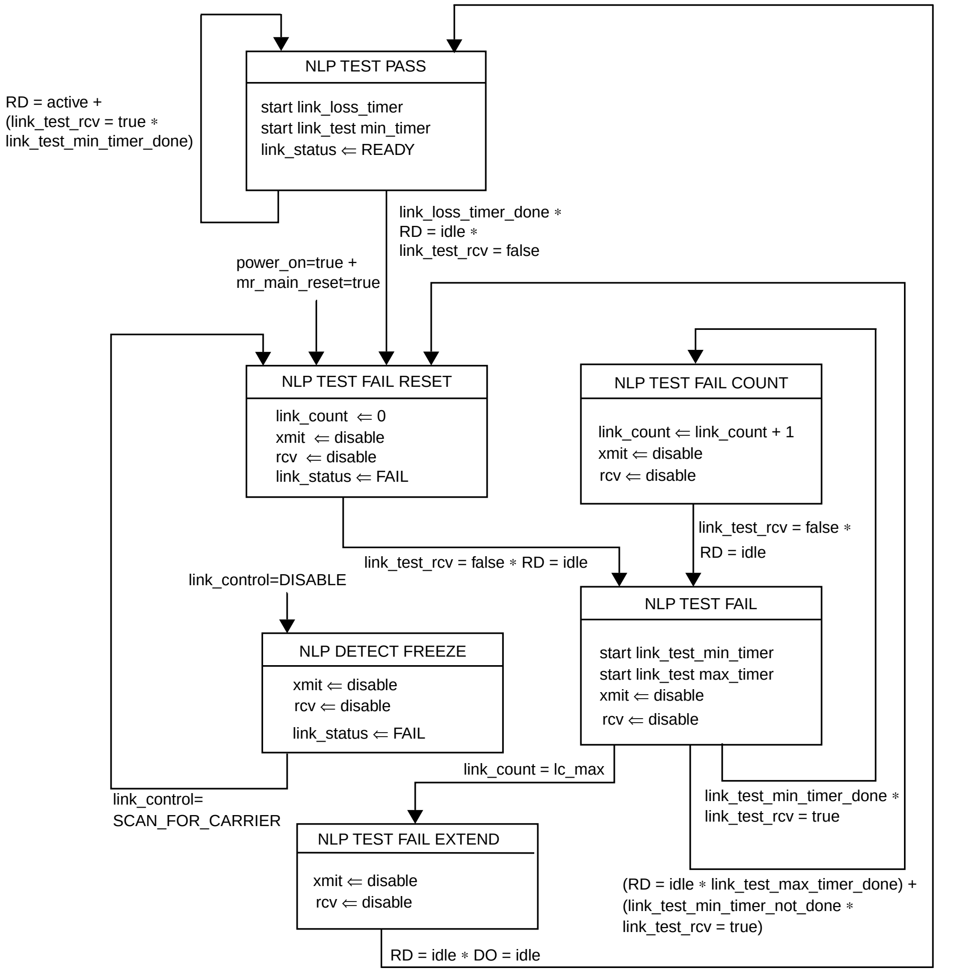


Figure 28-16—Arbitration state diagram



NOTE—The variables link_control and link_status are viewed as dedicated signals by the NLP Receive Link integrity Test state diagram, but are viewed as link_control_[NLP] and link_status_[NLP] by the Auto-Negotiation Arbitration state diagram, figure 28-16.

Figure 28-17—NLP Receive Link Integrity Test state diagram

28.4 Electrical specifications

The electrical characteristics of pulses within FLP Bursts shall be identical to the characteristics of NLPs and shall meet the requirements of figure 14-12.

It is the responsibility of the technology-specific Transmit and Receive functions to interface to the MDI correctly.

NOTE—The requirements relative to the interface to the MDI are specified via the Transmit Switch and Receive Switch functions.

28.5 Protocol Implementation Conformance Statement (PICS) proforma for clause 28, Physical Layer link signaling for 10 Mb/s and 100 Mb/s Auto-Negotiation on twisted pair[27]

28.5.1 Introduction

The supplier of a protocol implementation that is claimed to conform to IEEE Std 802.3u-1995, Physical Layer link signaling for 10 Mb/s and 100 Mb/s Auto-Negotiation on twisted pair, shall complete the following Protocol Implementation Conformance Statement (PICS) proforma.

A detailed description of the symbols used in the PICS proforma, along with instructions for completing the PICS proforma, can be found in clause 21.

28.5.2 Identification

28.5.2.1 Implementation identification

Supplier	
Contact point for enquiries about the PICS	
Implementation Name(s) and Version(s)	
Other information necessary for full identification—e.g., name(s) and version(s) for machines and/or operating systems; System Names(s)	
NOTES 1—Only the first three items are required for all implementations; other information may be completed as appropriate in meeting the requirements for the identification. 2—The terms Name and Version should be interpreted appropriately to correspond with a supplier's terminology (e.g., Type, Series, Model).	

28.5.2.2 Protocol summary

Identification of protocol standard	IEEE Std 802.3u-1995, Physical Layer link signaling for 10 Mb/s and 100 Mb/s Auto-Negotiation on twisted pair
Identification of amendments and corrigenda to this PICS proforma that have been completed as part of this PICS	
Have any Exception items been required? No [ ] Yes [ ] (See clause 21; the answer Yes means that the implementation does not conform to IEEE Std 802.3u-1995.)	
Date of Statement	

[27]*Copyright release for PICS proformas:* Users of this standard may freely reproduce the PICS proforma in this annex so that it can be used for its intended purpose and may further publish the completed PICS.

28.5.3 Major capabilities/options

Item	Feature	Subclause	Status	Support	Value/comment
10BT	Implementation supports a 10BASE-T data service	28.1.2	O		N/A
*NP	Implementation supports Next Page function	28.1.2	O		N/A
*MII	Implementation supports the MII Management Interface	28.1.2	O/1		N/A
MGMT	Implementation supports a non-MII Management Interface	28.1.2	O/1		N/A
*NOM	Implementation does not support management	28.1.2	O/1		N/A
*RF	Implementation supports Remote Fault Sensing	28.2.3.5	O		N/A

28.5.4 PICS proforma tables for Physical Layer link signaling for 10 Mb/s and 100 Mb/s Auto-Negotiation on twisted pair

28.5.4.1 Scope

Item	Feature	Subclause	Status	Support	Value/comment
1	MII Management Interface control and status registers	28.1.3	MII:M		Implemented in accordance with the definitions in clause 22 and 28.2.4
2	CSMA/CD compatible devices using an eight-pin modular connector and using a signaling method to automatically configure the preferred mode of operation	28.1.4	M		Auto-Negotiation function implemented in compliance with clause 28
3	Device uses 10BASE-T compatible link signaling to advertise non-CSMA/CD abilities	28.1.4	M		Auto-Negotiation function implemented in compliance with clause 28
4	Future CSMA/CD implementations that use an eight-pin modular connector	28.1.4	M		Interoperable with devices compliant with clause 28

28.5.4.2 Auto-Negotiation functions

Item	Feature	Subclause	Status	Support	Value/comment
1	Transmit	28.2	M		Complies with figure 28-14
2	Receive	28.2	M		Complies with figure 28-15
3	Arbitration	28.2	M		Complies with figure 28-16
4	NLP Receive Link Integrity Test	28.2	M		Complies with figure 28-17
5	Technology-Dependent Interface	28.2	M		Complies with 28.2.6
6	Technology-dependent link integrity test	28.2	M		Implemented and interfaced to for those technologies supported by device
7	Management	28.2	O		MII based or alternate management

28.5.4.3 Transmit function requirements

Item	Feature	Subclause	Status	Support	Value/comment
1	FLP Burst transmission	28.2.1.1	M		Not transmitted once Auto-Negotiation is complete and highest common denominator PMA has been enabled. Prohibited other than for link start-up
2	FLP Burst composition	28.2.1.1.1	M		Pulses in FLP Bursts meet the requirements of figure 14-12
3	FLP Burst pulse definition	28.2.1.1.1	M		17 odd-numbered pulse positions represent clock information; 16 even-numbered pulse positions represent data information
4	The first pulse in an FLP Burst	28.2.1.1.2	M		Defined as a clock pulse for timing purposes
5	FLP Burst clock pulse spacing	28.2.1.1.2	M		Within an FLP Burst, spacing is 125 ± 14 µs
6	Logic one data bit representation	28.2.1.1.2	M		Pulse transmitted 62.5 ± 7 µs after the preceding clock pulse
7	Logic zero data bit representation	28.2.1.1.2	M		No link integrity test pulses within 111 µs of the preceding clock pulse
8	Consecutive FLP Bursts	28.2.1.1.2	M		The first link pulse in each FLP Burst is separated by 16 ± 8 ms
9	FLP Burst base page	28.2.1.2	M		Conforms to figure 28-7

Item	Feature	Subclause	Status	Support	Value/comment
10	FLP Burst bit transmission order	28.2.1.2	M		Transmission is D0 first to D15 last
11	Selector Field values	28.2.1.2.1	M		Only defined values transmitted
12	Technology Ability Field values	28.2.1.2.2	M		Implementation supports a data service for each ability set in the Technology Ability Field
13	Remote Fault bit	28.2.1.2.3	M		Used in accordance with the Remote Fault function specifications
14	Acknowledge bit set, no Next Page to be sent	28.2.1.2.4	M		Set to logic one in the Link Code Word after the reception of at least three consecutive and consistent FLP Bursts
15	Acknowledge bit set, Next Page to be sent	28.2.1.2.4	NP:M		Set to logic one in the transmitted Link Code Word after the reception of at least three consecutive and consistent FLP Bursts and the current receive Link Code Word is saved
16	Number of Link Code Words sent with Acknowledge bit set	28.2.1.2.4	M		6 to 8 inclusive after COMPLETE ACKNOWLEDGE state entered
17	Device does not implement optional Next Page ability	28.2.1.2.5	M		NP=0 in base Link Code Word
18	Device implements optional Next Page ability and wishes to engage in Next Page exchange	28.2.1.2.5	NP:M		NP=1 in base Link Code Word
19	Transmit Switch function on completion of Auto-Negotiation	28.2.1.3	M		Enables the transmit path from a single technology-dependent PMA to the MDI once the highest common denominator has been selected
20	Transmit Switch function during Auto-Negotiation	28.2.1.3	M		Connects FLP Burst generator governed by figure 28-14 to the MDI
21	Signals presented at MDI after connection through Transmit Switch from PMA	28.2.1.3	M		Conform to appropriate PHY specifications

28.5.4.4 Receive function requirements

Item	Feature	Subclause	Status	Support	Value/comment
1	Timer expiration	28.2.2.1	M		Timer definition in 28.3.2, values shown in table 28-8
2	Identification of Link Partner as Auto-Negotiation able	28.2.2.1	M		Reception of 6 to 17 (inclusive) consecutive link pulses separated by at least flp_test_min_timer time but less than flp_test_max_timer time
3	First FLP Burst identifying Link Partner as Auto-Negotiation able	28.2.2.1	M		Data recovered is discarded if FLP Burst is incomplete
4	First link pulse in an FLP Burst	28.2.2.1	M		Interpreted as a clock link pulse
5	Restart of the data_detect_min_timer and data_detect_max_timer	28.2.2.1	M		Detection of a clock link pulse (figure 28-9)
6	Reception of logic one	28.2.2.1	M		Link pulse received between greater than data_detect_min_timer time and less than data_detect_max_timer time after a clock pulse (figure 28-9)
7	Reception of logic zero	28.2.2.1	M		Link pulse received after greater than data_detect_max_timer time after clock pulse, is treated as clock pulse (figure 28-9)
8	FLP Bursts separation	28.2.2.1	M		Conforms to the nlp_test_min_timer and nlp_test_max_timer timing (figure 28-10)
9	Receive Switch function on completion of Auto-Negotiation	28.2.2.3	M		Enables the receive path from the MDI to a single technology-dependent PMA once the highest common denominator has been selected
10	Receive Switch function during Auto-Negotiation	28.2.2.3	M		Connects the MDI to the FLP and NLP receivers governed by figures 28-15 and 28-17, and to the 100BASE-TX and 100BASE-T4 receivers if present
11	Signals presented to PMA after connection through Receive Switch from MDI	28.2.2.3	M		Conform to appropriate PHY specifications
12	Generation of ability_match, acknowledge_match, and consistency_match	28.2.2.4	M		Responsibility of Receive function in accordance with 28.3.1

28.5.4.5 Arbitration functions

Item	Feature	Subclause	Status	Support	Value/comment
1	MDI receive connection during Auto-Negotiation, prior to FLP detection	28.2.3.1	M		Connected to the NLP Receive Link Integrity Test state diagram, and the link integrity test functions of 100BASE-TX and/or 100BASE-T4. Not connected to the 10BASE-T or any other PMA
2	Parallel detection operational mode selection	28.2.3.1	M		Set link_control=ENABLE for the single PMA indicating link_status=READY when the autoneg_wait_timer expires
3	Parallel detection PMA control	28.2.3.1	M		Set link_control=DISABLE to all PMAs except the selected operational PMA and indicate Auto-Negotiation has completed
4	Parallel detection setting of link partner ability register	28.2.3.1	M		On transition to the FLP LINK GOOD CHECK state from the LINK STATUS CHECK state the Parallel Detection function shall set the bit in the link partner ability register (register 5) corresponding to the technology detected by the Parallel Detection function
5	Response to renegotiation request	28.2.3.2	M		Disable all technology-dependent link integrity test functions and halt transmit activity until break_link_timer expires
6	Auto-Negotiation resumption	28.2.3.2	M		Issue FLP Bursts with base page valid in tx_link_code_word[16:1] after break_link_timer expires
7	Priority resolution	28.2.3.3	M		Single PMA connected to MDI is enabled corresponding to Technology Ability Field bit common to both Local/Link Partner Device and that has highest priority as defined by annex 28B
8	Effect of receipt of reserved Technology Ability Field bit on priority resolution	28.2.3.3	M		Local Device ignores during priority resolution
9	Effect of parallel detection on priority resolution	28.2.3.3	M		Local Device considers technology identified by parallel detection as HCD
10	Values for HCD and link_status_[HCD] in the event there is no common technology	28.2.3.3	M		HCD=NULL link_status_[HCD]=FAIL

Item	Feature	Subclause	Status	Support	Value/comment
11	Message Page to Unformatted Page relationship for non-matching Selector Fields	28.2.3.4	NP:M		Each series of Unformatted Pages is preceded by an Message Page containing a message code that defines how the following Unformatted Page(s) will be interpreted
12	Message Page to Unformatted Page relationship for matching Selector Fields	28.2.3.4	NP:M		Use of Message Pages is specified by the Selector Field value
13	Transmission of Null message codes	28.2.3.4	NP:M		Sent with NP=0 on completion of all Next Pages while Link Partner continues to transmit valid Next Page information
14	Reception of Null message codes	28.2.3.4	NP:M		Recognized as indicating end of Link Partner's Next Page information
15	Next Page encoding	28.2.3.4.1	NP:M		Comply with figures 28-11 and 28-12 for the NP, Ack, MP, Ack2, and T bits
16	Message/Unformatted Code Field	28.2.3.4.1	NP:M		D10-D0 encoded as Message Code Field if MP=1 or Unformatted Code Field if MP=0
17	NP bit encoding	28.2.3.4.2	NP:M		Logic 0=last page, logic 1=additional Next Page(s) follow
18	Message Page bit encoding	28.2.3.4.4	NP:M		Logic 0=Unformatted Page, logic 1=Message Page
19	Ack2 bit encoding	28.2.3.4.5	NP:M		Logic 0=cannot comply with message; logic 1= will comply with message
20	Toggle	28.2.3.4.6	NP:M		Takes the opposite value of the Toggle bit in the previously exchanged Link Code Word
21	Toggle encoding	28.2.3.4.6	NP:M		Logic zero = previous value of the transmitted Link Code Word equalled logic one Logic one = previous value of the transmitted Link Code Word equalled logic zero
22	Message Page encoding	28.2.3.4.7	NP:M		If MP=1, Link Code Word interpreted as Message Page
23	Message Code Field	28.2.3.4.8	NP:M		Combinations not shown in annex 28B are reserved and may not be transmitted
24	Unformatted Page encoding	28.2.3.4.9	NP:M		If MP=0, Link Code Word interpreted as Unformatted Page

Item	Feature	Subclause	Status	Support	Value/comment
25	Minimum Next Page exchange	28.2.3.4.11	NP:M		If both devices indicate Next Page able, both send a minimum of one Next Page
26	Multiple Next Page exchange	28.2.3.4.11	NP:M		If both devices indicate Next Page able, exchange continues until neither Local/Remote Device has additional information; device sends Next Page with Null Message Code if it has no information to transmit
27	Unformatted Page ordering	28.2.3.4.11	NP:M		Unformatted Pages immediately follow the referencing Message Code in the order specified by the Message Code
28	Next Page Transmit register	28.2.3.4.12	NP:M		Defined in 28.2.4.1.6
29	Next Page receive data	28.2.3.4.12	NP:O		May be stored in Auto-Negotiation link partner ability register
30	Remote Fault sensing	28.2.3.5	RF:M		Optional
31	Transmission of RF bit by Local Device	28.2.3.5	M		If Local Device has no method to set RF bit, it must transmit RF bit with value of RF bit in Auto-Negotiation advertisement register (4.13)
32	RF bit reset	28.2.3.5	M		Once set, the RF bit remains set until successful renegotiation with the base Link Code Word
33	Receipt of Remote Fault indication in Base Link Code Word	28.2.3.5	MII:M		Device sets the Remote Fault bit in the MII status register (1.4) to logic one if MII is present

28.5.4.6 Management function requirements

Item	Feature	Subclause	Status	Support	Value/comment
1	Mandatory MII registers for Auto-Negotiation	28.2.4.1	MII:M		Registers 0, 1, 4, 5, 6
2	Optional MII register for Auto-Negotiation	28.2.4.1	MII* NP:M		Register 7
3	Auto-Negotiation enable	28.2.4.1.1	MII:M		Set control register Auto-Negotiation Enable bit (0.12)
4	Manual Speed/Duplex settings	28.2.4.1.1	MII:M		When bit 0.12 set, control register Speed Detection (0.13) and Duplex Mode (0.8) are ignored, and the Auto-Negotiation function determines link configuration
5	control register (register 0) Restart Auto-Negotiation (0.9) default	28.2.4.1.1	MII:M		PHY returns value of one in 0.9 until Auto-Negotiation has been initiated
6	control register (register 0) Restart Auto-Negotiation (0.9) set	28.2.4.1.1	MII:M		When 0.9 set, Auto-Negotiation will (re)initiate. On completion, 0.9 will be reset by the PHY device. Writing a zero to 0.9 at any time has no effect
7	control register (register 0) Restart Auto-Negotiation (0.9) reset	28.2.4.1.1	MII:M		0.9 is self-clearing; writing a zero to 0.9 at any time has no effect
8	status register (register 1) Auto-Negotiation Complete (1.5) reset	28.2.4.1.2	MII:M		If bit 0.12 reset, or a PHY lacks the ability to perform Auto-Negotiation, (1.5) is reset
9	status register (register 1) Remote Fault (1.4)	28.2.4.1.2	MII:M		Set by the PHY and remains set until either the status register is read or the PHY is reset
10	advertisement register power on default	28.2.4.1.3	MII:M		Selector field as defined in annex 28A; Ack=0; Technology Ability Field based on MII status register (1.15:11) or logical equivalent
11	link partner ability register read/write	28.2.4.1.4	MII:M		Read only; write has no effect
12	link partner ability register bit definitions	28.2.4.1.4	MII:M		Direct representation of the received Link Code Word (figure 28-7)
13	status register (register 1) Auto-Negotiation Complete (1.5) set	28.2.4.1.4	MII:M		Set to logic one upon successful completion of Auto-Negotiation
14	Auto-Negotiation expansion register (register 6)	28.2.4.1.5	MII:M		Read only; write has no effect
15	Link Partner Auto-Negotiation Able bit (6.0)	28.2.4.1.5	MII:M		Set to indicate that the Link Partner is able to participate in the Auto-Negotiation function

Item	Feature	Subclause	Status	Support	Value/comment
16	Page Received bit (6.1) set	28.2.4.1.5	MII:M		Set to indicate that a new Link Code Word has been received and stored in the Auto-Negotiation link partner ability register
17	Page Received bit (6.1) reset	28.2.4.1.5	MII:M		Reset on a read of the Auto-Negotiation expansion register (register 6)
18	The Next Page Able bit (6.2) set	28.2.4.1.5	NP* MII:M		Set to indicate that the Local Device supports the Next Page function
19	The Link Partner Next Page Able bit (6.3) set	28.2.4.1.5	MII:M		Set to indicate that the Link Partner supports the Next Page function
20	Parallel Detection Fault bit (6.4) set	28.2.4.1.5	MII:M		Set to indicate that zero or more than one of the NLP Receive Link Integrity Test function, 100BASE-TX, or 100BASE-T4 PMAs have indicated link_status=READY when the autoneg_wait_timer expires
21	Parallel Detection Fault bit (6.4) reset	28.2.4.1.5	MII:M		Reset on a read of the Auto-Negotiation expansion register (register 6)
22	Next Page Transmit register default	28.2.4.1.6	NP* MII:M		On power-up, contains value of 2001 H
23	Write to Next Page Transmit register	28.2.4.1.6	NP* MII:M		mr_next_page_loaded set to true
24	Absence of management function	28.2.5	NOM:M		Advertised abilities provided through a logical equivalent of mr_adv_ability[16:1]
25	Next Page support in absence of MII management	28.2.5	NOM:M		Device must provide logical equivalent of mr_np_able, mr_lp_np_able, or mr_next_page_loaded variables in order to set NP bit in transmitted Link Code Word

28.5.4.7 Technology-dependent interface

Item	Feature	Subclause	Status	Support	Value/comment
1	PMA_LINK.indicate (link_status) values	28.2.6.1.1	M		link_status set to READY, OK or FAIL
2	PMA_LINK.indicate(link_status) generation	28.2.6.1.2	M		Technology-dependent PMA and NLP Receive Link Integrity Test state diagram (figure 28-17) responsibility
3	PMA_LINK.indicate(link_status), effect of receipt	28.2.6.1.3	M		Governed by the state diagram of figure 28-16
4	PMA_LINK.request(link_control) values	28.2.6.1.3	M		link_control set to SCAN_FOR_CARRIER, DISABLE, or ENABLE
5	Effect of link_control=SCAN_FOR_CARRIER	28.2.6.2.1	M		PMA to search for carrier and report link_status=READY when carrier is received, but no other actions are enabled
6	Effect of link_control=DISABLE	28.2.6.2.1	M		Disables PMA processing
7	Effect of link_control=ENABLE	28.2.6.2.1	M		Control passed to a single PMA for normal processing functions
8	PMA_LINK.request(link_control) generation	28.2.6.2.2	M		Auto-Negotiation function responsibility in accordance with figures 28-15 and 28-16
9	PMA_LINK.request(link_control) default upon power-on, reset, or release from power-down	28.2.6.2.2	M		link_control = DISABLE state to all technology-dependent PMAs
10	PMA_LINK.request(link_control) effect of receipt	28.2.6.2.3	M		Governed by figure 28-17 and the receiving technology-dependent link integrity test function

28.5.4.8 State diagrams

Item	Feature	Subclause	Status	Support	Value/comment
1	Adherence to state diagrams	28.3	M		Implement all features of figures 28-14 to 28-17. Identified options to figures 28-14 to 28-17 are permitted
3	Ambiguous requirements	28.3	M		State diagrams take precedence in defining functional operation
4	autoneg_wait_timer	28.3.1	M		Expires between 500–1000 ms after being started
5	break_link_timer	28.3.2	M		Expires between 1200–1500 ms after being started
6	data_detect_min_timer	28.3.2	M		Expires between 15–47 µs from the last clock pulse
7	data_detect_max_timer	28.3.2	M		Expire between 78–100 µs from the last clock pulse
8	flp_test_max_timer	28.3.2	M		Expires between 165–185 µs from the last link pulse
9	flp_test_min_timer	28.3.2	M		Expires between 5–25 µs from the last link pulse
10	interval_timer	28.3.2	M		Expires 55.5–69.5 µs from each clock pulse and data bit
11	link_fail_inhibit_timer	28.3.2	M		Expires 750–1000 ms after entering the FLP LINK GOOD CHECK state
12	nlp_test_max_timer	28.3.2	M		Expires between 50–150 ms after being started if not restarted
13	nlp_test_min_timer	28.3.2	M		Expires between 5–7 ms after being started if not restarted
14	transmit_link_burst_timer	28.3.1	M		Expires 5.7–22.3 ms after the last transmitted link pulse in an FLP Burst

28.5.4.9 Electrical characteristics

Item	Feature	Subclause	Status	Support	Value/comment
1	Pulses within FLP Bursts	28.4	M		Identical to the characteristics of NLPs and meet the requirements of figure 14-12

28.5.4.10 Auto-Negotiation annexes

Item	Feature	Subclause	Status	Support	Value/comment
1	Selector Field, S[4:0] values in the Link Code Word	28A	M		Identifies base message type as defined by table 28-9
2	Selector Field reserved combinations	28A	M		Transmission not permitted
3	Relative priorities of the technologies supported by the IEEE 802.3 Selector Field value	28B.3	M		Defined in 28B.3
4	Relative order of the technologies supported by IEEE 802.3 Selector Field	28B.3	M		Remain unchanged
5	Addition of new technology	28B.3	M		Inserted into its appropriate place in the priority resolution hierarchy, shifting technologies of lesser priority lower in priority
6	Addition of vendor-specific technology	28B.3	M		Priority of IEEE 802.3 standard topologies maintained, vendor-specific technologies to be inserted into an appropriate location
7	Message Code Field	28C	NP:M		Defines how following Unformatted Pages (if applicable) are interpreted
8	Message Code Field reserved combinations	28C	NP:M		Transmission not permitted
9	Auto-Negotiation reserved code 1	28C.1	NP:M		Transmission of M10 to M0 equals 0, not permitted
10	Null Message Code	28C.2	NP:M		Transmitted during Next Page exchange when the Local Device has no information to transmit and Link Partner has additional pages to transmit
11	Remote Fault Identifier Message Code	28C.5	NP:M		Followed by single Unformatted Page to identify fault type with types defined in 28C.5

Item	Feature	Subclause	Status	Support	Value/comment
12	Organizationally Unique Identifier Message Code	28C.6	NP:M		Followed by 4 Unformatted Pages. First Unformatted Page contains most significant 11 bits of OUI (bits 23:13) with MSB in U10; Second Unformatted Page contains next most significant 11 bits of OUI (bits 12:2), with MSB in U10; Third Unformatted Page contains the least significant 2 bits of OUI (bits 1:0) with MSB in U10, bits U8:0 contains user-defined code specific to OUI; Fourth Unformatted Page contains user-defined code specific to OUI
13	PHY Identifier Message Code	28C.7	NP:M		Followed by 4 Unformatted Pages. First Unformatted Page contains most significant 11 bits of PHY ID (2.15:5) with MSB in U10; Second Unformatted Page contains PHY ID bits 2.4:0 to 3.15:10, with MSB in U10; Third Unformatted Page contains PHY ID bits 3.9:0, with MSB in U10, and U0 contains user-defined code specific to PHY ID; Fourth Unformatted Page contains user-defined code specific to PHY ID
14	Auto-Negotiation reserved code 2	28C.8	NP:M		Transmission of M10 to M0 equals 1, not permitted

28.6 Auto-Negotiation expansion

Auto-Negotiation is designed in a way that allows it to be easily expanded as new technologies are developed. When a new technology is developed, the following things must be done to allow Auto-Negotiation to support it:

a) The appropriate Selector Field value to contain the new technology must be selected and allocated.
b) A Technology bit must be allocated for the new technology within the chosen Selector Field value.
c) The new technology's relative priority within the technologies supported within a Selector Field value must be established.

Code space allocations are enumerated in annexes 28A, 28B, and 28C. Additions and insertions to the annexes are allowed. No changes to existing bits already defined are allowed.

29. System considerations for multi-segment 100BASE-T networks

29.1 Overview

This clause provides information on building 100BASE-T networks. The 100BASE-T technology is designed to be deployed in both homogenous 100 Mb/s networks and heterogeneous 10/100 Mb/s mixed CSMA/CD networks. Network topologies can be developed within a single 100BASE-T collision domain, but maximum flexibility is achieved by designing multiple collision domain networks that are joined by bridges and/or routers configured to provide a range of service levels to DTEs. For example, a combined 100BASE-T/10BASE-T system built with repeaters and bridges can deliver dedicated 100 Mb/s, shared 100 Mb/s, dedicated 10 Mb/s, and shared 10 Mb/s service to DTEs. The effective bandwidth of shared services is controlled by the number of DTEs that share the service.

Linking multiple 100BASE-T collision domains with bridges maximizes flexibility. Bridged topology designs can provide single bandwidth (figure 29-1) or multiple bandwidth (figure 29-2) services.

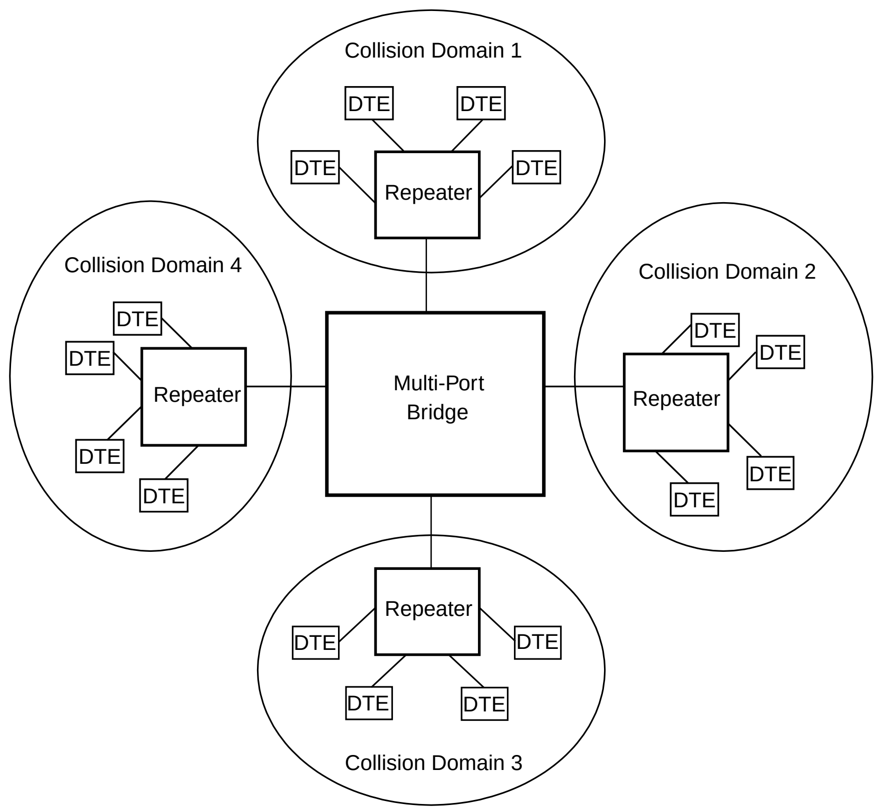


Figure 29-1—100 Mb/s multiple collision domain topology using multi-port bridge

Individual collision domains can be linked by single devices (as shown in figures 29-1 and 29-2) or by multiple devices from any of several transmission systems. The design of multiple-collision-domain networks is governed by the rules defining each of the transmission systems incorporated into the design.

The design of shared bandwidth 10 Mb/s collision domains is defined in clause 13; the design of shared bandwidth 100 Mb/s CSMA/CD collision domains is defined in the following subclauses.

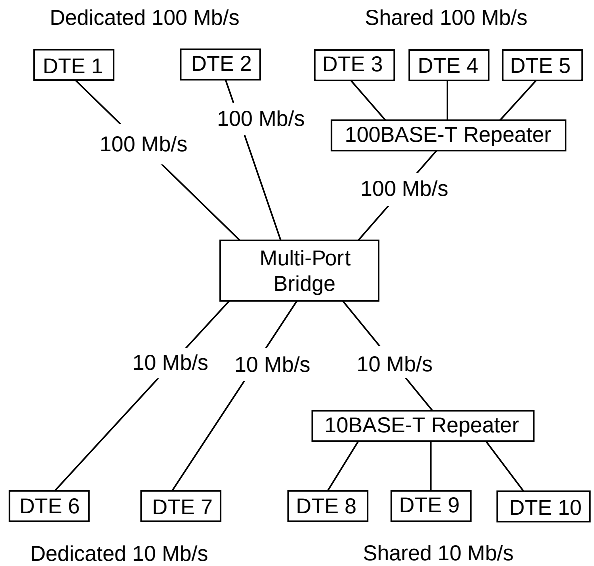


Figure 29-2—Multiple bandwidth, multiple collision domain topology using multi-port bridge

29.1.1 Single collision domain multi-segment networks

This clause provides information on building 100 Mb/s CSMA/CD multi-segment networks within a single collision domain. The proper operation of a CSMA/CD network requires the physical size and number of repeaters to be limited in order to meet the round-trip propagation delay requirements of 4.2.3.2.3 and 4.4.2.1 and IPG requirements specified in 4.4.2.1.

This clause provides two network models. Transmission System Model 1 is a set of configurations that have been validated under conservative rules and have been qualified as meeting the requirements set forth above. Transmission System Model 2 is a set of calculation aids that allow those configuring a network to test a proposed configuration against a simple set of criteria that allows it to be qualified. Transmission System Model 2 validates an additional broad set of topologies that are fully functional and do not fit within the simpler, but more restrictive rules of Model 1.

The physical size of a CSMA/CD network is limited by the characteristics of individual network components. These characteristics include the following:

a) Media lengths and their associated propagation time delay
b) Delay of repeater units (start-up, steady-state, and end of event)
c) Delay of MAUs and PHYs (start-up, steady-state, and end of event)
d) Interpacket gap shrinkage due to repeater units
e) Delays within the DTE associated with the CSMA/CD access method
f) Collision detect and deassertion times associated with the MAUs and PHYs

Table 29-1 summarizes the delays for 100BASE-T media segments. For more detailed information on the delays associated with individual 100BASE-T components, see

MII:	annex 22A
100BASE-T4:	23.11
100BASE-TX:	annex 24A
100BASE-FX:	annex 24A

Repeater: 27.3

Table 29-1—Delays for network media segments Model 1

Media type	Maximum number of PHYs per segment	Maximum segment length (m)	Maximum medium round-trip delay per segment (BT)
Balanced cable Link Segment 100BASE-T	2	100	114
Fiber Link Segment	2	412	412

29.1.2 Repeater usage

Repeaters are the means used to connect segments of a network medium together into a single collision domain. Different physical signaling systems (e.g., 100BASE-T4, 100BASE-TX, 100BASE-FX) can be joined into a common collision domain using repeaters. Bridges can also be used to connect different signaling systems; however, if a bridge is so used, each system connected to the bridge will be a separate collision domain.

Two types of repeaters are defined for 100BASE-T (see clause 27). Class I repeaters are principally used to connect unlike physical signaling systems and have internal delays such that only one Class I repeater can reside within a single collision domain when maximum cable lengths are used (see figure 29-4). Class II repeaters typically provide ports for only one physical signaling system type (e.g., 100BASE-TX but not 100BASE-T4) and have smaller internal delays so that two such repeaters may reside within a given collision domain when maximum cable lengths are used (see figure 29-6). Cable length can be sacrificed to add additional repeaters in a collision domain (see 29.3).

29.2 Transmission System Model 1

The following network topology constraints apply to networks using Transmission System Model 1.

a) All balanced cable (copper) segments less than or equal to 100 m each.
b) Fiber segments less than or equal to 412 m each.
c) MII cables for 100BASE-T shall not exceed 0.5 m each. When evaluating system topology, MII cable delays need not be accounted for separately. Delays attributable to the MII are incorporated into DTE and repeater component delays.

29.3 Transmission System Model 2

The physical size and number of topological elements in a 100BASE-T network is limited primarily by round-trip collision delay. A network configuration must be validated against collision delay using a network model. Since there are a limited number of topology models for any 100BASE-T collision domain, the modeling process is quite straightforward and can easily be done either manually or with a spreadsheet.

The model proposed here is derived from the one presented in 13.4. Modifications have been made to accommodate adjustments for DTE, repeater, and cable speeds.

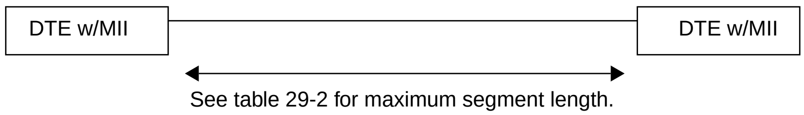


Figure 29-3—Model 1: Two DTEs, no repeater

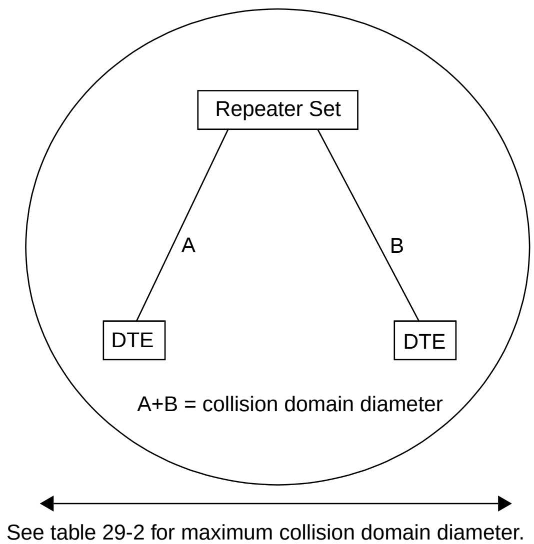


Figure 29-4—Model 1: Single repeater

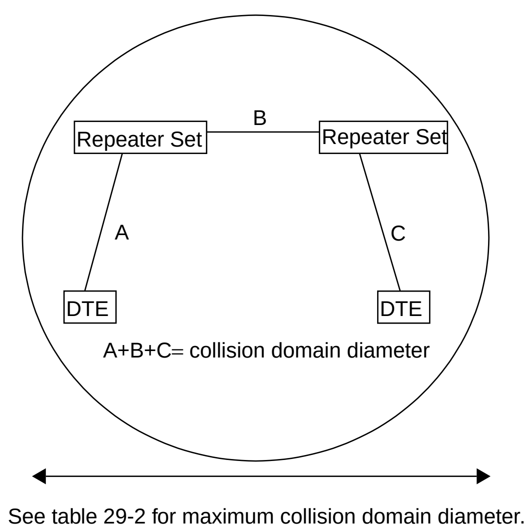


Figure 29-5—System Model 1: Two Class II repeaters

Table 29-2—Maximum Model 1 collision domain diameter[a]

Model	Balance d cable (copper)	Fiber	Balanced cable & fiber (T4 and FX)	Balanced cable & fiber (TX and FX)
DTE-DTE (see figure 29-3)	100	412	na	na
One Class I repeater (see figure 29-4)	200	272	231[b]	260.8[b]
One Class II repeater (see figure 29-4)	200	320	304[b,c]	308.8[b]
Two Class II repeaters (see figure 29-5)	205	228	236.3[d,c]	216.2[d]

[a]In meters, no margin.
[b]Assumes 100 m of balanced cable and one fiber link.
[c]This entry included for completeness. It may be impractical to construct a T4 to FX class II repeater.
[d]Assumes 105 m of balanced cable and one fiber link.

29.3.1 Round-trip collision delay

For a network to be valid, it must be possible for any two DTEs on the network to contend for the network at the same time. Each station attempting to transmit must be notified of the contention by the returned “collision” signal within the “collision window” (see 4.1.2.2 and 5.2.2.1.2). Additionally, the maximum length fragment created must contain less than 512 bits after the start-of-frame delimiter (SFD). These requirements limit the physical diameter (maximum distance between DTEs) of a network. The maximum round-trip delay must be qualified between all pairs of DTEs in the network. In practice this means that the qualification must be done between those that, by inspection of the topology, are candidates for the longest delay. The following network modeling methodology is provided to assist that calculation.

29.3.1.1 Worst-case path delay value (PDV) selection

The worst-case path through a network to be validated shall be identified by examination of aggregate DTE delays, cable delays, and repeater delays. The worst case consists of the path between the two DTEs at opposite ends of the network that have the longest round-trip time. Figures 29-6 and 29-7 show schematic representatins of one-repeater and two-repeater paths.

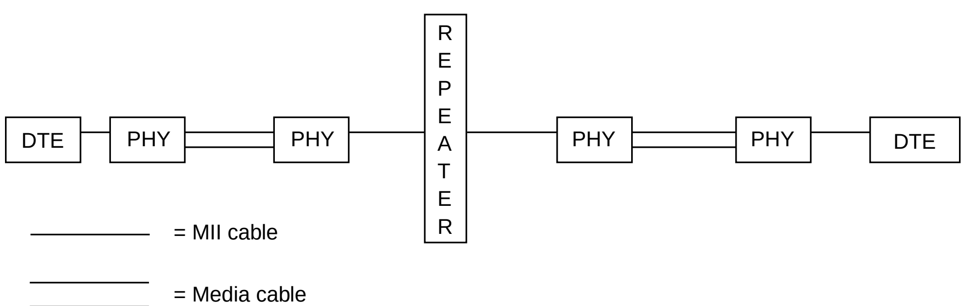


Figure 29-6—System Model 2: Single repeater

29.3.1.2 Worst-case PDV calculation

Once a set of paths is chosen for calculation, each shall be checked for validity against the following formula:

$$PDV = \sum \text{link delays (LSDV)} + \sum \text{repeater delays} + \text{DTE delays} + \text{safety margin}$$

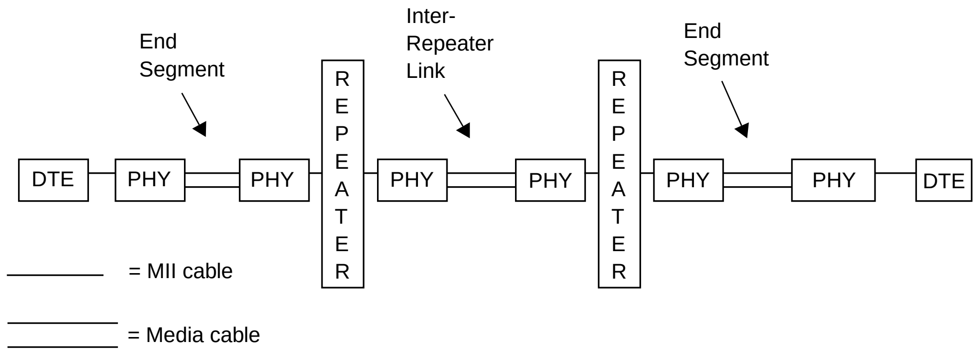


Figure 29-7—System Model 2-2: Two repeaters

Values for the formula variables are determined by the following method:

a) Determine the delay for each link segment (Link Segment Delay Value, or LSDV), including inter-repeater links, using the formula

LSDV=2 (for round-trip delay) × segment length × cable delay for this segment

NOTES

1—Length is the sum of the cable lengths between the PHY interfaces at the repeater and the farthest DTE for End Segments plus the sum of the cable lengths between the repeater PHY interfaces for Inter-Repeater Links. All measurements are in meters.

2—Cable delay is the delay specified by the manufacturer or the maximum value for the type of cable used as shown in table 29-3. For this calculation, cable delay must be specified in bit times per meter (BT/m). Table 29-4 can be used to convert values specified relative to the speed of light (%c) or nanoseconds per meter (ns/m).

3—When actual cable lengths or propagation delays are not known, use the Max delay in bit times as specified in table 29-3 for copper cables. Delays for fiber should be calculated, as the value found in table 29-3 will be too large for most applications.

b) Sum together the LSDVs for all segments in the path.
c) Determine the delay for each repeater in the path. If model-specific data are not available from the manufacturer, determine the class of each repeater (I or II) and enter the appropriate default value from table 29-3.
d) MII cables for 100BASE-T shall not exceed 0.5 m each. When evaluating system topology, MII cable delays need not be accounted for separately. Delays attributable to the MII are incorporated into DTE and repeater component delays.
e) Use the DTE delay value shown in table 29-3 unless your equipment manufacturer defines a different value.
f) Decide on appropriate safety margin—0 to 5 bit times—for the PDV calculation. Safety margin is used to provide additional margin to accommodate unanticipated delay elements, such as extra-long connecting cable runs between wall jacks and DTEs. (A safety margin of 4 BT is recommended.)
g) Insert the values obtained through the calculations above into the following formula to calculate the PDV. (Some configurations may not use all the elements of the formula.)

PDV = $\sum$link delays (LSDV) + $\sum$repeater delays + DTE delay + safety margin

h) If the PDV is less than 512, the path is qualified in terms of worst-case delay.
i) Late collisions and/or CRC errors are indicators that path delays exceed 512 BT.

Table 29-3—Network component delays, Transmission System Model 2

Component	Round-trip delay in bit times per meter	Maximum round-trip delay in bit times
Two TX/FX DTEs		100
Two T4 DTEs		138
One T4 and one TX/FX DTE[a]		127
Cat 3 cable segment	1.14	114 (100 m)
Cat 4 cable segment	1.14	114 (100 m)
Cat 5 cable segment	1.112	111.2 (100 m)
STP cable segment	1.112	111.2 (100 m)
Fiber optic cable segment	1.0	412 (412 m)
Class I repeater		140
Class II repeater with all ports TX/FX		92
Class II repeater with any port T4		67

[a]Worst-case values are used (TX/FX values for MAC transmit start and MDI input to collision detect; T4 value for MDI input to MDI output).

Table 29-4—Conversion table for cable delays

Speed relative to c	ns/m	BT/m
0.4	8.34	0.834
0.5	6.67	0.667
0.51	6.54	0.654
0.52	6.41	0.641
0.53	6.29	0.629
0.54	6.18	0.618
0.55	6.06	0.606
0.56	5.96	0.596
0.57	5.85	0.585
0.58	5.75	0.575
0.5852	5.70	0.570
0.59	5.65	0.565
0.6	5.56	0.556
0.61	5.47	0.547
0.62	5.38	0.538
0.63	5.29	0.529
0.64	5.21	0.521
0.65	5.13	0.513
0.654	5.10	0.510
0.66	5.05	0.505
0.666	5.01	0.501
0.67	4.98	0.498
0.68	4.91	0.491
0.69	4.83	0.483
0.7	4.77	0.477
0.8	4.17	0.417
0.9	3.71	0.371

30. 10 Mb/s and 100 Mb/s Management

30.1 Overview

This clause provides the Layer Management specification for DTEs, repeaters, and MAUs based on the CSMA/CD access method. The clause is produced from the ISO framework additions to clause 5, Layer Management; clause 19, Repeater Management; and clause 20, MAU Management. It incorporates additions to the objects, attributes and behaviors to support 100 Mb/s CSMA/CD.

The layout of this clause takes the same form as 5.1, 5.2, and clauses 19 and 20, although with equivalent subclauses grouped together. It identifies a common management model and framework applicable to IEEE 802.3 managed elements, identifies those elements and defines their managed objects, attributes, and behaviours in a protocol-independent language. It also includes a formal GDMO definition of the protocol encodings for CMIP and ISO/IEC 15802-2: 1995 [IEEE 802.1B].

NOTE—The arcs (that is, object identifier values) defined in Annex 30A, the formal GDMO definitions, deprecate the arcs previously defined in Annexes D1 (Layer Management), D2 (Repeater Management) and D3 (MAU Management). See IEEE Std 802.1F-1993, annex C.4.

This clause provides the Layer Management specification for DTEs, repeaters, and MAUs based on the CSMA/CD access method. It defines facilities comprised of a set of statistics and actions needed to provide IEEE 802.3 Management services. The information in this clause should be used in conjunction with the Procedural Model defined in 4.2.7–4.2.10. The Procedural Model provides a formal description of the relationship between the CSMA/CD Layer Entities and the Layer Management facilities.

This management specification has been developed in accordance with the OSI management architecture as specified in the ISO Management Framework document, ISO/IEC 7498-4: 1989. It is independent of any particular management application or management protocol.

The management facilities defined in this standard may be accessed both locally and remotely. Thus, the Layer Management specification provides facilities that can be accessed from within a station or can be accessed remotely by means of a peer-management protocol operating between application entities.

In CSMA/CD no peer management facilities are necessary for initiating or terminating normal protocol operations or for handling abnormal protocol conditions. The monitoring of these activities is done by the carrier sense and collision detection mechanisms. Since these activities are necessary for normal operation of the protocol, they are not considered to be a function of Layer Management and are, therefore, not discussed in this clause.

Implementation of part or all of 10 Mb/s and 100 Mb/s Management is not a requirement for conformance to clauses 4, 7, 9, 22, 23, 24, 25, 26, 27, or 28.

The intent of this standard is to furnish a management specification that can be used by the wide variety of different devices that may be attached to a network specified by ISO/IEC 8802-3. Thus, a comprehensive list of management facilities is provided.

The improper use of some of the facilities described in this clause may cause serious disruption of the network. In accordance with ISO management architecture, any necessary security provisions should be provided by the Agent in the Local System Environment. This can be in the form of specific security features or in the form of security features provided by the peer communication facilities.

30.1.1 Scope

This clause includes selections from clauses 5, 19, and 20. It is intended to be an entirely equivalent specification for the management of 10 Mb/s DTEs, 10 Mb/s baseband repeater units, and 10 Mb/s integrated MAUs. It also includes the additions for management of 100 Mb/s DTEs, repeater units, embedded MAUs, and external PHYs connected with the MII. Implementations of management for 10 Mb/s DTEs, repeater units, and embedded MAUs should follow the requirements of this clause (e.g., a 10 Mb/s implementation should incorporate the attributes to indicate that it is not capable of 100 Mb/s operation).

This clause defines a set of mechanisms that enable management of ISO/IEC 8802-3 10 Mb/s and 100 Mb/s DTEs, baseband repeater units, and integrated Medium Attachment Units (MAUs). In addition, for ports without integral MAUs, attributes are provided for characteristics observable from the AUI of the connected DTE or repeater. Direct management of AUI MAUs that are external to their respective DTEs or repeaters is beyond the scope of this standard. The managed objects within this standard are defined in terms of their behaviour, attributes, actions, notifications, and packages in accordance with IEEE 802.1 and ISO standards for network management. Managed objects are grouped into mandatory and optional packages.

This specification is defined to be independent of any particular management application or management protocol. The means by which the managed objects defined in this standard are accessed is beyond the scope of this standard.

30.1.2 Relationship to objects in IEEE 802.1F

The following managed object classes, if supported by an implementation, shall be as specified in IEEE Std 802.1F-1993: ResourceTypeID, EWMAMetricMonitor.

oResourceTypeID

This object class is mandatory and shall be implemented as defined in IEEE 802.1F. This object is bound to oMAC-Entity, oRepeater, and oMAU as defined by the NAMEBINDINGs in 30A.8.1. Note that the binding to oMAU is mandatory only when MII is present. The Entity Relationship Diagram, figure 30-3, shows these bindings pictorially.

oEWMAMetricMonitor

This object class is optional. When implemented, it shall be implemented as defined in IEEE 802.1F, subject to the specific requirements described below. This object is bound to system as defined by the NAMEBINDINGs in 30A.1.1, 30A.3.1, and 30A.2.1.

Implementations of IEEE 802.3 Management that support the oEWMAMetricMonitor managed object class are required to support values of granularity period as small as one second. Implementations are required to support at least one sequence of low and high thresholds. The granularity period may be set to equal to the moving time period as a minimal conformant implementation.

30.1.3 Systems management overview

Within the ISO Open Systems Interconnection (OSI) architecture, the need to handle the special problems of initializing, terminating, and monitoring ongoing activities and assisting in their operations, as well as handling abnormal conditions, is recognized. These needs are collectively addressed by the systems management component of the OSI architecture.

A management protocol is required for the exchange of information between systems on a network. This management standard is independent of any particular management protocol.

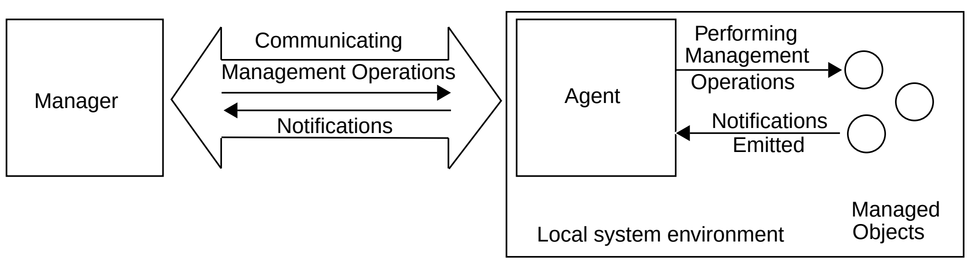
This management standard, in conjunction with the management standards of other layers, provides the means to perform various management functions. IEEE 802.3 Management collects information needed from the MAC and Physical Layers and the devices defined in IEEE 802.3. It also provides a means to exercise control over those elements.

The relationship between the various management entities and the layer entities according to the ISO model is shown in figure 30-1.

30.1.4 Management model

This standard describes management of DTEs, repeaters, and integrated MAUs in terms of a general model of management of resources within the open systems environment. The model, which is described in ISO/IEC 10040: 1992, is briefly summarized here.

Management is viewed as a distributed application modeled as a set of interacting management processes. These processes are executed by systems within the open environment. A managing system executes a managing process that invokes management operations. A managed system executes a process that is receptive to these management operations and provides an interface to the resources to be managed. A managed object is the abstraction of a resource that represents its properties as seen by (and for the purpose of) management. Managed objects respond to a defined set of management operations. Managed objects are also capable of emitting a defined set of notifications. This interaction of processes is shown in figure 30-1.



NOTE—This figure is drawn from figure 1 of ISO/IEC 10040: 1992, Information technology—Open Systems Interconnection—Systems management overview. In the event of any conflict, the depiction in ISO/IEC 10040: 1992 takes precedence.

Figure 30-1—Interaction between manager, agent, and objects

A managed object is a management view of a resource. The resource may be a logical construct, function, physical device, or anything subject to management. Managed objects are defined in terms of four types of elements:

a) *Attributes.* Data-like properties (as seen by management) of a managed object.
b) *Actions.* Operations that a managing process may perform on an object or its attributes.
c) *Notifications.* Unsolicited reports of events that may be generated by an object.
d) *Behaviour.* The way in which managed objects, attributes, and actions interact with the actual resources they model and with each other.

The above items are defined in 30.3, 30.4, 30.5, and 30.6 of this clause in terms of the template requirements of ISO/IEC 10165-4: 1991.

Some of the functions and resources within 802.3 devices are appropriate targets for management. They have been identified by specifying managed objects that provide a management view of the functions or resources. Within this general model, the 802.3 device is viewed as a managed device. It performs functions as defined by the applicable standard for such a device. Managed objects providing a view of those functions and resources appropriate to the management of the device are specified. The purpose of this standard is to define the object classes associated with the devices in terms of their attributes, operations, notifications, and behaviour.

30.2 Managed objects

30.2.1 Introduction

This clause identifies the Managed Object classes for IEEE 802.3 components within a managed system. It also identifies which managed objects and packages are applicable to which components.

All counters defined in this specification are assumed to be wrap-around counters. Wrap-around counters are those that automatically go from their maximum value (or final value) to zero and continue to operate. These unsigned counters do not provide for any explicit means to return them to their minimum (zero), i.e., reset. Because of their nature, wrap-around counters should be read frequently enough to avoid loss of information. Counters in 30.3, 30.4, 30.5 and 30.6 that have maximum increment rates specified for 10 Mb/s operation, and are appropriate to 100 Mb/s operation, have ten times the stated maximum increment rate for 100 Mb/s operation unless otherwise indicated.

30.2.2 Overview of managed objects

Managed objects provide a means to

— Identify a resource
— Control a resource
— Monitor a resource

30.2.2.1 Text description of managed objects

In case of conflict, the formal behaviour definitions in 30.3, 30.4, 30.5, and 30.6 take precedence over the text descriptions in this subclause.

oMACEntity

The top-most managed object class of the DTE portion of the containment tree shown in figure 30-3. Note that this managed object class may be contained within another superior managed object class. Such containment is expected, but is outside the scope of this standard.

oPHYEntity

Contained within oMACEntity. Many instances of oPHYEntity may coexist within one instance of oMACEntity; however, only one PHY may be active for data transfer to and from the MAC at any one time. oPHYEntity is the managed object that contains the MAU managed object in a DTE.

oRepeater

The top-most managed object class of the repeater portion of the containment tree shown in figure 30-3. Note that this managed object class may be contained within another superior managed object class. Such containment is expected, but is outside the scope of this standard.

oRepeaterMonitor

A managed object class called out by IEEE Std 802.1F-1993. See 30.1.2, oEWMAMetricMonitor.

oGroup

The group managed object class is a view of a collection of repeater ports.

oRepeaterPort

The repeater port managed object class provides a view of the functional link between the data transfer service and a single PMA. The attributes associated with repeater port deal with the monitoring of traffic being handled by the repeater from the port and control of the operation of the port. The Port Enable/Disable function as reported by portAdminState is preserved across events involving loss of power. The oRepeaterPort managed object contains the MAU managed object in a repeater set.

NOTE—Attachment to nonstandard PMAs is outside the scope of this standard.

oMAU

The managed object of that portion of the containment tree shown in figure 30-3. The attributes, notifications, and actions defined in this subclause are contained within the MAU managed object. Neither counter values nor the value of MAUAdminState is required to be preserved across events involving the loss of power.

oAutoNegotiation

The managed object of that portion of the containment tree shown in figure 30-3. The attributes, notifications, and actions defined in this subclause are contained within the MAU managed object.

oResourceTypeID

A managed object class called out by IEEE Std 802.1F-1993. It is used within this clause to identify manufacturer, product, and revision of managed components that implement functions and interfaces defined within IEEE 802.3. The Clause 22 MII specifies two registers to carry PHY Identifier (22.2.4.3.1), which provides succinct information sufficient to support oResourceTypeID.

30.2.2.2 Functions to support management

Functions are defined in clauses 5, 7, 22, 23, 24, 25, 26, 27, and 28 both to facilitate unmanaged operation and managed operation. The functions in these clauses that facilitate managed operation are referenced from the text of this management clause.

30.2.2.2.1 DTE MAC sublayer functions

For DTE MACs, with regard to reception-related error statistics a hierarchical order has been established such that when multiple error statuses can be associated with one frame, only one status is returned to the LLC. This hierarchy in descending order is as follows:

— frameTooLong
— alignmentError
— frameCheckError
— lengthError

The counters are primarily incremented based on the status returned to the LLC; therefore, the hierarchical order of the counters is determined by the order of the status. Frame fragments are not included in any of the statistics unless otherwise stated. In implementing any of the specified actions, receptions and transmissions that are in progress are completed before the action takes effect.

30.2.2.2.2 Repeater functions

The Repeater Port Object class contains seven functions which are defined in this clause and are used to collect statistics on the activity received by the port. The relationship of the functions to the repeater port and to the port attributes is shown in figure 30-2.

Activity Timing function

The Activity Timing function measures the duration of the assertion of the CarrierEvent signal. This duration value must be adjusted by removing the value of Carrier Recovery Time (see 9.5.6.5) to obtain the true duration of activity on the network. The output of the Activity Timing function is the ActivityDuration value, which represents the duration of the CarrierEvent signal as expressed in units of bit times.

Carrier Event function

The Carrier Event function asserts the CarrierEvent signal when the repeater exits the IDLE state (see figure 9-2) and the port has been determined to be port N. It de-asserts the CarrierEvent signal when, for a duration of at least Carrier Recovery Time (see 9.5.6.5), both the DataIn(N) variable has the value II and the CollIn(N) variable has the value –SQE. The value N is the port assigned at the time of transition from the IDLE state.

Collision Event function

The Collision Event function asserts the CollisionEvent signal when the CollIn(X) variable has the value SQE. The CollisionEvent signal remains asserted until the assertion of any CarrierEvent signal due to the reception of the following event.

Cyclic Redundancy Check function

The Cyclic Redundancy Check function verifies that the sequence of octets output by the Framing function contains a valid Frame Check Sequence Field. The Frame Check Sequence Field is the last four octets received from the output of the Framing function. The algorithm for generating an FCS from the octet stream is specified in 3.2.8. If the FCS generated according to this algorithm is not the same as the last four octets received from the Framing function, then the FCSError signal is asserted. The FCSError signal is cleared upon the assertion of the CarrierEvent signal due to the reception of the following event.

Framing function

The Framing function recognizes the boundaries of an incoming frame by monitoring the CarrierEvent signal and the decoded data stream. data bits are accepted while the CarrierEvent signal is asserted. The framing function strips preamble and start of frame delimiter from the received data stream. The remaining bits are aligned along octet boundaries. If there is not an integral number of octets, then FramingError shall be asserted. The FramingError signal is cleared upon the assertion of the CarrierEvent signal due to the reception of the following event.

Octet Counting function

The Octet Counting function counts the number of complete octets received from the output of the framing function. The output of the octet counting function is the OctetCount value. The OctetCount value is reset to zero upon the assertion of the CarrierEvent signal due to the reception of the following event.

Source Address function

The Source Address function extracts octets from the stream output by the framing function. The seventh through twelfth octets shall be extracted from the octet stream and output as the SourceAddress variable. The SourceAddress variable is set to an invalid state upon the assertion of the CarrierEvent signal due to the reception of the following event.

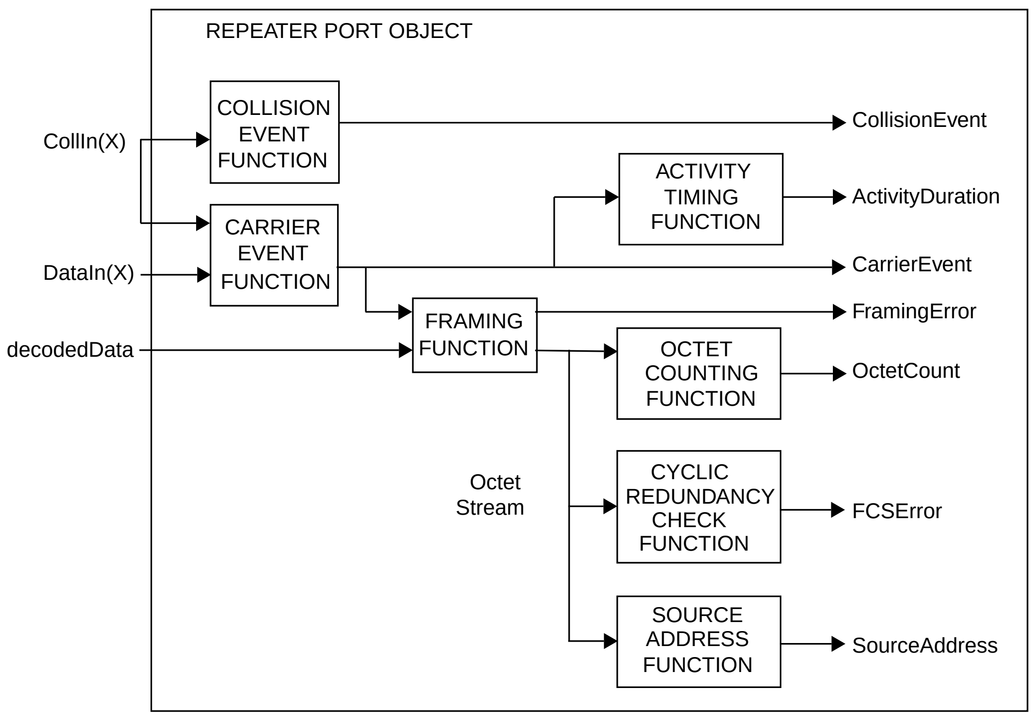


Figure 30-2—Functions relationship

30.2.3 Containment

A containment relationship is a structuring relationship for managed objects in which the existence of a managed object is dependent on the existence of a containing managed object. The contained managed object is said to be the subordinate managed object, and the containing managed object the superior managed object. The containment relationship is used for naming managed objects. The local containment relationships among object classes are depicted in the entity relationship diagram, figure 30-3. This figure also shows the names, naming attributes, and data attributes of the object classes as well as whether a particular containment relationship is one-to-one or one-to-many. For further requirements on this topic, see IEEE Std 802.1F-1993.

MAU management is only valid in a system that provides management at the next higher containment level, that is, either a DTE or repeater with management.

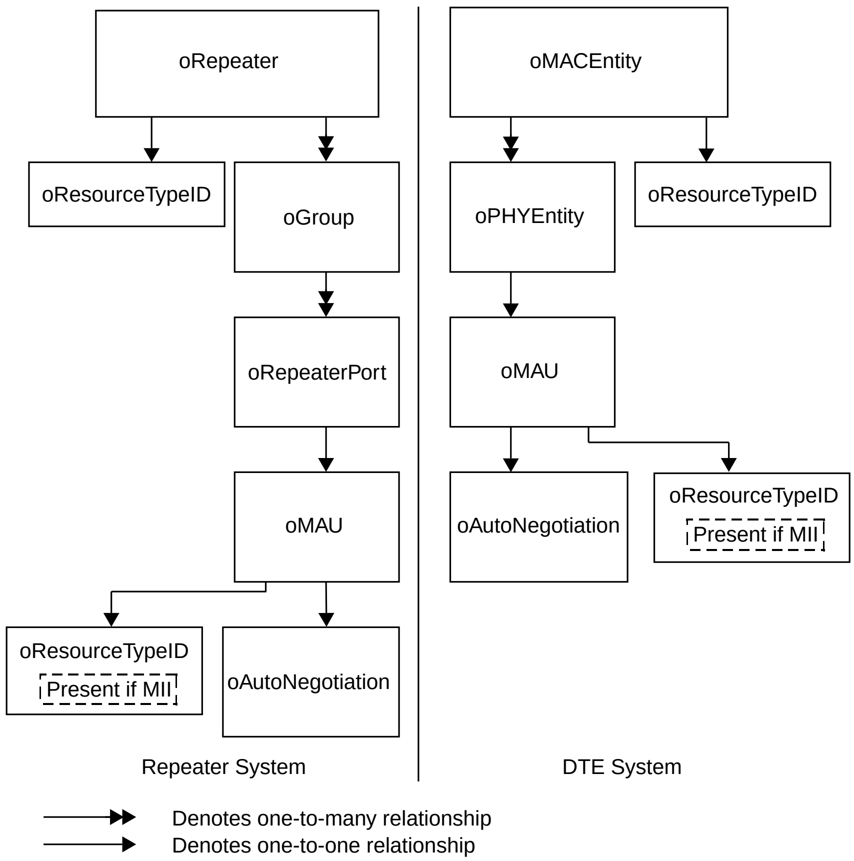


Figure 30-3—10/100 Mb/s entity relationship diagram

30.2.4 Naming

The name of an individual managed object is hierarchically defined within a managed system. For example, in the context of repeater management, a repeater port might be identified as "repeater 3, group 01, port 13," that is, port 13 of group 01 of a repeater with repeaterID 3 within the managed system.

In the case of MAU management, this will present itself in one of the two forms that are appropriate for a MAU's use, that is, as associated with a CSMA/CD interface of a DTE or with a particular port of a managed repeater. For example, a MAU could be identified as "repeater 3, group 01, port 13, MAU 1" or, that is, the MAU associated with port 13 of group 01 of a repeater with repeaterID 3 within the managed system. Examples of this are represented in the relationship of the naming attributes in the entity relationship diagram, figure 30-3.

30.2.5 Capabilities

This standard makes use of the concept of *packages* as defined in ISO/IEC 10165-4: 1992 as a means of grouping behaviour, attributes, actions, and notifications within a managed object class definition. Packages may either be mandatory, or be conditional, that is to say, present if a given condition is true. Within this standard *capabilities* are defined, each of which corresponds to a set of packages, which are components of a number of managed object class definitions and which share the same condition for presence. Implementation of the appropriate basic and mandatory packages is the minimum requirement for claiming conformance to IEEE 802.3 10 Mb/s and 100 Mb/s Management. Implementation of an entire optional capability is required in order to claim conformance to that capability. The capabilities and packages for 10 Mb/s and 100 Mb/s Management are specified in tables 30-1a, 30-1b, 30-1c, and 30-1d.

DTE Management has two packages that are required for management at the minimum conformance configuration—the Basic Package and the Mandatory Package. For systems that include multiple PHY entities per MAC entity, and implement the Multiple PHY Package to manage the selection of the active PHY, the optional Recommended Package shall be implemented.

For managed MAUs, the Basic Package is mandatory; all other packages are optional. For a managed MAU to be conformant to this standard, it shall fully implement the Basic Package. For a MAU to be conformant to an optional package it shall implement that entire package. While nonconformant (reference aMAUType = “other”) MAUs may utilize some or all of this clause to specify their management, conformance to this clause requires both a conformant MAU and conformant management. MAU Management is optional with respect to all other CSMA/CD Management. If an MII is present then the conditional MII Capability must be implemented. This provides the means to identify the vendor and type of the externally connected device.

There are two distinct aspects of Repeater Management.

The first aspect provides the means to monitor and control the functions of a repeater. These functions include, but are not limited to: identifying a repeater, testing and initializing a repeater, and enabling/disabling a port. This is encompassed by the mandatory Basic Control Capability.

The second aspect provides the means to monitor traffic from attached segments, and to measure traffic sourced by DTEs connected to these segments. This is done by gathering statistics on packets that enter a repeater and maintaining those statistics on a per port basis. This is encompassed by the optional Performance Monitor Capability. The optional Address Tracking Capability provides the means to identify existence and movement of attached DTEs by their MAC addresses.

If link Auto-Negotiation is present and managed, the Auto-Negotiation managed object class shall be implemented in its entirety. All attributes and actions are mandatory.

The 100 Mb/s Monitor Capability provides additional attributes that relate to 100 Mb/s operation only. These attributes are provided to complement the counter attributes of the optional packages and capabilities that apply to 10 Mb/s and mixed 10 and 100 Mb/s implementations. It is expected that when the 100 Mb/s Monitor Capability is implemented, the appropriate complementary counter packages and capabilities are also implemented.

Table 30-1a—Capabilities

			DTE								Repeater				MAU						
			Basic Package (Mandatory)	Mandatory Package (Mandatory)	Recommended Package (Optional)	Optional Package (Optional)	Array Package (Optional)	Excessive Deferral Package (Optional)	Multiple PHY Package (Optional)	100 Mb/s Monitor Capability (Optional)	Basic Control Capability (Mandatory)	Performance Monitor Capability (Optional)	Address Tracking Capability (Optional)	100 Mb/s Monitor Capability (Optional)	Basic Package (Mandatory)	MAU Control Package (Optional)	Media Loss Tracking Package (Conditional)	Broadband DTE MAU Package (Conditional)	MII Capability (Conditional)	100 Mb/s Monitor Capability (Optional)	Auto-Negotiation Package (Mandatory)
oResourceTypeID managed object																					
aResourceTypeIDName	ATTRIBUTE	GET	X								X								X		
aResourceInfo	ATTRIBUTE	GET	X								X								X		
oMACEntity managed object class																					
aMACID	ATTRIBUTE	GET	X																		
aFramesTransmittedOK	ATTRIBUTE	GET		X																	
aSingleCollisionFrames	ATTRIBUTE	GET		X																	
aMultipleCollisionFrames	ATTRIBUTE	GET		X																	
aFramesReceivedOK	ATTRIBUTE	GET		X																	
aFrameCheckSequenceErrors	ATTRIBUTE	GET		X																	
aAlignmentErrors	ATTRIBUTE	GET		X																	
aOctetsTransmittedOK	ATTRIBUTE	GET			X																
aFramesWithDeferredXmissions	ATTRIBUTE	GET			X																
aLateCollisions	ATTRIBUTE	GET			X																
aFramesAbortedDueToXSColls	ATTRIBUTE	GET			X																
aFramesLostDueToIntMACXmitError	ATTRIBUTE	GET			X																
aCarrierSenseErrors	ATTRIBUTE	GET			X																
aOctetsReceivedOK	ATTRIBUTE	GET			X																
aFramesLostDueToIntMACRcvError	ATTRIBUTE	GET			X																
aPromiscuousStatus	ATTRIBUTE	GET-SET			X																
aReadMulticastAddressList	ATTRIBUTE	GET			X																
aMulticastFramesXmittedOK	ATTRIBUTE	GET				X															
aBroadcastFramesXmittedOK	ATTRIBUTE	GET				X															
aFramesWithExcessiveDeferral	ATTRIBUTE	GET						X													
aMulticastFramesReceivedOK	ATTRIBUTE	GET				X															
aBroadcastFramesReceivedOK	ATTRIBUTE	GET				X															
aInRangeLengthErrors	ATTRIBUTE	GET				X															
aOutOfRangeLengthField	ATTRIBUTE	GET				X															
aFrameTooLongErrors	ATTRIBUTE	GET				X															
aMACEnableStatus	ATTRIBUTE	GET-SET				X															

Table 30-1b—Capabilities

			DTE								Repeater				MAU						
			Basic Package (Mandatory)	Mandatory Package (Mandatory)	Recommended Package (Optional)	Optional Package (Optional)	Array Package (Optional)	Excessive Deferral Package (Optional)	Multiple PHY Package (Optional)	100 Mb/s Monitor Capability (Optional)	Basic Control Capability (Mandatory)	Performance Monitor Capability (Optional)	Address Tracking Capability (Optional)	100 Mb/s Monitor Capability (Optional)	Basic Package (Mandatory)	MAU Control Package (Optional)	Media Loss Tracking Package (Conditional)	Broadband DTE MAU Package (Conditional)	MII Capability (Conditional)	100 Mb/s Monitor Capability (Optional)	Auto-Negotiation Package (Mandatory)
oMACEntity managed object class (con'd.)																					
aTransmitEnableStatus	ATTRIBUTE	GET-SET				X															
aMulticastReceiveStatus	ATTRIBUTE	GET-SET				X															
aReadWriteMACAddress	ATTRIBUTE	GET-SET				X															
aCollisionFrames	ATTRIBUTE	GET					X														
acInitializeMAC	ACTION		X																		
acAddGroupAddress	ACTION				X																
acDeleteGroupAddress	ACTION				X																
acExecuteSelfTest	ACTION					X															
oPHYEntity managed object class																					
aPHYID	ATTRIBUTE	GET	X																		
aPHYType	ATTRIBUTE	GET	X																		
aPHYTypeList	ATTRIBUTE	GET	X																		
aSQETestErrors	ATTRIBUTE	GET			X																
aSymbolErrorDuringCarrier	ATTRIBUTE	GET								X											
aMIIDetect	ATTRIBUTE	GET	X																		
aPHYAdminState	ATTRIBUTE	GET	X																		
acPHYAdminControl	ACTION								X												
oRepeater managed object class																					
aRepeaterID	ATTRIBUTE	GET									X										
aRepeaterType	ATTRIBUTE	GET									X										
aRepeaterGroupCapacity	ATTRIBUTE	GET									X										
aGroupMap	ATTRIBUTE	GET									X										
aRepeaterHealthState	ATTRIBUTE	GET									X										
aRepeaterHealthText	ATTRIBUTE	GET									X										
aRepeaterHealthData	ATTRIBUTE	GET									X										
aTransmitCollisions	ATTRIBUTE	GET										X									
acResetRepeater	ACTION										X										
acExecuteNonDisruptiveSelfTest	ACTION										X										
nRepeaterHealth	NOTIFICATION										X										
nRepeaterReset	NOTIFICATION										X										
nGroupMapChange	NOTIFICATION										X										

Table 30-1c—Capabilities

			DTE								Repeater				MAU						
			Basic Package (Mandatory)	Mandatory Package	Recommended Package (Optional)	Optional Package (Optional)	Array Package (Optional)	Excessive Deferral Package (Optional)	Multiple PHY Package (Optional)	100 Mb/s Monitor Capability (Optional)	Basic Control Capability (Mandatory)	Performance Monitor Capability (Optional)	Address Tracking Capability (Optional)	100 Mb/s Monitor Capability (Optional)	Basic Package (Mandatory)	MAU Control Package (Optional)	Media Loss Tracking Package (Conditional)	Broadband DTE MAU Package (Conditional)	MII Capability (Conditional)	100 Mb/s Monitor Capability (Optional)	Auto-Negotiation Package (Mandatory)
oGroup managed object class																					
aGroupID	ATTRIBUTE	GET									X										
aGroupPortCapacity	ATTRIBUTE	GET									X										
aPortMap	ATTRIBUTE	GET									X										
nPortMapChange	NOTIFICATION										X										
oRepeaterPort managed object class																					
aPortID	ATTRIBUTE	GET									X										
aPortAdminState	ATTRIBUTE	GET									X										
aAutoPartitionState	ATTRIBUTE	GET									X										
aReadableFrames	ATTRIBUTE	GET										X									
aReadableOctets	ATTRIBUTE	GET										X									
aFrameCheckSequenceErrors	ATTRIBUTE	GET										X									
aAlignmentErrors	ATTRIBUTE	GET										X									
aFramesTooLong	ATTRIBUTE	GET										X									
aShortEvents	ATTRIBUTE	GET										X									
aRunts	ATTRIBUTE	GET										X									
aCollisions	ATTRIBUTE	GET										X									
aLateEvents	ATTRIBUTE	GET										X									
aVeryLongEvents	ATTRIBUTE	GET										X									
aDataRateMismatches	ATTRIBUTE	GET										X									
aAutoPartitions	ATTRIBUTE	GET										X									
aIsolates	ATTRIBUTE	GET												X							
aSymbolErrorDuringPacket	ATTRIBUTE	GET												X							
aLastSourceAddress	ATTRIBUTE	GET											X								
aSourceAddressChanges	ATTRIBUTE	GET											X								
acPortAdminControl	ACTION										X										

Table 30-1d—Capabilities

			DTE								Repeater				MAU						
			Basic Package (Mandatory)	Mandatory Package	Recommended Package (Optional)	Optional Package (Optional)	Array Package (Optional)	Excessive Deferral Package (Optional)	Multiple PHY Package (Optional)	100 Mb/s Monitor Capability (Optional)	Basic Control Capability (Mandatory)	Performance Monitor Capability (Optional)	Address Tracking Capability (Optional)	100 Mb/s Monitor Capability (Optional)	Basic Package (Mandatory)	MAU Control Package (Optional)	Media Loss Tracking Package (Conditional)	Broadband DTE MAU Package (Conditional)	MII Capability (Conditional)	100 Mb/s Monitor Capability (Optional)	Auto-Negotiation Package (Mandatory)
oMAU managed object class																					
aMAUID	ATTRIBUTE	GET													X						
aMAUType	ATTRIBUTE	GET-SET													X						
aMAUTypeList	ATTRIBUTE	GET													X						
aMediaAvailable	ATTRIBUTE	GET													X						
aLoseMediaCounter	ATTRIBUTE	GET															X				
aJabber	ATTRIBUTE	GET													X						
aMAUAdminState	ATTRIBUTE	GET													X						
aBbMAUXmitRcvSplitType	ATTRIBUTE	GET																X			
aBroadbandFrequencies	ATTRIBUTE	GET																X			
aFalseCarriers	ATTRIBUTE	GET																		X	
acResetMAU	ACTION															X					
acMAUAdminControl	ACTION															X					
nJabber	NOTIFICATION														X						
oAuto-Negotiation managed object class																					
aAutoNegID	ATTRIBUTE	GET																			X
aAutoNegAdminState	ATTRIBUTE	GET																			X
aAutoNegRemoteSignaling	ATTRIBUTE	GET																			X
aAutoNegAutoConfig	ATTRIBUTE	GET-SET																			X
aAutoNegLocalTechnologyAbility	ATTRIBUTE	GET																			X
aAutoNegAdvertisedTechnologyAbility	ATTRIBUTE	GET-SET																			X
aAutoNegReceivedTechnologyAbility	ATTRIBUTE	GET																			X
aAutoNegLocalSelectorAbility	ATTRIBUTE	GET																			X
aAutoNegAdvertisedSelectorAbility	ATTRIBUTE	GET-SET																			X
aAutoNegReceivedSelectorAbility	ATTRIBUTE	GET																			X
acAutoNegRestartAutoConfig	ACTION																				X
acAutoNegAdminControl	ACTION																				X
Common Attributes Template																					
aCMCounter	ATTRIBUTE	GET		X	X	X		X		X		X	X	X		X	X			X	

30.3 Layer management for DTEs

30.3.1 MAC entity managed object class

This subclause formally defines the behaviours for the oMACEntity managed object class attributes, actions, and notifications.

30.3.1.1 MAC entity attributes

30.3.1.1.1 aMACID

ATTRIBUTE

APPROPRIATE SYNTAX:
INTEGER

BEHAVIOUR DEFINED AS:
The value of aMACID is assigned so as to uniquely identify a MAC among the subordinate managed objects of the containing object.;

30.3.1.1.2 aFramesTransmittedOK

ATTRIBUTE

APPROPRIATE SYNTAX:
Generalized nonresettable counter. This counter has a maximum increment rate of 16 000 counts per second at 10 Mb/s

BEHAVIOUR DEFINED AS:
A count of frames that are successfully transmitted. This counter is incremented when the TransmitStatus is reported as transmitOK. The actual update occurs in the LayerMgmtTransmitCounters procedure (5.2.4.2).;

30.3.1.1.3 aSingleCollisionFrames

ATTRIBUTE

APPROPRIATE SYNTAX:
Generalized nonresettable counter. This counter has a maximum increment rate of 13 000 counts per second at 10 Mb/s

BEHAVIOUR DEFINED AS:
A count of frames that are involved in a single collision, and are subsequently transmitted successfully. This counter is incremented when the result of a transmission is reported as transmitOK and the attempt value is 2. The actual update occurs in the LayerMgmtTransmitCounters procedure (5.2.4.2).;

30.3.1.1.4 aMultipleCollisionFrames

ATTRIBUTE

APPROPRIATE SYNTAX:
Generalized nonresettable counter. This counter has a maximum increment rate of 11 000 counts per second at 10 Mb/s

BEHAVIOUR DEFINED AS:
A count of frames that are involved in more than one collision and are subsequently transmitted successfully. This counter is incremented when the TransmitStatus is reported as transmitOK and the value of the attempts variable is greater than 2 and less or equal to attemptLimit. The actual update occurs in the LayerMgmtTransmitCounters procedure (5.2.4.2).;

30.3.1.1.5 aFramesReceivedOK

ATTRIBUTE

APPROPRIATE SYNTAX:

Generalized nonresettable counter. This counter has a maximum increment rate of 16 000 counts per second at 10 Mb/s

BEHAVIOUR DEFINED AS:

A count of frames that are successfully received (receiveOK). This does not include frames received with frame-too-long, FCS, length or alignment errors, or frames lost due to internal MAC sublayer error. This counter is incremented when the ReceiveStatus is reported as receiveOK. The actual update occurs in the LayerMgmtReceiveCounters procedure (5.2.4.3).;

30.3.1.1.6 aFrameCheckSequenceErrors

ATTRIBUTE

APPROPRIATE SYNTAX:

Generalized nonresettable counter. This counter has a maximum increment rate of 16 000 counts per second at 10 Mb/s

BEHAVIOUR DEFINED AS:

A count of frames that are an integral number of octets in length and do not pass the FCS check. This counter is incremented when the ReceiveStatus is reported as frameCheckError. The actual update occurs in the LayerMgmtReceiveCounters procedure (5.2.4.3).;

30.3.1.1.7 aAlignmentErrors

ATTRIBUTE

APPROPRIATE SYNTAX:

Generalized nonresettable counter. This counter has a maximum increment rate of 16 000 counts per second at 10 Mb/s

BEHAVIOUR DEFINED AS:

A count of frames that are not an integral number of octets in length and do not pass the FCS check. This counter is incremented when the ReceiveStatus is reported as alignmentError. The actual update occurs in the LayerMgmtReceiveCounters procedure (5.2.4.3).;

30.3.1.1.8 aOctetsTransmittedOK

ATTRIBUTE

APPROPRIATE SYNTAX:

Generalized nonresettable counter. This counter has a maximum increment rate of 1 230 000 counts per second at 10 Mb/s

BEHAVIOUR DEFINED AS:

A count of data and padding octets of frames that are successfully transmitted. This counter is incremented when the TransmitStatus is reported as transmitOK. The actual update occurs in the LayerMgmtTransmitCounters procedure (5.2.4.2).;

30.3.1.1.9 aFramesWithDeferredXmissions

ATTRIBUTE

APPROPRIATE SYNTAX:

Generalized nonresettable counter. This counter has a maximum increment rate of 13 000 counts per second at 10 Mb/s

BEHAVIOUR DEFINED AS:

A count of frames whose transmission was delayed on its first attempt because the medium was busy. This counter is incremented when the Boolean variable deferred has been asserted by the TransmitLinkMgmt function (4.2.8). Frames involved in any collisions are not counted. The actual update occurs in the LayerMgmtTransmitCounters procedure (5.2.4.2).;

30.3.1.1.10 aLateCollisions

ATTRIBUTE

APPROPRIATE SYNTAX:

Generalized nonresettable counter. This counter has a maximum increment rate of 16 000 counts per second at 10 Mb/s

BEHAVIOUR DEFINED AS:

A count of the times that a collision has been detected later than 512 BT into the transmitted packet. A late collision is counted twice, i.e., both as a collision and as a lateCollision. This counter is incremented when the lateCollisionCount variable is nonzero. The actual update is incremented in the LayerMgmtTransmitCounters procedure (5.2.4.2).;

30.3.1.1.11 aFramesAbortedDueToXSColls

ATTRIBUTE

APPROPRIATE SYNTAX:

Generalized nonresettable counter. This counter has a maximum increment rate of 3255 counts per second at 10 Mb/s

BEHAVIOUR DEFINED AS:

A count of the frames that, due to excessive collisions, are not transmitted successfully. This counter is incremented when the value of the attempts variable equals attemptLimit during a transmission. The actual update occurs in the LayerMgmtTransmitCounters procedure (5.2.4.2).;

30.3.1.1.12 aFramesLostDueToIntMACXmitError

ATTRIBUTE

APPROPRIATE SYNTAX:

Generalized nonresettable counter. This counter has a maximum increment rate of 75 000 counts per second at 10 Mb/s

BEHAVIOUR DEFINED AS:

A count of frames that would otherwise be transmitted by the station, but could not be sent due to an internal MAC sublayer transmit error. If this counter is incremented, then none of the other counters in this section are incremented. The exact meaning and mechanism for incrementing this counter is implementation dependent.;

30.3.1.1.13 aCarrierSenseErrors

ATTRIBUTE

APPROPRIATE SYNTAX:

Generalized nonresettable counter. This counter has a maximum increment rate of 16 000 counts per second at 10 Mb/s

BEHAVIOUR DEFINED AS:

A count of times that the carrierSense variable was not asserted or was deasserted during the transmission of a frame without collision (see 7.2.4.6). This counter is incremented when the carrierSenseFailure flag is true at the end of transmission. The actual update occurs in the LayerMgmtTransmitCounters procedure (5.2.4.2).;

30.3.1.1.14 aOctetsReceivedOK

ATTRIBUTE

APPROPRIATE SYNTAX:
Generalized nonresettable counter. This counter has a maximum increment rate of 1 230 000 counts per second at 10 Mb/s

BEHAVIOUR DEFINED AS:
A count of data and padding octets in frames that are successfully received. This does not include octets in frames received with frame-too-long, FCS, length or alignment errors, or frames lost due to internal MAC sublayer error. This counter is incremented when the result of a reception is reported as a receiveOK status. The actual update occurs in the LayerMgmtReceiveCounters procedure (5.2.4.3).;

30.3.1.1.15 aFramesLostDueToIntMACRcvError

ATTRIBUTE

APPROPRIATE SYNTAX:
Generalized nonresettable counter. This counter has a maximum increment rate of 16 000 counts per second at 10 Mb/s

BEHAVIOUR DEFINED AS:
A count of frames that would otherwise be received by the station, but could not be accepted due to an internal MAC sublayer receive error. If this counter is incremented, then none of the other counters in this section are incremented. The exact meaning and mechanism for incrementing this counter is implementation dependent.;

30.3.1.1.16 aPromiscuousStatus

ATTRIBUTE

APPROPRIATE SYNTAX:
BOOLEAN

BEHAVIOUR DEFINED AS:
A GET operation returns the value “true” for promiscuous mode enabled, and “false” otherwise.

Frames without errors received solely because this attribute has the value “true” are counted as frames received correctly; frames received in this mode that do contain errors update the appropriate error counters.

A SET operation to the value “true” provides a means to cause the LayerMgmtRecognizeAddress function to accept frames regardless of their destination address.

A SET operation to the value “false” causes the MAC sublayer to return to the normal operation of carrying out address recognition procedures for station, broadcast, and multicast group addresses (LayerMgmtRecognizeAddress function).;

30.3.1.1.17 aReadMulticastAddressList

ATTRIBUTE

APPROPRIATE SYNTAX:
SEQUENCE OF MAC addresses

BEHAVIOUR DEFINED AS:
The current multicast address list.;

30.3.1.1.18 aMulticastFramesXmittedOK

ATTRIBUTE

APPROPRIATE SYNTAX:
Generalized nonresettable counter. This counter has a maximum increment rate of 16 000 counts per second at 10 Mb/s

BEHAVIOUR DEFINED AS:
A count of frames that are successfully transmitted, as indicated by the status value transmitOK, to a group destination address other than broadcast. The actual update occurs in the LayerMgmtTransmitCounters procedure (5.2.4.2).;

30.3.1.1.19 aBroadcastFramesXmittedOK

ATTRIBUTE

APPROPRIATE SYNTAX:
Generalized nonresettable counter. This counter has a maximum increment rate of 16 000 counts per second at 10 Mb/s

BEHAVIOUR DEFINED AS:
A count of the frames that were successfully transmitted as indicated by the TransmitStatus transmitOK, to the broadcast address. Frames transmitted to multicast addresses are not broadcast frames and are excluded. The actual update occurs in the LayerMgmtTransmitCounters procedure (5.2.4.2).;

30.3.1.1.20 aFramesWithExcessiveDeferral

ATTRIBUTE

APPROPRIATE SYNTAX:
Generalized nonresettable counter. This counter has a maximum increment rate of 412 counts per second at 10 Mb/s

BEHAVIOUR DEFINED AS:
A count of frames that deferred for an excessive period of time. This counter may only be incremented once per LLC transmission. This counter is incremented when the excessDefer flag is set. The actual update occurs in the LayerMgmtTransmitCounters procedure (5.2.4.2).;

30.3.1.1.21 aMulticastFramesReceivedOK

ATTRIBUTE

APPROPRIATE SYNTAX:
Generalized nonresettable counter. This counter has a maximum increment rate of 16 000 counts per second at 10 Mb/s

BEHAVIOUR DEFINED AS:
A count of frames that are successfully received and are directed to an active nonbroadcast group address. This does not include frames received with frame-too-long, FCS, length or alignment errors, or frames lost due to internal MAC sublayer error. This counter is incremented as indicated by the receiveOK status, and the value in the destinationField. The actual update occurs in the LayerMgmtReceiveCounters procedure (5.2.4.3).;

30.3.1.1.22 aBroadcastFramesReceivedOK

ATTRIBUTE

APPROPRIATE SYNTAX:
Generalized nonresettable counter. This counter has a maximum increment rate of 16 000 counts per second at 10 Mb/s

BEHAVIOUR DEFINED AS:

A count of frames that are successfully received and are directed to the broadcast group address. This does not include frames received with frame-too-long, FCS, length or alignment errors, or frames lost due to internal MAC sublayer error. This counter is incremented as indicated by the receiveOK status, and the value in the destinationField. The actual update occurs in the LayerMgmtReceiveCounters procedure (5.2.4.3).;

30.3.1.1.23 aInRangeLengthErrors

ATTRIBUTE

APPROPRIATE SYNTAX:

Generalized nonresettable counter. This counter has a maximum increment rate of 16 000 counts per second at 10 Mb/s

BEHAVIOUR DEFINED AS:

A count of frames with a length field value between the minimum unpadded LLC data size and the maximum allowed LLC data size, inclusive, that does not match the number of LLC data octets received. The counter also contains frames with a length field value less than the minimum unpadded LLC data size. The actual update occurs in the LayerMgmtReceiveCounters procedure (5.2.4.3).;

30.3.1.1.24 aOutOfRangeLengthField

ATTRIBUTE

APPROPRIATE SYNTAX:

Generalized nonresettable counter. This counter has a maximum increment rate of 16 000 counts per second at 10 Mb/s

BEHAVIOUR DEFINED AS:

A count of frames with a length field value greater than the maximum allowed LLC data size. The actual update occurs in the LayerMgmtReceiveCounters procedure (5.2.4.3).;

30.3.1.1.25 aFrameTooLongErrors

ATTRIBUTE

APPROPRIATE SYNTAX:

Generalized nonresettable counter. This counter has a maximum increment rate of 815 counts per second at 10 Mb/s

BEHAVIOUR DEFINED AS:

A count of frames received that exceed the maximum permitted frame size. This counter is incremented when the status of a frame reception is frameTooLong. The actual update occurs in the LayerMgmtReceiveCounters procedure (5.2.4.3).;

30.3.1.1.26 aMACEnableStatus

ATTRIBUTE

APPROPRIATE SYNTAX:

BOOLEAN

BEHAVIOUR DEFINED AS:

True if MAC sublayer is enabled and false if disabled. This is accomplished by setting or checking the values of the receiveEnabled and transmitEnabled variables.Setting to true provides a means to cause the MAC sublayer to enter the normal operational state at idle. The PLS is reset by this operation (see 7.2.2.2.1). This is accomplished by setting receiveEnabled and transmitEnabled to true.

Setting to false causes the MAC sublayer to end all transmit and receive operations, leaving it in a disabled state. This is accomplished by setting receiveEnabled and transmitEnabled to false.;

30.3.1.1.27 aTransmitEnableStatus

ATTRIBUTE

APPROPRIATE SYNTAX:
BOOLEAN

BEHAVIOUR DEFINED AS:
True if transmission is enabled and false otherwise. This is accomplished by setting or checking the value of the transmitEnabled variable.
Setting this to true provides a means to enable MAC sublayer frame transmission (TransmitFrame function). This is accomplished by setting transmitEnabled to true.
Setting this to false will inhibit the transmission of further frames by the MAC sublayer (TransmitFrame function). This is accomplished by setting transmitEnabled to false.;

30.3.1.1.28 aMulticastReceiveStatus

ATTRIBUTE

APPROPRIATE SYNTAX:
BOOLEAN

BEHAVIOUR DEFINED AS:
True if multicast receive is enabled, and false otherwise. Setting this to true provides a means to cause the MAC sublayer to return to the normal operation of multicast frame reception. Setting this to false will inhibit the reception of further multicast frames by the MAC sublayer.;

30.3.1.1.29 aReadWriteMACAddress

ATTRIBUTE

APPROPRIATE SYNTAX:
MACAddress

BEHAVIOUR DEFINED AS:
Read the MAC station address or change the MAC station address to the one supplied (RecognizeAddress function). Note that the supplied station address shall not have the group bit set and shall not be the null address.;

30.3.1.1.30 aCollisionFrames

ATTRIBUTE

APPROPRIATE SYNTAX:
A SEQUENCE of 32 generalized nonresettable counters. Each counter has a maximum increment rate of 13 000 counts per second at 10 Mb/s

BEHAVIOUR DEFINED AS:
A histogram of collision activity. The indices of this array (1 to attemptLimit – 1) denote the number of collisions experienced in transmitting a frame. Each element of this array contains a counter that denotes the number of frames that have experienced a specific number of collisions. When the TransmitStatus is reported as transmitOK and the value of the attempts variable equals n, then collisionFrames[n–1] counter is incremented. The elements of this array are incremented in the LayerMgmtTransmitCounters procedure (5.2.4.2).;

30.3.1.2 MAC entity actions

30.3.1.2.1 acInitializeMAC

ACTION

APPROPRIATE SYNTAX:
None required

BEHAVIOUR DEFINED AS:
This action provides a means to call the Initialize procedure (4.2.7.5). This action also results in the initialization of the PLS.;

30.3.1.2.2 acAddGroupAddress

ACTION

APPROPRIATE SYNTAX:
MACAddress

BEHAVIOUR DEFINED AS:
Add the supplied multicast group address to the address recognition filter (RecognizeAddress function).;

30.3.1.2.3 acDeleteGroupAddress

ACTION

APPROPRIATE SYNTAX:
MACAddress

BEHAVIOUR DEFINED AS:
Delete the supplied multicast group address from the address recognition filter (RecognizeAddress function).;

30.3.1.2.4 acExecuteSelfTest

ACTION

APPROPRIATE SYNTAX:
None required

BEHAVIOUR DEFINED AS:
Execute a self-test and report the results (success or failure). The actual mechanism employed to carry out the self-test is not defined in this standard. If a clause 22 MII is present then this action shall also invoke a data integrity test using MII loopback, returning to normal operation on completion of the test.;

30.3.2 PHY entity managed object class

This subclause formally defines the behaviours for the oPHYEntity managed object class attributes, actions and notifications. Management of that portion of the physical sublayer whose physical containment within the DTE is optional is outside the scope of this clause.

30.3.2.1 PHY entity attributes

30.3.2.1.1 aPHYID

ATTRIBUTE

APPROPRIATE SYNTAX:
INTEGER

BEHAVIOUR DEFINED AS:
The value of aPHYID is assigned so as to uniquely identify a PHY, i.e., Physical Layer among the subordinate managed objects of system (systemID and system are defined in ISO/IEC 10165-2: 1992 [SMI], Definition of management information).;

30.3.2.1.2 aPhyType

ATTRIBUTE

APPROPRIATE SYNTAX:
An ENUMERATED VALUE that has one of the following entries:

other	Undefined
unknown	Initializing, true state or type not yet known
none	MII present and nothing connected
10 Mb/s	Clause 7 10 Mb/s Manchester
100BASE-T4	Clause 23 100 Mb/s 8B/6T
100BASE-X	Clause 24 100 Mb/s 4B/5B

BEHAVIOUR DEFINED AS:
A read-only value that identifies the PHY type. The enumeration of the type is such that the value matches the clause number of the standard that specifies the particular PHY. The value of this attribute maps to the value of aMAUType. The enumeration “none” can only occur in a standard implementation an MII exists and there is nothing connected. However, the attribute aMIIDetect should be used to determine whether an MII exists or not.;

30.3.2.1.3 aPhyTypeList

ATTRIBUTE

APPROPRIATE SYNTAX:
A SEQUENCE that meets the requirements of the description below:

other	Undefined
unknown	Initializing, true state or type not yet known
none	MII present and nothing connected
10 Mb/s	Clause 7 10 Mb/s Manchester
100BASE-T4	Clause 23 100 Mb/s 8B/6T
100BASE-X	Clause 24 100 Mb/s 4B/5B

BEHAVIOUR DEFINED AS:
A read-only list of the possible types that the PHY could be, identifying the ability of the PHY. If clause 28, Auto-Negotiation, is present, then this attribute will map to the local technology ability.;

30.3.2.1.4 aSQETestErrors

ATTRIBUTE

APPROPRIATE SYNTAX:
Generalized nonresettable counter. This counter has a maximum increment rate of 16 000 counts per second at 10 Mb/s

BEHAVIOUR DEFINED AS:

A count of times that the SQE_TEST_ERROR was received. The SQE_TEST_ERROR is set in accordance with the rules for verification of the SQE detection mechanism in the PLS Carrier Sense function (see 7.2.4.6). The SQE test function is not a part of 100 Mb/s PHY operation, and so SQETestErrors will not occur in 100 Mb/s PHYs.;

30.3.2.1.5 aSymbolErrorDuringCarrier

ATTRIBUTE

APPROPRIATE SYNTAX:

Generalized nonresettable counter. This counter has a maximum increment rate of 160 000 counts per second for 100 Mb/s implementations

BEHAVIOUR DEFINED AS:

A count of the number of times when valid carrier was present and there was at least one occurrence of an invalid data symbol. This can increment only once per valid carrier event. If a collision is present this attribute will not increment.;

30.3.2.1.6 aMIIDetect

ATTRIBUTE

APPROPRIATE SYNTAX:

An ENUMERATED VALUE that has one of the following entries:
unknown
present, nothing connected
present, connected
absent

BEHAVIOUR DEFINED AS:

An attribute of the PhyEntity managed object class indicating whether an MII connector is physically present, and if so whether it is detectably connected as specified in 22.2.2.12.;

30.3.2.1.7 aPhyAdminState

ATTRIBUTE

APPROPRIATE SYNTAX:

An ENUMERATED VALUE that has the following entries:
disabled
enabled

BEHAVIOUR DEFINED AS:

A disabled PHY neither transmits nor receives. The PHY shall be explicitly enabled to restore operation. The acPhyAdminControl action provides this ability. The port enable/disable function as reported by this attribute is preserved across DTE reset including loss of power. Only one PHY per MAC can be enabled at any one time. Setting a PHY to the enabled state using the action acPhyAdminControl will result in all other instances of PHY (indicated by PhyID) instantiated within the same MAC to be disabled. If a clause 22 MII is present then setting this attribute to “disable” will result in electrical isolation as defined in 22.2.4.1.6, Isolate; and setting this attribute to “enabled” will result in normal operation as defined in 22.2.4.1.5, Power down; and 22.2.4.1.6, Isolate.;

30.3.2.2 PHY entity actions

30.3.2.2.1 acPhyAdminControl

ACTION

APPROPRIATE SYNTAX:
Same as aPortAdminState

BEHAVIOUR DEFINED AS:
This action provides a means to alter aPhyAdminState. Setting a PHY to the enabled state will result in all other instances of PHY being disabled.;

30.4 Layer management for 10 and 100 Mb/s baseband repeaters

30.4.1 Repeater managed object class

This subclause formally defines the behaviours for the oRepeater managed object class, attributes, actions, and notifications.

30.4.1.1 Repeater attributes

30.4.1.1.1 aRepeaterID

ATTRIBUTE

APPROPRIATE SYNTAX:
INTEGER

BEHAVIOUR DEFINED AS:
The value of aRepeaterID is assigned so as to uniquely identify a repeater among the subordinate managed objects of system (systemID and system are defined in ISO/IEC 10165-2: 1992 [SMI], Definition of management information).;

30.4.1.1.2 aRepeaterType

ATTRIBUTE

APPROPRIATE SYNTAX:
An INTEGER that meets the requirements of the description below:

9	10 Mb/s Baseband
271	100 Mb/s Baseband, Class I
272	100 Mb/s Baseband, Class II
other	See 30.2.5
unknown	Initializing, true state or type not yet known

BEHAVIOUR DEFINED AS:
Returns a value that identifies the CSMA/CD repeater type. The enumeration of the type is such that the value matches the clause number of the standard that specifies the particular repeater, with further numerical identification for the repeater classes within the same clause.;

30.4.1.1.3 aRepeaterGroupCapacity

ATTRIBUTE

APPROPRIATE SYNTAX:
INTEGER

BEHAVIOUR DEFINED AS:
The aRepeaterGroupCapacity is the number of groups that can be contained within the repeater. Within each managed repeater, the groups are uniquely numbered in the range from 1 to aRepeaterGroupCapacity.

Some groups may not be present in a given repeater instance, in which case the actual number of groups present is less than aRepeaterGroupCapacity. The number of groups present is never greater than aRepeaterGroupCapacity.;

30.4.1.1.4 aGroupMap

ATTRIBUTE

APPROPRIATE SYNTAX:
BITSTRING

BEHAVIOUR DEFINED AS:
A string of bits which reflects the current configuration of units that are viewed by group managed objects. The length of the bitstring is “aRepeaterGroupCapacity” bits. The first bit relates to group 1. A “1” in the bitstring indicates presence of the group, “0” represents absence of the group.;

30.4.1.1.5 aRepeaterHealthState

ATTRIBUTE

APPROPRIATE SYNTAX:
An ENUMERATED VALUE LIST that has the following entries:

other	undefined or unknown
ok	no known failures
repeaterFailure	known to have a repeater related failure
groupFailure	known to have a group related failure
portFailure	known to have a port related failure
generalFailure	has a failure condition, unspecified type

BEHAVIOUR DEFINED AS:
The aRepeaterHealthState attribute indicates the operational state of the repeater. The aRepeaterHealthData and aRepeaterHealthText attributes may be consulted for more specific information about the state of the repeater’s health. In case of multiple kinds of failures (e.g., repeater failure and port failure), the value of this attribute shall reflect the highest priority in the following order:
repeater failure
group failure
port failure
general failure;

30.4.1.1.6 aRepeaterHealthText

ATTRIBUTE

APPROPRIATE SYNTAX:
A PrintableString, 255 characters max

BEHAVIOUR DEFINED AS:
The aRepeaterHealthText attribute is a text string that provides information relevant to the operational state of the repeater. Repeater vendors may use this mechanism to provide detailed failure information or instructions for problem resolution.

The contents are vendor specific.;

30.4.1.1.7 aRepeaterHealthData

ATTRIBUTE

APPROPRIATE SYNTAX:
OCTET STRING, 0–255

BEHAVIOUR DEFINED AS:
The aRepeaterHealthData attribute is a block of data octets that provides information relevant to the operational state of the repeater. The encoding of this data block is vendor dependent. Repeater vendors may use this mechanism to provide detailed failure information or instructions for problem resolution.;

30.4.1.1.8 aTransmitCollisions

ATTRIBUTE

APPROPRIATE SYNTAX:
Generalized nonresettable counter. This counter has a maximum increment rate of 75 000 counts per second at 10 Mb/s

BEHAVIOUR DEFINED AS:
For a clause 9 repeater, the counter increments every time the repeater state diagram enters the TRANSMIT COLLISION state from any state other than ONE PORT LEFT (figure 9-2). For a clause 27 repeater, the counter increments every time the Repeater Core state diagram enters the JAM state as a result of Activity(ALL) > 1 (figure 27-2).;

30.4.1.2 Repeater actions

30.4.1.2.1 acResetRepeater

ACTION

APPROPRIATE SYNTAX:
None required

BEHAVIOUR DEFINED AS:
This causes a transition to the START state of figure 9-2 for a clause 9 repeater, or to the START state of figure 27-2 for a clause 27 repeater. The repeater performs a disruptive self-test that has the following characteristics:

1. The components are not specified
2. The test resets the repeater but without affecting management information about the repeater
3. The test does not inject packets onto any segment
4. Packets received during the test may or may not be transferred
5. The test does not interfere with management functions

This causes a nRepeaterReset notification to be sent.;

30.4.1.2.2 acExecuteNonDisruptiveSelfTest

ACTION

APPROPRIATE SYNTAX:
None required

BEHAVIOUR DEFINED AS:
The repeater performs a vendor-specific, non-disruptive self-test that has the following characteristics:
1. The components are not specified
2. The test does not change the state of the repeater or management information about the repeater
3. The test does not inject packets onto any segment
4. The test does not prevent the transfer of any packets
5. Completion of the test causes a nRepeaterHealth to be sent.;

30.4.1.3 Repeater notifications

30.4.1.3.1 nRepeaterHealth

NOTIFICATION

APPROPRIATE SYNTAX:
A SEQUENCE of three data types. The first is mandatory, the following two are optional. The first is the value of the attribute aRepeaterHealthState. The second is the value of the attribute aRepeaterHealthText. The third is the value of the attribute aRepeaterHealthData

BEHAVIOUR DEFINED AS:
This notification conveys information related to the operational state of the repeater. See the aRepeaterHealthState, aRepeaterHealthText, and aRepeaterHealthData attributes for descriptions of the information that is sent.

The nRepeaterHealth notification is sent only when the health state of the repeater changes. The nRepeaterHealth notification shall contain repeaterHealthState. repeaterHealthData and repeaterHealthText may or may not be included. The nRepeaterHealth notification is not sent as a result of powering up a repeater.;

30.4.1.3.2 nRepeaterReset

NOTIFICATION

APPROPRIATE SYNTAX:
A SEQUENCE of three data types. The first is mandatory, the following two are optional. The first is the value of the attribute aRepeaterHealthState. The second is the value of the attribute aRepeaterHealthText. The third is the value of the attribute aRepeaterHealthData

BEHAVIOUR DEFINED AS:
This notification conveys information related to the operational state of the repeater. The nRepeaterReset notification is sent when the repeater is reset as the result of a power-on condition or upon completion of the acResetRepeater action. The nRepeaterReset notification shall contain repeaterHealthState. repeaterHealthData and repeaterHealthText may or may not be included.;

30.4.1.3.3 nGroupMapChange

NOTIFICATION

APPROPRIATE SYNTAX:
BITSTRING

BEHAVIOUR DEFINED AS:

This notification is sent when a change occurs in the group structure of a repeater. This occurs only when a group is logically removed from or added to a repeater. The nGroupMapChange notification is not sent when powering up a repeater. The value of the notification is the updated value of the aGroupMap attribute.;

30.4.2 Group managed object class

This subclause formally defines the behaviours for the oGroup managed object class, attributes, actions, and notifications.

30.4.2.1 Group attributes

30.4.2.1.1 aGroupID

ATTRIBUTE

APPROPRIATE SYNTAX:

INTEGER

BEHAVIOUR DEFINED AS:

A value unique within the repeater. The value of aGroupID is assigned so as to uniquely identify a group among the subordinate managed objects of the containing object (oRepeater). This value is never greater than aRepeaterGroupCapacity.;

30.4.2.1.2 aGroupPortCapacity

ATTRIBUTE

APPROPRIATE SYNTAX:

INTEGER

BEHAVIOUR DEFINED AS:

The aGroupPortCapacity is the number of ports contained within the group. Valid range is 1–1024. Within each group, the ports are uniquely numbered in the range from 1 to aGroupPortCapacity. Some ports may not be present in a given group instance, in which case the actual number of ports present is less than aGroupPortCapacity. The number of ports present is never greater than aGroupPortCapacity.;

30.4.2.1.3 aPortMap

ATTRIBUTE

APPROPRIATE SYNTAX:

BitString

BEHAVIOUR DEFINED AS:

A string of bits that reflects the current configuration of port managed objects within this group. The length of the bitstring is “aGroupPortCapacity” bits. The first bit relates to group 1. A “1” in the bitstring indicates presence of the port, “0” represents absence of the port.;

30.4.2.2 Group notifications

30.4.2.2.1 nPortMapChange

NOTIFICATION

APPROPRIATE SYNTAX:

BitString

BEHAVIOUR DEFINED AS:

This notification is sent when a change occurs in the port structure of a group. This occurs only when a port is logically removed from or added to a group. The nPortMapChange notification is not sent when powering up a repeater. The value of the notification is the updated value of the aPortMap attribute.;

30.4.3 Repeater port managed object class

This subclause formally defines the behaviours for the oRepeaterPort managed object class, attributes, actions, and notifications.

30.4.3.1 Port attributes

30.4.3.1.1 aPortID

ATTRIBUTE

APPROPRIATE SYNTAX:

INTEGER

BEHAVIOUR DEFINED AS:

A value unique in the group. It is assumed that ports are partitioned into groups that also have IDs. The value of aPortID is assigned so as to uniquely identify a repeater port among the subordinate managed objects of the containing object (oGroup). This value can never be greater than aGroupPortCapacity.;

30.4.3.1.2 aPortAdminState

ATTRIBUTE

APPROPRIATE SYNTAX:

An ENUMERATED VALUE LIST that has the following entries:
disabled
enabled

BEHAVIOUR DEFINED AS:

A disabled port neither transmits nor receives. The port shall be explicitly enabled to restore operation. The acPortAdminControl action provides this ability. The port enable/disable function as reported by this attribute is preserved across repeater reset including loss of power. aPortAdminState takes precedence over auto-partition and functionally operates between the auto-partition mechanism and the AUI/PMA. Auto-partition is reinitialized whenever acPortAdminControl is enabled.;

30.4.3.1.3 aAutoPartitionState

ATTRIBUTE

APPROPRIATE SYNTAX:

An ENUMERATED VALUE LIST that has the following entries:
autoPartitioned
notAutoPartitioned

BEHAVIOUR DEFINED AS:

The aAutoPartitionState flag indicates whether the port is currently partitioned by the repeater's auto-partition protection. The conditions that cause port partitioning are specified in partition state diagram in clauses 9 and 27. They are not differentiated here. A clause 27 repeater port partitions on entry to the PARTITION WAIT state of the partition state diagram (figure 27-8).;

30.4.3.1.4 aReadableFrames

ATTRIBUTE

APPROPRIATE SYNTAX:
Generalized nonresettable counter. This counter has a maximum increment rate of 15 000 counts per second at 10 Mb/s

BEHAVIOUR DEFINED AS:
A representation of the total frames of valid frame length. Increment counter by one for each frame whose OctetCount is greater than or equal to minFrameSize and less than or equal to maxFrameSize (see 4.4.2.1) and for which the FCSError and CollisionEvent signals are not asserted.

NOTE—This statistic provides one of the parameters necessary for obtaining the packet error rate.;

30.4.3.1.5 aReadableOctets

ATTRIBUTE

APPROPRIATE SYNTAX:
Generalized nonresettable counter. This counter has a maximum increment rate of 1 240 000 counts per second at 10 Mb/s

BEHAVIOUR DEFINED AS:
Increment counter by OctetCount for each frame which has been determined to be a readable frame.

NOTE—This statistic provides an indicator of the total data transferred.;

30.4.3.1.6 aFrameCheckSequenceErrors

ATTRIBUTE

APPROPRIATE SYNTAX:
Generalized nonresettable counter. This counter has a maximum increment rate of 15 000 counts per second at 10 Mb/s

BEHAVIOUR DEFINED AS:
Increment counter by one for each frame with the FCSError signal asserted and the FramingError and CollisionEvent signals deasserted and whose OctetCount is greater than or equal to minFrameSize and less than or equal to maxFrameSize (see 4.4.2.1).;

30.4.3.1.7 aAlignmentErrors

ATTRIBUTE

APPROPRIATE SYNTAX:
Generalized nonresettable counter. This counter has a maximum increment rate of 15 000 counts per second at 10 Mb/s

BEHAVIOUR DEFINED AS:
Increment counter by one for each frame with the FCSError and FramingError signals asserted and CollisionEvent signal deasserted and whose OctetCount is greater than or equal to minFrameSize and less than or equal to maxFrameSize (see 4.4.2.1). If aAlignmentErrors is incremented then the aFrameCheckSequenceErrors attribute shall not be incremented for the same frame.;

30.4.3.1.8 aFramesTooLong

ATTRIBUTE

APPROPRIATE SYNTAX:

Generalized nonresettable counter. This counter has a maximum increment rate of 815 counts per second at 10 Mb/s

BEHAVIOUR DEFINED AS:

Increment counter by one for each frame whose OctetCount is greater than maxFrameSize (see 4.4.2.1). If aFrameTooLong is counted then neither the aAlignmentErrors nor the aFrameCheckSequenceErrors attribute shall be incremented for the frame.;

30.4.3.1.9 aShortEvents

ATTRIBUTE

APPROPRIATE SYNTAX:

Generalized nonresettable counter. This counter has a maximum increment rate of 75 000 counts per second at 10 Mb/s

BEHAVIOUR DEFINED AS:

Increment counter by one for each CarrierEvent with ActivityDuration less than ShortEventMaxTime. In the 10 Mb/s case ShortEventMaxTime is greater than 74 BT and less than 82 BT. ShortEventMaxTime has tolerances included to provide for circuit losses between a conformance test point at the AUI and the measurement point within the state diagram. In the 100 Mb/s case ShortEventMaxTime is 84 bits (21 nibbles).

NOTES—shortEvents may indicate externally generated noise hits which will cause the repeater to transmit Runts to its other ports, or propagate a collision (which may be late) back to the transmitting DTE and damaged frames to the rest of the network.

1—Implementors may wish to consider selecting the ShortEventMaxTime towards the lower end of the allowed tolerance range to accommodate bit losses suffered through physical channel devices not budgeted for within this standard.

2—Note also that the significance of this attribute is different in 10 and 100 Mb/s collision domains. Clause 9 repeaters perform fragment extension of short events which would be counted as runts on the interconnect ports of other repeaters. Clause 27 repeaters do not perform fragment extension.;

30.4.3.1.10 aRunts

ATTRIBUTE

APPROPRIATE SYNTAX:

Generalized nonresettable counter. This counter has a maximum increment rate of 75 000 counts per second at 10 Mb/s

BEHAVIOUR DEFINED AS:

Increment counter by one for each CarrierEvent that meets one of the following two conditions. Only one test need be made. a) The ActivityDuration is greater than ShortEventMaxTime and less than ValidPacketMinTime and the CollisionEvent signal is deasserted (10 Mb/s operation) or the COLLISION COUNT INCREMENT state of the partition state diagram (figure 27-8) has not been entered (100 Mb/s operation). b) The OctetCount is less than 64, the ActivityDuration is greater than ShortEventMaxTime, and the CollisionEvent signal is deasserted (10 Mb/s operation), or the COLLISION COUNT INCREMENT state of the partition state diagram (figure 27-8) has not been entered (100 Mb/s operation). ValidPacketMinTime is greater than or equal to 552 BT and less than 565 BT. At 10 Mb/s an event whose length is greater than 74 BT but less than 82 BT shall increment either the aShortEvents attribute or the aRunts attribute, but not both. A CarrierEvent greater than or equal to 552 BT but less than 565 BT may or may not be counted as a runt. ValidPacketMinTime has tolerances included to provide for circuit losses between a conformance test point at the AUI and the measurement point within the state diagram.

NOTE—Runts usually indicate collision fragments, a normal network event.
In certain situations associated with large diameter networks a percentage of runts may exceed ValidPacketMinTime.;

30.4.3.1.11 aCollisions

ATTRIBUTE

APPROPRIATE SYNTAX:
Generalized nonresettable counter. This counter has a maximum increment rate of 75 000 counts per second at 10 Mb/s

BEHAVIOUR DEFINED AS:
For a clause 9 repeater the counter increments for any CarrierEvent signal on any port in which the CollisionEvent signal on this port is asserted. For a clause 27 repeater port the counter increments on entering the COLLISION COUNT INCREMENT state of the partition state diagram (figure 27-8).;

30.4.3.1.12 aLateEvents

ATTRIBUTE

APPROPRIATE SYNTAX:
Generalized nonresettable counter. This counter has a maximum increment rate of 75 000 counts per second at 10 Mb/s

BEHAVIOUR DEFINED AS:
For a clause 9 repeater port this counter increments for each CarrierEvent in which the CollIn(X) variable transitions to the value SQE (see 9.6.6.2) while the ActivityDuration is greater than the LateEventThreshold. For a clause 27 repeater port this counter increments on entering the COLLISION COUNT INCREMENT state of the partition state diagram (figure 27-8) while the ActivityDuration is greater than the LateEventThreshold. Such a CarrierEvent is counted twice, as both a aCollision and as a aLateEvent.
The LateEventThreshold is greater than 480 BT and less than 565 BT. LateEventThreshold has tolerances included to permit an implementation to build a single threshold to serve as both the LateEventThreshold and ValidPacketMinTime threshold.;

30.4.3.1.13 aVeryLongEvents

ATTRIBUTE

APPROPRIATE SYNTAX:
Generalized nonresettable counter. This counter has a maximum increment rate of 250 counts per second at 10 Mb/s

BEHAVIOUR DEFINED AS:
For a clause 9 repeater port this counter increments for each CarrierEvent whose ActivityDuration is greater than the MAU Jabber Lockup Protection timer TW3 (see 9.6.1, 9.6.5). For a clause 27 repeater port this counter increments on entry to the RX JABBER state of the receive timer state diagram (figure 27-7). Other counters may be incremented as appropriate.;

30.4.3.1.14 aDataRateMismatches

ATTRIBUTE

APPROPRIATE SYNTAX:
Generalized nonresettable counter

BEHAVIOUR DEFINED AS:

Increment counter by one for each frame received by this port that meets all of the conditions required by only one of the following two measurement methods: Measurement method A: a) The CollisionEvent signal is not asserted (10 Mb/s operation) or the COLLISION COUNT INCREMENT state of the partition state diagram (figure 27-8) has not been entered (100 Mb/s operation). b) The ActivityDuration is greater than ValidPacketMinTime. c) The frequency (data rate) is detectably mismatched from the local transmit frequency. Measurement method B: a) The CollisionEvent signal is not asserted (10 Mb/s operation) or the COLLISION COUNT INCREMENT state of the partition state diagram (figure 27-8) has not been entered (100 Mb/s operation). b) The OctetCount is greater than 63. c) The frequency (data rate) is detectably mismatched from the local transmit frequency. The exact degree of mismatch is vendor specific and is to be defined by the vendor for conformance testing.

When this event occurs, other counters whose increment conditions were satisfied may or may not also be incremented, at the implementor's discretion.

NOTE—Whether or not the repeater was able to maintain data integrity is beyond the scope of this standard.;

30.4.3.1.15 aAutoPartitions

ATTRIBUTE

APPROPRIATE SYNTAX:

Generalized nonresettable counter

BEHAVIOUR DEFINED AS:

Increment counter by one for each time that the repeater has automatically partitioned this port. The conditions that cause a clause 9 repeater port to partition are specified in the partition state diagram in clause 9. They are not differentiated here. A clause 27 repeater port partitions on entry to the PARTITION WAIT state of the partition state diagram (figure 27-8).;

30.4.3.1.16 aIsolates

ATTRIBUTE

APPROPRIATE SYNTAX:

Generalized nonresettable counter. This counter has a maximum increment rate of 400 counts per second at 100 Mb/s

BEHAVIOUR DEFINED AS:

Increment counter by one each time that the repeater port automatically isolates as a consequence of false carrier events. The conditions that cause a port to automatically isolate are as defined by the transition from the FALSE CARRIER state to the LINK UNSTABLE state of the carrier integrity state diagram (figure 27-9).

NOTE—Isolates do not affect the value of aPortAdminState.;

30.4.3.1.17 aSymbolErrorDuringPacket

ATTRIBUTE

APPROPRIATE SYNTAX:

Generalized nonresettable counter. This counter has a maximum increment rate of 160 000 counts per second for 100 Mb/s implementations

BEHAVIOUR DEFINED AS:

A count of the number of times when valid length packet was received at the port and there was at least one occurrence of an invalid data symbol. This can increment only once per valid carrier event. A collision presence at any port of the repeater containing port N, will not cause this attribute to increment.;

30.4.3.1.18 aLastSourceAddress

ATTRIBUTE

APPROPRIATE SYNTAX:
MACAddress

BEHAVIOUR DEFINED AS:
The Source Address of the last readable Frame received by this port.;

30.4.3.1.19 aSourceAddressChanges

ATTRIBUTE

APPROPRIATE SYNTAX:
Generalized nonresettable counter. This counter has a maximum increment rate of 15 000 counts per second at 10 Mb/s

BEHAVIOUR DEFINED AS:
Increment counter by one each time that the aLastSourceAddress attribute has changed.

NOTE—This may indicate whether a link is connected to a single DTE or another multi-user segment.;

30.4.3.2 Port actions

30.4.3.2.1 acPortAdminControl

ACTION

APPROPRIATE SYNTAX:
Same as aPortAdminState

BEHAVIOUR DEFINED AS:
This action provides a means to alter aPortAdminState and exert a BEGIN on the Partitioning state diagram (figure 9-6) or the Partition state diagram (figure 27-8) upon taking the value “enabled”.;

30.5 Layer management for 10 and 100 Mb/s medium attachment units (MAUs)

30.5.1 MAU managed object class

This subclause formally defines the behaviours for the oMAU managed object class, attributes, actions, and notifications.

30.5.1.1 MAU attributes

30.5.1.1.1 aMAUID

ATTRIBUTE

APPROPRIATE SYNTAX:
INTEGER

BEHAVIOUR DEFINED AS:
The value of aMAUID is assigned so as to uniquely identify a MAU among the subordinate managed objects of the containing object.;

30.5.1.1.2 aMAUType

ATTRIBUTE

APPROPRIATE SYNTAX:

A GET-SET ENUMERATION that meets the requirements of the description below:

global	Reserved for future use
other	See 30.2.5
unknown	Initializing, true state or type not yet known
AUI	no internal MAU, view from AUI
10BASE5	Thick coax MAU as specified in clause 8
FOIRL	FOIRL MAU as specified in 9.9
10BASE2	Thin coax MAU as specified in clause 10
10BROAD36	Broadband DTE MAU as specified in clause 11
10BASE-T	UTP MAU as specified in clause 14
10BASE-FP	Passive fiber MAU as specified in clause 16
10BASE-FB	Synchronous fiber MAUas specified in clause 17
10BASE-FL	Asynchronous fiber MAUas specified in clause 18
100BASE-T4	4 Pair Cat 3 UTP as specified in clause 23
100BASE-TX	2 pair Cat 5 UTP as specified in clause 25
100BASE-FX	X fiber over PMD as specified in clause 26
802.9a	Integrated services MAU as specified in IEEE Std 802.9a-1995 [B19]

BEHAVIOUR DEFINED AS:

Returns a value that identifies the 10 Mb/s or 100 Mb/s internal MAU type. The enumeration of the type is such that the value matches the clause number of the standard that specifies the particular MAU. If an AUI is to be identified to access an external MAU, then type "AUI" is returned. A SET operation to one of the possible enumerations indicated by aMAUTypeList will force the MAU into the new operating mode. If a clause 22 MII is present, then this will map to the mode force bits specified in 22.2.4.1. If clause 28, Auto-Negotiation, is operational, then this will change the advertised ability to the single enumeration specified in the SET operation, and cause an immediate link renegotiation. A change in MAU type will also be reflected in oPHYType.;

30.5.1.1.3 aMAUTypeList

ATTRIBUTE

APPROPRIATE SYNTAX:

A SEQUENCE of ENUMERATIONS that match the syntax of aMAUType

BEHAVIOUR DEFINED AS:

A GET attribute that returns the possible types that the MAU could be, identifying the ability of the MAU. If clause 28 Auto-Negotiation is present, then this attribute will map to the local technology ability. This attribute maps to aPHYTypeList.;

30.5.1.1.4 aMediaAvailable

ATTRIBUTE

APPROPRIATE SYNTAX:

An ENUMERATED value list that has the following entries:

other	undefined
unknown	initializing, true state not yet known
available	link or light normal, loopback normal
not available	link loss or low light, no loopback
remote fault	remote fault with no detail
invalid signal	invalid signal, applies only to 10BASE-FB
remote jabber	remote fault, reason known to be jabber
remote link loss	remote fault, reason known to be far-end link loss
remote test	remote fault, reason known to be test

BEHAVIOUR DEFINED AS:

If the MAU is a link or fiber type (FOIRL, 10BASE-T, 10BASE-F), then this is equivalent to the link test fail state/low light function. For an AUI , 10BASE2, 10BASE5, or 10BROAD36 MAU, this indicates whether or not loopback is detected on the DI circuit. The value of this attribute persists between packets for MAU types AUI, 10BASE5, 10BASE2, 10BROAD36, and 10BASE-FP.

At power-up or following a reset, the value of this attribute will be “unknown” for AUI, 10BASE5, 10BASE2, 10BROAD36, and 10BASE-FP MAUs. For these MAUs loopback will be tested on each transmission during which no collision is detected. If DI is receiving *input* when DO returns to IDL after a transmission and there has been no collision during the transmission, then loopback will be detected. The value of this attribute will only change during noncollided transmissions for AUI, 10BASE2, 10BASE5, 10BROAD36, and 10BASE-FP MAUs.

For 100BASE-T4, 100BASE-TX, and 100BASE-FX the enumerations match the states within the respective link integrity state diagrams, figure 23-12 and 24-15. Any MAU that implements management of clause 28 Auto-Negotiation will map remote fault indication to MediaAvailable remote fault.

The enumeration “remote fault” applies to 10BASE-FB, 100BASE-X, far-end fault indication and non-specified remote faults from a system running clause 28 Auto-Negotiation. The enumerations “remote jabber,” “remote link loss,” or “remote test” should be used instead of “remote fault” where the reason for remote fault is identified in the remote signaling protocol.

Where a clause 22 MII is present, a logic one in the remote fault bit (22.2.4.2.9) maps to the enumeration “remote fault,” a logic zero in the link status bit (22.2.4.2.11) maps to the enumeration “not available.” The enumeration “not available” takes precedence over “remote fault.”;

30.5.1.1.5 aLoseMediaCounter

ATTRIBUTE

APPROPRIATE SYNTAX:

Generalized nonresettable counter. This counter has a maximum increment rate of 10 counts per second

BEHAVIOUR DEFINED AS:

Counts the number of times that the MAU leaves
MediaAvailState “available.” Mandatory for MAU type “AUI,” optional for all others.;

30.5.1.1.6 aJabber

ATTRIBUTE

APPROPRIATE SYNTAX:

A SEQUENCE of two indications. The first, JabberFlag, consists of an ENUMERATED value list that has the following entries:

other	undefined
unknown	initializing, true state not yet known
normal	state is true or normal
fault	state is false, fault, or abnormal

The second, jabberCounter, is a generalized nonresettable counter. This counter has a maximum increment rate of 40 counts per second

BEHAVIOUR DEFINED AS:

If the MAU is in the JABBER state, the jabberFlag portion of the attribute is set to the “fault” value. The jabberCounter portion of the attribute is incremented each time the flag is set to the “fault” value. This attribute returns the value “other” for type AUI. Note that this counter will not increment for a 100 Mb/s PHY, as there is no defined JABBER state.;

30.5.1.1.7 aMAUAdminState

ATTRIBUTE

APPROPRIATE SYNTAX:

An ENUMERATED value list that has the following entries:

other	undefined
unknown	initializing, true state not yet known
operational	powered and connected
standby	inactive but on
shutdown	similar to power down

BEHAVIOUR DEFINED AS:

A MAU in management state “standby” forces DI and CI to idle and the media transmitter to idle or fault, if supported. The management state “standby” only applies to link type MAUs. The state of MediaAvailable is unaffected. A MAU or AUI in the management state “shutdown” assumes the same condition on DI, CI and the media transmitter as if it were powered down or not connected. For an AUI, this management state will remove power from the AUI. The MAU may return the value “undefined” for Jabber and MediaAvailable attributes when it is in this management state. A MAU in the management state “operational” is fully functional, and operates and passes signals to its attached DTE or repeater port in accordance with its specification.;

30.5.1.1.8 aBbMAUXmitRcvSplitType

ATTRIBUTE

APPROPRIATE SYNTAX:

An ENUMERATED value list that has the following entries:

other	undefined
single	single-cable system
dual	dual-cable system, offset normally zero

BEHAVIOUR DEFINED AS:

Returns a value that indicates the type of frequency multiplexing/cabling system used to separate the transmit and receive paths for the 10BROAD36 MAU. All other types return “undefined.”;

30.5.1.1.9 aBroadbandFrequencies

ATTRIBUTE

APPROPRIATE SYNTAX:

A SEQUENCE of two instances of the type INTEGER.

The first INTEGER represents the Transmitter Carrier Frequency. The value of its INTEGER represents the frequency of the carrier divided by 250 kHz.

The second INTEGER represents the Translation Offset Frequency. The value of its INTEGER represents the frequency of the offset divided by 250 kHz

BEHAVIOUR DEFINED AS:

Returns a value that indicates the transmit carrier frequency and translation offset frequency in MHz/4 for the 10BROAD36 MAU. This allows the frequencies to be defined to a resolution of 250 kHz.;

30.5.1.1.10 aFalseCarriers

ATTRIBUTE

APPROPRIATE SYNTAX:

Generalized nonresettable counter. This counter has a maximum increment rate of 160 000 counts per second under maximum network load, and 10 counts per second under zero network load, for 100 Mb/s implementations

BEHAVIOUR DEFINED AS:

A count of the number of false carrier events during IDLE in 100BASE-X links. This counter does not increment at the symbol rate. It can increment after a valid carrier completion at a maximum rate of once per 100 ms until the next carrier event.;

30.5.1.2 MAU actions

30.5.1.2.1 acResetMAU

ACTION

APPROPRIATE SYNTAX:

None required

BEHAVIOUR DEFINED AS:

Resets the MAU in the same manner as would a power-off, power-on cycle of at least 0.5 second duration. During the 0.5 s DO, DI, and CI should be idle.;

30.5.1.2.2 acMAUAdminControl

ACTION

APPROPRIATE SYNTAX:

The same as used for aMAUAdminState

BEHAVIOUR DEFINED AS:

Executing an acMAUAdminControl action causes the MAU to assume the aMAUAdminState attribute value of one of the defined valid management states for control input. The valid inputs are “standby,” “operational,” and “shutdown” state (see the behaviour definition bMAUAdminState for the description of each of these states) except that a “standby” action to a mixing type MAU or an AUI will cause the MAU to enter the “shutdown” management state.;

30.5.1.3 MAU notifications

30.5.1.3.1 nJabber

NOTIFICATION

APPROPRIATE SYNTAX:

The same as used for aJabber

BEHAVIOUR DEFINED AS:

The notification is sent whenever a managed MAU enters the JABBER state.;

30.6 Management for link Auto-Negotiation

30.6.1 Auto-Negotiation managed object class

This subclause formally defines the behaviours for the oAuto-Negotiation managed object class, attributes, actions, and notifications.

30.6.1.1 Auto-Negotiation attributes

30.6.1.1.1 aAutoNegID

ATTRIBUTE

APPROPRIATE SYNTAX:
INTEGER

BEHAVIOUR DEFINED AS:
The value of aAutoNegID is assigned so as to uniquely identify an Auto-Negotiation managed object among the subordinate managed objects of the containing object.;

30.6.1.1.2 aAutoNegAdminState

ATTRIBUTE

APPROPRIATE SYNTAX:
An ENUMERATED VALUE that has one of the following entries:
enabled
disabled

BEHAVIOUR DEFINED AS:
An interface which has Auto-Negotiation signaling ability will be enabled to do so when this attribute is in the enabled state. If disabled then the interface will act as it would if it had no Auto-Negotiation signaling. Under these conditions it will immediately be forced to the states indicated by a write to the attribute aMAUType.;

30.6.1.1.3 aAutoNegRemoteSignaling

ATTRIBUTE

APPROPRIATE SYNTAX:
An ENUMERATED VALUE that has one of the following entries:
detected
notdetected

BEHAVIOUR DEFINED AS:
The value indicates whether the remote end of the link is operating Auto-Negotiation signaling or not. It shall take the value detected if, during the previous link negotiation, FLP Bursts were received from the remote end.;

30.6.1.1.4 aAutoNegAutoConfig

ATTRIBUTE

APPROPRIATE SYNTAX:
An ENUMERATED VALUE that has one of the following entries:
other
configuring
complete
disabled
parallel detect fail

BEHAVIOUR DEFINED AS:
Indicates whether Auto-Negotiation signaling is in progress or has completed. The enumeration “parallel detect fail” maps to a failure in parallel detection as defined in 28.2.3.1.;

30.6.1.1.5 aAutoNegLocalTechnologyAbility

ATTRIBUTE

APPROPRIATE SYNTAX:

A SEQUENCE that meets the requirements of the description below:

global	Reserved for future use
other	Undefined
unknown	Initializing, true ability not yet known
10BASE-T	10BASE-T as defined in clause 14
10BASE-TFD	Full duplex 10BASE-T
100BASE-TX	100BASE-TX as defined in clause 25
100BASE-TXFD	Full duplex 100BASE-TX
100BASE-T4	100BASE-T4 as defined in clause 23
isoethernet	IEEE Std 802.9a-1995

BEHAVIOUR DEFINED AS:

This indicates the technology ability of the local hardware, as defined in clause 28.;

30.6.1.1.6 aAutoNegAdvertisedTechnologyAbility

ATTRIBUTE

APPROPRIATE SYNTAX:

Same as aAutoNegLocalTechnologyAbility

BEHAVIOUR DEFINED AS:

This GET-SET attribute maps to the Technology Ability Field of the Auto-Negotiation Link Code Word, defined in clause 28. A SET operation to a value not available in aAutoNegLocalTechnologyAbility will be rejected. A successful set operation will result in immediate link renegotiation if aAutoNegAdminState is enabled.

NOTE—This will in every case cause temporary link loss during link renegotiation. If set to a value incompatible with aAutoNegReceivedTechnologyAbility, link negotiation will not be successful and will cause permanent link loss.;

30.6.1.1.7 aAutoNegReceivedTechnologyAbility

ATTRIBUTE

APPROPRIATE SYNTAX:

Same as aAutoNegLocalTechnologyAbility

BEHAVIOUR DEFINED AS:

Indicates the advertised technology ability of the remote hardware. Maps to the Technology Ability Field of the last received Auto-Negotiation Link Code Word(s), defined in clause 28.;

30.6.1.1.8 aAutoNegLocalSelectorAbility

ATTRIBUTE

APPROPRIATE SYNTAX:

A SEQUENCE that meets the requirements of the description below:

other	Undefined
ethernet	IEEE Std 802.3
isoethernet	IEEE Std 802.9a-1995

BEHAVIOUR DEFINED AS:

This indicates the value of the selector field of the local hardware. Selector field is defined in 28.2.1.2.1. The enumeration of the Selector Field indicates the standard that defines the remaining encodings for Auto-Negotiation using that value of enumeration. Additional future enumerations may be assigned to this attribute through the 802.3 maintenance process.;

30.6.1.1.9 aAutoNegAdvertisedSelectorAbility

ATTRIBUTE

APPROPRIATE SYNTAX:
Same as aAutoNegLocalSelectorAbility

BEHAVIOUR DEFINED AS:
This GET-SET attribute maps to the Message Selector Field of the Auto-Negotiation Link Code Word, defined in clause 28. A SET operation to a value not available in aAutoNegLocalSelectorAbility will be rejected. A successful set operation will result in immediate link renegotiation if aAutoNegAdminState is enabled.

Note: this will in every case cause temporary link loss during link renegotiation. If set to a value incompatible with aAutoNegReceivedSelectorAbility, link negotiation will not be successful and will cause permanent link loss.;

30.6.1.1.10 aAutoNegReceivedSelectorAbility

ATTRIBUTE

APPROPRIATE SYNTAX:
Same as aAutoNegLocalSelectorAbility

BEHAVIOUR DEFINED AS:
Indicates the advertised message transmission ability of the remote hardware. Maps to the Message Selector Field of the last received Auto-Negotiation Link Code Word, defined in clause 28.;

30.6.1.2 Auto-Negotiation actions

30.6.1.2.1 acAutoNegRestartAutoConfig

ATTRIBUTE

APPROPRIATE SYNTAX:
None required

BEHAVIOUR DEFINED AS:
Forces Auto-Negotiation to begin link renegotiation. Has no effect if Auto-Negotiation signaling is disabled.;

30.6.1.2.2 acAutoNegAdminControl

ATTRIBUTE

APPROPRIATE SYNTAX:
Same as aAutoNegAdminState

BEHAVIOUR DEFINED AS:
This action provides a means to turn Auto-Negotiation signaling on or off.;

Annex 22A

(informative)

MII output delay, setup, and hold time budget

22A.1 System model

The discussion of signal timing characteristics that follows will refer to the system model depicted in figure 22A-1, figure 22A-2, and figure 22A-3. This system model can be applied to each of the three application environments defined in 22.2.1.

Figure 22A-1 depicts a simple system model in which the MII is used to interconnect two integrated circuits on the same circuit assembly. In this model the Reconciliation sublayer comprises one integrated circuit, and the PHY comprises the other. A Reconciliation sublayer or a PHY may actually be composed of several separate integrated circuits. The system model in figure 22A-1 includes two unidirectional signal transmission paths, one from the Reconciliation sublayer to the PHY and one from the PHY to the Reconciliation sublayer. The path from the Reconciliation sublayer to the PHY is separated into two sections, labeled A1 and B1. The path from the PHY to the Reconciliation sublayer is separated into two sections, labeled C1 and D1.

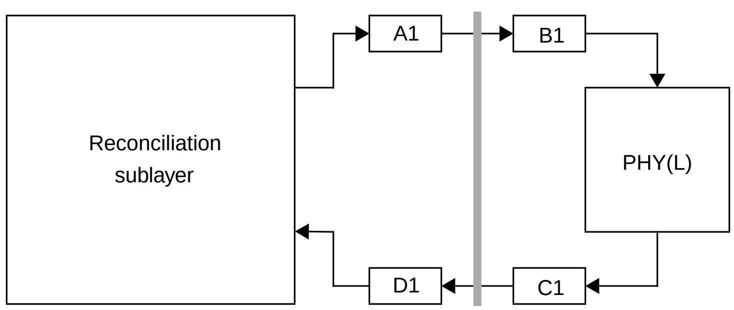


Figure 22A-1—Model for integrated circuit to integrated circuit connection

Figure 22A-1 depicts a system model for the case where the MII is used to interconnect two circuit assemblies. The circuit assemblies may be physically connected in a motherboard/daughterboard arrangement, or they may be physically connected with the cable defined in 22.4.5 and the line interface connector defined in 22.6. The system model in figure 22A-2 includes two unidirectional signal transmission paths, one from the Reconciliation sublayer to the PHY and one from the PHY to the Reconciliation sublayer. The path from the Reconciliation sublayer to the PHY is separated into two sections, labeled A2 and B2. The path from the PHY to the Reconciliation sublayer is separated into two sections, labeled C2 and D2.

Figure 22A-3 depicts a system model in which the MII is used to interconnect both integrated circuits and circuit assemblies. This system model allows for separate signal transmission paths to exist between the Reconciliation sublayer and a local PHY(L), and between the Reconciliation sublayer and a remote PHY(R). The unidirectional paths between the Reconciliation sublayer and the PHY(L) are composed of sections A1, B1, C1, and D1. The unidirectional paths between the Reconciliation sublayer and the remote PHY(R) are composed of sections A2, B2, C2, and D2.

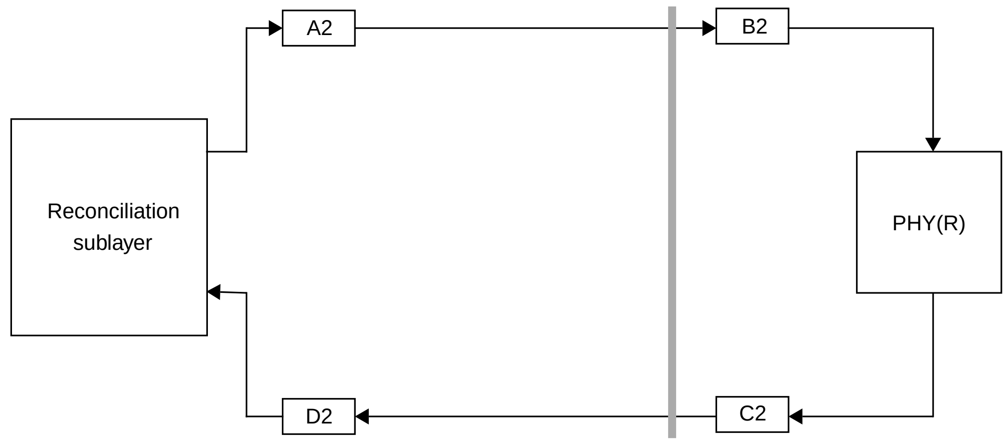


Figure 22A-2—Model for circuit assembly to circuit assembly connection

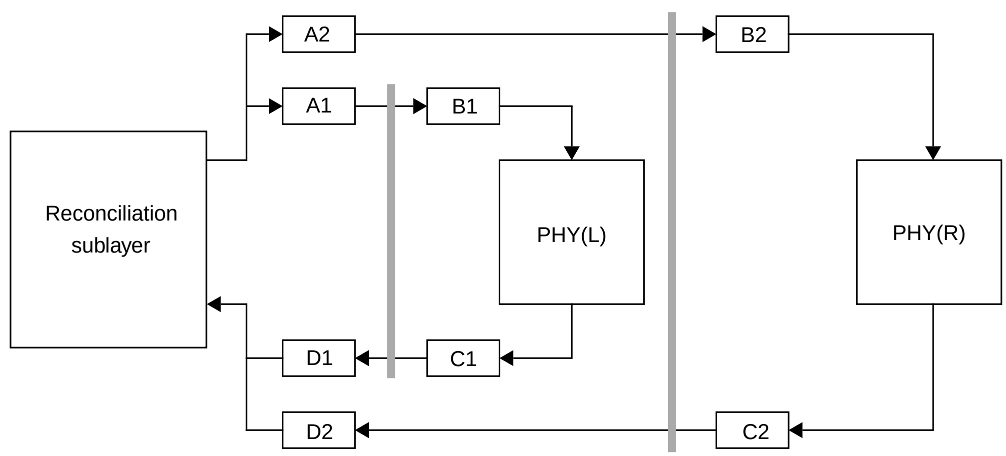


Figure 22A-3—Combined model

Each of these system models assumes a set of common timing and electrical characteristics that shall be met at the input and output ports of the Reconciliation sublayer and PHY devices. The characteristics of the signal transmission paths are identified for each of the sections A1, B1, C1, D1, A2, B2, C2, and D2.

22A.2 Signal transmission path characteristics

The signal transmission path characteristics are specified for each of the path sections defined in 22A.1. The characteristics for these sections are specified so as to allow sections A1, B1, C1, and D1 to be implemented in the form of printed circuit board traces, while sections A2, B2, C2, and D2 may be implemented with a combination of printed circuit board traces and wire conductors in a cable assembly.

The signal transmission path characteristics are stated in terms of their maximum delay and their characteristic impedance. These values are summarized in table 22A-1.

Table 22A-1—Signal transmission path characteristics

Section	Maximum delay (ns)	Impedance (Ω)
A1, D1	5	68 ± 15%
B1, C1	2.5	68 ± 15%
A2, D2	5	68 ± 10%
B2, C2	2.5	68 ± 10%

The driver characteristics specified in 22.4.3, the receiver characteristics specified in 22.4.4, and the signal transmission path characteristics specified in table 22A-1 can be applied to the system models shown in figure 22A-1 or figure 22A-2. The combination of loads presented in figure 22A-3 cannot be adequately driven by an output buffer that meets the driver characteristics specified in 22.4.3 while being sampled by an input buffer that meets the receiver characteristics specified in 22.4.4.

To address the system model depicted in figure 22A-3, it is permissible to incorporate an additional stage of buffering into path sections A1, A2, D1, and D2, provided that the resulting maximum delay characteristic for those path sections does not exceed the value stated in table 22A-1. The delay characteristic for transmission path sections A2 and D2 includes an allowance for the delay that results from the presence of a lumped capacitive load at the end of the path. For a transmission path section with a characteristic impedance Z_o, with a lumped capacitive load C_L, this delay is nominally Z_oC_L. In the case of a maximum transmission path section impedance of 78 Ω with a lumped load of 8 pF, the nominal delay is 0.6 ns. Thus the allowable delay for a buffer inserted into transmission path section A2 or D2 is 4.4 ns.

22A.3 Budget calculation

A recommended timing budget is shown in table 22A-2. This budget assumes that the combined system model shown in figure 22A-3 represents a worst case.

Table 22A-2—Round-trip delay budget

Description	Incremental delay (ns)	Cumulative delay (ns)
TX_CLK output at PHY(R)	0.0	0.0
Transmission path section C2	2.5	2.5
Transmission path section D2	5.0	7.5
clock to output in Reconciliation sublayer	15.0	22.5
Transmission path section A2	5.0	27.5
Transmission path section B2	2.5	30.0
Setup time at PHY(R)	10.0	40.0

Annex 22B

(informative)

MII driver ac characteristics

22B.1 Implications of CMOS ASIC processes

For MII drivers that drive rail to rail, such as those commonly used in CMOS ASICs (complimentary metal oxide semiconductor application-specific integrated circuits), the ac characteristic performance requirements of 22.4.3.2 can be met if the V_{oh} vs. I_{oh} and V_{ol} vs. I_{ol} dc characteristics of the driver stay within the unshaded areas of figure 22B-1.

The variation in output resistance of a field effect transistor (FET) due to variations in supply voltage, temperature, and process may require that a resistance be placed in series with the output of the FETs to meet this specification. The series resistance can be part of the driver circuit, or external to the driver. If the series resistance is not part of the driver circuit, the driver vendor shall specify the value of series resistance required to meet the specification. A series resistor used to meet this specification is conceptually part of the driver regardless of whether it is physically internal or external to the driver.

The propagation delay of the path between the driver and an external series resistor used to meet the specification shall not exceed 10% of the 10–90% rise/fall time of the driver.

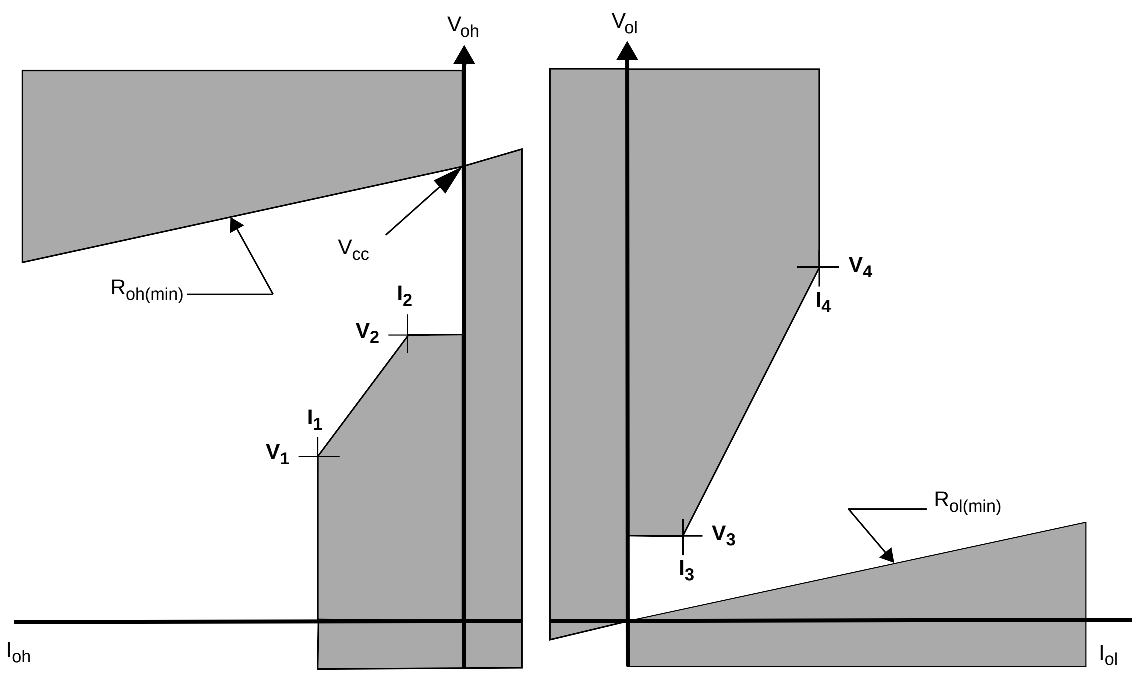


Figure 22B-1—Driver output V–I curve

22B.2 $R_{o(min)}$ and V, I values for operation from 5 V ±10% supply

Referring to figure 22B-1, $R_{oh(min)}$ and $R_{ol(min)}$ both equal 40 Ω, and the values for the V-I points on the curve are given in table 22B-1 below for MII drivers that drive rail to rail from a +5 V ± 10% power supply.

Table 22B-1—Values for driver output V-I curve (5 V supply)

V–I point	I (mA)	V (V)
I_1, V_1	–20	1.10
I_2, V_2	–4	2.4
I_3, V_3	4	0.40
I_4, V_4	43	3.05

22B.3 $R_{o(min)}$ and V, I values for operation from 3.3 ± 0.3 V supply

Referring to figure 22B-1, $R_{oh(min)}$ and $R_{ol(min)}$ both equal 33 Ω, and the values for the V–I points on the curve are given in table 22B-2 below for MII drivers that drive rail to rail from a +3.3 ± 0.3 V power supply.

Table 22B-2—Values for driver output V-I curve (3.3 V supply)

V-I point	I (mA)	V (V)
I_1,V_1	–20	1.10
I_2,V_2	–4	2.4
I_3,V_3	4	0.40
I_4,V_4	26	2.10

Annex 22C

(informative)

Measurement techniques for MII signal timing characteristics

22C.1 Measuring timing characteristics of source terminated signals

The measurement of timing relationships between MII signals at the MII connector is complicated by the use of driver output impedance to control transmission line reflections on point-to-point transmission paths passing through the connector. The voltage waveforms on point-to-point transmission paths can be different at the MII connector and at the end of the paths. A clean transition (or step) from one logic state to the other at the end of a point to point path can appear as two half-steps at the MII connector.

To eliminate ambiguity as to where on a two half-step state transition to measure timing, all timing measurements on point-to-point transmission paths will be at the end of the path. In some cases, an end of path must be artificially created.

22C.2 Measuring timing characteristics of transmit signals at the MII

The timing of TX_EN, TX_ER, and TXD<3:0> relative to TX_CLK at the MII connector is measured as follows.

Use the time base for TX_CLK as a timing reference. Break the TX_CLK path at the MII connector, forcing the TX_CLK point-to-point transmission path to end at the connector. Measure when the rising edge of TX_CLK passes through $V_{ih(min)}$ at the MII connector. Call this time T_{clk}. Reconnect the TX_CLK path at the MII connector and break the paths of TX_EN, TX_ER, and TXD<3:0> at the MII connector, forcing the paths to end at the connector. Measure when TX_EN, TX_ER, and TXD<3:0> exit the switching region at the MII connector. Call these times T_{en}, T_{er}, and $T_{<3:0>}$, respectively.

The timing relationships at the MII connector for TX_EN, TX_ER, and TXD<3:0> relative to TX_CLK are met if $(T_{en} - T_{clk})$, $(T_{er} - T_{clk})$, $(T_3 - T_{clk})$, $(T_2 - T_{clk})$, $(T_1 - T_{clk})$, and $(T_0 - T_{clk})$, respectively, meet the timing relationships specified in 22.3.1.

22C.3 Measuring timing characteristics of receive signals at the MII

The timing of RX_DV, RX_ER, and RXD<3:0> relative to RX_CLK at the MII connector is measured as follows.

Break the paths of RX_CLK, RX_DV, RX_ER, and RXD<3:0> at the MII connector, forcing the paths to end at the connector. Measure when RX_DV, RX_ER, and RXD<3:0> exit the switching region at the MII connector relative to when the rising edge of RX_CLK passes through $V_{il(max)}$. Also measure when RX_DV, RX_ER, and RXD<3:0> reenter the switching region relative to when the rising edge of RX_CLK passes through $V_{ih(min)}$.

The timing relationships at the MII connector for RX_DV, RX_ER, and RXD<3:0> relative to RX_CLK are met if the times measured in the previous step meet the timing relationships specified in 22.3.2.

22C.4 Measuring timing characteristics of MDIO

The MDIO and MDC signal timing characteristics cannot be measured using the techniques defined for the transmit and receive signals since MDIO and MDC may connect a single station management entity to multiple PHY devices. The MDIO and MDC timing characteristics are measured with a PHY connected to the MII connector. The signal timing characteristics for MDC and MDIO must be met over the range of conditions which occur when from one to 32 PHYs are connected to an STA. When 32 PHYs are connected to an STA, the total capacitance can be as large as 390 pF on MDC, and as large as 470 pF on MDIO.

Annex 23A

(normative)

6T code words

The *leftmost* ternary symbol of each 6T Code group shown in table 23A-1 (broken into 23A-1a and 23A-1b for pagination) shall be transmitted *first.* The *leftmost* nibble of each data octet is the *most significant.*

Table 23A-1a—100BASE-T4 8B6T code table

Data octet	6T code group	Data octet	6T code group	Data octet	6T code group	Data octet	6T code group
00	+ - 0 0 + -	20	0 0 - + + -	40	+ 0 + 0 0 -	60	0 - 0 + + 0
01	0 + - + - 0	21	- - + 0 0 +	41	+ + 0 0 - 0	61	0 0 - + 0 +
02	+ - 0 + - 0	22	+ + - 0 + -	42	+ 0 + 0 - 0	62	0 - 0 + 0 +
03	- 0 + + - 0	23	+ + - 0 - +	43	0 + + 0 - 0	63	- 0 0 + 0 +
04	- 0 + 0 + -	24	0 0 + 0 - +	44	0 + + 0 0 -	64	- 0 0 + + 0
05	0 + - - 0 +	25	0 0 + 0 + -	45	+ + 0 - 0 0	65	0 0 - 0 + +
06	+ - 0 - 0 +	26	0 0 - 0 0 +	46	+ 0 + - 0 0	66	0 - 0 0 + +
07	- 0 + - 0 +	27	- - + + + -	47	0 + + - 0 0	67	- 0 0 0 + +
08	- + 0 0 + -	28	- 0 - + + 0	48	0 0 0 + 0 0	68	- + - + + 0
09	0 - + + - 0	29	- - 0 + 0 +	49	0 0 0 - + +	69	- - + + 0 +
0A	- + 0 + - 0	2A	- 0 - + 0 +	4A	0 0 0 + - +	6A	- + - + 0 +
0B	+ 0 - + - 0	2B	0 - - + 0 +	4B	0 0 0 + + -	6B	+ - - + 0 +
0C	+ 0 - 0 + -	2C	0 - - + + 0	4C	0 0 0 - + 0	6C	+ - - + + 0
0D	0 - + - 0 +	2D	- - 0 0 + +	4D	0 0 0 - 0 +	6D	- - + 0 + +
0E	- + 0 - 0 +	2E	- 0 - 0 + +	4E	0 0 0 + - 0	6E	- + - 0 + +
0F	+ 0 - - 0 +	2F	0 - - 0 + +	4F	0 0 0 + 0 -	6F	+ - - 0 + +
10	+ 0 + - - 0	30	+ - 0 0 - +	50	+ 0 + - - +	70	- + + 0 0 0
11	+ + 0 - 0 -	31	0 + - - + 0	51	+ + 0 - + -	71	+ - + 0 0 0
12	+ 0 + - 0 -	32	+ - 0 - + 0	52	+ 0 + - + -	72	+ + - 0 0 0
13	0 + + - 0 -	33	- 0 + - + 0	53	0 + + - + -	73	0 0 + 0 0 0
14	0 + + - - 0	34	- 0 + 0 - +	54	0 + + - - +	74	- 0 + 0 0 0
15	+ + 0 0 - -	35	0 + - + 0 -	55	+ + 0 + - -	75	0 - + 0 0 0
16	+ 0 + 0 - -	36	+ - 0 + 0 -	56	+ 0 + + - -	76	+ 0 - 0 0 0
17	0 + + 0 - -	37	- 0 + + 0 -	57	0 + + + - -	77	0 + - 0 0 0
18	0 + - 0 + -	38	- + 0 0 - +	58	+ + + 0 - -	78	0 - - + + +
19	0 + - 0 - +	39	0 - + - + 0	59	+ + + - 0 -	79	- 0 - + + +
1A	0 + - + + -	3A	- + 0 - + 0	5A	+ + + - - 0	7A	- - 0 + + +
1B	0 + - 0 0 +	3B	+ 0 - - + 0	5B	+ + 0 - - 0	7B	- - 0 + + 0
1C	0 - + 0 0 +	3C	+ 0 - 0 - +	5C	+ + 0 - - +	7C	+ + - 0 0 -
1D	0 - + + + -	3D	0 - + + 0 -	5D	+ + 0 0 0 -	7D	0 0 + 0 0 -
1E	0 - + 0 - +	3E	- + 0 + 0 -	5E	- - + + + 0	7E	+ + - - - +
1F	0 - + 0 + -	3F	+ 0 - + 0 -	5F	0 0 - + + 0	7F	0 0 + - - +

Table 23A-1b—100BASE-T4 8B6T code table

Data octet	6T code group	Data octet	6T code group	Data octet	6T code group	Data octet	6T code group
80	+ - + 0 0 -	A0	0 - 0 + + -	C0	+ - + 0 + -	E0	+ - 0 + + -
81	+ + - 0 - 0	A1	0 0 - + - +	C1	+ + - + - 0	E1	0 + - + - +
82	+ - + 0 - 0	A2	0 - 0 + - +	C2	+ - + + - 0	E2	+ - 0 + - +
83	- + + 0 - 0	A3	- 0 0 + - +	C3	- + + + - 0	E3	- 0 + + - +
84	- + + 0 0 -	A4	- 0 0 + + -	C4	- + + 0 + -	E4	- 0 + + + -
85	+ + - - 0 0	A5	0 0 - - + +	C5	+ + - - 0 +	E5	0 + - - + +
86	+ - + - 0 0	A6	0 - 0 - + +	C6	+ - + - 0 +	E6	+ - 0 - + +
87	- + + - 0 0	A7	- 0 0 - + +	C7	- + + - 0 +	E7	- 0 + - + +
88	0 + 0 0 0 -	A8	- + - + + -	C8	0 + 0 0 + -	E8	- + 0 + + -
89	0 0 + 0 - 0	A9	- - + + - +	C9	0 0 + + - 0	E9	0 - + + - +
8A	0 + 0 0 - 0	AA	- + - + - +	CA	0 + 0 + - 0	EA	- + 0 + - +
8B	+ 0 0 0 - 0	AB	+ - - + - +	CB	+ 0 0 + - 0	EB	+ 0 - + - +
8C	+ 0 0 0 0 -	AC	+ - - + + -	CC	+ 0 0 0 + -	EC	+ 0 - + + -
8D	0 0 + - 0 0	AD	- - + - + +	CD	0 0 + - 0 +	ED	0 - + - + +
8E	0 + 0 - 0 0	AE	- + - - + +	CE	0 + 0 - 0 +	EE	- + 0 - + +
8F	+ 0 0 - 0 0	AF	+ - - - + +	CF	+ 0 0 - 0 +	EF	+ 0 - - + +
90	+ - + - - +	B0	0 - 0 0 0 +	D0	+ - + 0 - +	F0	+ - 0 0 0 +
91	+ + - - + -	B1	0 0 - 0 + 0	D1	+ + - - + 0	F1	0 + - 0 + 0
92	+ - + - + -	B2	0 - 0 0 + 0	D2	+ - + - + 0	F2	+ - 0 0 + 0
93	- + + - + -	B3	- 0 0 0 + 0	D3	- + + - + 0	F3	- 0 + 0 + 0
94	- + + - - +	B4	- 0 0 0 0 +	D4	- + + 0 - +	F4	- 0 + 0 0 +
95	+ + - + - -	B5	0 0 - + 0 0	D5	+ + - + 0 -	F5	0 + - + 0 0
96	+ - + + - -	B6	0 - 0 + 0 0	D6	+ - + + 0 -	F6	+ - 0 + 0 0
97	- + + + - -	B7	- 0 0 + 0 0	D7	- + + + 0 -	F7	- 0 + + 0 0
98	0 + 0 - - +	B8	- + - 0 0 +	D8	0 + 0 0 - +	F8	- + 0 0 0 +
99	0 0 + - + -	B9	- - + 0 + 0	D9	0 0 + - + 0	F9	0 - + 0 + 0
9A	0 + 0 - + -	BA	- + - 0 + 0	DA	0 + 0 - + 0	FA	- + 0 0 + 0
9B	+ 0 0 - + -	BB	+ - - 0 + 0	DB	+ 0 0 - + 0	FB	+ 0 - 0 + 0
9C	+ 0 0 - - +	BC	+ - - 0 0 +	DC	+ 0 0 0 - +	FC	+ 0 - 0 0 +
9D	0 0 + + - -	BD	- - + + 0 0	DD	0 0 + + 0 -	FD	0 - + + 0 0
9E	0 + 0 + - -	BE	- + - + 0 0	DE	0 + 0 + 0 -	FE	- + 0 + 0 0
9F	+ 0 0 + - -	BF	+ - - + 0 0	DF	+ 0 0 + 0 -	FF	+ 0 - + 0 0

Annex 23B

(informative)

Noise budget

Worst-case values for noise effects in the 100BASE-T4 system are as shown in tables 23B-1 and 23B-2.

Table 23B-1—Carrier presence analysis

Received signal peak amplitude (min.)	792 mVp
NEXT noise	325 mVp

Table 23B-2—Far-end signal analysis

Received signal peak amplitude (min.)	796 mVp
Baseline wander	14 mVp
ISI	80 mVp
Reflections	60 mVp
FEXT noise	87 mVp

Annex 23C

(informative)

Use of cabling systems with a nominal differential characteristic impedance of 120 Ω

The 100BASE-T4 standard specifies only the use of 100 Ω link segments for conformance. Since ISO/IEC 11801: 1995 also recognizes 120 Ω cabling, this informative annex specifies the conditions for using cabling systems with a nominal characteristic impedance of 120 Ω by 100BASE-T4 conformant stations.

The use of cables with a characteristic impedance outside the range specified in 23.6 will generally increase the mismatching effects in the link components, inducing additional noise in the received signals.

In particular, the use of a homogeneous link segment having a characteristic impedance of 120 Ω ±15 Ω over the frequency band 1 to 16 MHz may add up to 1.4% of additional noise to the signals at the input of the receivers (worst-case short-length link segment).

Therefore, in order to keep the overall noise (MDFEXT + reflections) at the same value as for a 100 Ω link segment when using a 120 Ω link segment, the minimum ELFEXT loss requirement for the cable must be increased by 2 dB (i.e., from 23 dB to 25 dB at 12.5 MHz, see 23.6.3.2). Accordingly, the MDFEXT noise requirement shall be decreased from 87 mV peak to 69 mV peak. In practice, this means that cables rated category 4 or higher, as specified in ISO/IEC 11801: 1995, are required when 120 Ω cables are used with 100BASE-T4 compliant PMDs.

NOTES

1—The use of 100 Ω cords at end points in conjunction with 120 Ω premises cabling may be tolerated provided that all the components of the link are of category 5, as defined in ISO/IEC 11801: 1995.

2—The use of 100 Ω cords at any intermediate cross-connect points on 120 Ω links as well as the use of 120 Ω cords in conjunction with 100 Ω premises cabling is not allowed since it would result in worst-case jitter greater than that allowed in this standard.

CAUTION—Users of this annex are further advised to check with the manufacturer of the particular 100BASE-T4 couplers they intend to use with a 120 Ω link to see whether those couplers can operate correctly on cables with Z_c as high as 120 Ω ± 15 Ω.

Annex 27A

(normative)

Repeater delay consistency requirements

Proper operation of the network requires that repeaters do not cause the Inter-Packet Gap (IPG) to disappear by propagating the end of any carrier event to different output ports with greatly different delay times. Maximum port-to-port delays have been assigned as absolute delays to meet requirements for detection of collision within a slot time and limiting the length of collision fragments to less than minimum frame size. To avoid specification of minimum input-to-output propagation time as absolute values that reduce implementation flexibility, these delays are instead implied by imposing a triangular delay inequality relationship.

Consider three ports {A, B, C}. Using the notation SOP(xy) to mean the start-of-packet delay for an input at port x to resulting output on port y, repeaters shall achieve this relationship for all groups of three ports within a repeater set:

SOP(AC) < SOP(AB) + SOP(BC)

Following a frame transmitted by node A that propagates to nodes B and C, this constraint ensures that node B cannot complete an IPG timer and initiate a transmission that arrives at node C before node C has also advanced its own IPG timer sufficiently that a pending frame can contend for access to the network.

There is a second delay consistency requirement, one that relates to jam propagation by repeaters. Using a notation similar to that above, SOJ(xy) stands for the start-of-jam propagation delay from port x to port y and EOJ(xy) for the end-of-jam delay between same two ports.

To ensure proper detection of collisions and avoid generation of fragments that exceed minimum frame size, maximum values have been imposed on SOJ and EOJ delays through repeaters. No specific minima have been specified as all delays less than the maxima meet the collision detection and fragment length criteria. To prevent the jam pattern from shrinking excessively as it propagates through repeaters, repeaters shall meet this relationship between all pairs of ports:

EOJ(AB) >= SOJ(AB) – 4 bit times

Annex 28A

(normative)

Selector Field definitions

The Selector Field, S[4:0] in the Link Code Word, shall be used to identify the type of message being sent by Auto-Negotiation. The following table identifies the types of messages that may be sent. As new messages are developed, this table will be updated accordingly.

The Selector Field uses a 5-bit binary encoding, which allows 32 messages to be defined. All unspecified combinations are reserved. Reserved combinations shall not be transmitted.

Table 28A-1—Selector Field value mappings

S4	S3	S2	S1	S0	Selector description
0	0	0	0	0	Reserved for future Auto-Negotiation development
0	0	0	0	1	IEEE Std 802.3
0	0	0	1	0	IEEE Std 802.9 ISLAN-16T
1	1	1	1	1	Reserved for future Auto-Negotiation development

Annex 28B

(normative)

IEEE 802.3 Selector Base Page definition

This annex provides the Technology Ability Field bit assignments, Priority Resolution table, and Message Page transmission conventions relative to the IEEE 802.3 Selector Field value within the base page encoding.

As new IEEE 802.3 LAN technologies are developed, a reserved bit in the Technology Ability Field may be assigned to each technology by the standards body.

The new technology will then be inserted into the Priority Resolution hierarchy and made a part of the Auto-Negotiation standard. The relative hierarchy of the existing technologies will not change, thus providing backward compatibility with existing Auto-Negotiation implementations.

It is important to note that the reserved bits are required to be transmitted as logic zeros. This guarantees that devices implemented using the current priority table will be forward compatible with future devices using an updated priority table.

28B.1 Selector field value

The value of the IEEE 802.3 Selector Field is S[4:0] = 00001.

28B.2 Technology Ability Field bit assignments

The Technology bit field consists of bits D5 through D12 (A0–A8 respectively) in the IEEE 802.3 Selector Base Page. Table 28B-1 summarizes the bit assignments.

Note that the order of the bits within the Technology Ability Field has no relationship to the relative priority of the technologies.

Table 28B-1—Technology Ability Field bit assignments

Bit	Technology	Minimum cabling requirement
A0	10BASE-T	Two-pair Category 3
A1	10BASE-T full duplex	Two-pair Category 3
A2	100BASE-TX	Two-pair Category 5
A3	100BASE-TX full duplex	Two-pair Category 5
A4	100BASE-T4	Four-pair Category 3
A5	Reserved for future technology	
A6	Reserved for future technology	
A7	Reserved for future technology	

28B.3 Priority resolution

Since two devices may have multiple abilities in common, a prioritization scheme exists to ensure that the highest common denominator ability is chosen. The following list shall represent the relative priorities of the technologies supported by the IEEE 802.3 Selector Field value, where priorities are listed from highest to lowest.

a) 100BASE-TX full duplex
b) 100BASE-T4
c) 100BASE-TX
d) 10BASE-T full duplex
e) 10BASE-T

The rational for this hierarchy is straightforward. 10BASE-T is the lowest common denominator and therefore has the lowest priority. Full-duplex solutions are always higher in priority than their half-duplex counterparts. 100BASE-T4 is ahead of 100BASE-TX because 100BASE-T4 runs across a broader spectrum of copper cabling. The relative order of the technologies specified herein shall not be changed. As each new technology is added, it shall be inserted into its appropriate place in the list, shifting technologies of lesser priority lower in priority. If a vendor-specific technology is implemented, the priority of all IEEE 802.3 standard technologies shall be maintained, with the vendor-specific technology inserted at any appropriate priority location.

28B.4 Message Page transmission convention

Each series of Unformatted Pages shall be preceded by a Message Page containing a Message Code that defines how the following Unformatted Pages will be used.

Next Page message codes should be allocated globally across Selector Field values so that meaningful communication is possible between technologies using different Selector Field values.

Annex 28C

(normative)

Next Page Message Code Field definitions

The Message Code Field of a message page used in Next Page exchange shall be used to identify the meaning of a message. The following table identifies the types of messages that may be sent. As new messages are developed, this table will be updated accordingly.

The Message Code Field uses an 11-bit binary encoding that allows 2048 messages to be defined. All Message Codes not specified shall be reserved for IEEE use or allocation.

Table 28C-1—Message Code Field values

Message code #	M10	M9	M8	M7	M6	M5	M4	M3	M2	M1	M0	Message Code description
0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	Reserved for future Auto-Negotiation use
1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	Null Message
2	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	One UP with Technology Ability Field follows
3	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	1	Two UPs with Technology Ability Field follows
4	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	One UP with Binary coded Remote fault follows
5	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	1	Organizationally Unique Identifier Tagged Message
6	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	1	0	PHY Identifier Tag Code
2047	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	Reserved for future Auto-Negotiation use

28C.1 Message code #0—Auto-Negotiation reserved code 1

This code is reserved for future Auto-Negotiation function enhancements. Devices shall not transmit this code.

28C.2 Message code #1—Null Message code

The Null Message code shall be transmitted during Next Page exchange when the Local Device has no further messages to transmit and the Link Partner is still transmitting valid Next Pages. See 28.2.3.4 for more details.

28C.3 Message code #2—Technology Ability extension code 1

This Message Code is reserved for future expansion of the Technology Ability Field and indicates that a defined user code with a specific Technology Ability Field encoding follows.

28C.4 Message code #3—Technology Ability extension code 2

This Message Code is reserved for future expansion of the Technology Ability Field and indicates that two defined user codes with specific Technology Ability Field encodings follow.

28C.5 Message code #4—Remote fault number code

This Message Code shall be followed by a single user code whose encoding specifies the type of fault that has occurred. The following user codes are defined:

0: RF Test
  This code can be used to test Remote Fault operation.
1: Link Loss
2: Jabber
3: Parallel Detection Fault
  This code may be sent to identify when bit 6.4 is set.

28C.6 Message code #5—Organizationally Unique Identifier (OUI) tag code

The OUI Tagged Message shall consist of a single message code of 0000 0000 0101 followed by four user codes defined as follows. The first user code shall contain the most significant 11 bits of the OUI (bits 23:13) with the most significant bit in bit 10 of the user code. The second user code shall contain the next most significant 11 bits of the OUI (bits 12:2) with the most significant bit in bit 10 of the user code. The third user code shall contain the remaining least significant 2 bits of the OUI (bits 1:0) with the most significant bit in bit 10 of the user code. Bits 8:0 of the fourth user contain a user-defined user code value that is specific to the OUI transmitted. The fourth and final user code shall contain a user-defined user code value that is specific to the OUI transmitted.

28C.7 Message code #6—PHY identifier tag code

The PHY ID tag code message shall consist of a single message code of 0000 0000 0110 followed by four user codes defined as follows. The first user code shall contain the most significant 11 bits of the PHY ID (2.15:5) with the most significant bit in bit 10 of the user code. The second user code shall contain bits 2.4:0 to 3.15:10 of the PHY ID with the most significant bit in bit 10 of the user code. The third user code shall contain bits 3.9:0 of the PHY ID with the most significant bit in bit 10 of the user code. Bit 0 in the third user code shall contain a user-defined user code value that is specific to the PHY ID transmitted. The fourth and final user code shall contain a user-defined user code value that is specific to the PHY ID transmitted.

28C.8 Message code #2047—Auto-Negotiation reserved code 2

This code is reserved for future Auto-Negotiation function enhancements. Devices shall not transmit this code.

Annex 29A

(informative)

DTE and repeater delay components

29A.1 DTE delay

Round-trip DTE delay = MAC transmit start to MDI output
+ MDI input to MDI output (worst case, nondeferred)
+ MDI input to collision detect

NOTES

1—Refer to clauses 23, 24, 25, and 26.

2—Worst-case values are used for the one T4 and one TX/FX value shown in table 29-3. (TX/FX values for MAC transmit start and MDI input to collision detect; T4 value for MDI input to MDI output.)

29A.2 Repeater delay

Repeater delay= SOP (start-of-packet propagation delay)
+ SOJ (start-of-jam propagation delay)

NOTE—Refer to clause 27.

Annex 29B

(informative)

Recommended topology documentation

It is strongly recommended that detailed records documenting the topology components of 100BASE-T networks be prepared and maintained to facilitate subsequent modification. Proper 100BASE-T topology design requires an accurate knowledge of link segment and hub parameters to ensure proper operation of single and multi-segment, single collision domain networks. Link segment documentation is site-specific and requires careful documentation. It is recommended that the information shown in table 29B-1 be collected for each link segment and archived for future reference. Hub performance parameters may be obtained from manufacturer documentation.

Table 29B-1—Recommended link segment documentation

	Horizontal wiring (wiring closet, from punch-down block to end station wall plate)	**MII cable(s)**	**Wiring closet patch cord**	**End station connecting cable**
Length				
Type (e.g., Category 3)				
Cable manufacturer				
Cable code/id (from manufacturer)				
Cable delay (in bit times per meter)				

Annex 30A

(normative)

GDMO specification for 802.3 managed object classes

This annex formally defines the protocol encodings for CMIP and ISO/IEC 15802-2: 1995 [IEEE 802.1B] for the IEEE 802.3 Managed Objects using the templates specified in ISO/IEC 10165-4: 1992, Guidelines for the definition of managed objects (GDMO). The application of a GDMO template compiler against 30A.1 to 30A.8 will produce the proper protocol encodings.

NOTE—The arcs (that is, object identifier values) defined in annex 30A deprecate the arcs previously defined in Annexes D1 (Layer Management), D2 (Repeater Management), and D3 (MAU Management). See IEEE Std 802.1F-1993, annex C.4.

Each attribute definition in this clause references directly by means of the WITH ATTRIBUTE SYNTAX construct or indirectly by means of the DERIVED FROM construct an ASN.1 type or subtype that defines the attribute's type and range. Those ASN.1 types and subtypes defined exclusively for CSMA/CD Management appear in a single ASN.1 module at the end of this annex.

Counters for these protocol encodings are specified as either 32 or 64 bits wide. Thirty-two bit counters are used for the protocol encoding of counter attributes, providing the minimum rollover time is 58 min or more. Sixty-four bit counters are used for the protocol encoding of counter attributes that could roll over in less than 58 min with a 32-bit counter. Approximate counter rollover times are provided as notes below each counter BEHAVIOUR definition. Approximate rollover time for 100 Mb/s operation is one tenth the value of the approximate rollover time for 10 Mb/s operation except where indicated, or where one tenth the value for 10 Mb/s operation is less than 58 min. For formal definition of the counter, refer to the BEHAVIOUR bCMCounter in 30B.1.

30A.1 DTE MAC entity managed object class

30A.1.1 DTE MAC entity formal definition

```
oMACEntity                              MANAGED OBJECT CLASS

     DERIVED FROM                       "CCITT Rec. X.721 (1992) | ISO/IEC 10165-2 :
                                        1992":top;
     CHARACTERIZED BY
          pBasic                        PACKAGE
               ATTRIBUTES               aMACID                        GET;
               ACTIONS                  acInitializeMAC;
          ;
     ;
     CONDITIONAL PACKAGES
          pMandatory                    PACKAGE
               ATTRIBUTES               aFramesTransmittedOK          GET,
                                        aSingleCollisionFrames        GET,
                                        aMultipleCollisionFrames      GET,
                                        aFramesReceivedOK             GET,
                                        aFrameCheckSequenceErrors     GET,
                                        aAlignmentErrors              GET;
               REGISTERED AS            {iso(1) member-body(2) us(840) 802dot3(10006)
```

```
                                        csmacdmgt(30) package(4) macMandatoryPkg(1)};
          PRESENT IF                    Conformance to DTE Management is desired.;
     pRecommended                       PACKAGE
          ATTRIBUTES                    aOctetsTransmittedOK              GET,
                                        aFramesWithDeferredXmissions      GET,
                                        aLateCollisions                   GET,
                                        aFramesAbortedDueToXSColls        GET,
                                        aFramesLostDueToIntMACXmitError   GET,
                                        aCarrierSenseErrors               GET,
                                        aOctetsReceivedOK                 GET,
                                        aFramesLostDueToIntMACRcvError    GET,
                                        aPromiscuousStatus                GET-SET,
                                        aReadMulticastAddressList         GET;
          ACTIONS                       acAddGroupAddress,
                                        acDeleteGroupAddress;
          REGISTERED AS                 {iso(1) member-body(2) us(840) 802dot3(10006)
                                        csmacdmgt(30) package(4)
                                        macRecommendedPkg(2)};
          PRESENT IF                    The Recommended Package is implemented.;
     pOptional                          PACKAGE
          ATTRIBUTES                    aMulticastFramesXmittedOK         GET,
                                        aBroadcastFramesXmittedOK         GET,
                                        aMulticastFramesReceivedOK        GET,
                                        aBroadcastFramesReceivedOK        GET,
                                        aInRangeLengthErrors              GET,
                                        aOutOfRangeLengthField            GET,
                                        aFrameTooLongErrors               GET,
                                        aMACEnableStatus                  GET-SET,
                                        aTransmitEnableStatus             GET-SET,
                                        aMulticastReceiveStatus           GET-SET,
                                        aReadWriteMACAddress              GET-SET;
          ACTIONS                       acExecuteSelfTest;
          REGISTERED AS                 {iso(1) member-body(2) us(840) 802dot3(10006)
                                        csmacdmgt(30) package(4) optionalPkg(3)};
          PRESENT IF                    The Optional Package and the Recommended Package
                                        are implemented.;
     pArray                             PACKAGE
          ATTRIBUTES                    aCollisionFrames                  GET;
          REGISTERED AS                 {iso(1) member-body(2) us(840) 802dot3(10006)
                                        csmacdmgt(30) package(4) arrayPkg(4)};
          PRESENT IF                    The Array Package and the Recommended Package
                                        are implemented.;
     pExcessiveDeferral                 PACKAGE
          ATTRIBUTES                    aFramesWithExcessiveDeferral      GET;
          REGISTERED AS                 {iso(1) member-body(2) us(840) 802dot3(10006)
                                        csmacdmgt(30) package(4)
                                        excessiveDeferralPkg(5)};
          PRESENT IF                    The ExcessiveDeferral Package and the
                                        Recommended Package are implemented.;
REGISTERED AS              {iso(1) member-body(2) us(840) 802dot3(10006) csmacdmgt(30)
                           managedObjectClass(3) macObjectClass(1)};


nbMACName                                    NAME BINDING
```

SUBORDINATE OBJECT CLASS oMACEntity;
NAMED BY SUPERIOR OBJECT CLASS
“ISO/IEC 10165-2”:system;
WITH ATTRIBUTE aMACID;
REGISTERED AS {iso(1) member-body(2) us(840) 802dot3(10006) csmacdmgt(30)
nameBinding(6) macName(1)};

nbMACMonitor NAME BINDING

SUBORDINATE OBJECT CLASS “IEEE802.1F”:ewmaMetricMonitor;
NAMED BY SUPERIOR OBJECT CLASS
“ISO/IEC 10165-2”:system;
WITH ATTRIBUTE aScannerId;
CREATE WITH-AUTOMATIC-INSTANCE-NAMING;
DELETE ONLY-IF-NO-CONTAINED-OBJECTS;
REGISTERED AS {iso(1) member-body(2) us(840) 802dot3(10006) csmacdmgt(30)
nameBinding(6) macMonitor(2)};

30A.1.2 DTE MAC entity attributes

aMACID ATTRIBUTE

WITH ATTRIBUTE SYNTAX IEEE802Dot3-MgmtAttributeModule.OneOfName;
MATCHES FOR EQUALITY;
BEHAVIOUR bMACID;
REGISTERED AS {iso(1) member-body(2) us(840) 802dot3(10006) csmacdmgt(30)
attribute(7) macID(3)};

bMACID BEHAVIOUR

DEFINED AS See “BEHAVIOUR DEFINED AS” in 30.3.1.1.1;

aFramesTransmittedOK ATTRIBUTE

DERIVED FROM aCMCounter;
BEHAVIOUR bFramesTransmittedOK;
REGISTERED AS {iso(1) member-body(2) us(840) 802dot3(10006) csmacdmgt(30)
attribute(7) framesTransmittedOK(2)};

bFramesTransmittedOK BEHAVIOUR

DEFINED AS See “BEHAVIOUR DEFINED AS” in 30.3.1.1.2;

NOTES

1—The approximate minimum time between counter rollovers for 10 Mb/s operation is 80 h.;

2—This maps to framesSent (of the mandatory macPackage) in ISO/IEC 10742: 1994.;

aSingleCollisionFrames ATTRIBUTE

DERIVED FROM aCMCounter;
BEHAVIOUR bSingleCollisionFrames;
REGISTERED AS {iso(1) member-body(2) us(840) 802dot3(10006) csmacdmgt(30) attribute(7) singleCollisionFrames(3)};

bSingleCollisionFrames BEHAVIOUR

DEFINED AS See “BEHAVIOUR DEFINED AS” in 30.3.1.1.3;

NOTE—The approximate minimum time between counter rollovers for 10 Mb/s operation is 103 h.;

aMultipleCollisionFrames ATTRIBUTE

DERIVED FROM aCMCounter;
BEHAVIOUR bMultipleCollisionFrames;
REGISTERED AS {iso(1) member-body(2) us(840) 802dot3(10006) csmacdmgt(30) attribute(7) multipleCollisionFrames(4)};

bMultipleCollisionFrames BEHAVIOUR

DEFINED AS See “BEHAVIOUR DEFINED AS” in 30.3.1.1.4;

NOTE—The approximate minimum time between counter rollovers for 10 Mb/s operation is 125 h.;

aFramesReceivedOK ATTRIBUTE

DERIVED FROM aCMCounter;
BEHAVIOUR bFramesReceivedOK;
REGISTERED AS {iso(1) member-body(2) us(840) 802dot3(10006) csmacdmgt(30) attribute(7) framesReceivedOK(5)};

bFramesReceivedOK BEHAVIOUR

DEFINED AS See “BEHAVIOUR DEFINED AS” in 30.3.1.1.5;

NOTES

1—The approximate minimum time between counter rollovers for 10 Mb/s operation is 80 h.;

2—This maps to framesReceived (of the mandatory macPackage) in ISO/IEC 10742: 1994.;

aFrameCheckSequenceErrors ATTRIBUTE

DERIVED FROM aCMCounter;
BEHAVIOUR bFrameCheckSequenceErrors;
REGISTERED AS {iso(1) member-body(2) us(840) 802dot3(10006) csmacdmgt(30) attribute(7) frameCheckSequenceErrors(6)};

bFrameCheckSequenceErrors BEHAVIOUR

DEFINED AS See “BEHAVIOUR DEFINED AS” in 30.3.1.1.6;

NOTE—The approximate minimum time between counter rollovers for 10 Mb/s operation is 80 h.;

aAlignmentErrors ATTRIBUTE

DERIVED FROM aCMCounter;
BEHAVIOUR bAlignmentErrors;
REGISTERED AS {iso(1) member-body(2) us(840) 802dot3(10006) csmacdmgt(30) attribute(7) alignmentErrors(7)};

bAlignmentErrors BEHAVIOUR

DEFINED AS See “BEHAVIOUR DEFINED AS” in 30.3.1.1.7;

NOTE—The approximate minimum time between counter rollovers for 10 Mb/s operation is 80 h.;

aOctetsTransmittedOK ATTRIBUTE

DERIVED FROM aCMCounter;
BEHAVIOUR bOctetsTransmittedOK;
REGISTERED AS {iso(1) member-body(2) us(840) 802dot3(10006) csmacdmgt(30) attribute(7) octetsTransmittedOK(8)};

bOctetsTransmittedOK BEHAVIOUR

DEFINED AS See “BEHAVIOUR DEFINED AS” in 30.3.1.1.8;

NOTES

1—The approximate minimum time between counter rollovers for 10 Mb/s operation is 58 min.

2—This maps to octetsSent (of the mandatory macPackage) in ISO/IEC 10742: 1994.;

aFramesWithDeferredXmissions ATTRIBUTE

DERIVED FROM aCMCounter;
BEHAVIOUR bFramesWithDeferredXmissions;
REGISTERED AS {iso(1) member-body(2) us(840) 802dot3(10006) csmacdmgt(30)
attribute(7) framesWithDeferredXmissions(9)};

bFramesWithDeferredXmissions BEHAVIOUR

DEFINED AS See “BEHAVIOUR DEFINED AS” in 30.3.1.1.9;

NOTE—The approximate minimum time between counter rollovers for 10 Mb/s operation is 103 h.;

aLateCollisions ATTRIBUTE

DERIVED FROM aCMCounter;
BEHAVIOUR bLateCollisions;
REGISTERED AS {iso(1) member-body(2) us(840) 802dot3(10006) csmacdmgt(30)
attribute(7) lateCollisions(10)};

bLateCollisions BEHAVIOUR

DEFINED AS See “BEHAVIOUR DEFINED AS” in 30.3.1.1.10;

NOTE—The approximate minimum time between counter rollovers for 10 Mb/s operation is 80 h.;

aFramesAbortedDueToXSColls ATTRIBUTE

DERIVED FROM aCMCounter;
BEHAVIOUR bFramesAbortedDueToXSColls;
REGISTERED AS {iso(1) member-body(2) us(840) 802dot3(10006) csmacdmgt(30)
attribute(7) framesAbortedDueToXSColls(11)};

bFramesAbortedDueToXSColls BEHAVIOUR

DEFINED AS See “BEHAVIOUR DEFINED AS” in 30.3.1.1.11;

NOTE—The approximate minimum time between counter rollovers for 10 Mb/s operation is 53 days.;

aFramesLostDueToIntMACXmitError ATTRIBUTE

DERIVED FROM aCMCounter;
BEHAVIOUR bFramesLostDueToIntMACXmitError;
REGISTERED AS {iso(1) member-body(2) us(840) 802dot3(10006) csmacdmgt(30)
attribute(7) framesLostDueToIntMACXmitError(12)};

bFramesLostDueToIntMACXmitError BEHAVIOUR

DEFINED AS See "BEHAVIOUR DEFINED AS" in 30.3.1.1.12;

NOTE—The approximate minimum time between counter rollovers for 10 Mb/s operation is 16 h.;

aCarrierSenseErrors ATTRIBUTE

DERIVED FROM aCMCounter;
BEHAVIOUR bCarrierSenseErrors;
REGISTERED AS {iso(1) member-body(2) us(840) 802dot3(10006) csmacdmgt(30) attribute(7) carrierSenseErrors(13)};

bCarrierSenseErrors BEHAVIOUR

DEFINED AS See "BEHAVIOUR DEFINED AS" in 30.3.1.1.13;

NOTE—The approximate minimum time between counter rollovers for 10 Mb/s operation is 80 h.;

aOctetsReceivedOK ATTRIBUTE

DERIVED FROM aCMCounter;
BEHAVIOUR bOctetsReceivedOK;
REGISTERED AS {iso(1) member-body(2) us(840) 802dot3(10006) csmacdmgt(30) attribute(7) octetsReceivedOK(14)};

bOctetsReceivedOK BEHAVIOUR

DEFINED AS See "BEHAVIOUR DEFINED AS" in 30.3.1.1.14;

NOTES

1—The approximate minimum time between counter rollovers for 10 Mb/s operation is 58 min.

2—This maps to octetsReceived (of the mandatory macPackage) in ISO/IEC 10742: 1994.;

aFramesLostDueToIntMACRcvError ATTRIBUTE

DERIVED FROM aCMCounter;
BEHAVIOUR bFramesLostDueToIntMACRcvError;
REGISTERED AS {iso(1) member-body(2) us(840) 802dot3(10006) csmacdmgt(30) attribute(7) framesLostDueToIntMACRcvError(15)};

bFramesLostDueToIntMACRcvError BEHAVIOUR

DEFINED AS See “BEHAVIOUR DEFINED AS” in 30.3.1.1.15;

NOTE—The approximate minimum time between counter rollovers for 10 Mb/s operation is 80 h.;

aPromiscuousStatus ATTRIBUTE

WITH ATTRIBUTE SYNTAX IEEE802Dot3-MgmtAttributeModule.TrueFalse;
BEHAVIOUR bPromiscuousStatus;
REGISTERED AS {iso(1) member-body(2) us(840) 802dot3(10006) csmacdmgt(30) attribute(7) promiscuousStatus(16)};

bPromiscuousStatus BEHAVIOUR

DEFINED AS See “BEHAVIOUR DEFINED AS” in 30.3.1.1.16;

aReadMulticastAddressList ATTRIBUTE

WITH ATTRIBUTE SYNTAX IEEE802Dot3-MgmtAttributeModule. MulticastAddressList
BEHAVIOUR bReadMulticastAddressList;
REGISTERED AS {iso(1) member-body(2) us(840) 802dot3(10006) csmacdmgt(30) attribute(7) readMulticastAddressList(17)};

bReadMulticastAddressList BEHAVIOUR

DEFINED AS See “BEHAVIOUR DEFINED AS” in 30.3.1.1.17;

aMulticastFramesXmittedOK ATTRIBUTE

DERIVED FROM aCMCounter;
BEHAVIOUR bMulticastFramesXmittedOK;
REGISTERED AS {iso(1) member-body(2) us(840) 802dot3(10006) csmacdmgt(30) attribute(7) multicastFramesXmittedOK(18)};

bMulticastFramesXmittedOK BEHAVIOUR

DEFINED AS See “BEHAVIOUR DEFINED AS” in 30.3.1.1.18;

NOTE—The approximate minimum time between counter rollovers for 10 Mb/s operation is 80 h.;

aBroadcastFramesXmittedOK ATTRIBUTE

DERIVED FROM aCMCounter;
BEHAVIOUR bBroadcastFramesXmittedOK;
REGISTERED AS {iso(1) member-body(2) us(840) 802dot3(10006) csmacdmgt(30) attribute(7) broadcastFramesXmittedOK(19)};

bBroadcastFramesXmittedOK BEHAVIOUR

DEFINED AS See "BEHAVIOUR DEFINED AS" in 30.3.1.1.19;

NOTE—The approximate minimum time between counter rollovers for 10 Mb/s operation is 80 h.;

aFramesWithExcessiveDeferral ATTRIBUTE

DERIVED FROM aCMCounter;
BEHAVIOUR bFramesWithExcessiveDeferral;
REGISTERED AS {iso(1) member-body(2) us(840) 802dot3(10006) csmacdmgt(30) attribute(7) framesWithExcessiveDeferral(20)};

bFramesWithExcessiveDeferral BEHAVIOUR

DEFINED AS See "BEHAVIOUR DEFINED AS" in 30.3.1.1.20;

NOTE—The approximate minimum time between counter rollovers for 10 Mb/s operation is 58 days.;

aMulticastFramesReceivedOK ATTRIBUTE

DERIVED FROM aCMCounter;
BEHAVIOUR bMulticastFramesReceivedOK;
REGISTERED AS {iso(1) member-body(2) us(840) 802dot3(10006) csmacdmgt(30) attribute(7) multicastFramesReceivedOK(21)};

bMulticastFramesReceivedOK BEHAVIOUR

DEFINED AS See "BEHAVIOUR DEFINED AS" in 30.3.1.1.21;

NOTE—The approximate minimum time between counter rollovers for 10 Mb/s operation is 80 h.;

aBroadcastFramesReceivedOK ATTRIBUTE

DERIVED FROM aCMCounter;
BEHAVIOUR bBroadcastFramesReceivedOK;
REGISTERED AS {iso(1) member-body(2) us(840) 802dot3(10006) csmacdmgt(30) attribute(7) broadcastFramesReceivedOK(22)};

bBroadcastFramesReceivedOK BEHAVIOUR

DEFINED AS See “BEHAVIOUR DEFINED AS” in 30.3.1.1.22;

NOTE—The approximate minimum time between counter rollovers for 10 Mb/s operation is 80 h.;

aInRangeLengthErrors ATTRIBUTE

DERIVED FROM aCMCounter;
BEHAVIOUR bInRangeLengthErrors;
REGISTERED AS {iso(1) member-body(2) us(840) 802dot3(10006) csmacdmgt(30) attribute(7) inRangeLengthErrors(23)};

bInRangeLengthErrors BEHAVIOUR

DEFINED AS See “BEHAVIOUR DEFINED AS” in 30.3.1.1.23;

NOTE—The approximate minimum time between counter rollovers for 10 Mb/s operation is 80 h.;

aOutOfRangeLengthField ATTRIBUTE

DERIVED FROM aCMCounter;
BEHAVIOUR bOutOfRangeLengthField;
REGISTERED AS {iso(1) member-body(2) us(840) 802dot3(10006) csmacdmgt(30) attribute(7) outOfRangeLengthField(24)};

bOutOfRangeLengthField BEHAVIOUR

DEFINED AS See “BEHAVIOUR DEFINED AS” in 30.3.1.1.24;

NOTE—The approximate minimum time between counter rollovers for 10 Mb/s operation is 80 h.;

aFrameTooLongErrors ATTRIBUTE

DERIVED FROM aCMCounter;
BEHAVIOUR bFrameTooLongErrors;
REGISTERED AS {iso(1) member-body(2) us(840) 802dot3(10006) csmacdmgt(30) attribute(7) frameTooLongErrors(25)};

bFrameTooLongErrors BEHAVIOUR

DEFINED AS See “BEHAVIOUR DEFINED AS” in 30.3.1.1.25;

NOTE—The approximate minimum time between counter rollovers for 10 Mb/s operation is 61 days.;

aMACEnableStatus ATTRIBUTE

WITH ATTRIBUTE SYNTAX IEEE802Dot3-MgmtAttributeModule.TrueFalse;
BEHAVIOUR bMACEnableStatus;
REGISTERED AS {iso(1) member-body(2) us(840) 802dot3(10006) csmacdmgt(30)
attribute(7) mACEnableStatus(26)};

bMACEnableStatus BEHAVIOUR

DEFINED AS See “BEHAVIOUR DEFINED AS” in 30.3.1.1.26;

aTransmitEnableStatus ATTRIBUTE

WITH ATTRIBUTE SYNTAX IEEE802Dot3-MgmtAttributeModule.TrueFalse;
BEHAVIOUR bTransmitEnableStatus;
REGISTERED AS {iso(1) member-body(2) us(840) 802dot3(10006) csmacdmgt(30)
attribute(7) transmitEnableStatus(27)};

bTransmitEnableStatus BEHAVIOUR

DEFINED AS See “BEHAVIOUR DEFINED AS” in 30.3.1.1.27;

aMulticastReceiveStatus ATTRIBUTE

WITH ATTRIBUTE SYNTAX IEEE802Dot3-MgmtAttributeModule.TrueFalse;
BEHAVIOUR bMulticastReceiveStatus;
REGISTERED AS {iso(1) member-body(2) us(840) 802dot3(10006) csmacdmgt(30)
attribute(7) multicastReceiveStatus(28)};

bMulticastReceiveStatus BEHAVIOUR

DEFINED AS See “BEHAVIOUR DEFINED AS” in 30.3.1.1.28;

aReadWriteMACAddress ATTRIBUTE

WITH ATTRIBUTE SYNTAX IEEE802CommonDefinitions.MACAddress;
BEHAVIOUR bReadWriteMACAddress;
REGISTERED AS {iso(1) member-body(2) us(840) 802dot3(10006) csmacdmgt(30)
attribute(7) modifyMACAddress(29)};

bReadWriteMACAddress BEHAVIOUR

DEFINED AS See “BEHAVIOUR DEFINED AS” in 30.3.1.1.29;

NOTE—This maps to localMACAddress (of the mandatory macPackage) in ISO/IEC 10742: 1994.;

aCollisionFrames ATTRIBUTE

WITH ATTRIBUTE SYNTAX IEEE802Dot3-MgmtAttributeModule.AttemptArray;
BEHAVIOUR bCollisionFrames;
REGISTERED AS {iso(1) member-body(2) us(840) 802dot3(10006) csmacdmgt(30) attribute(7) collisionFrames(30)};

bCollisionFrames BEHAVIOUR

DEFINED AS See “BEHAVIOUR DEFINED AS” in 30.3.1.1.30;

NOTE—The approximate minimum time for any single counter rollover for 10 Mb/s operation is 103 h.;

30A.1.3 DTE MAC entity actions

acInitializeMAC ACTION

BEHAVIOUR bInitializeMAC;
MODE CONFIRMED;
REGISTERED AS {iso(1) member-body(2) us(840) 802dot3(10006) csmacdmgt(30) action(9) initializeMAC(1)};

bInitializeMAC BEHAVIOUR

DEFINED AS See “BEHAVIOUR DEFINED AS” in 30.3.1.2.1;

acAddGroupAddress ACTION

BEHAVIOUR bAddGroupAddress;
MODE CONFIRMED;
WITH INFORMATION SYNTAX IEEE802CommonDefinitions.MACAddress;
REGISTERED AS {iso(1) member-body(2) us(840) 802dot3(10006) csmacdmgt(30) action(9) addGroupAddress(2)};

bAddGroupAddress BEHAVIOUR

DEFINED AS See “BEHAVIOUR DEFINED AS” in 30.3.1.2.2;

acDeleteGroupAddress ACTION

BEHAVIOUR bDeleteGroupAddress;
MODE CONFIRMED;
WITH INFORMATION SYNTAX IEEE802CommonDefinitions.MACAddress;
REGISTERED AS {iso(1) member-body(2) us(840) 802dot3(10006) csmacdmgt(30) action(9) deleteGroupAddress(3)};

bDeleteGroupAddress BEHAVIOUR

DEFINED AS See “BEHAVIOUR DEFINED AS” in 30.3.1.2.3;

acExecuteSelfTest ACTION

```
BEHAVIOUR                bExecuteSelfTestMAC;
MODE                     CONFIRMED;
REGISTERED AS   {iso(1) member-body(2) us(840) 802dot3(10006) csmacdmgt(30)
                action(9) executeSelfTestMAC(4)};
```

bExecuteSelfTestMAC BEHAVIOUR

```
DEFINED AS      See "BEHAVIOUR DEFINED AS" in 30.3.1.2.4;
```

30A.2 DTE physical entity managed object class

30A.2.1 DTE physical entity formal definition

```
oPHYEntity                       MANAGED OBJECT CLASS

    DERIVED FROM                 "CCITT Rec. X.721 (1992) | ISO/IEC 10165-2 :
                                 1992":top;
    CHARACTERIZED BY
        pBasic                   PACKAGE
            ATTRIBUTES           aPHYID                   GET,
                                 aPHYType                 GET,
                                 aPHYTypeList             GET,
                                 aMIIDetect               GET,
                                 aPHYAdminState           GET;
        ;
    ;
    CONDITIONAL PACKAGES
        pRecommended             PACKAGE
            ATTRIBUTES           aSQETestErrors           GET;
            REGISTERED AS        {iso(1) member-body(2) us(840) 802dot3(10006)
                                 csmacdmgt(30) package(4)
                                 phyRecommendedPkg(6)};
            PRESENT IF           The Recommended Package is implemented.;
        pMultiplePhy             PACKAGE
            ACTIONS              acPHYAdminControl;
            REGISTERED AS        {iso(1) member-body(2) us(840) 802dot3(10006)
                                 csmacdmgt(30) package(4)
                                 phyMultiplePhyPkg(7)};
            PRESENT IF           There is more than one PHY per MAC.;




        p100MbpsMonitor          PACKAGE
            ATTRIBUTES           aSymbolErrorDuringCarrier GET;
            REGISTERED AS        {iso(1) member-body(2) us(840) 802dot3(10006)
                                 csmacdmgt(30) package(4)
```

```
                                          phy100 MbpsMonitor(8)};
                  PRESENT IF              The 100 Mb/s Monitor capability is implemented.;
     REGISTERED AS              {iso(1) member-body(2) us(840) 802dot3(10006) csmacdmgt(30)
                                managedObjectClass(3) phyObjectClass(2)};

nbPHYName                                 NAME BINDING

     SUBORDINATE OBJECT CLASS             oPHYEntity;
     NAMED BY SUPERIOR OBJECT CLASS
                                          oMACEntity;
     WITH ATTRIBUTE                       aPHYID;
     REGISTERED AS              {iso(1) member-body(2) us(840) 802dot3(10006) csmacdmgt(30)
                                nameBinding(6) phyName(3)};


nbPHYMonitor                              NAME BINDING

     SUBORDINATE OBJECT CLASS             "IEEE802.1F":ewmaMetricMonitor;
     NAMED BY SUPERIOR OBJECT CLASS
                                          "ISO/IEC 10165-2":system;
     WITH ATTRIBUTE                       aScannerId;
          CREATE                          WITH-AUTOMATIC-INSTANCE-NAMING;
          DELETE                          ONLY-IF-NO-CONTAINED-OBJECTS;
     REGISTERED AS              {iso(1) member-body(2) us(840) 802dot3(10006) csmacdmgt(30)
                                nameBinding(6) phyMonitor(4)};
```

30A.2.2 DTE physical entity attributes

aPHYID ATTRIBUTE

```
     WITH ATTRIBUTE SYNTAX                IEEE802Dot3-MgmtAttributeModule.OneOfName;
     MATCHES FOR                          EQUALITY;
     BEHAVIOUR                            bPHYID;
     REGISTERED AS              {iso(1) member-body(2) us(840) 802dot3(10006) csmacdmgt(30)
                                attribute(7) phyID(31)};
```

bPHYID BEHAVIOUR

```
     DEFINED AS                 See "BEHAVIOUR DEFINED AS" in 30.3.2.1.1;
```

aPHYType ATTRIBUTE

```
     WITH ATTRIBUTE SYNTAX                IEEE802Dot3-
                                          MgmtAttributeModule.PhyTypeValue;
     MATCHES FOR                          EQUALITY;
     BEHAVIOUR                            bPHYType;
     REGISTERED AS              {iso(1) member-body(2) us(840) 802dot3(10006) csmacdmgt(30)
                                attribute(7) pHYType(32)};
```

bPHYType BEHAVIOUR

DEFINED AS See "BEHAVIOUR DEFINED AS" in 30.3.2.1.2;

aPHYTypeList ATTRIBUTE

WITH ATTRIBUTE SYNTAX IEEE802Dot3-MgmtAttributeModule.PhyTypeList;
MATCHES FOR EQUALITY, ORDERING;
BEHAVIOUR bPHYTypeList;
REGISTERED AS {iso(1) member-body(2) us(840) 802dot3(10006) csmacdmgt(30) attribute(7) pHYTypeList(33)};

bPHYTypeList BEHAVIOUR

DEFINED AS See "BEHAVIOUR DEFINED AS" in 30.3.2.1.3;

aSQETestErrors ATTRIBUTE

DERIVED FROM aCMCounter;
BEHAVIOUR bSQETestErrors;
REGISTERED AS {iso(1) member-body(2) us(840) 802dot3(10006) csmacdmgt(30) attribute(7) sqeTestErrors(34)};

bSQETestErrors BEHAVIOUR

DEFINED AS See "BEHAVIOUR DEFINED AS" in 30.3.2.1.4;

NOTE—The approximate minimum time between counter rollovers for 10 Mb/s operation is 80 h.;

aSymbolErrorDuringCarrier ATTRIBUTE

DERIVED FROM aCMCounter;
BEHAVIOUR bSymbolErrorDuringCarrier;
REGISTERED AS {iso(1) member-body(2) us(840) 802dot3(10006) csmacdmgt(30) attribute(7) symbolErrorDuringCarrier(35)};

bSymbolErrorDuringCarrier BEHAVIOUR

DEFINED AS See "BEHAVIOUR DEFINED AS" in 30.3.2.1.5;

NOTE—The approximate minimum time between counter rollovers for 10 Mb/s operation is 80 h.;

aMIIDetect ATTRIBUTE

WITH ATTRIBUTE SYNTAX IEEE802Dot3-MgmtAttributeModule.MIIDetect;
MATCHES FOR EQUALITY;
BEHAVIOUR bMIIDetect;

REGISTERED AS {iso(1) member-body(2) us(840) 802dot3(10006) csmacdmgt(30) attribute(7) mIIDetect(36)};

bMIIDetect BEHAVIOUR

DEFINED AS See “BEHAVIOUR DEFINED AS” in 30.3.2.1.6;

aPHYAdminState ATTRIBUTE

WITH ATTRIBUTE SYNTAX IEEE802Dot3-MgmtAttributeModule.PortAdminState;
MATCHES FOR EQUALITY, ORDERING;
BEHAVIOUR bPHYAdminState;
REGISTERED AS {iso(1) member-body(2) us(840) 802dot3(10006) csmacdmgt(30) attribute(7) pHYAdminState(37)};

bPHYAdminState BEHAVIOUR

DEFINED AS See “BEHAVIOUR DEFINED AS” in 30.3.2.1.7;

30A.2.3 DTE physical entity actions

acPHYAdminControl ACTION

BEHAVIOUR bPHYAdminControl;
MODE CONFIRMED;
WITH INFORMATION SYNTAX IEEE802Dot3-MgmtAttributeModule.PortAdminState;
REGISTERED AS {iso(1) member-body(2) us(840) 802dot3(10006) csmacdmgt(30) action(9) pHYAdminControl(5)};

bPHYAdminControl BEHAVIOUR

DEFINED AS See “BEHAVIOUR DEFINED AS” in 30.3.2.2.1;

30A.3 Repeater managed object class

30A.3.1 Repeater, formal definition

```
oRepeater                                MANAGED OBJECT CLASS

    DERIVED FROM                         "CCITT Rec. X.721 (1992) | ISO/IEC 10165-2
                                         1992":top;
    CHARACTERIZED BY
        pRepeaterBasicControl            PACKAGE
            ATTRIBUTES                   aRepeaterID                GET,
                                         aRepeaterType              GET,
                                         aRepeaterGroupCapacity     GET,
                                         aGroupMap                  GET,
                                         aRepeaterHealthState       GET,
                                         aRepeaterHealthText        GET,
                                         aRepeaterHealthData        GET;
            ACTIONS                      acResetRepeater,
                                         acExecuteNonDisruptiveSelfTest;
            NOTIFICATIONS                nRepeaterHealth,
                                         nRepeaterReset,
                                         nGroupMapChange;
        ;
    ;
    CONDITIONAL PACKAGES
        pRepeaterPerfMonitor             PACKAGE
            ATTRIBUTES                   aTransmitCollisions        GET;
            REGISTERED AS                {iso(1) member-body(2) us(840) 802dot3(10006)
                                         csmacdmgt(30) package(4)
                                         repeaterPerfMonitorPkg(9)};
            PRESENT IF                   The Performance Monitor Capability is implemented.;
    REGISTERED AS            {iso(1) member-body(2) us(840) 802dot3(10006) csmacdmgt(30)
                             managedObjectClass(3) repeaterObjectClass(3)};

nbRepeaterName                           NAME BINDING

    SUBORDINATE OBJECT CLASS             repeater;
    NAMED BY SUPERIOR OBJECT CLASS
                                         "ISO/IEC 10165-2":system  AND SUBCLASSES;
    WITH ATTRIBUTE                       aRepeaterID;
    REGISTERED AS            {iso(1) member-body(2) us(840) 802dot3(10006) csmacdmgt(30)
                             nameBinding(6) repeaterName(5)};



nbRepeaterMonitor                        NAME BINDING

    SUBORDINATE OBJECT CLASS             "IEEE802.1F":oEWMAMetricMonitor;
    NAMED BY SUPERIOR OBJECT CLASS
                                         "ISO/IEC 10165-2":system  AND SUBCLASSES;
    WITH ATTRIBUTE                       aScannerId;
        CREATE                           WITH-AUTOMATIC-INSTANCE-NAMING;
        DELETE                           ONLY-IF-NO-CONTAINED-OBJECTS;
    REGISTERED AS            {iso(1) member-body(2) us(840) 802dot3(10006) csmacdmgt(30)
                             nameBinding(6) repeaterMonitor(6)};
```

30A.3.2 Repeater attributes

aRepeaterID ATTRIBUTE

WITH ATTRIBUTE SYNTAX IEEE802Dot3-MgmtAttributeModule.OneOfName;
MATCHES FOR EQUALITY;
BEHAVIOUR bRepeaterID;
REGISTERED AS {iso(1) member-body(2) us(840) 802dot3(10006) csmacdmgt(30)
attribute(7) repeaterID(38)};

bRepeaterID BEHAVIOUR

DEFINED AS See “BEHAVIOUR DEFINED AS” in 30.4.1.1.1;

aRepeaterType ATTRIBUTE

WITH ATTRIBUTE SYNTAX IEEE802Dot3-MgmtAttributeModule.RepeaterType;
MATCHES FOR EQUALITY;
BEHAVIOUR bRepeaterType;
REGISTERED AS {iso(1) member-body(2) us(840) 802dot3(10006) csmacdmgt(30)
attribute(7) repeaterType (39)};

bRepeaterType BEHAVIOUR

DEFINED AS See “BEHAVIOUR DEFINED AS” in 30.4.1.1.2;

aRepeaterGroupCapacity ATTRIBUTE

WITH ATTRIBUTE SYNTAX IEEE802Dot3-MgmtAttributeModule.OneOfName;
MATCHES FOR EQUALITY, ORDERING;
BEHAVIOUR bRepeaterGroupCapacity;
REGISTERED AS {iso(1) member-body(2) us(840) 802dot3(10006) csmacdmgt(30)
attribute(7) repeaterGroupCapacity(40)};

bRepeaterGroupCapacity BEHAVIOUR

DEFINED AS See “BEHAVIOUR DEFINED AS” in 30.4.1.1.3;

aGroupMap ATTRIBUTE

WITH ATTRIBUTE SYNTAX IEEE802Dot3-MgmtAttributeModule.BitString;
MATCHES FOR EQUALITY;
BEHAVIOUR bGroupMap;

REGISTERED AS {iso(1) member-body(2) us(840) 802dot3(10006) csmacdmgt(30)
attribute(7) groupMap(41)};

bGroupMap BEHAVIOUR

DEFINED AS See “BEHAVIOUR DEFINED AS” in 30.4.1.1.4;

aRepeaterHealthState ATTRIBUTE

WITH ATTRIBUTE SYNTAX IEEE802Dot3-MgmtAttributeModule.
RepeaterHealthState;
MATCHES FOR EQUALITY;
BEHAVIOUR bRepeaterHealthState;
REGISTERED AS {iso(1) member-body(2) us(840) 802dot3(10006) csmacdmgt(30)
attribute(7) repeaterHealthState(42)};

bRepeaterHealthState BEHAVIOUR

DEFINED AS See “BEHAVIOUR DEFINED AS” in 30.4.1.1.5;

aRepeaterHealthText ATTRIBUTE

WITH ATTRIBUTE SYNTAX IEEE802Dot3-MgmtAttributeModule.
RepeaterHealthText;
MATCHES FOR EQUALITY;
BEHAVIOUR bRepeaterHealthText;
REGISTERED AS {iso(1) member-body(2) us(840) 802dot3(10006) csmacdmgt(30)
attribute(7) repeaterHealthText(43)};

bRepeaterHealthText BEHAVIOUR

DEFINED AS See “BEHAVIOUR DEFINED AS” in 30.4.1.1.6;

aRepeaterHealthData ATTRIBUTE

WITH ATTRIBUTE SYNTAX IEEE802Dot3-MgmtAttributeModule.
RepeaterHealthData;
MATCHES FOR EQUALITY;
BEHAVIOUR bRepeaterHealthData;
REGISTERED AS {iso(1) member-body(2) us(840) 802dot3(10006) csmacdmgt(30)
attribute(7) repeaterHealthData(44)};

bRepeaterHealthData BEHAVIOUR

DEFINED AS See “BEHAVIOUR DEFINED AS” in 30.4.1.1.7;

aTransmitCollisions ATTRIBUTE

DERIVED FROM aCMCounter;
BEHAVIOUR bTransmitCollisions;
REGISTERED AS {iso(1) member-body(2) us(840) 802dot3(10006) csmacdmgt(30)
attribute(7) transmitCollisions (45)};

bTransmitCollisions BEHAVIOUR

DEFINED AS See “BEHAVIOUR DEFINED AS” in 30.4.1.1.8;

NOTE—The approximate minimum time for counter rollover for 10 Mb/s operation is 16 h.;

30A.3.3 Repeater actions

acResetRepeater ACTION

BEHAVIOUR bResetRepeater;
MODE CONFIRMED;
REGISTERED AS {iso(1) member-body(2) us(840) 802dot3(10006) csmacdmgt(30) action(9) resetRepeater(6)};

bResetRepeater BEHAVIOUR

DEFINED AS See “BEHAVIOUR DEFINED AS” in 30.4.1.2.1;

acExecuteNonDisruptiveSelfTest ACTION

BEHAVIOUR bExecuteNonDisruptiveSelfTest;
REGISTERED AS {iso(1) member-body(2) us(840) 802dot3(10006) csmacdmgt(30) action(9) executeNonDisruptiveSelfTestAction(7)};

bExecuteNonDisruptiveSelfTest BEHAVIOUR

DEFINED AS See “BEHAVIOUR DEFINED AS” in 30.4.1.2.2;

30A.3.4 Repeater notifications

nRepeaterHealth NOTIFICATION

BEHAVIOUR bRepeaterHealth;
WITH INFORMATION SYNTAX IEEE802Dot3-MgmtAttributeModule.
RepeaterHealthInfo
AND ATTRIBUTE IDS repeaterHealthState aRepeaterHealthState,
repeaterHealthText aRepeaterHealthText,
repeaterHealthData aRepeaterHealthData
;
REGISTERED AS {iso(1) member-body(2) us(840) 802dot3(10006) csmacdmgt(30) notification(10) repeaterHealth(1)};

bRepeaterHealth BEHAVIOUR

DEFINED AS See “BEHAVIOUR DEFINED AS” in 30.4.1.3.1;

nRepeaterReset NOTIFICATION

```
    BEHAVIOUR                          bRepeaterReset;
    WITH INFORMATION SYNTAX            IEEE802Dot3-MgmtAttributeModule.
                                       RepeaterHealthInfo
    AND ATTRIBUTE IDS                  repeaterHealthState aRepeaterHealthState,
                                       repeaterHealthText aRepeaterHealthText,
                                       repeaterHealthData aRepeaterHealthData
    ;
    REGISTERED AS          {iso(1) member-body(2) us(840) 802dot3(10006) csmacdmgt(30)
                           notification(10) repeaterReset(2)};
```

bRepeaterReset BEHAVIOUR

```
    DEFINED AS             See "BEHAVIOUR DEFINED AS" in 30.4.1.3.2;
```

nGroupMapChange NOTIFICATION

```
    BEHAVIOUR                          bGroupMapChange;
    WITH INFORMATION SYNTAX            IEEE802Dot3-MgmtAttributeModule.BitString;
    REGISTERED AS          {iso(1) member-body(2) us(840) 802dot3(10006) csmacdmgt(30)
                           notification(10) groupMapChange(3)};
```

bGroupMapChange BEHAVIOUR

```
    DEFINED AS             See "BEHAVIOUR DEFINED AS" in 30.4.1.3.3;
```

30A.4 Group managed object class

30A.4.1 Group, formal definition

```
oGroup                                 MANAGED OBJECT CLASS

    DERIVED FROM                       "CCITT Rec. X.721 (1992) | ISO/IEC 10165-2
                                       1992":top;
    CHARACTERIZED BY
        pGroupBasicControl             PACKAGE
            ATTRIBUTES                 aGroupID                   GET,
                                       aGroupPortCapacity         GET,
                                       aPortMap                   GET;
            NOTIFICATIONS              nPortMapChange;
        ;
    ;

    REGISTERED AS          {iso(1) member-body(2) us(840) 802dot3(10006) csmacdmgt(30)
                           managedObjectClass(3) groupObjectClass(4)};

nbGroupName                            NAME BINDING

    SUBORDINATE OBJECT CLASS           oGroup;
    NAMED BY SUPERIOR OBJECT CLASS
```

```
                                        oRepeater  AND SUBCLASSES;
     WITH ATTRIBUTE                     aGroupID;
     REGISTERED AS            {iso(1) member-body(2) us(840) 802dot3(10006) csmacdmgt(30)
                              nameBinding(6) groupName(7)};
```

30A.4.2 Group attributes

aGroupID ATTRIBUTE

```
     WITH ATTRIBUTE SYNTAX              IEEE802Dot3-MgmtAttributeModule.OneOfName;
     MATCHES FOR                        EQUALITY;
     BEHAVIOUR                          bGroupID;
     REGISTERED AS            {iso(1) member-body(2) us(840) 802dot3(10006) csmacdmgt(30)
                              attribute(7) groupID(46)};
```

bGroupID BEHAVIOUR

```
     DEFINED AS               See "BEHAVIOUR DEFINED AS" in 30.4.2.1.1;
```

aGroupPortCapacity ATTRIBUTE

```
     WITH ATTRIBUTE SYNTAX              IEEE802Dot3-MgmtAttributeModule.OneOfName;
     MATCHES FOR                        EQUALITY, ORDERING;
     BEHAVIOUR                          bGroupPortCapacity;
     REGISTERED AS            {iso(1) member-body(2) us(840) 802dot3(10006) csmacdmgt(30)
                              attribute(7) groupPortCapacity(47)};
```

bGroupPortCapacity BEHAVIOUR

```
     DEFINED AS               See "BEHAVIOUR DEFINED AS" in 30.4.2.1.2;
```

aPortMap ATTRIBUTE

```
     WITH ATTRIBUTE SYNTAX              IEEE802Dot3-MgmtAttributeModule.BitString;
     MATCHES FOR                        EQUALITY;
     BEHAVIOUR                          bPortMap;
     REGISTERED AS            {iso(1) member-body(2) us(840) 802dot3(10006) csmacdmgt(30)
                              attribute(7) portMap(48)};
```

bPortMap BEHAVIOUR

```
     DEFINED AS               See "BEHAVIOUR DEFINED AS" in 30.4.2.1.3;
```

30A.4.3 Group notifications

nPortMapChange NOTIFICATION

```
     BEHAVIOUR                          bPortMapChange;
     WITH INFORMATION SYNTAX            IEEE802Dot3-MgmtAttributeModule.BitString;
```

REGISTERED AS {iso(1) member-body(2) us(840) 802dot3(10006) csmacdmgt(30) notification(10) portMapChange(4)};

bPortMapChange BEHAVIOUR

DEFINED AS See “BEHAVIOUR DEFINED AS” in 30.4.2.2.1;

30A.5 Repeater port managed object class

30A.5.1 Port, formal definition

```
oRepeaterPort                           MANAGED OBJECT CLASS

    DERIVED FROM                        “CCITT Rec. X.721 (1992) | ISO/IEC 10165-2
                                        1992”:top;
    CHARACTERIZED BY
        pPortBasicControl               PACKAGE
            ATTRIBUTES                  aPortID                     GET,
                                        aPortAdminState             GET,
                                        aAutoPartitionState         GET;
            ACTIONS                     acPortAdminControl;
        ;
    ;
    CONDITIONAL PACKAGES
        pPortPerfMonitor                PACKAGE
            ATTRIBUTES                  aReadableFrames             GET,
                                        aReadableOctets             GET,
                                        aFrameCheckSequenceErrors   GET,
                                        aAlignmentErrors            GET,
                                        aFramesTooLong              GET,
                                        aShortEvents                GET,
                                        aRunts                      GET,
                                        aCollisions                 GET,
                                        aLateEvents                 GET,
                                        aVeryLongEvents             GET,
                                        aDataRateMismatches         GET,
                                        aAutoPartitions             GET;
            REGISTERED AS               {iso(1) member-body(2) us(840) 802dot3(10006)
                                        csmacdmgt(30) package(4)
                                        portPerfMonitorPkg(10)};
            PRESENT IF                  The Performance Monitor Capability is implemented.;
        pPortAddrTracking               PACKAGE
            ATTRIBUTES                  aLastSourceAddress          GET,
                                        aSourceAddressChanges       GET;
            REGISTERED AS               {iso(1) member-body(2) us(840) 802dot3(10006)
                                        csmacdmgt(30) package(4) portAddrTrackPkg(11)};
            PRESENT IF                  The Address Tracking and Performance Monitor
                                        capabilities are implemented.;
        p100MbpsMonitor                 PACKAGE
            ATTRIBUTES                  aIsolates                   GET,
                                        aSymbolErrorDuringPacket    GET;
            REGISTERED AS               {iso(1) member-body(2) us(840) 802dot3(10006)
```

csmacdmgt(30) package(4)
port100 MbpsMonitor(12)};
PRESENT IF The 100 Mb/s Monitor capability is implemented;
REGISTERED AS {iso(1) member-body(2) us(840) 802dot3(10006) csmacdmgt(30)
managedObjectClass(3) repeaterPortObjectClass(5)};

nbPortName NAME BINDING

SUBORDINATE OBJECT CLASS oRepeaterPort;
NAMED BY SUPERIOR OBJECT CLASS
oGroup AND SUBCLASSES;
WITH ATTRIBUTE aPortID;
REGISTERED AS {iso(1) member-body(2) us(840) 802dot3(10006) csmacdmgt(30)
nameBinding(6) portName(8)};

30A.5.2 Port attributes

aPortID ATTRIBUTE

WITH ATTRIBUTE SYNTAX IEEE802Dot3-MgmtAttributeModule.OneOfName;
BEHAVIOUR bPortID;
REGISTERED AS {iso(1) member-body(2) us(840) 802dot3(10006) csmacdmgt(30)
attribute(7) portID(49)};

bPortID BEHAVIOUR

DEFINED AS See “BEHAVIOUR DEFINED AS” in 30.4.3.1.1;

aPortAdminState ATTRIBUTE

WITH ATTRIBUTE SYNTAX IEEE802Dot3-MgmtAttributeModule.
PortAdminState;
MATCHES FOR EQUALITY;
BEHAVIOUR bPortAdminState;
REGISTERED AS {iso(1) member-body(2) us(840) 802dot3(10006) csmacdmgt(30)
attribute(7) portAdminState(50)};

bPortAdminState BEHAVIOUR

DEFINED AS See “BEHAVIOUR DEFINED AS” in 30.4.3.1.2;

aAutoPartitionState ATTRIBUTE

WITH ATTRIBUTE SYNTAX IEEE802Dot3-MgmtAttributeModule.
AutoPartitionState;
MATCHES FOR EQUALITY;
BEHAVIOUR bAutoPartition;
REGISTERED AS {iso(1) member-body(2) us(840) 802dot3(10006) csmacdmgt(30)
attribute(7) autoPartitionState(51)};

bAutoPartition BEHAVIOUR

DEFINED AS See “BEHAVIOUR DEFINED AS” in 30.4.3.1.3;

aReadableFrames ATTRIBUTE

DERIVED FROM aCMCounter;
BEHAVIOUR bReadableFrames;
REGISTERED AS {iso(1) member-body(2) us(840) 802dot3(10006) csmacdmgt(30) attribute(7) readableFrames(52)};

bReadableFrames BEHAVIOUR

DEFINED AS See “BEHAVIOUR DEFINED AS” in 30.4.3.1.4;

NOTE—The approximate minimum time between counter rollovers for 10 Mb/s operation is 80 h.;

aReadableOctets ATTRIBUTE

DERIVED FROM aCMCounter;
BEHAVIOUR bReadableOctets;
REGISTERED AS {iso(1) member-body(2) us(840) 802dot3(10006) csmacdmgt(30) attribute(7) readableOctets(53)};

bReadableOctets BEHAVIOUR

DEFINED AS See “BEHAVIOUR DEFINED AS” in 30.4.3.1.5;

NOTE—The approximate minimum time between counter rollovers for 10 Mb/s operation is 58 min.;

aFrameCheckSequenceErrors ATTRIBUTE

DERIVED FROM aCMCounter;
BEHAVIOUR bFCSErrors;
REGISTERED AS {iso(1) member-body(2) us(840) 802dot3(10006) csmacdmgt(30) attribute(7) frameCheckSequenceErrors(54)};

bFCSErrors BEHAVIOUR

DEFINED AS See “BEHAVIOUR DEFINED AS” in 30.4.3.1.6;

NOTE—The approximate minimum time between counter rollovers for 10 Mb/s operation is 80 h.;

aAlignmentErrors ATTRIBUTE

DERIVED FROM aCMCounter;
BEHAVIOUR bAlignmentErrors;
REGISTERED AS {iso(1) member-body(2) us(840) 802dot3(10006) csmacdmgt(30)
attribute(7) alignmentErrors(55)};

bAlignmentErrors BEHAVIOUR

DEFINED AS See “BEHAVIOUR DEFINED AS” in 30.4.3.1.7;

NOTE—The approximate minimum time between counter rollovers for 10 Mb/s operation is 80 h.;

aFramesTooLong ATTRIBUTE

DERIVED FROM aCMCounter;
BEHAVIOUR bFramesTooLong;
REGISTERED AS {iso(1) member-body(2) us(840) 802dot3(10006) csmacdmgt(30)
attribute(7) framesTooLong(56)};

bFramesTooLong BEHAVIOUR

DEFINED AS See “BEHAVIOUR DEFINED AS” in 30.4.3.1.8;

NOTE—The approximate minimum time between counter rollovers for 10 Mb/s operation is 61 days.;

aShortEvents ATTRIBUTE

DERIVED FROM aCMCounter;
BEHAVIOUR bShortEvents;
REGISTERED AS {iso(1) member-body(2) us(840) 802dot3(10006) csmacdmgt(30)
attribute(7) shortEvents(57)};

bShortEvents BEHAVIOUR

DEFINED AS See “BEHAVIOUR DEFINED AS” in 30.4.3.1.9;

NOTE—The approximate minimum time between counter rollovers for 10 Mb/s operation is 16 hours;

aRunts ATTRIBUTE

DERIVED FROM aCMCounter;
BEHAVIOUR bRunts;
REGISTERED AS {iso(1) member-body(2) us(840) 802dot3(10006) csmacdmgt(30)
attribute(7) runts(58)};

bRunts BEHAVIOUR

DEFINED AS See “BEHAVIOUR DEFINED AS” in 30.4.3.1.10;

NOTE—The approximate minimum time for counter rollover for 10 Mb/s operation is 16 h.;

aCollisions ATTRIBUTE

DERIVED FROM aCMCounter;
BEHAVIOUR bCollisions;
REGISTERED AS {iso(1) member-body(2) us(840) 802dot3(10006) csmacdmgt(30) attribute(7) collisions(59)};

bCollisions BEHAVIOUR

DEFINED AS See “BEHAVIOUR DEFINED AS” in 30.4.3.1.11;

NOTE—The approximate minimum time for counter rollover for 10 Mb/s operation is 16 h.;

aLateEvents ATTRIBUTE

DERIVED FROM aCMCounter;
BEHAVIOUR bLateEvents;
REGISTERED AS {iso(1) member-body(2) us(840) 802dot3(10006) csmacdmgt(30) attribute(7) lateEvents(60)};

bLateEvents BEHAVIOUR

DEFINED AS See “BEHAVIOUR DEFINED AS” in 30.4.3.1.12;

NOTE—The approximate minimum time between counter rollovers for 10 Mb/s operation is 81 h.;

aVeryLongEvents ATTRIBUTE

DERIVED FROM aCMCounter;
BEHAVIOUR bVeryLongEvents;
REGISTERED AS {iso(1) member-body(2) us(840) 802dot3(10006) csmacdmgt(30) attribute(7) veryLongEvents(61)};

bVeryLongEvents BEHAVIOUR

DEFINED AS See “BEHAVIOUR DEFINED AS” in 30.4.3.1.13;

NOTE—The approximate minimum time between counter rollovers for 10 Mb/s operation is 198 days.;

aDataRateMismatches ATTRIBUTE

DERIVED FROM aCMCounter;
BEHAVIOUR bDataRateMismatches;
REGISTERED AS {iso(1) member-body(2) us(840) 802dot3(10006) csmacdmgt(30) attribute(7) dataRateMismatches(62)};

bDataRateMismatches BEHAVIOUR

DEFINED AS See “BEHAVIOUR DEFINED AS” in 30.4.3.1.14;

aAutoPartitions ATTRIBUTE

DERIVED FROM aCMCounter;
BEHAVIOUR bAutoPartitions;
REGISTERED AS {iso(1) member-body(2) us(840) 802dot3(10006) csmacdmgt(30) attribute(7) autoPartitions(63)};

bAutoPartitions BEHAVIOUR

DEFINED AS See “BEHAVIOUR DEFINED AS” in 30.4.3.1.15;

aIsolates ATTRIBUTE

DERIVED FROM aCMCounter;
BEHAVIOUR bIsolates;
REGISTERED AS {iso(1) member-body(2) us(840) 802dot3(10006) csmacdmgt(30) attribute(7) isolates(64)};

bIsolates BEHAVIOUR

DEFINED AS See “BEHAVIOUR DEFINED AS” in 30.4.3.1.16;

aSymbolErrorDuringPacket ATTRIBUTE

DERIVED FROM aCMCounter;
BEHAVIOUR bSymbolErrorDuringPacket;
REGISTERED AS {iso(1) member-body(2) us(840) 802dot3(10006) csmacdmgt(30) attribute(7) symbolErrorDuringPacket(65)};

bSymbolErrorDuringPacket BEHAVIOUR

DEFINED AS See “BEHAVIOUR DEFINED AS” in 30.4.3.1.17;

aLastSourceAddress ATTRIBUTE

WITH ATTRIBUTE SYNTAX IEEE802CommonDefinitions.MACAddress;
MATCHES FOR EQUALITY;

BEHAVIOUR bLastSourceAddress;
REGISTERED AS {iso(1) member-body(2) us(840) 802dot3(10006) csmacdmgt(30) attribute(7) lastSourceAddress(66)};

bLastSourceAddress BEHAVIOUR

DEFINED AS See “BEHAVIOUR DEFINED AS” in 30.4.3.1.18;

aSourceAddressChanges ATTRIBUTE

DERIVED FROM aCMCounter;
BEHAVIOUR bSourceAddressChanges;
REGISTERED AS {iso(1) member-body(2) us(840) 802dot3(10006) csmacdmgt(30) attribute(7) sourceAddressChanges(67)};

bSourceAddressChanges BEHAVIOUR

DEFINED AS See “BEHAVIOUR DEFINED AS” in 30.4.3.1.19;

NOTE—The approximate minimum time for counter rollover for 10 Mb/s operation is 81 h.;

30A.5.3 Port actions

acPortAdminControl ACTION

BEHAVIOUR bPortAdminControl;
WITH INFORMATION SYNTAX IEEE802Dot3-MgmtAttributeModule.PortAdminState;
REGISTERED AS {iso(1) member-body(2) us(840) 802dot3(10006) csmacdmgt(30) action(9) portAdminControl(8)};

bPortAdminControl BEHAVIOUR

DEFINED AS See “BEHAVIOUR DEFINED AS” in 30.4.3.2.1;

30A.6 MAU managed object class

30A.6.1 MAU, formal definition

oMAU MANAGED OBJECT CLASS

DERIVED FROM “CCITT Rec. X.721 (1992) | ISO/IEC 10165-2 : 1992”:top;

CHARACTERIZED BY
pMAUBasic PACKAGE
ATTRIBUTES aMAUID GET,
aMAUType GET-SET,

```
                                                aMAUTypeList                GET,
                                                aMediaAvailable             GET,
                                                aJabber                     GET,
                                                aMAUAdminState              GET;
                        NOTIFICATIONS           nJabber;
                ;
        ;
        CONDITIONAL PACKAGES
                pMAUControl                     PACKAGE
                        ACTIONS                 acResetMAU,
                                                acMAUAdminControl;
                        REGISTERED AS           {iso(1) std(0) iso8802(8802) csma(3) csmacdmgt(30)
                                                package(4) mauControlPkg(13)};
                        PRESENT IF              The pMAUControl package is implemented.;

                pMediaLossTracking              PACKAGE
                        ATTRIBUTES              aLoseMediaCounter           GET;
                        REGISTERED AS           {iso(1) std(0) iso8802(8802) csma(3) csmacdmgt(30)
                                                package(4) mediaLossTrackingPkg(14)};
                        PRESENT IF              MAU TypeValue = AUI or if the
                                                pMediaLossTracking package is implemented.;

                pBroadbandDTEMAU                PACKAGE
                        ATTRIBUTES              aBbMAUXmitRcvSplitType      GET,
                                                aBroadbandFrequencies       GET;
                        REGISTERED AS           {iso(1) std(0) iso8802(8802) csma(3) csmacdmgt(30)
                                                package(4) broadbandMAUPkg(15)};
                        PRESENT IF              The MAU is of type 10BROAD36.;

                p100MbpsMonitor                 PACKAGE
                        ATTRIBUTES              aFalseCarriers              GET;
                        REGISTERED AS           {iso(1) std(0) iso8802(8802) csma(3) csmacdmgt(30)
                                                package(4) mau100MbpsMonitor(16)};
                        PRESENT IF              The MAU is capable of 100 Mb/s operation.;
        REGISTERED AS                           {iso(1) std(0) iso8802(8802) csma(3) csmacdmgt(30)
                                                managedObjectClass(3) mauObjectClass(6)};
nbMAU-repeaterName                              NAME BINDING

        SUBORDINATE OBJECT CLASS                oMAU;
        NAMED BY SUPERIOR OBJECT CLASS                      --(of oRepeaterPort)
                                                oRepeaterPort   AND SUBCLASSES;
                                                            --{1.2.840.10006.30.3.5}
        WITH ATTRIBUTE                          aMAUID;
        REGISTERED AS           {iso(1) std(0) iso8802(8802) csma(3) csmacdmgt(30) nameBinding(6)
                                mau-repeaterName(9)};

nbMAU-dteName                                   NAME BINDING

        SUBORDINATE OBJECT CLASS                oMAU;
        NAMED BY SUPERIOR OBJECT CLASS                      --(of oPHYEntity)
                                                oPHYEntity  AND SUBCLASSES
                                                            --{1.2.840.10006.30.3.2};
        WITH ATTRIBUTE                          aMAUID;
        REGISTERED AS           {iso(1) std(0) iso8802(8802) csma(3) csmacdmgt(30) nameBinding(6)
```

mau-dteName(10)};

30A.6.2 MAU attributes

aMAUID ATTRIBUTE

WITH ATTRIBUTE SYNTAX		IEEE802Dot3-MgmtAttributeModule.OneOfName;
MATCHES FOR		EQUALITY;
BEHAVIOUR		bMAUID;
REGISTERED AS	{iso(1) std(0) iso8802(8802) csma(3) csmacdmgt(30) attribute(7) mauID(68)};	

bMAUID BEHAVIOUR

DEFINED AS See “BEHAVIOUR DEFINED AS” in 30.5.1.1.1;

aMAUType ATTRIBUTE

WITH ATTRIBUTE SYNTAX		IEEE802Dot3-MgmtAttributeModule.TypeValue;
MATCHES FOR		EQUALITY, ORDERING;
BEHAVIOUR		bMAUType;
REGISTERED AS	{iso(1) std(0) iso8802(8802) csma(3) csmacdmgt(30) attribute(7) mauType(69)};	

bMAUType BEHAVIOUR

DEFINED AS See “BEHAVIOUR DEFINED AS” in 30.5.1.1.2;

aMAUTypeList ATTRIBUTE

WITH ATTRIBUTE SYNTAX		IEEE802Dot3-MgmtAttributeModule.TypeList;
MATCHES FOR		EQUALITY, ORDERING;
BEHAVIOUR		bMAUTypeList;
REGISTERED AS	{iso(1) std(0) iso8802(8802) csma(3) csmacdmgt(30) attribute(7) mauTypeList(70)};	

bMAUTypeList BEHAVIOUR

DEFINED AS See “BEHAVIOUR DEFINED AS” in 30.5.1.1.3;

aMediaAvailable ATTRIBUTE

WITH ATTRIBUTE SYNTAX		IEEE802Dot3-MgmtAttributeModule. MediaAvailState;
MATCHES FOR		EQUALITY, ORDERING;
BEHAVIOUR		bMediaAvailable;
REGISTERED AS	{iso(1) std(0) iso8802(8802) csma(3) csmacdmgt(30) attribute(7) mauMediaAvailable(71)};	

bMediaAvailable BEHAVIOUR

DEFINED AS See “BEHAVIOUR DEFINED AS” in 30.5.1.1.4;

aLoseMediaCounter ATTRIBUTE

WITH ATTRIBUTE SYNTAX IEEE802Dot3-MgmtAttributeModule.aCMCounter;
MATCHES FOR EQUALITY, ORDERING;
BEHAVIOUR bLoseMediaCounter;
REGISTERED AS {iso(1) std(0) iso8802(8802) csma(3) csmacdmgt(30) attribute(7) mauLoseMediaCounter(72)};

bLoseMediaCounter BEHAVIOUR

DEFINED AS See “BEHAVIOUR DEFINED AS” in 30.5.1.1.5;

aJabber ATTRIBUTE

WITH ATTRIBUTE SYNTAX IEEE802Dot3-MgmtAttributeModule.Jabber;
MATCHES FOR EQUALITY, ORDERING;
BEHAVIOUR bJabberAttribute;
REGISTERED AS {iso(1) std(0) iso8802(8802) csma(3) csmacdmgt(30) attribute(7) jabber(73)};

bJabberAttribute BEHAVIOUR

DEFINED AS See “BEHAVIOUR DEFINED AS” in 30.5.1.1.6;

aMAUAdminState ATTRIBUTE

WITH ATTRIBUTE SYNTAX IEEE802Dot3-MgmtAttributeModule.AdminState;
MATCHES FOR EQUALITY, ORDERING;
BEHAVIOUR bMAUAdminState;
REGISTERED AS {iso(1) std(0) iso8802(8802) csma(3) csmacdmgt(30) attribute(7) mauAdminState(74)};

bMAUAdminState BEHAVIOUR

DEFINED AS See “BEHAVIOUR DEFINED AS” in 30.5.1.1.7;

aBbMAUXmitRcvSplitType ATTRIBUTE

WITH ATTRIBUTE SYNTAX IEEE802Dot3-MgmtAttributeModule.BbandXmitRcvSplitType;
MATCHES FOR EQUALITY;
BEHAVIOUR bBbMAUXmitRcvSplitType;

REGISTERED AS {iso(1) std(0) iso8802(8802) csma(3) csmacdmgt(30) attribute(7) bBandSplitType(75)};

bBbMAUXmitRcvSplitType BEHAVIOUR

DEFINED AS See "BEHAVIOUR DEFINED AS" in 30.5.1.1.8;

aBroadbandFrequencies ATTRIBUTE

WITH ATTRIBUTE SYNTAX IEEE802Dot3-MgmtAttributeModule.
BbandFrequency;
MATCHES FOR EQUALITY;
BEHAVIOUR bBroadbandFrequencies;
REGISTERED AS {iso(1) std(0) iso8802(8802) csma(3) csmacdmgt(30) attribute(7) bBandFrequencies(76)};

bBroadbandFrequencies BEHAVIOUR

DEFINED AS See "BEHAVIOUR DEFINED AS" in 30.5.1.1.9;

aFalseCarriers ATTRIBUTE

WITH ATTRIBUTE SYNTAX IEEE802Dot3-MgmtAttributeModule.aCMCounter;
MATCHES FOR EQUALITY, ORDERING;
BEHAVIOUR bFalseCarriers;
REGISTERED AS {iso(1) std(0) iso8802(8802) csma(3) csmacdmgt(30) attribute(7) falseCarriers(77)};

bFalseCarriers BEHAVIOUR

DEFINED AS See "BEHAVIOUR DEFINED AS" in 30.5.1.1.10;

30A.6.3 MAU actions

acResetMAU ACTION

BEHAVIOUR bResetMAU;
MODE CONFIRMED;
REGISTERED AS {iso(1) std(0) iso8802(8802) csma(3) csmacdmgt(30) action(9) resetMAU(9)};

bResetMAU BEHAVIOUR

DEFINED AS See "BEHAVIOUR DEFINED AS" in 30.5.1.2.1;

acMAUAdminControl ACTION

```
BEHAVIOUR                               bMAUAdminControl;
WITH INFORMATION SYNTAX                 IEEE802Dot3-MgmtAttributeModule.AdminState;
MODE                                    CONFIRMED;
REGISTERED AS           {iso(1) std(0) iso8802(8802) csma(3) csmacdmgt(30) action(9)
                        mauAdminCtrl(10)};
```

bMAUAdminControl BEHAVIOUR

```
DEFINED AS              See "BEHAVIOUR DEFINED AS" in 30.5.1.2.2;
```

30A.6.4 MAU notifications

nJabber NOTIFICATION

```
BEHAVIOUR                               bJabberNotification;
WITH INFORMATION SYNTAX                 IEEE802Dot3-MgmtAttributeModule.Jabber;
;
REGISTERED AS           {iso(1) std(0) iso8802(8802) csma(3) csmacdmgt(30) notification(10)
                        jabber(5)};
```

bJabberNotification BEHAVIOUR

```
DEFINED AS              See "BEHAVIOUR DEFINED AS" in 30.5.1.3.1;
```

30A.7 AutoNegotiation managed object class

30A.7.1 AutoNegotiation, formal definition

```
oAutoNegotiation                        MANAGED OBJECT CLASS

    DERIVED FROM                        "CCITT Rec. X.721 (1992) | ISO/IEC 10165-2 :
                                        1992":top;
    CHARACTERIZED BY
        pAutoNeg                        PACKAGE
            ATTRIBUTES                  aAutoNegID                          GET,
                                        aAutoNegAdminState                  GET,
                                        aAutoNegRemoteSignaling             GET,
                                        aAutoNegAutoConfig                  GET-SET,
                                        aAutoNegLocalTechnologyAbility      GET,
                                        aAutoNegAdvertisedTechnologyAbility GET-SET,
                                        aAutoNegReceivedTechnologyAbility   GET,
                                        aAutoNegLocalSelectorAbility        GET,
                                        aAutoNegAdvertisedSelectorAbility   GET-SET,
                                        aAutoNegReceivedSelectorAbility     GET;
            ACTIONS
                                        acAutoNegRestartAutoConfig,
                                        acAutoNegAdminControl;
        ;
    ;
    REGISTERED AS       {iso(1) std(0) iso8802(8802) csma(3) csmacdmgt(30)
```

managedObjectClass(3) autoNegObjectClass(7)};

nbAutoNeg-mauName NAME BINDING

SUBORDINATE OBJECT CLASS oMAU;
NAMED BY SUPERIOR OBJECT CLASS --(of oMAU)
oMAU AND SUBCLASSES;
--{1.2.840.10006.30.3.6}
WITH ATTRIBUTE aMAUID;
REGISTERED AS {iso(1) std(0) iso8802(8802) csma(3) csmacdmgt(30) nameBinding(6)
autoNeg-mauName(11)};

30A.7.2 Auto-Negotiation attributes

aAutoNegID ATTRIBUTE

WITH ATTRIBUTE SYNTAX IEEE802Dot3-MgmtAttributeModule.OneOfName;
MATCHES FOR EQUALITY;
BEHAVIOUR bAutoNegID;
REGISTERED AS {iso(1) std(0) iso8802(8802) csma(3) csmacdmgt(30) attribute(7)
autoNegID(78)};

bAutoNegID BEHAVIOUR

DEFINED AS See “BEHAVIOUR DEFINED AS” in 30.6.1.1.1;

aAutoNegAdminState ATTRIBUTE

WITH ATTRIBUTE SYNTAX IEEE802Dot3-MgmtAttributeModule.
AutoNegAdminState;
MATCHES FOR EQUALITY;
BEHAVIOUR bAutoNegAdminState;
REGISTERED AS {iso(1) std(0) iso8802(8802) csma(3) csmacdmgt(30) attribute(7)
autoNegAdminState(79)};

bAutoNegAdminState BEHAVIOUR

DEFINED AS See “BEHAVIOUR DEFINED AS” in 30.6.1.1.2;

aAutoNegRemoteSignaling ATTRIBUTE

WITH ATTRIBUTE SYNTAX IEEE802Dot3-MgmtAttributeModule.
AutoNegRemoteSignalingDetect;
MATCHES FOR EQUALITY;
BEHAVIOUR bAutoNegRemoteSignaling;
REGISTERED AS {iso(1) std(0) iso8802(8802) csma(3) csmacdmgt(30) attribute(7)
autoNegRemoteSignaling(80)};

bAutoNegRemoteSignaling BEHAVIOUR

DEFINED AS See “BEHAVIOUR DEFINED AS” in 30.6.1.1.3;

aAutoNegAutoConfig ATTRIBUTE

WITH ATTRIBUTE SYNTAX IEEE802Dot3-MgmtAttributeModule.
AutoNegAutoConfig;
MATCHES FOR EQUALITY;
BEHAVIOUR bAutoNegAutoConfig;
REGISTERED AS {iso(1) std(0) iso8802(8802) csma(3) csmacdmgt(30) attribute(7)
autoNegAutoConfig(81)};

bAutoNegAutoConfig BEHAVIOUR

DEFINED AS See “BEHAVIOUR DEFINED AS” in 30.6.1.1.4;

aAutoNegLocalTechnologyAbility ATTRIBUTE

WITH ATTRIBUTE SYNTAX IEEE802Dot3-MgmtAttributeModule.
AutoNegTechnologyList;
MATCHES FOR EQUALITY, ORDERING;
BEHAVIOUR bAutoNegLocalTechnologyAbility;
REGISTERED AS {iso(1) std(0) iso8802(8802) csma(3) csmacdmgt(30) attribute(7)
autoNegLocalTechnologyAbility(82)};

bAutoNegLocalTechnologyAbility BEHAVIOUR

DEFINED AS See “BEHAVIOUR DEFINED AS” in 30.6.1.1.5;

aAutoNegAdvertisedTechnologyAbility ATTRIBUTE

WITH ATTRIBUTE SYNTAX IEEE802Dot3-MgmtAttributeModule.
AutoNegTechnologyList;
MATCHES FOR EQUALITY, ORDERING;
BEHAVIOUR bAutoNegAdvertisedTechnologyAbility;
REGISTERED AS {iso(1) std(0) iso8802(8802) csma(3) csmacdmgt(30) attribute(7)
autoNegAdvertisedTechnologyAbility(83)};

bAutoNegAdvertisedTechnologyAbility BEHAVIOUR

DEFINED AS See “BEHAVIOUR DEFINED AS” in 30.6.1.1.6;

aAutoNegReceivedTechnologyAbility ATTRIBUTE

WITH ATTRIBUTE SYNTAX IEEE802Dot3-MgmtAttributeModule.
AutoNegTechnologyList;
MATCHES FOR EQUALITY, ORDERING;
BEHAVIOUR bAutoNegReceivedTechnologyAbility;
REGISTERED AS {iso(1) std(0) iso8802(8802) csma(3) csmacdmgt(30) attribute(7)

autoNegReceivedTechnologyAbility(84)};

bAutoNegReceivedTechnologyAbility BEHAVIOUR

DEFINED AS See "BEHAVIOUR DEFINED AS" in 30.6.1.1.7;

aAutoNegLocalSelectorAbility ATTRIBUTE

WITH ATTRIBUTE SYNTAX IEEE802Dot3-MgmtAttributeModule.
AutoNegSelectorList;
MATCHES FOR EQUALITY, ORDERING;
BEHAVIOUR bAutoNegLocalSelectorAbility;
REGISTERED AS {iso(1) std(0) iso8802(8802) csma(3) csmacdmgt(30) attribute(7)
autoNegLocalSelectorAbility(85)};

bAutoNegLocalSelectorAbility BEHAVIOUR

DEFINED AS See "BEHAVIOUR DEFINED AS" in 30.6.1.1.8;

aAutoNegAdvertisedSelectorAbility ATTRIBUTE

WITH ATTRIBUTE SYNTAX IEEE802Dot3-MgmtAttributeModule.
AutoNegSelectorList;
MATCHES FOR EQUALITY, ORDERING;
BEHAVIOUR bAutoNegAdvertisedSelectorAbility;
REGISTERED AS {iso(1) std(0) iso8802(8802) csma(3) csmacdmgt(30) attribute(7)
autoNegAdvertisedSelectorAbility(86)};

bAutoNegAdvertisedSelectorAbility BEHAVIOUR

DEFINED AS See "BEHAVIOUR DEFINED AS" in 30.6.1.1.9;

aAutoNegReceivedSelectorAbility ATTRIBUTE

WITH ATTRIBUTE SYNTAX IEEE802Dot3-MgmtAttributeModule.
AutoNegSelectorList;
MATCHES FOR EQUALITY, ORDERING;
BEHAVIOUR bAutoNegReceivedSelectorAbility;
REGISTERED AS {iso(1) std(0) iso8802(8802) csma(3) csmacdmgt(30) attribute(7)
autoNegReceivedSelectorAbility(87)};

bAutoNegReceivedSelectorAbility BEHAVIOUR

DEFINED AS See "BEHAVIOUR DEFINED AS" in 30.6.1.1.10;

30A.7.3 AutoNegotiation actions

acAutoNegRestartAutoConfig ACTION

BEHAVIOUR bAutoNegRestartAutoConfig;
MODE CONFIRMED;
REGISTERED AS {iso(1) std(0) iso8802(8802) csma(3) csmacdmgt(30) action(9)
autoNegRestartAutoConfig(11)};

bAutoNegRestartAutoConfig BEHAVIOUR

DEFINED AS See “BEHAVIOUR DEFINED AS” in 30.6.1.2.1;

acAutoNegAdminControl ACTION

BEHAVIOUR bAutoNegAdminControl;
WITH INFORMATION SYNTAX IEEE802Dot3-MgmtAttributeModule.
AutoNegAdminState;
MODE CONFIRMED;
REGISTERED AS {iso(1) std(0) iso8802(8802) csma(3) csmacdmgt(30) action(9)
autoNegAdminCtrl(12)};

bAutoNegAdminControl BEHAVIOUR

DEFINED AS See “BEHAVIOUR DEFINED AS” in 30.6.1.2.2;

30A.8 ResourceTypeID managed object class

30A.8.1 ResourceTypeID, formal definition

— Implementation of this managed object in accordance with the definition contained in IEEE Std
— 802.1F-1993 is a conformance requirement of this standard.
— NOTE—A single instance of the Resource Type ID managed object exists within the oMACEntity
— managed object class, a single instance of the Resource Type ID managed object exists within
— the oRepeater managed object class, and a single instance of the Resource Type ID managed
— object exists within the oMAU managed object class conditional on the presence of an MII.
— The managed object itself is contained in IEEE Std 802.1F-1993, therefore only name bindings
— appear in this standard;

nbResourceTypeID-mac NAME BINDING

SUBORDINATE OBJECT CLASS “IEEE802.1F”:oResourceTypeID;
NAMED BY SUPERIOR OBJECT CLASS
oMACEntity;
WITH ATTRIBUTE “IEEE802.1F”:aResourceTypeIDName;
REGISTERED AS {iso(1) member-body(2) us(840) 802dot3(10006) csmacdmgt(30)
nameBinding(6) resourceTypeID-mac(12)};

nbResourceTypeID-repeater NAME BINDING

```
    SUBORDINATE OBJECT CLASS          "IEEE802.1F":oResourceTypeID;
    NAMED BY SUPERIOR OBJECT CLASS
                                      oRepeater  AND SUBCLASSES;
    WITH ATTRIBUTE                    "IEEE802.1F":aResourceTypeIDName;
    REGISTERED AS          {iso(1) member-body(2) us(840) 802dot3(10006) csmacdmgt(30)
                           nameBinding(6) resourceTypeID-repeater(13)};

nbResourceTypeID-mau                  NAME BINDING

    SUBORDINATE OBJECT CLASS          "IEEE802.1F":oResourceTypeID;
    NAMED BY SUPERIOR OBJECT CLASS
                                      oMAU  AND SUBCLASSES;
    WITH ATTRIBUTE                    "IEEE802.1F":aResourceTypeIDName;
    REGISTERED AS          {iso(1) member-body(2) us(840) 802dot3(10006) csmacdmgt(30)
                           nameBinding(6) resourceTypeID-mau(14)};
```

Annex 30B

(normative)

GDMO and ASN.1 definitions for management

30B.1 Common attributes template

aCMCounter ATTRIBUTE

DERIVED FROM "ISO/IEC 10165-5":genericWrappingCounter;
BEHAVIOUR bCMCounter;
REGISTERED AS {iso(1) member-body(2) us(840) 802dot3(10006) csmacdmgt(30) attribute(7) cmCounter(88)};

bCMCounter BEHAVIOUR

DEFINED AS Wraps at one of two sizes. Size is conditional.
Wraps at 32 bits, that is this counter reaches its maximum value at $2^{32}-1$ (i.e., approximately 4.294×10^9) and then rolls over to zero on the next increment, if maximum increment rate from zero causes a rollover in 58 min or more.
Wraps at 64 bits, that is this counter reaches its maximum value at $2^{64}-1$ (i.e., approximately $1.844\ldots \times 10^{19}$) and then rolls over to zero on the next increment, if maximum increment rate from zero would cause a 32 bit counter to roll over in less than 58 min.
The counter that this is derived from initializes to zero. Initialization to zero is not a requirement of this standard;

30B.2 ASN.1 module for CSMA/CD managed objects

This ASN.1 module defines the ASN.1 types and subtypes that are referred to immediately after the WITH ATTRIBUTE SYNTAX construct in this clause's uses of the attribute template defined in ISO/IEC 10165-4: 1992, Guidelines for the definition of managed objects (GDMO).

IEEE802Dot3-MgmtAttributeModule {iso(1) member-body(2) us(840) 802dot3(10006) global(1) asn1Module(2) commonDefinitions(0) version(2)} DEFINITIONS IMPLICIT TAGS::= BEGIN

EXPORTS--*everything*

IMPORTS--*implicitly imports ISO 8824: 1990*

```
    MACAddress
        FROM IEEE802CommonDefinitions
        {iso(1) member-body(2) us(840) ieee802dot1partF(10011)
        asn1Module(2) commonDefinitions(0) version1(0)};


    AdminState::= ENUMERATED {
        other                   (1),        --undefined
```

```
        unknown                 (2),    --initializing, true state not yet known
        operational             (3),    --powered and connected
        standby                 (4),    --inactive but on
        shutdown                (5)     --similar to power down
        }

AttemptArray::= SEQUENCE OF aCMCounter--array [1..attempt limit - 1]

AutoNegAdminState::= ENUMERATED {
        disabled                (1),
        enabled                 (2)
        }

AutoNegAutoConfig:=ENUMERATED {
        other                   (1),
        configuring             (2),
        complete                (3),
        disabled                (4),
        parallel detect fail    (5)
        }

AutoNegRemoteSignalingDetect::=ENUMERATED {
        detected                (1),
        notdetected             (2)
        }

AutoNegSelector::=ENUMERATED {
        other                   (1),    --undefined
        ethernet                (2),    --802.3
        isoethernet             (3)     --802.9
        }

AutoNegSelectorList::=SEQUENCE OF AutoNegSelector

AutoNegTechnology::=ENUMERATED {
        global                  (0),    --reserved for future use.
        other                   (1),    --undefined
        unknown                 (2),    --initializing, true ability not yet known.
        10BASE-T                (14),   --10BASE-T as defined in clause 14
        100BASE-T4              (23),   --100BASE-T4 as defined in clause 23
        100BASE-TX              (25),   --100BASE-TX as defined in clause 25
        10BASE-TFD              (142),  --Full-duplex 10BASE-T
        100BASE-TXFD            (252),  --Full-duplex 100BASE-TX
        isoethernet             (8029)  --802.9 ISLAN-16T
        }
AutoNegTechnologyList::=SEQUENCE OF AutoNegTechnology
AutoPartitionState::= ENUMERATED {
        autoPartitioned         (1),
        notAutoPartitioned      (2)
        }

BbandFrequency::= SEQUENCE {
        xmitCarrierFrequency    [1]     INTEGER , --Frequency in MHz times 4 (250 kHz resolution)
        translationFrequency    [2]     INTEGER   --Frequency in MHz times 4 (250 kHz resolution)
        }
```

```
BbandXmitRcvSplitType::= ENUMERATED {
        other                   (1),        --undefined
        single                  (2),        --single-cable system
        dual                    (3)         --dual-cable system, offset normally zero
        }

BitString ::= BIT STRING (SIZE (1..1024))

Jabber::= SEQUENCE {
        jabberFlag              [1]         JabberFlag,
        jabberCounter           [2]         JabberCounter
        }

JabberFlag::= ENUMERATED {
        other                   (1),        --undefined
        unknown                 (2),        --initializing, true state not yet known
        normal                  (3),        --state is true or normal
        fault                   (4)         --state is false, fault or abnormal
        }

JabberCounter::= INTEGER (0..2^32 –1)

MauTypeList::= SEQUENCE OF TypeValue

MediaAvailState::= ENUMERATED {
        other                   (1),        --undefined
        unknown                 (2),        --initializing, true state not yet known
        available               (3),        --link or light normal, loopback normal
        not available           (4),        --link loss or low light, no loopback
        remote fault            (5),        --remote fault with no detail
        invalid signal          (6),        --invalid signal, applies only to 10BASE-FB
        remote jabber           (7),        --remote fault, reason known to be jabber
        remote link loss        (8),        --remote fault, reason known to be far-end link loss
        remote test             (9)         --remote fault, reason known to be test
        }

MIIDetect::= ENUMERATED {
        unknown                     (1),
        presentNothingConnected     (2),
        presentConnected            (3),
        absent                      (4)
        }

MulticastAddressList::= SEQUENCE OF MACAddress

OneOfName ::= INTEGER (1..1024)

PhyTypeList::= SEQUENCE OF PhyTypeValue

PhyTypeValue::= ENUMERATED {
        other                   (1),        --undefined:
        unknown                 (2),        --initializing, true state or type not yet known
```

```
        none                    (3),     --MII present and nothing connected
        10 Mb/s                 (7),     --clause 7 10 Mb/s Manchester
        100BASE-T4              (23),    --clause 23 100 Mb/s 8B/6T
        100BASE-X               (24)     --clause 24 100 Mb/s 4B/5B
        }

PortAdminState::= ENUMERATED {
        disabled                (1),
        enabled                 (2)
        }

RepeaterHealthData ::= OCTET STRING (SIZE (0..255))

RepeaterHealthInfo::= SEQUENCE {
        repeaterHealthState     [1]      RepeaterHealthState,
        repeaterHealthText      [2]      RepeaterHealthText  OPTIONAL,
        repeaterHealthData      [3]      RepeaterHealthData  OPTIONAL
        }

RepeaterHealthState::= ENUMERATED {
        other                   (1),     --undefined or unknown
        ok                      (2),     --no known failures
        repeaterFailure         (3),     --known to have a repeater-related failure
        groupFailure            (4),     --known to have a group-related failure
        portFailure             (5),     --known to have a port-related failure
        generalFailure          (6)      --has a failure condition, unspecified type
        }

RepeaterType::= ENUMERATED {
        other                   (1),     --See 20.2.2.3:
        unknown                 (2),     --initializing, true state or type not yet known
        10 Mb/s                 (9),     --clause 9 10 Mb/s Baseband repeater
        100 Mb/sClassI          (271),   --clause 27 class I 100 Mb/s Baseband repeater
        100 Mb/sClassII         (272),   --clause 27 class II 100 Mb/s Baseband repeater
        802.9a                  (99)     --Integrated services repeater
        }

RepeaterHealthText ::= PrintableString (SIZE (0..255))

TrueFalse ::= BOOLEAN

TypeList::= SEQUENCE OF TypeValue

TypeValue::= ENUMERATED {
        global                  (0),     --undefined
        other                   (1),     --undefined
        unknown                 (2),     --initializing, true state not yet known
        AUI                     (7),     --no internal MAU, view from AUI
        10BASE5                 (8),     --Thick coax MAU as specified in clause 8
        FOIRL                   (9),     --FOIRL MAU as specified in 9.9
        10BAS                   (10),    --Thin coax MAU as specified in clause 10
        10BROAD36               (11),    --Broadband DTE MAU as specified in clause 11
        10BASE-T                (14),    --UTP MAU as specified in clause 14
        10BASE-FP               (16),    --Passive fiber MAU, specified in clause 16
        10BASE-FB               (17),    --Synchronous fiber MAU, specified in clause 17
```

```
    10BASE-FL         (18),    --Asynchronous fiber  MAU, specified in clause 18
    100BASE-T4        (23),    --Four-pair Category 3 UTP as specified in clause 23
    100BASE-TX        (25),    --Two-pair Category 5 UTP as specified in clause 25
    100BASE-FX        (26),    --X fiber over PMD as specified in clause 26
    802.9a            (99)     --Integrated services MAU as specified in IEEE Std 802.9
                                 ISLAN-16T
    }

END
```